





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2012 with funding from  
LYRASIS Members and Sloan Foundation







The  
North Carolina  
Historical Review

---

VOLUME I

JANUARY, 1924

NUMBER 1

---

WALTER HINES PAGE—MEMORIAL ADDRESS

By DR. ALBERT SHAW, *Editor of The American Review of Reviews.*  
at Raleigh, N. C., December 7, 1923.

*Ladies and Gentlemen of the State Literary and Historical Association of North Carolina:*

I appreciate the opportunity you have given me to take some part in the proceedings of your annual meeting. If I had been asked to confine my remarks merely to the praise and encouragement of historical research, I should find no topic more congenial or better worth while.

The superstructures of our twentieth century civilization are taking on many unexpected forms, and their towers and pinnacles are already more lofty by far than could have been imagined a century ago. Yet all these venturings and projections that absorb the minds of the race of men that lives and aspires as we begin the fourth century of our experience on these American shores must rest upon human foundations laid in the toilsome, humdrum past. Concerning this substructure of our history, by far too little is commonly understood.

The historians are constantly engaged in the rewriting of chapters in what have been considered the principal themes and concerns of historical narrative, or analysis, or criticism. However one may regard the results of such attempts at revaluation of great events or epochs, or of the careers and influence of particular rulers and leaders, there is much to commend in the so-called scientific methods with which students are now made acquainted. Governments are opening long closed archives for the writers of political history in modern periods. The explorer, the archæologist, and the expert in comparative philology are giving us a fresh insight into the life of antique

ages such as the greatest scholars of the last century did not enjoy. Thus we find a growing approval of the scholarly methods that are producing for us entire new libraries of books pertaining to history at large. As never before, it has become possible to follow the outline of the story of mankind as a connected whole. Yet there is another field of historical research, less highly appreciated, that seems to me to be not less vital or fruitful than these broader inquiries which, of course, I am in no sense disparaging. I have in mind what I may call the vertical or intensive, as contrasted with the horizontal or extensive researches into the truth of the periods that underlie our present schemes of life and society.

We have now a background of three hundred years of the European races as colonists on the continent of North America. At every moment of historical time during those three centuries, these transplanted communities have had to deal with changing conditions. Each generation has been absorbed in its own struggles and occupations, its private concerns and its public relationships and vicissitudes. If these people of successive generations on our soil had been told that the study of their own history was important for them, not only as a matter of knowledge for its own sake but also as a help in the rearing of their permanent structure of institutions, they would have given scanty attention to advice so seemingly unrelated to their thoughts and affairs.

They would have thought of history as concerned with certain movements and persons of remote rather than immediate concern. The controversies of the Protestant Reformation were still resounding in their ears from many a pulpit; and the principles of constitutional liberty as asserted by our forefathers were glorified from every political platform. But the application of these glittering generalities to the actual progress and upbuilding of our American communities was not made apparent to their understandings.

We are nowadays coming much nearer the truth of history through the discovery that our own humble, everyday experiences are the worthy object of research. We can best understand the times in which we live by the study of the history of ordinary families and ordinary communities. We Americans

have awakened to find ourselves constituting by far the most powerful and influential nation of the world in this new century. We are confronted with problems that affect our hundred million people as a whole, and with world responsibilities from which we cannot escape. As we face the magnitude of these present and prospective issues, we are obliged to take account of ourselves—to ask what are our real assets and resources—to ask ourselves whether in a time of such great changes we have any elements of stability. And we find our most satisfactory answers in studies that begin at home.

As we look at Russia through the hazes of distance that are rendered the more opaque by reason of our ignorance of a thousand everyday matters, we are apt to think of a vast country, with its scores of millions of peasants, in terms altogether general; as if Russians were all alike and their country a uniform territory as respects climate, products, and modes of life. And in like manner the average peasant in the heart of Russia has certain conceptions of America, into which there does not enter even to a slight extent the thought that the land and the people are other than of uniform texture and character. In point of fact, Russia is a land of almost endless variety, while possessing certain characteristics that are dominant enough to be regarded as relating to Russia as a whole. As a nation, we in America have characteristics that unify us as a nation. We have also our well-marked local variations.

To understand what is common to us as Americans, we are obliged to go back to the main currents of European history. We find all of our original colonies founded and developed principally upon the habits, customs, and experiences of Western Europe, and especially of the British islands. There was enough similarity of origin to make possible the later union of the original colonies up and down the Atlantic seaboard. This union was highly advantageous, although it was due far less to an instinct of affinity, or to a prevailing belief that brethren should dwell together in unity, than to the imminence of common dangers. Whatever the historians may have written, there are few people nowadays who realize how great and constant were the perils from without that forced themselves upon the attention of all our colonies, and that led them step



by step to the compromises and agreements that resulted in our present blending as a nation.

But the individual States persisted; and each of them was making its own history, even while all were contributing to the partnership that was maintained at first for certain common purposes, and afterwards because nationality had become a thing actually achieved, not through compacts but through experiences. Political relationships with the mother country through nearly two centuries of tutelage had brought into being our original group of States. In like manner, the Union of these earlier States became the mother country that brought into political existence additional entities, that were destined in due time to make their own histories, as sovereign members of the sisterhood of commonwealths.

I know of nothing in the political history of ancient or modern times that is so thrilling or so romantic as the great epic of the making of these individual States, all the way from our eastern seaboard to the Pacific coast. The founding of our original settlements in the seventeenth century had been so adventurous and so heroic as to enhance the world's respect for human nature as such. Democracy, both in theory and in practice, was bound to result from such struggles to found permanent communities in a new world. It is not strange that the spirit awakened by such an effort should have impelled the descendants of the early colonists to continue the struggle with the wilderness, and to push their way to the great inner valleys and still beyond. It was this continuous movement of entire families, or of younger members of families, swarming from the older to the newer zones of settlement, that made the American people as a whole what we now find it.

Except in the smallest way, nothing of this kind has happened in the development of any other country. The Norman system of overlordship was super-imposed in England, but did not displace the earlier Saxon and Celtic populations. There had been vast tribal migrations in Europe during and following the last phases of the Roman Empire; and many continuing results are to be found in localities. But for the most part the blending of Slav and Teuton as in the eastern parts of Germany, and of older stocks with Goths and Vandals, as in parts

of Spain, are hopelessly intricate. It is in the United States alone that we have the clear and unlimited opportunity to write down the full story, from the beginning to the present time, of the making of a great nation; of the differentiated founding and growth of each of forty-eight States; of the continuous record of literally thousands of separate counties, townships, villages, and urban communities.

When I speak, therefore, of the vertical or intensive study of history, I mean, as you well understand, the examination of the foundation stones upon which each community is shaping the visible edifice of its own individual and social life today. It is manifestly impossible to separate the broad interpretations of history from the so-called narrow study of local backgrounds. The one is necessary to an understanding of the other. But the larger movements may be better understood by virtue of the study of localities than if approached by means of a general or philosophic survey. It is one of the great rewards of local research that it leads out, in so many unexpected ways, to a clear perception of what had been only dimly seen of causes and consequences, in the broader fields of history.

It is a fascinating thought that the territorial entities known by the names given to our forty-eight States are today by far the most definite, secure, and permanent of all the self-governing and sovereign areas of the entire world. Thus the concept "North Carolina" is as precise in the geographical sense as if the State were a detached area like Ireland or Cuba; while in the political sense North Carolina has attained a measure of stability—through centuries of experience and through assured prospects for the future—that is hardly equaled by that of any political entity in Europe, Asia, Africa, or the islands of the seven seas. Firmly established as I regard the unity of the American people in their great representative confederacy of democracies, I think that it would be admitted by every one that the States themselves have an individual permanence that is even better assured than that of the republic as a whole.

We have come into a view of citizenship and allegiance that has for most thoughtful minds quite removed the old bugbear of rivalry between the States themselves and the Union of

States that is so essential to the welfare of each constituent member. The individual citizen discovers that he serves the Nation by serving well the State to which he belongs; and that he serves his State by working with his neighbors for the welfare of his county or his town. There is no essential rivalry, although often there are practical questions as to the adjustment of public functions.

There are various factors that must be considered in the historical study of one of our States, and that must also be grasped intelligently in the outlining of constructive policies for the future. The most obvious factors are (1) the people, and (2) the land and other material resources. But in the earlier stages of our life in North Carolina we had also to consider certain external relations that counted most significantly. The Indians were an ever-present factor of considerable importance for nearly two hundred years. Many conditions exist today in localities that can only be explained by a knowledge of the friendliness or unfriendliness of certain Indian tribes, or of the earlier or later extinguishment of Indian land titles. English policy as related to colonial administration was a factor of far-reaching influence in many ways. Foreign and domestic trade policies, as they affected commerce not only with European countries but with the other American colonies and with the West Indies, produced results of so marked a kind that existing conditions could not possibly be understood without much knowledge of those policies.

When one returns to the two main factors—the people themselves and the physical resources of a State like North Carolina—the theme becomes so ramified as one studies it that it furnishes ample food for a life-time of study and reflection. Suppose one were considering physical resources, and were beginning with an agricultural survey by localities. Perchance we find fields that are depleted and eroded. What was their original state, and how has this wastage of once fertile lands come about? The history of agriculture, brought down to the detailed study of communities, is rather at the beginning than at the end, for purposes of inquiry.

You cannot tell the story of any old tobacco farm in North Carolina in its completeness, or with a real understanding of



causes and effects, if you ignore the British rules and regulations that restricted colonial commerce, and the foreign fashions and customs that virtually compelled the farmers of North Carolina, Virginia, and Maryland to raise tobacco for the enrichment of London and Glasgow traders. You cannot relate the essential history of any cotton plantation of North Carolina without an understanding of social and economic conditions that have been transforming the world during the past century.

In the beginning, and for a long time afterwards, each of our States had an agricultural population that fixed the standards of personal, family, and community life. But one does not understand the nature of our agriculture as applied to the problems presented by our local variations of soil and climate, without a study of the history of agriculture and of local communities in Western Europe and especially in Great Britain.

The traditional agriculture upon which we founded our American States was that of the moderate-sized farm, largely self-sufficient as regards its supplies of food and clothing and its various household industries. The landholding farmer, with his own family and perhaps a very few retainers, was the unit. He ruled his acres, and he helped to rule the community that was made up of farms and families of similar character, or at least of like points of view.

How this farmer, whose theory was that of diversified home industry and a self-sufficing life, became the victim of a one-crop system, that depleted soils and greatly disturbed social equilibrium, is a matter that has to be studied until one has a thorough grasp of its causes and its consequences, in order to see what remedies can best be applied.

Thus the study of agriculture and of material resources leads at once and inevitably to a study of the people themselves, and to their relations with people elsewhere. It is impossible to understand the agriculture of North Carolina without a study of market conditions and demands in other parts of the world. One finds that the American farmer was always, consciously, a citizen of the larger world. He was never a sodden peasant, but always a man adventuring in fields of production and trade that embraced all the continents.

As for these remarkable people, one must know what were their origins, their religious convictions, their ideals, and their modes of life. One must know what their standards were as regards habitations, food, recreation, and the things that make for the dignity of the individual and the integrity of the family.

I have always believed in the value of the intensive study of American States and communities, but never so much as during the past year. As it happens, I have been reading with fresh interest many contemporary records of early American life, as observed both by American residents and by European visitors. Not a few of these narratives of early observers include notes on this State of North Carolina. One gains fresh confidence and renewed enthusiasm as he reads the story of the pioneers and their valiant encounters with almost insuperable difficulties. He follows the thin and straggling—but very definite—lines of colonization from England, then from Scotland and the North of Ireland, or from Moravia by way of Pennsylvania. He feels the significance of the founding of a State—the addition of another organized sovereignty to that comparatively short list of civilized States that, taken together in their onward movement, constitute the swelling stream of modern history.

Again let me remark that, except for the British dominions—Canada, Australia, New Zealand, and so on—there are no other great, civilized communities whose history can be studied and regarded in detailed completeness. From the political standpoint, the most important thing to keep in mind is that our commonwealths were, as a working, everyday fact, established upon what in Europe was merely a speculative and untried theory of equality and democracy. We have said this so often—we have used the word democracy so lightly—that we are in danger of regarding it as a mere commonplace.

Yet American democracy is the most significant and far-reaching fact of modern times; and the example of our American States is slowly but surely reacting upon the rest of the world and transforming it.

We have made many mistakes in our imperfect experiments in democracy, but we awake from our dreams to find, happily, that these mistakes are for our discipline, and not for our ultimate discomfiture. They are to be remedied all the more surely

if we face them with resolute purpose to know them at their worst. We thought for a long time that we were farming prosperously; and then we discovered that we were ruining our soils and driving our most enterprising sons away, to be the leaders in making the newer States of Tennessee, Missouri, or Texas, and to take part in the upbuilding of many others north and south of the Ohio River and west of the Mississippi. We prided ourselves upon our practice of democracy, while in point of fact we were undervaluing the common man, allowing him to lapse into poverty and ignorance, and unduly promoting the tendency to exalt the few at the cost of the many.

I do not believe that these tendencies would in any case have carried us to the point of hopeless disaster. It was inevitable that the vigorous young men of the East, after the Revolutionary War, should have rushed speculatively to seize the opportunities afforded by the boundless West. It was inevitable that our eastern soils should have suffered greatly in view of the conditions of agriculture and commerce that existed not only here but everywhere else. Tobacco and cotton were in world-wide demand, and could be produced advantageously only in somewhat restricted areas. The system of slave labor had been imposed, rather than invited. One condition or another was, I think, quite sure to arise in due time to supply the necessary correctives.

Throughout all these experiences, the material resources of North Carolina were not seriously impaired, if one takes the long rather than the short view. Meanwhile, the great asset of North Carolina, dimly recognized but for a long time taken for granted and never fairly evaluated, was the native population. These plain folk with their varied blend of European stocks, held within their bosoms a higher measure of intrinsic human value than anybody had ever realized, until somewhere near the end of the nineteenth century. Nowadays, it is the grateful realization of the sterling worth of the common people of North Carolina that has inspired the fresh movements of progress that are compelling the attention of social and political leaders throughout the entire country.

North Carolina is not singular in having had its progress retarded by the immensity of the development of the West.



The pendulum begins to swing back, and all the conditions are more favorable for the beginnings of a new era in the relatively neglected States of the Atlantic seaboard. As we enter upon what in my opinion is destined to be a very memorable time of economic readjustments, with a revival of rural life as its most marked and most desirable feature, the position of North Carolina is exceptionally favorable.

This is true because of the geographical position of the State, its great resources, its capacity for well-balanced and permanent forms of agriculture; but especially it is true because it has not yet been over-developed as a manufacturing State, and is still a commonwealth of farmers and rural communities, descended by natural increase from the earlier American stock.

I have always been interested in observing local American types, and I am as far from bias or prejudice, perhaps, as any American could well be. Both of my maternal great-grandfathers, of the old Massachusetts stock, were pioneering just after the Revolution in the woods of New Hampshire and Vermont, while my two paternal great-grandfathers at the same time had joined the westward movement, and were in Kentucky. One of these two had sold his land in North Carolina and made his way with thousands of other North Carolinians through the passes of the Blue Ridge and the Alleghanies. The other had gone from the Pennsylvania-Maryland line with the thousands who were flat-boating down the Ohio River. Afterwards, these two paternal great-grandfathers crossed the river from Kentucky and joined the settlers who were founding the State of Ohio.

My own grandfather, a youth of twenty years, was with the southern advance guard in Louisiana at the time of the purchase of that territory by Jefferson. Nothing whatever in the history of the families from whom I am descended was in any way striking or unusual, so far as I am aware. They spread across the country from the southern colonies, the middle colonies, and the New England colonies. Their ramifications extended all the way to the Pacific coast. They helped to bear the burden and heat of pioneering days in many States, as preachers, doctors, editors, lawyers, politicians, traders—but mostly as plain, sturdy farmers. Thus, as I have had incentives

to observe the American stock in its original variations, and in its fine blendings as one goes westward, I have had no sense of prejudice or preference. On the contrary, I have felt a great admiration for all of the types and strains—all of the population elements—of the early colonization.

I do not undervalue the later contributions that Europe has made to our population, usually under special exigencies in those overcrowded countries. Nevertheless, I have come to a mature conviction that we should have settled the United States satisfactorily, and with sufficient rapidity, if we had received no further acquisition of population after the census of 1790. I am perfectly aware that to have drawn the line sharply and harshly then would have excluded a great number of families that afterwards came to reinforce the earlier stock, and that have proved to be as valuable as the descendants of the original pioneers. But I am speaking in general, and without regard to exceptions, when I express the view that the old American stock rather than the newer populations of more alien blood and tradition ought to be the basis of a permanent American nationality.

North Carolina has the distinction of having contributed a very high percentage of her best and most enterprising sons and daughters during the past century and a half to the upbuilding of other States in the general westward movement, while continuing to carry on her own life without appreciable access of newer populations from Europe. Unlike Florida, there has been no great rush of people to North Carolina from other States; and the consequence has been that the North Carolinian type has had a better opportunity for distinctive development than that of almost any other of our entire sisterhood of States.

A study of the famous townships of Massachusetts, or "towns" as these local divisions are designated in New England, is painful in many instances to those who love to find permanence of tradition and prosperous survival of early family names. Not in all these communities, but in very many, the old stock has well-nigh disappeared. It was not in vain that the forefathers established these little democracies of the New England towns, for their influence has permeated the life of the

nation. The changes of the past century have made over-heavy drafts upon rustic New England.

That part of the country met the competition of western agriculture more than half way and on a twofold plan. It sent its sons and daughters in great streams to people the prairies, and to construct social and political democracies of New England type all the way to Oregon. Meanwhile, with the trained ingenuity of its people, it converted New England into a great workshop. Its centers of manufacturing and commerce gave employment to hundreds of thousands of immigrants from many foreign countries. With all these changes in population elements, the New England States are still under the spell of their noble history and their great traditions; and in hundreds of their rural neighborhoods the continuity of life has not been fatally broken or altered, and there are many hopeful evidences of a recovery of local vigor. There will be no return to the conditions of the past, but the new order of things cannot fail to find inspiration in the minute study of local history.

It has been assumed that the structure of early society in the northern colonies was wholly different from that of the colonies south of the Potomac. Those whose study has not been thorough and critical have found it easy to assume that New England and the central colonies were settled by a somewhat uniform type of plain middle-class farmers, while the southern colonies were from the beginning dominated by a land-holding aristocracy akin to that of Great Britain. As a matter of severe historical truth, a few obvious exceptions being admitted, there was a remarkable similarity in the social status of the people who formed our early societies all along the Atlantic seaboard.

There were, indeed, different systems under which land was acquired. In New England, the township lands were as a rule granted to a group of people who proceeded to sub-divide and allot the area of the little democracy upon principles of equality. In Virginia, the land was more generally acquired in large tracts by individuals, who proceeded to find purchasers and to colonize at some profit to themselves. The New England system resulted in closer settlement and better organized local groups. But, quite contrary to the accepted view, Virginia—



like Pennsylvania and New York—was settled by working farmers of the average type whose handholdings were not extensive. The system of great plantations was a later development. Economic conditions changed the character of early rural Virginia, just as another set of economic conditions at a much later time changed the character of rural New England.

The studies of Professor Thomas Jefferson Wertenbaker, as he has summed them up in his recent work on the *Planters of Colonial Virginia*, show us that a hundred years after the settlement at Jamestown the average Virginia farmer was a man who held somewhere from one hundred to two hundred acres of land, while in various counties there were not more than one or two families that owned as much as a thousand acres. But, during the second hundred years, lands had become depleted, ordinary farming had failed, and the large planter using slave labor had bought up numerous old farms and had framed a new system on the wreckage of the old. It is a matter of the highest interest and importance that Professor Wertenbaker has been able to recover from the British archives, and to publish for our benefit, the actual lists of Virginia landowners with their respective holdings, county by county, for a great part of Virginia as of a date a little more than two hundred years ago.

These lists, taken in conjunction with available records of land transfers, shed a light that is not merely curious but is of fundamental importance upon the beginning of your great neighboring State. It is instructive to compare the list of names of landholders thus presented with the lists of family names disclosed by our first national census—that of 1790. It will soon be 840 years since William the Conqueror made his great survey of the lands of England, and listed their feudal overlords and their tenants and occupiers. These records of Domesday Book are an invaluable source of English history; and it is only to be regretted that an even more complete record might not have been made century by century down to the present time.

The State of Wisconsin, with a fine sense of its dignity as a commonwealth and of the future importance of its historical records, is now engaged in a notable inquiry, directed by the State Historical Society, known as the Wisconsin Domesday.

In each of its townships a careful study is being made (many of these have already been completed) of the history of the land from the date of its settlement with the names of landowners, the changes in local agriculture, and all other pertinent facts. In order to save too much repetition, it has been found desirable to prepare a general history of Wisconsin agriculture as a preliminary statement. The particular records of localities will be published from time to time. It requires no argument to show how valuable this record will be to the people of Wisconsin in future centuries. The State of Iowa, in the heart of our greatest agricultural region, has been showing an equal zeal in the compiling of the annals of its pioneers and in the study of everything relating to its social and political experiences.

There is no State perhaps that would profit more by a similarly exhaustive study of its origins and the entire course of its history in local detail than North Carolina. As I have already intimated, there is no State perhaps in the entire Union whose new hopes and ambitions rest so symmetrically and firmly upon beginnings that stretch back through almost three centuries.

I have lately been reading, in connection with one another, two statements regarding the people and the civilization of North Carolina. The latest of these, by Mr. William H. Richardson, has just now made its appearance. The contrasting statement was made in 1897, a full quarter century ago, by a son of North Carolina, the late Walter Hines Page. It was an address delivered at the State Normal School at Greensboro, and several years afterwards published with two other addresses in a little volume called *The Rebuilding of Old Commonwealths*.

Page's theme was the intrinsic value of the common man, and his rightful claim to be educated and trained, both for his own sake and as incomparably the greatest asset of the State. It was an eloquent appeal, and it cited statistics of taxation and illiteracy in order to make the point that North Carolina was not keeping up with the American procession, especially when compared with the States of the Mississippi Valley. In order to quicken the energies of his brethren and sisters in North Carolina, and to awaken in them something of his own noble discontent with things as they are, his analysis was unsparing,



and many of his statements might well have seemed blunt and harsh.

But they were the chastening words of a man of great devotion and faith. Happily, he did not end his speech of scathing criticism in a vein of pessimism. He was making an appeal for State and local policies that would restore to illiterate, poverty-stricken, forgotten men, women, and children in North Carolina their true birthright of intelligence and economic well-being. He could not have been hopeless, or even disheartened, when he stood before that audience of enthusiastic and capable young women at Greensboro in the days of Charles D. McIver. And so he turned to prophecy in words well worth quoting:

What may we not look for in the future? Whatever I might say in prophecy would be as inadequate as all that I might say in congratulation. Great changes come as silently as the seasons. I am no more sure of this springtime than I am of the rejuvenation of our society and the lifting up of our life. A revolution is in progress, and this institution is one of the first and best fruits of it. I declare in truth and soberness that this is the most inspiring sight that I have ever seen in North Carolina; for before the moral earnestness of well-trained women social illusions vanish, and worn-out traditions fall away.

With what surprising rapidity the new order of things has been making its way in North Carolina since Mr. Page made that address is shown in the well-authenticated picture that Mr. Richardson now gives us of educational progress, of better agriculture, of industrial growth, and of public policies that at last fully recognize in daily practice the equal rights of the common man and his family, just as they had always been recognized in theory.

Walter Page, who died in this State in the month of December, 1918, just five years ago, had lived to observe this brilliant awakening of the energies of North Carolina. Although his life work had required his residence elsewhere, he had belonged as truly as his ancestors to the land of his birth, and had never lost any of the characteristics that marked him as a son of the Old North State. The capacity of a community to produce and train its own leaders through successive generations is one of the best tests of its vitality. Page belonged to a group

of North Carolinians who believed in universal education as essential to modern economic development. We had come into an age of machinery, and of production vastly increased through invention and discovery. The ordinary man must be trained to use the new mechanisms, and his increased efficiency must benefit everybody else as well as himself. Page had seen enough of the results of general and special training to be convinced that opportunities for the right kind of education should be made universal and that the training of children should be compulsory.

It was my privilege to know a number of men who were carrying on this educational propaganda in North Carolina more than twenty-five years ago, and I have never known anywhere a more powerful group of social leaders. It happened that Walter Page was able to cooperate with them more efficiently from without than if he had remained in the State as a teacher or journalist or politician. At the instance of some of these North Carolina leaders, in association with the late Dr. Curry, who was director of the Peabody Fund, and others interested in the same kinds of endeavor, there was formed the old Southern Education Board, and there was held a series of annual conferences for the promotion of education in the South. Out of these Conferences and the work of the Southern Education Board, other agencies grew apace, the most conspicuous of them being the General Education Board. Work of these agencies could by no means be a substitute for what the States themselves had begun to do. They would have carried on the educational movement to full fruition in due time, even without the cooperation of the Boards that I have named.

But the services of these agencies are recognized by all who knew their purposes and their methods as having been almost invaluable. As an active member of the Educational Boards, and of the groups closely associated with them, Page was able to render greater assistance to the cause of education in the South than if his life and work had been more strictly local. Almost twenty years ago, in April, 1904, he made an address at the Seventh Conference for Education in the South at Birmingham, Alabama, that was addressed to the men of the South

at large. It attracted unusual attention, and has been regarded as a summing up of the views and convictions that he was in the habit of expressing with such unsparing frankness. His was the doctrine of democracy carried through to the full limit. He painted in perhaps too glowing colors the progress of Iowa, for example, as compared with North Carolina—not to eulogize the one but to arouse the other. He was trying to show that Iowa's prosperity rested upon the practice as well as the theory of universal education. Having stated what he regarded as the main facts in the case, he moved on to his conclusions:

We run now squarely (I am quoting from his Birmingham speech)—We run now squarely into the doctrine of universal training at the community's expense, compulsory if need be, which is necessary in a democracy. There is no escape from it. We may obscure the question as we please. We may befog it with big words. We may drag it into political discussion. We may hatch big theories to cackle it down. We may smear it over with charity. We may impoverish the State because we are afraid of pauperizing men who are already so lean that they cannot distinguish hunger from backache. But there it stands—a stark economic fact—the State must train every child at the public expense, and it must train him to usefulness; and an economic fact is also a moral fact.

Economic errors, he said, must have economic correction, and sound economic action is always patriotic. There were touches of a very high eloquence in that Birmingham speech, and I must quote one paragraph not only because it shows the qualities of his mind and heart, but also because it states so well an American trait that in my opinion is to dominate our future even as it has characterized our past. The paragraph to which I refer is as follows:

And there is another quality that is strong in us. We love the land that we were born to—literally the land—this ground, this soil, this earth. Our fathers were land-hungry and land-loving, and our impulses answer to their habits. Those of us that do not till the earth still keep a love of it. Even those of us whose trades have buried us in great cities feel exiled if we do not come at short intervals and touch this soil. The call of the earth compels us. This is always our old home. And the odors of a Southern spring-time stir deep emotions in us.

It is not my purpose to embody in this address of mine, which may already be growing too long, any of that strictly biographical record that has been made accessible to us all in the



noteworthy volumes of the *Life and Letters of Walter H. Page*. He had enjoyed the educational opportunities that he craved for the untold thousands of boys and girls of the South. He had held a fellowship first in philology and then in Greek at the Johns Hopkins University at the opening of the institution in 1876. He had been too eager and active for a life of cloistered scholarship, and he had broken away from the university to work as a journalist in the new cities of the Missouri Valley. He had come back to North Carolina as a journalist, and later had gone to New York as a newspaper writer and editor.

When I first knew him, just thirty-three years ago, he was connected with a periodical of national influence of which in due time he became the chief editor. Almost at once I became associated with him in certain activities in New York growing out of our common interest in the welfare and progress of the country. Through his subsequent years as an editor in Boston, and his long and successful experience as a member of an important publishing firm in New York and the editor of *World's Work*, it was also my privilege to be well acquainted with him. Throughout all of his services in the Southern and General Education Boards, also, it was my good fortune to be associated with him as a fellow member. His editorial work was of the kind that kept him in touch with men and movements throughout the United States, and it compelled him also to keep track of the course of events throughout the world. He was by far more concerned about the movements in which he believed than about his own popularity or reputation. He was too busy as an editor who was dealing with the literary work of his contributors to give much time or thought to writing on his own account. Yet what he paused to write was admirable in English style, challenging in its forward-looking appeal, and always critical because of its impatient kind of hopefulness for better things.

I shall say only a little about the international service that formed the climax of the career of this eminent and typical son of your State. Whether a man holds high office or not, in our Republic, is in most cases a matter of chance. The thing to be remarked is that training through experience in private callings

APR 10 1910  
UNIVERSITY OF NORTH CAROLINA

has enabled many Americans, when suddenly confronted with official tasks, to meet every situation adequately. Mr. Page had served on the Country Life Commission by appointment of President Roosevelt under the chairmanship of Gifford Pinchot, now Governor of Pennsylvania, and in association with such a noble American as the late Henry Wallace, father of the present Secretary of Agriculture. This service had greatly increased his knowledge of what may be called "open country" conditions, not only in the South but throughout the entire country. At a later period, as a member of the General Education Board, together with Dr. Wallace Buttrick, Page had been especially active in promoting that work of practical farm demonstration which Dr. Seaman Knapp under Secretary Wilson was carrying on through the Department of Agriculture.

Walter Page had known Woodrow Wilson for a long time, and had the courage and the zeal to offer much useful advice to his academic friend who had so unexpectedly become the chief of a great party in 1912, and the President of the United States in a period of the utmost historical significance. It was by the merest chance that Page was not made a member of the Cabinet. This chance having failed, there was no thought on his part of any other position. The British Ambassadorship was offered to several men, certainly to Mr. Richard Olney, formerly Secretary of State, and to Dr. Charles W. Eliot, both of whom had declined it, burdened as they were with years and honors. Page, at fifty-eight, was still a young man in the very vigor of his rugged manhood, successful as publisher and editor, but turning more and more to the thought of an old-age home in the midst of his own kindred on broad farm lands in North Carolina.

Thus it was not in the due course of things, but rather a fortuitous political circumstance that made Page an Ambassador at London. He may, or he may not, at some time have turned the pages of a book of international law. This to him would not have mattered in the least. There were plenty of lawyers in the Department at Washington; and councilors and secretaries of technical training were always available for the Ambassador at London. What was wanted for that post was a genuine American of common sense, strong character, quick

wit, intellectual training, the qualities of a gentleman in every real sense, and the self-confidence that had been engendered by all these other qualities and experiences. As Mr. Roosevelt declared in 1916, Page was "an Ambassador who has represented America in London during these trying years as no other Ambassador in London has ever represented us with the exception of Charles Francis Adams during the Civil War."

When he took the post in 1913, he could not have guessed that Great Britain would be plunged into the greatest World War of all history only a year later. It is always difficult to decide in any given case how much of an eminent man's fame is due to accidents of time and place. Dr. Eliot told me late in 1914 that if he could have known the Great War was to come, he would not have declined the Ambassadorship. If Eliot had accepted, it is obvious that Page's relation to public events would have been wholly different, however important. It was indeed a tragedy that the intense strain of the war period should have impaired his health and brought his death in the month following the armistice. If he had lived on for years, you would doubtless have enjoyed his presence as a fellow citizen and as a neighbor, and he would have found time, it may be supposed, for literary work of his own. If he had lived, however, there would not have come to light the remarkable private letters which at once gave him a new reputation that will be enduring; namely, that of a letter-writer of the highest order who might have shone as the most brilliant essayist of our generation.

But for certain obscure political controversies in the State of Missouri, Stephen A. Douglas would not have been forced to take a position at Washington that destroyed his chance to secure united support at the Charleston Convention of 1860. This accident in the career of Douglas, splitting the Democratic party, was one of a series of political accidents that brought Abraham Lincoln to the front. On at least three occasions of the most crucial sort in the career of Theodore Roosevelt, during the sixteen years from 1884 to 1900, the element of chance made the difference between a public career that led to the presidency and a career of some different character, however



useful and honorable. It would be absurd to say that Lincoln and Roosevelt owed their fame to these political accidents,\*and to dismiss the matter at that point.

There was an old lady of whom it was said that she asked the Lord each day to "prepare us for that which was being prepared for us." It is evident enough that, in the case of men whose names are deservedly written large in our annals, the important thing has been that they had so prepared themselves that they could meet situations as they arose. Training for usefulness was the text upon which Page preached his best sermons; and, as it came to pass, his own career exemplified the doctrine.

To the very end, Walter Hines Page was in personality an unmistakable son of North Carolina. Not all North Carolinians are physically tall, of rugged frame and rather massive build, but there are many of that type, and Page was one of them. If you will take the family names that prevailed in North Carolina, as shown in the census of 1790, you will discover in your State today literally thousands upon thousands of their descendants who are of an American type almost or quite as distinctive as the English type of Yorkshiremen. I have already implied in what I have said that Page's was a mentality impatient of restraint, independent in judgment, strong in sense of justice, resourceful in face of emergencies. He had always a marked dislike of narrow conventionality, and always a robust hold upon such primal virtues as are expressed in the words loyalty, honor, humanity. In short, he was a man of physical and mental virility, cast by nature in a generous mold.

It has been a pleasure to me to have obtained for use on this occasion the expressions of several men who knew Page in particular relationships. No one was more intimately associated with him during a long term of years than Dr. Wallace Buttrick of the General Education Board. It is Dr. Buttrick who reminded me afresh of the Birmingham speech. The following sentences are written by a man of great heart and unsparing service, about an associate for whom he felt a deep affection as well as a great regard:

Page's interest was primarily in man as man. He believed, as I once said to a group of men in England, that "one man is as good as another if he is." In other words, Page believed in democracy. His interest in education in all its phases centered about this great fact that he believed in man as man. From the beginning his influence in the work of the Southern Education Board, of the General Education Board, and of the International Health Board was of the highest character. We lunched together about once a week for years, and his conversation was always about what more we could do for the happiness and well-being of our fellow-men. Somehow or other, his whole great soul was wrapped up in this high purpose of promoting the well-being of mankind. It did not take the people of England long to discover this quality in him. They often spoke to me of him as an exponent of the highest ideals of real democracy.

Governor Pinchot, with whom Page was associated, especially in conservation work and Roosevelt's Country Life Commission, sends me this charming paragraph of characterization:

I remember Walter Page, first of all, as a man of good will. In him the desire to do good was as keen as in any man I ever knew. Next, my affectionate remembrance recalls him as a man of penetrating common sense. By that I do not mean a cynically disillusioned man, but a man of the most unusual capacity to go to the heart of things. Finally, and most warmly of all, I remember him as a man with a genius for friendship, a most delightfully satisfactory companion, and a man who used his great influence as a gentleman and an American should. My acquaintance with him covered many years, and we did much work together. I shall always be thankful for that.

Mr. F. N. Doubleday, who knew him so well in his professional work, speaks of Page's letters as "the expressions of his thoughtful philosophy worked out with the pen as he was accustomed to think out public matters in the editorials which he wrote for the *World's Work* for nearly fifteen years. Readers of those editorials may remember kindness and optimism as their dominant qualities. \* \* \* He never, I believe, wrote an editorial which failed to indicate the bright side."

From the Hon. John W. Davis, the brilliant publicist who was so worthy and so sympathetic a successor of Page at the British Court, I am privileged to quote as follows from a letter written a few days ago:

I think it no exaggeration to say that no American Ambassador in London was ever nearer to the heart of the English people than was Mr. Page. He elicited not only their esteem and admiration, but their warm



and lasting affection. I recognized constantly as his successor that I was the beneficiary of the good will which he did so much to create. He had the respect and something more of all ranks of society. Perhaps the instant widespread response in Great Britain to the suggestion of a memorial to him in Westminster Abbey is the most striking tribute ever paid to an American diplomat.

Many other expressions it would have been only too easy to gather from friends and associates, but let it suffice to read one more from another son of North Carolina, himself fitted for any public responsibility, however grave or however delicate—Edwin A. Alderman:

Intense practical patriotism was incarnated in Walter Page. There was nothing provincial about him in this manifestation, for his mind was a world mind and his interests cosmic interests—though he brooded over the region that gave him birth like a mother over her children, trying always to aid it, even if he had thereby to incur unpopularity and outspoken criticism. He was a persistent and intelligent radical in the best sense of that incisive word, always upon an unending quest for excellence, and a serious crusader against vain pretension. His passion was rebuilding old commonwealths, rural life, educational systems. His faith was in trained men.

It is the man in his intrinsic worth that we honor, and it is the pride of our American democracy that it nurtures such men. Here was a man who did his work as he was impelled to do it, and who followed the bent of his own genius. He sought no honors, yet his name is held in grateful esteem throughout the English-speaking world, and it will have its secure place in the history of America's effort to make its own democratic faith a universal religion.

He himself would say that we are brought back to the lesson that the boys and girls of North Carolina are worth all that the State can learn how to expend wisely for the training of their minds and hands, and the shaping of their ideals. The history of a State like this is a never-ending drama. Its present grows out of its past, and the scenes and acts of the future must be here within the fixed boundaries that will continue for ages to come.

The work, therefore, of societies like yours is one of patriotism and devotion, not less than one of rational pleasure and durable satisfaction.

## THE WAR SAVINGS CAMPAIGN IN 1918

BY GILBERT T. STEPHENSON, Raleigh, N. C.

The War Savings Campaign in North Carolina in 1918 served two purposes in the prosecution of the World War. The first was to bring the war close home to the people—to all the people, the children as well as the adults, the colored people as well as the white. The other was to help finance the war. As a result of the Campaign, \$27,649,397 was added to the Treasury of the United States for War purposes.

The organization for the War Savings Campaign was, perhaps, the most complete organization for any purpose that has ever been effected in North Carolina, in that it was designed to include every man, woman and child, in every county, city, town, and township in the State. Beginning with Col. F. H. Fries, of Winston-Salem, as State Director, who held his appointment under the Secretary of the Treasury of the United States, the organization reached all the way out through the township chairman in the remotest township in Dare County in the East and in Cherokee County in the West.

The state organization with its headquarters in Winston-Salem consisted of the State Directors and two Vice-Directors, Mr. W. B. Drake, Jr., of Raleigh, and Mr. Robert N. Page, of Biscoe, Director of Organization, Publicity Manager, Advertising Manager, and a force of field representatives.

Three types of County organization were adopted, one after the other. In the beginning of the campaign the County Chairman was asked to surround himself with an executive committee of ten leading citizens of the county, representing the several professions and businesses. Gradually this type grew into the second which called for a sub-committee for each of the leading community interests. The county organization as finally completed and announced provided for a chairman, vice-chairman, secretary, publicity manager, executive agents who were, *ex-officio*, the county superintendent of schools, city superintendents of schools (if there was a city or large town in the county,) county farm demonstrator, county home demonstrator, and county health officer, an executive committee composed of the officers and chairmen of the several subcommittees, a committee on War Savings Societies composed, as a rule, of a representa-

tive of each of the other subcommittees, finance committee, school committee, committee on speakers, committee on churches, committee on fraternal orders and other organizations, women's committee, committee on banks, stores, and railroads, publicity committee, manufacturers' committee, committee on colored people, and, in agricultural counties, a committee of farmers. A complete organization under this plan would take from seventy-five to a hundred and twenty-five of the leading men and women of the county. This form of organization was especially adapted to a campaign of education, inasmuch as there was a special committee to present thrift propaganda to each group of citizens. But the plan was not at all adapted to soliciting pledges. And when Mr. Vanderlip announced the June drive, it became necessary to effect a new organization in each County in the State. This, the third plan of organization, called for a County Chairman, a chairman for each township in rural districts and for each ward in cities and towns, and canvassers for each neighborhood. This compact, geographical organization was adapted to canvassing and soliciting and reporting pledges. The second type of organization, which was but an outgrowth of the first, was the one under which the counties operated from the time of their organization in the early months of 1918 until the first of June. The third type was the one under which they operated the balance of the year.

Early in the winter of 1917-1918 the Campaign of Education began. First, the State Director called a conference of one hundred of the most prominent citizens of the State to lay before them the plans and purposes of the Campaign. Then he called a meeting of the editors of the State. The purpose of the Campaign was brought to the attention of the teachers of the State in their assembly of 1917. Several speakers of note from outside the State made tours, addressing large and varied audiences on the War and the War Savings Campaign. Notably among them were Mr. Milton W. Harrison, then Secretary of the Savings Bank Section of the American Bankers Association; Mr. Harry Lasker of the Publicity Department of the National War Savings headquarters; Captain David Fallon of Australia, who before the War had been a teacher in the Military Academy of New South Wales and who during the War had been awarded the Military Cross by King George; Lieutenant A. Newberry



Choyce of the Lancaster Regiment, England, and Mr. Charles W. Whitehair, a returned Y. M. C. A. worker.

On February 12th and 13th, 1918, there was held in Raleigh the War Savings institute to which were invited by the Governor of the State, every county superintendent of public instruction, every superintendent of a town or city school, every general demonstration agent, every home demonstration agent, one physician from each county in the State, and the chairman of the county executive committee of each political party in the State. There were present six hundred and seventy-three delegates from one hundred counties, representing practically every industrial, social, political, and educational interest in North Carolina. The addresses of Mr. Whitehair, Mr. J. E. Kavanaugh, Col. Thomas B. McAdams, and Judge J. H. Moyle gave an impetus to the War Savings Campaign, the effect of which was felt the balance of the year.

As has been stated, every effort was made to reach every element of our people. In the spring of 1918 farmers were encouraged to plant Victory Acres, and devote the proceeds thereof to the purchase of War Savings Stamps. Children in town and country were encouraged to plant Thrift Gardens and use the money made from them for the purchase of Stamps. Men who were able to do so were asked to purchase \$1,000.00 worth of War Savings Stamps and join the Limit Club. Men of still larger means were asked to purchase \$1,000.00 worth of stamps for each member of their family and thereby join the Family Limit Club. Several colleges in the State were solicited to cover 100 per cent by having every student pledge himself to purchase one or more War Saving Stamps. The same plan was adopted for industrial plants.

It may be said that the first six months of the year 1918 were devoted to a campaign of education to show all the people of North Carolina that every one of them had a part in helping to win the War. There was scarcely a soul in North Carolina to whom some War Savings Worker did not carry a message about the War during the spring and summer of 1918.

The latter half of 1918 was devoted primarily to selling Stamps with which to help finance the War. In April Mr. Frank Vanderlip, chairman of the National War Savings Committee, called a conference in New York of the State Directors and their assistants. He laid before them a plan of campaign

for raising the State's allotment that had already been tried out successfully in Nebraska. The chairmen present, including Col. Fries of North Carolina, pledged themselves to put on the campaign outlined, and to do all in their power to sell the amount of Stamps that had been allotted to each of them. In North Carolina the months of May and June were devoted to preparation for the June drive. During May, district conferences were held in Winston-Salem, Charlotte, Fayetteville, Wilmington, New Bern, Elizabeth City, Weldon, and Asheville. A definite calendar was fixed for the month of June with specific duties assigned for each day. The chief features of the plan of the June drive were as follows: (1) A series of district conferences to acquaint the county chairmen with the plan; (2) a meeting of the local postmasters at the central accounting office of the county to provide for a supply of Stamps to meet the unusual demand that would result from the intensive drive; (3) the copying of the name and address of every individual who was able to buy one or more Stamps into a Pledge Record Book; (4) reconstructing the county organization so as to have a chairman for every township and ward, a leader for every school-house, and enough canvassers for every community; (5) designating Sunday, June 23, as North Carolina War Savings Sunday and asking Sunday-School superintendents and teachers and ministers to present War Savings to their respective audiences on that day; (6) making a house-to-house canvass for pledges during the first four days of the following week; and (7) conducting a meeting in each school-house at 6 o'clock in the afternoon of Friday, June 28, to receive reports of the canvass and to secure additional pledges enough to raise the balance of the township's or ward's allotment. President Wilson had previously designated June 28th as National War Savings day and said, "I earnestly appeal to every man, woman, and child to pledge themselves on or before the 28th of June to save constantly and to buy as regularly as possible the securities of the Government and to do this as far as possible through membership in War Savings Societies. The 28th of June ends this special period of enlistment in the great volunteer Army of Production and Saving here at home. May there be none unenlisted on that day."

The June drive was regarded as successful, though only nine counties were reported as having subscribed their allotment—

namely, Wilson, Cabarrus, Forsyth, Greene, Jones, Lenoir, Martin, Perquimans, and Pitt. Wilson County under the leadership of T. F. Pettus, chairman, enjoys the distinction of having subscribed its allotment by the end of the first day of the Campaign. As a result of the June drive, North Carolina subscribed \$30,390,790 in War Saving Stamps, including sales previously made. This lacked \$18,000,000 of the allotment of \$48,000,000.

The remainder of the year was devoted largely to the redemption of the pledge made in June. There was a series of drives to get the people to purchase the Stamps they had pledged. One was the Victory Drive, November 28th and December 6th. Another was the final drive later in December.

The fruits of the campaign in terms of money, being tangible and material, may be definitely counted. Our objective was \$48,666,380 or \$20 per capita, maturity value, for every man, woman and child—white and black—in the State. This is the same basis of apportionment that obtained over the entire Nation. At the end of the June drive, as has already been stated, the State had subscribed \$30,790,390 or not quite two-thirds of its allotment. At the end of the series of follow-up drives on October 1, the State had subscribed \$37,073,444 or a little over three-fourths of its allotment.

The Retail Merchants of North Carolina led the Nation in sales, as shown by the following excerpt from a letter of congratulation by Mr. Harold Braddock, Director, Savings Division, War Loan Organization, Washington: "It may be of interest to you to know that in no other State has the Retail Merchants' Division accomplished such gratifying sales. On several occasions the smaller towns have succeeded in overselling their quotas to the amount of four hundred per cent, but no State has made a record to be even compared with yours."

What the Negroes of North Carolina, who constitute 36 per cent of the total population, actually accomplished in War Savings cannot be determined with any degree of accuracy for the reason that no separate records either of pledges or sales were made for the races. In pledges it was noteworthy that the 14 black counties of the State pledged a larger per cent of their allotment than the State as a whole, that the 19 counties that subscribed or oversubscribed their allotment had a larger percentage of Negroes than the State as a whole, that the 49 coun-



ties that had more than an average colored population pledged above the average of the State, that the 51 counties that pledged 15 per cent over the average for the State had 4 per cent over an average of the colored population of the State. In sales the record of the Negroes is equally incomplete. No effort whatever has been made to ascertain the amount of Stamps owned by Negroes. But it is worth noting that Edgecombe County—one of the two counties of the State that oversold its allotment, the other one being Forsyth—has a population 60 per cent colored.

If one measures North Carolina's War Savings record in terms of money he finds that the record is incomplete. That is, North Carolina, asked to sell among its people \$48,666,380, sold only \$27,649,397; asked to sell 100 per cent of its allotment, it sold only 56.80 per cent; asked to invest \$20 per capita, it invested only \$11.36; asked to invest nearly 5 per cent of its wealth in War Savings Stamps, it invested only 2.71 per cent.

The success of the War Savings Campaign should not be judged so much by the amount of money it turned into the Treasury of the United States as by the effect it had upon the life and character of the people. The tangible fruit of the campaign, of course, is twenty-seven and one-half million dollars saved in 1918 and paid back in 1923 to constitute an immense working capital distributed among, perhaps, seven hundred and fifty thousand people of every walk of life. Altogether incalculable is the good that this huge sum did in paying wages, developing resources, building schools and churches and in getting young people started in the world. But might this twenty-seven and one-half million dollars not have been merely the seed from which grew many blessings that cannot be counted in terms of money or even of material prosperity?

At the end of the campaign of 1918 a questionnaire was submitted to each county chairman in which the question was asked: "In what respects do you consider that the War Savings Campaign of 1918 did the people of your county good?" The following is a symposium of their answers.

The War Savings Campaign made our people more thrifty. Thrift is the virtue which manifests itself in habits of industry and economy.

The War Savings Campaign made people more industrious by convincing them of the need of increased production and by arousing in them the desire to produce more as a means of help-

ing to win the war and to serve humanity. The new spirit of industry has manifested itself in the farm-boys planting Victory Acres and the Farm-girls Thrift Gardens, in boys and girls everywhere earning money with which to buy Stamps and in people of all ages and circumstances working with a new motive.

The War Savings Campaign made people more economical by convincing them of the sin of waste, by showing them how they could help win the War, by economizing in the consumption of labor and material, and in offering them a safe and convenient means of investing their savings. For the first time, the child with his pennies saved and the laborer with his dollar taken from his pay-envelope had a way to invest their savings at any time and at any one of over eight thousand places in the State by purchasing Government bonds—called War Savings Certificates—that bore as good or better rate interest than Liberty Bonds themselves. It opened the eyes of business men—even of those who had considered themselves prudent—to the value of small items. If millions of dollars could be accumulated by saving of quarters, then millions could be scattered by the waste of quarters.

Hereafter men will be more regardful of the small leaks and extravagancies in their business.

#### PATRIOTISM

The War Savings Campaign made our people more patriotic. In the beginning of the campaign Governor Bickett said that it would be worth while if it did nothing more than teach our people the necessity and righteousness of the war. The chorus of opinions of the County Chairmen was that the campaign not only reconciled our people to the War, but even made them hearty supporters of it in sections where real opposition to the War had existed. One could not make a War Savings appeal without at the same time explaining the necessity and maintaining the righteousness of the War. War Savings speakers, who went into every nook and corner of the State, to a greater extent than speakers ever did before, made themselves real educators of the people. They told the people in the remote sections what the War was about, how it started, why we were in it, what defeat would cost us, what victory might cost us and what part each one of us had in it. The people were made to see that it



was a people's rather than a Government's or an Administration's war. They were made to see that they, themselves, were warriors the same as their boys in khaki were. For the first time the people realized their partnership with the Government. What else could have created 750,000 Government bondholders in a State in which not over 8,000 people had even so much as seen a Government bond before the war.

Not only did the people come to have a new interest in and a more active loyalty to their country, but they came to have a new vision of the world and their part in it. When the soldiers returned with a new interest in world problems—as they most certainly did—they found a people who knew infinitely more about and were infinitely more interested in the world at large than they were before the War enlarged their horizon.

The War Savings Campaign helped to create a finer community spirit. It brought town and country together. It put politicians, business men, and preachers on the same platform to speak, or on the same team to solicit pledges. It made yoke-fellows of Democrats, Republicans and Socialists. It stimulated local pride. There was a desire for North Carolina to secure its allotment; and a greater desire for the county to secure its share; but the greatest desire of all was for the township or ward to do its part. Consequently, men and women of every class and calling worked together in a common cause and hereafter it has been easier for any worthy cause to command a united community support. In one of the towns of North Carolina, for instance, it had been conceded that the people would not work together. A new man in the community—a preacher—saw in the War Savings Campaign his opportunity to start community team work. One of the first daytime mass meetings in the history of the town was a War Savings Meeting. The people rallied to that heartily. It was regarded as really the beginning of a community spirit in that town that would thereafter make possible all kinds of worthy community efforts.

The War Savings Campaign did much to improve the relations between the white and colored races in North Carolina. In the War Savings Campaign, the Negro had upon his shoulder the responsibility of doing a full citizen's part. That is, he was expected to invest \$20 per capita the same as anybody else. The best men of his race—business men and professional—de-

voted their time and thought to the War Savings cause. The voice of community builders and patriots was heard above the din of politicians and race agitators. The white people of the State have learned who the real, dependable leaders among the Negroes are and have a new appreciation of their worth. The colored people, themselves, on the other hand, now know better than ever the constructive leaders of the white race. Controversial matters—politics and social life—were absent from their thought. A great common cause of their country's safety and humanity's welfare was uppermost in the thoughts of speaker and audiences. The colored people of the State saw the white people at their best and the white people saw the colored people at their best. The colored War Savings workers of North Carolina constitute the nucleus of a non-political organization of Negroes with whom the white people of the State may safely deal in grappling with any race problems that may arise in the near future.

The War Savings Campaign made our people more self-confident and self-reliant. It showed them how to become economically independent citizens. More than that, it astounded them to realize their own ability. It had taken them over two hundred years to accumulate savings of \$24 per capita. Who ever would have dared say that they could increase their per capita savings by nearly fifty per cent in one year's time? Yet that is just what they have done. Knowing North Carolina as it is—five hundred miles in length, sparsely settled in many sections, with three counties without a railroad and two without a bank, with one-third of its population colored and with colored people constituting two-thirds of the population in some sections—who ever would have dared say that in one year's time one person in three—white and black, man, woman, and child—would become an investor in Government bonds to the extent of \$11 per capita, not to mention the investment in Liberty Bonds. Yet that very thing has been accomplished. Our people had a new confidence in and reliance upon themselves, and hereafter a problem—even an imposing one—will be accepted as a challenge rather than as an occasion for despair.

## DIARY OF COLONEL JOSEPH HYDE PRATT, COMMAND- ING 105TH ENGINEERS, A. E. F.

---

Commissioned April 25, 1917; called into U. S. Service July 25, 1917; mustered into U. S. Army July 30, 1917; commissioned Lieutenant-Colonel November 7, 1917; commissioned Colonel October 9, 1918. Home address: Chapel Hill, N. C.

*This diary, for my wife, Mary Bayley Pratt, and my son, Joseph Hyde Pratt, Jr., was begun on board the transport Talthybius, Captain Hazeland, The Ocean Steamship Company, Liverpool, England. Owners: Alfred Holt & Company.*

---

*May 18, 1918.* At Greensboro Mr. and Mrs. Grantham, whose son is in C Company, were very much disappointed not to see him. Sent a handclasp and God-bless-you to him by me.

*May 18, 1918, Camp Sevier, S. C.* First call, 4:30 a. m.; breakfast 5:00 a. m. Began to break camp 5:30 a. m. First company to leave, Company A, at 11:10 a. m.; last company to leave, Company E, 12:30 p. m. I left on first train via Southern Railway, leaving camp at 12:05 p. m. All were very glad to leave and be en route for France. At Kings Mountain, Bessemer City, Gastonia, Charlotte, Salisbury, High Point, and Greensboro there were large crowds out to see the troops. Left Greensboro about 9:30 p. m. This is the nearest point to home and the dear ones I will be for an unknown time (?). We are now rushing northward to a port of embarkation. May the time for the southbound trip be nearer than we now realize. Goodnight, my Mazie and my boy. My thoughts are of you two. I want to see you both.

*May 19, 1918, En Route North.* Reveille 7:30 a. m. Just out of Washington. Stopped one hour at Red Cross canteen in Baltimore and Ohio Railroad yards. Men were given 15 minutes hike. Then were served coffee and sandwiches by Red Cross. Their plant very complete and doing a great deal of good. At Philadelphia apples and cigarettes were given to the men. In all the places we pass through men, women and children wave and cheer. Perhaps our people are awakening to the seriousness of the situation and will get ready to fight until the desired end is accomplished.



Reached Jersey City at 5:05 p. m., over the C. N. J. R. R. Had to unload all cars, load material on ferry. Then unload from ferry on to train. Trainmaster said we made the best time of any organization. Reached Garden City, where we detrained at 8:30 p. m. We were in camp and all fixed at 11 p. m. Camp was very dirty and our men realized the value of the clean camp at Camp Sevier.

*May 20, 1918, Camp Mills, N. Y.* Reveille, no call on account of lateness of retiring. Breakfast, 7:30 a. m. Morning spent cleaning camp. Company E and casual camp came in about 1 p. m. (4th train) followed shortly by Company B and Company C (2d train), and Company D and Company E (third train). All were settled by 5 p. m. Very high wind all day. Dust very bad, worse than Arizona. Airships were flying constantly; as many as ten in the air at one time. This is the first time I have seen more than one air plane in the air at the same time. Camp very flat, black soil three to 18 inches in depth. This is underlain by a stratum of gravel, which is a good road material. Good roads could be made all over this camp with this. Roads are muddy and sticky after a rain.

*May 21, 1918, Tuesday, Camp Mills, N. Y.* Reveille, 6 a. m. Breakfast, 6:30 a. m. Today company inspection preparatory to inspection by Inspector to see if we are ready for overseas duty. This work interrupted frequently by rain. Lieutenant Lockey explained nature of inspection. Divided up the casual company and placed the men in their respective companies. No officer's mess. Field and staff officers eat at Headquarters. Others from company's mess. Mess kits are used by all.

*May 22, 1918, Wednesday, Camp Mills, N. Y.* Reveille 6 a. m. Inspection began at 8:30 a. m. A, B, C, D, E, F Train Headquarters Sanitary attached. Inspection satisfactory. Requisition was made for necessary supplies. These were more than expected, as all clothes that were torn or one-third or one-half worn were thrown out. Men were allowed to go into New York (20 per cent of regiment). Certain ones were allowed to spend the night. Went into New York 7 p. m. with Colonel Ferguson, who was en route to Boston. Went to theater to see "The Rainbow Girl."



Behavior of men is excellent. No A. W. O. L's. Inspector reported that showing of regiment was excellent. Made best record of any organization inspected at Camp Mills. Received verbal order regarding departure.

*May 23, Thursday.* Reveille 6 a. m. Drill 7:30 a. m. Received orders to move. To sail from Montreal, Canada. Wired Colonel Ferguson to return tonight (cipher). Spent day in preparation for departure and distribution of supplies. At night went over to the Garden City Hotel for hot water bath. Had room with private bath. Used room one hour. Hotel made no charge.

*May 24, Friday.* Colonel Ferguson returned this morning. Went to New York with Colonel at 11:45 a. m. Just missed train at Garden City. Waited one hour. Had dinner at Garden City Hotel. Change from mess kit to china very pleasing. Returned to camp at 5:30. Found orders had been received to leave camp 6:15 tomorrow. Bedding roll and trunk had to be loaded at once. Officers were left without blankets. Could just as well have been loaded Saturday morning.

*May 25, Saturday, En Route to Montreal.* Reveille 5 a. m. Breakfast, 5:30 a. m. Companies A, B and C ready to leave camp at 6:15 a. m. Marched to railroad where we waited one hour before our train was made up. Captain Myers is train commander. No A. W. O. L's. Crossed new bridge across Hell Gate. Splendid construction. Train stopped at New Haven half an hour where men were served coffee and rolls by Red Cross (12:30 p. m.). Railroad station burned two weeks ago. Enthusiastic crowds at all stations. No porter on Pullman. Officers made up their own berths. Went through Hartford and within a mile and a half of father and mother.

*May 26, Sunday.* Will not reach Montreal before 10 a. m., (due at 8 a. m.). Morning is cold. No breakfast. Reached Canadian Pacific Pier 10:10 a. m. Detrained at once and troops boarded steamer *Talthebius*, British line. Received papers and instructions. Only our own troops are on board. This is a large freight boat converted into a transport. We have 1,289 soldiers on board. We are coöperating with ship's master in mess, guard, lookouts, policing, etc. Myself and staff have splendid accommodations, but the other officers are

crowded. We have no lounging rooms, or any meeting rooms. Men are also very much crowded and all but about 125 have to sleep in hammocks. Ship has just been reconverted and we are the first to be transported. 10,250 ton vessel draws 31 feet of water, carries 14,000 tons freight, length 527, width 85. I hope it will be a steady boat. Captain Hazeland very agreeable and pleasant. Officers' mess good. My mess with Captain very good. One man taken with mumps and was sent to U. S. Base Hospital in Montreal. Foreign Service began today.

*May 27, 1918, Monday, on board Transport Talthybius.* Left Montreal at 4:30 a. m. Schedule as follows: Reveille, 6:30 a. m.; breakfast, 7 a. m.; sick call, 8 a. m.; police 8 to 9; drill, 9 to 10:30; inspection, 10:30; boat drill, 10:35; recall, 11:30; dinner, 12 m.; drill, 1:00-2:00 p. m.; boat drill, 3:15 p. m.; guard mount, 4:30; inspection, 4:30; supper, 5 p. m.; retreat at sunset; call to quarters, 8:15 p. m.; inspection, 8:30; taps, 9 p. m.

Officers' mess, 8:30 a. m., 12:30 p. m., 6:30 p. m. No accommodations whatever where either officers or men can meet for meetings and lectures. No deck space for drills. Platoons can be given physical drills twice a day. Men sleep in hammocks (O. K.), but too many men are in the different compartments. It makes it necessary to swing the hammocks too close together. Men mess on tables under their hammocks. Men and officers are making the best of all deficiencies and inconveniences and are cheerful and willing. Sail down the river has been delightful. When about ten miles above Quebec we had to anchor and wait for tide to give us sufficient water (waited from 4 to 6 p. m.), all were interested in seeing Quebec and Plains of Abraham. Left one pilot at Quebec and took on another. Saw large cantilever bridge.

*May 28, 1918, on Transport Talthybius.* Last night we had to anchor again from 10:30 p. m. to 4:30 a. m., waiting for tide. Stiff breeze all day, water not very high but still enough motion to give a slight uneasy feeling to me. Today we are sailing across the Gulf of St. Lawrence and it will take thirty-six hours before we turn south for Halifax. Mess arrangements for men were not very satisfactory, but we have arranged and started

a new method of feeding the men which I believe will work satisfactorily. This work will be under the supervision of Captain Armstrong. The captain of the ship and myself made a detailed inspection of troop quarters, latrines, wash rooms, galleys and decks each day at 10:30 a. m.

(ENCLOSURE IN DIARY)

# HEADQUARTERS PORT OF EMBARKATION

Hoboken, New Jersey

*Confidential*

May 23, 1918.

Special Orders No. 133.

\* \* \* \* \*

41. Lieutenant Colonel Joseph Hyde Pratt, 105th Engineers, senior officer in command of troops on board S. S. TALTHYBIUS, sailing from Canadian Pacific Piers, Montreal, Quebec, about May 26, 1918, will, upon boarding the ship, assume command of all troops on board.

Copies to:

2—C. O. Troops on board.

1—Adj. General.

1—S. S. Captain.

1—G. S. A. T. S.

RH:RM

By Command of Major General Shanks.

(Seal)

Official:

MAJ. D. A. WATT.

Adjutant.

R. E. LOGAN,

Lieut.-Col. A. G.,

Acting Chief of Staff.

*May 29, 1918, on Transport Talthybius, Wednesday.* All day long we have been sailing across the Gulf of St. Lawrence, most of the time out of sight of any land. Just before dark, 7:30 p. m., we came abreast of Newfoundland; and at 10:30 p. m., were abreast Cape Ray light. At this point we turned south en route to Halifax. Encountered several fog banks, but most of the day we were free from fog. Started our observers (or submarine lookouts) at work today under the direction of Lieutenant Thorne. At night ship is perfectly dark, no lights whatever allowed on deck, cabin or troop decks if there is any chance whatever of their being seen from the outside. It is still very cold and heavy clothes and overcoats are needed. Some motion to boat this p. m. and several were seasick.

*May 30, 1918, on Transport Talthybius, Thursday.* Awoke this morning at 6 a. m. We are sailing southwest for Halifax



about 25 or 30 miles off shore. Clear weather but still cold. No ice in sight but reported by wireless to extend out five to ten miles from coast. Icebergs reported to east of us. Regular routine work. At 4 p. m. three shots were fired from the 4.7 inch guns at barrel target. All were good shots. Whale was seen and it followed ship for many miles. Our meals are as follows: 6:30 a.m., coffee and toast; 8:30 breakfast; 12:30, dinner; 3:30, tea and toast; 6:30 supper. Weighed today, 182 pounds. Officers meeting at 8 p. m. Both officers and men need jacking up. Talked very plainly and emphatically to officers regarding their duty to their men and need of maintaining discipline. Officers are willing but are not yet seasoned.

*May 31, 1918, on Transport Talthybius, Friday.* Slept in my outer clothes last night and will probably do so until we reach England. Entered (Halifax) Nova Scotia harbor this a. m., about 5:30 o'clock. Beautiful, nearly land-locked harbor. Well fortified. Inner harbor protected by log nets stretched across to protect from submarines. These are closed at night. Anchored in upper bay (Bedford Bay) with five other transports. At 12:30 men visited by Major Tefft of Medical Department, and Mr. Cline, representing Quartermaster Department. Inspection satisfactory. Two men sent ashore on account of illness (gonorrhea), reducing number to 1,286. Major T. and assistants took dinner with us. Have arranged for mail to leave boat at 4:30 p. m. Nearly all are writing farewell notes. Had a short visit from Col. E. G. Markham of the 303d Engineers. There are fourteen boats in convoy. British cruiser will convoy us several days before we are joined by destroyers. Our ship will be the left guide. Probably an eight or nine day trip across. No officers or men went ashore at Halifax.

*June 1, 1918, Saturday, on Transport Talthybius.* Left Bedford Bay of Halifax Harbor at 11 a. m. We are next to last ship in column. Fog delayed our departure about two and a half hours. Now partly cloudy and somewhat misty. On leaving harbor encountered fog bank and we are still in it (3 p. m.). Ships are still in single column. We are No. 13. Fog continued all day. Cleared a little at sundown and we could see eight of our ships, but it soon settled down again. All signaling now



is by whistles. No drills, as it is necessary to have it as quiet as possible in order to hear the signals. I am still holding my own, although I have some unquiet feelings. I have been somewhat overcome tonight with the responsibility that I have. I am responsible for the welfare of nearly 1,300 men; and I am conscious of all the dangers we are encountering, of the difficulties of caring for the men in case of a storm, or in abandoning ship. I am trying not to worry and am hoping for the best.

We had to leave another man at Halifax. He came down with measles. We are watching the others carefully for any suspicious symptoms. Am feeling very well and still have a good appetite.

*June 2, 1918, Sunday, on Transport Talthybius.* First day and night of convoy passed safely. There is still a heavy fog. No high calls while in the fog. While not in the general submarine zone, this is still considered a danger zone. Fog all day. Very depressing. We are, however, making our time of little over 11 knots per hour. Total distance zigzag course 2,700 miles (10 day trip). B Company man fell out of hammock this evening, broke collar-bone.

*June 3, Monday.* Still very foggy. Had a very good night's rest, regardless of the fog horn signals. Fog has not lifted at all today. At 5:30 p. m. we slowed down to 6 knots per hour for fear of icebergs. Temperature of water 38 degrees. At 9 p. m., inspected portion of ship, everything quiet. Three stars could be seen but fog still heavy low down. One of the convoys came within 500 feet of us and its "trailer" very much closer, some of the men thought it was a submarine and rushed for life belts. Goodnight, my Mazie.

*June 4, Tuesday.* Last night at 2:36 a. m. the ship picked up its speed again of 11 knots per hour. The fog is still very dense and there are no signs of its lifting. The British Cruiser, *Donegal*, which is escorting us, has just reported engine trouble and has dropped behind us. Fog lifted at 1 p. m., and none balance of day. All ships present but one. The cruiser came up abreast our ship at 5 p. m. Passed Swedish ship about 5:45 p. m. bound west. We are now beyond the banks and headed almost directly for coast of Ireland. The lifting of the fog and

the sunshine have had a wonderful effect upon the men, making them more like themselves once more. The full three days of fog have been very depressing. We are enforcing to fullest extent the order regarding lights on board. I am getting used to the thought of submarines, but the thought is still with us. We pray for another night of rest and quiet. Good night, my dear ones.

*June 5, Wednesday.* For the first time in five days the day opened with warm, cheery sunshine and it is reflected in the action of the men. Cloudy at noon and some wind. Sea not very bad. Regular routine work today. At 7:30 p. m. had an unexpected signal to abandon ship. A gun fired from the cruiser lent reality to the call. Our men did fine, all were in position in less than three minutes. It will be two days before we get into the zone where we are apt to see a submarine at any time. Now we may see one any time, but we hope for the best. Am becoming very much accustomed to the life on the steamer and do not mind the motion of the boat very much. Another day has passed bringing me that much nearer to England and one day nearer the time to return to you, dear heart.

*June 6, 1918, Thursday.* Cloudy but no fog. Cold wind all day. We are now drawing close to the zone in which we may expect to meet submarines. Will we pass through safely? Passed one ship today. It was off on our horizon. This is the sixth night out. Good night, my Mazie and my boy.

*June 7, 1918, Friday, Transport Talthybius.* A chilly, rainy day, with some mist, which might well be called a fog, except that it does not envelop us as the other fog did. Passed a very comfortable night, notwithstanding the fact that I slept partially dressed. Beginning tomorrow, or Sunday, night we will not undress at night. At noon a down-east storm came up and now, 8:30 p. m., it is pretty rough. Ship is rolling a good deal. Thus far I have refused to be seasick. Good night, Mazie.

*June 8, Saturday.* Woke up this morning to find a gale blowing and a very rough sea. I had 6:30 a. m. toast and coffee, but missed breakfast. The Captain calls this a "smart breeze." I should hate to be in his "gale." A good many seas come over our decks. Was able to go down to dinner. The sea is getting

rougher all the time and the waves higher. Went down to supper but felt more like lying down, which I did immediately after. The wind began to die down after supper. Tonight we reach the real danger zone and the captain told us to sleep in our clothes. For the next four days we will have anxiety regarding submarines. Good night my dear ones; God bless you and keep you till we meet again.

*June 9, 1918, Sunday, Transport Talithybius.* I was up at 4:45 a. m. and out on deck just as the sun was rising. The first sunrise I have seen on this trip. The sky had cleared, wind gone down, and sea much smoother, though still with a considerable roll. It was a beautiful sight, but I was too sleepy to enjoy it long, and soon was in my bunk again fast asleep. Had toast and coffee at 7:30 a. m. A beautiful sunshine day but chilly. Overcoat very comfortable. Submarines are now a menace and our lookouts are constantly on the alert. We will feel much safer when the torpedo boats meet us. Probably tonight about 2:30 a. m. (daylight). Our cruiser would not be much good as she is more afraid of submarines than we are. If we are hit by torpedo, all the rest of convoy keep on. None stop to help us. When the torpedo boats are with us, they help to rescue us. Thus until they come we are very anxious and hope no submarine will see us. Eclipse of Sun yesterday was not visible to us at all on account of cloudy weather. Today has been very beautiful and I have enjoyed it thoroughly except for the constant thought of submarines. Tonight we hope the torpedo boats will reach us and then we will feel a little more secure. It is not a pleasant feeling to be expecting to be hit by a torpedo any moment. We all sleep with our clothes on. The alarm for a submarine in sight is six short quick blasts of the steam whistle. Tonight at 9:30 it blew four times and the officers came running out thinking it was an alarm. Some were awakened from sleep. I knew what the four blasts meant so was not excited. It meant to stop zigzagging and take the regular course. The captain gave a good word puzzle tonight. What word of five letters, which is a plural noun, which prevents sleep, is a foe to peace, and which by adding "s" to it then becomes a singular noun, sweet in character and indicates affection? "Cares" plus "s" equals "Caress."



It is 12:30 a. m. and time to go to bed (?). Everything quiet thus far. Two hours to arrival of torpedo boats. Good night, my dear ones.

*June 10, 1918, Monday.* At 2:30 a. m. went out on deck to see the torpedo boats that had just met us. There are seven of them and they help to relieve the anxiety. I came near breaking my arm when I got up. As I was getting out of bath, a roll of the ship threw me out and I struck my arm against the sharp edge of the door that was open. I came out of it with a bruise.

At 12:30 p. m. (Greenwich time) 11:40 our ship time, there was a burial at sea of a U. S. soldier from one of the other ships. All the men were at their stations and stood with bared heads when the body was lowered into the water.

About 4 o'clock a very large steamer passed us convoyed by three torpedo boats. She had four funnels and was probably one of the large British steamers.

Tonight is probably the most dangerous time of our trip. We are right in the heart of the submarine zone; but we still hope for the best. We have tried to prepare ourselves for the worst if it comes. Good night, Mazie. Pray for tomorrow.

*June 11, 1918, Tuesday.* Awoke this morning to a most beautiful day; and if it was not for the lurking danger of submarines I could enjoy it to the utmost. I am enjoying it.

The convoy has been attacked by submarine or submarines. A sharp concussion shook the ship badly. I had call to boats sounded and in a few minutes we were all at our stations. The torpedo boats got after the submarine and fired five depth charges. What result we do not know. I had recall sounded but most of the men preferred to stay on deck. Our breakfast call (8:30 a. m.) sounded and the officers went below for breakfast. I will admit I would rather have stayed on deck. Ate my breakfast *as usual*, but not *quite so much as usual*. We are now entering the Irish Channel and are about 90 miles from land. This is a favorite place for the "subs" to attack and all day we will be in grave danger of another attack. I do not envy Ralph his job. The manner in which the destroyers rolled and tossed must give an uncomfortable feeling all the time. We do not know whether the submarine was destroyed or not. The information is not given out. I hope it was.



When the first shock came (which proved to be a depth charge) I thought the ship had been struck. It sure did jar us. The captain left his cabin the same time I left mine and he called to me, "The submarines are after us." I thought he said "The submarine has *got* us." You can imagine I was somewhat excited. I had life belt on in a few seconds and was out on deck where I could watch the troops. The call to the boats was answered promptly and without confusion. I felt proud of the men. All the morning we have been scanning the water for periscopes. About noon we came close to three black objects, which turned out to be "mine" floats and the ship hoisted the signal, to warn the others to look out for mines. One of the destroyers after firing the depth charges dropped behind to find out their effect. We do not know what she reported when she came up. About 2 p. m., a cigar shaped flying machine joined us and is now assisting in the lookout for submarines. A second one joined us at 3 p. m. and they stayed with us until 5 p. m. Land was first seen about 11:30, the west to southwest coast of Wales. Smell's lighthouse was next visible. Going up the Irish Sea, the land becomes nearer and by night we shall be within fifteen to twenty miles of land on each side. It is a strange feeling that comes over me as I see for the first time the "Motherland." It is the home of all your people and mine. My first visit is to join with my kin in fighting a common enemy. Tell Joe about it. The British and the Americans are fighting together as one people. It will do us a lot of good.

One more anxious night and the first of the trip to the scene of action will be over. What is before us we do not know, nor where we are going. Will probably get orders in the morning. I stayed up till 12:30. Made three tours of the deck during that time. A very unpleasant occurrence happened last night. The order from the flagship was that no lights whatever were to be shown. Some one turned on the high stern light (which had not been lit during the whole trip). One ship called our attention to it and it was turned out; later it was turned on again and the cruiser signaled over that the light was on and that it was endangering the whole convoy. We again put out the light but were unable to apprehend the man. I have tried all day to get

some trace of him but without success. Tonight we will again sleep in our clothes and hope for no disturbances.

*June 12, 1918, Wednesday, on board Talthybius and en route to Dover.* I was up this morning at 2:30 a. m., and saw the convoy make the turn into Liverpool Bay and go into column of ships. I went back to bed and slept soundly until 6:00 a. m., when I got up for the day. We are still in the track of submarines but land is so close we do not have the uneasy feelings we had before. We still stick to the life belts. We had to anchor off the sand bar at the mouth of Mersey River as there was not sufficient depth of water for our ship. We had to wait until 12:30 p. m. The sail up the river to Liverpool was most delightful and full of interest. The town across the river from Liverpool was exactly like the descriptions I have read. It was a beautiful sight. The tremendous dock system with use of locks was beyond anything I had thought of. I wish I could have had more time to study them. It took us from 1:30 to nearly 5 p. m. to dock the ship. Immediately we made preparation to disembark and at 5:50 we were on train en route to Dover. All we saw of Liverpool was from the ship and the walk along a waterfront road to depot where we took the London and Northwestern to Dover. Reached here at 3:15 a. m. Detrained and marched to camp about a mile and a half from depot. We are billeted in old Dover and well taken care of. They gave us a bite to eat before turning in (now 4:20 a. m.). We can hear aeroplanes flying overhead but can not see them. All windows are darkened. I have been to England. Made a trip across the country, saw a bit of station and three lamp posts in London at 1:30 a. m. But I have seen London. Also saw Stafford and Rugby. At Rugby we were furnished coffee and then had to pay £4.11 shillings for it. It was not a gift. I am tired and sleepy, my Mazie, and must turn in. Good night, dear heart.

*June 13, 1918, Thursday.* I do not realize that I am in England, that we are separated by the Atlantic ocean. While many things are strange to me yet most things seem natural. The first startling difference was that of the railroad trains. The small cars, both passenger and freight, looked strange and weak, as

though they would not support even a moderate load. The wheels looked large and made the bodies of the car appear to be high above the rails. They impressed me very much as being somewhat like the old style of cars we see in pictures. The rails are raised off the ties which also gives a different appearance to the road bed.

The general finished appearance and kept-up appearance of the little towns and the farms are very striking. In this respect Old England is to New England as New England to the South. The striking contrast between the vivid green of the foliage and crops and the red brick, red tile houses, called to mind the sketches I have read of Old England. There was no vacant land, everything was under cultivation and intensive cultivation, or in forest, pasture, etc. Some legitimate use was being made of it.

Several things have happened to make me realize that I was out of America and near the scene of action. At Rugby they would only sell two sandwiches to one person, no sugar in coffee. At restaurants here in Dover you have to sign food cards before you can get served to most things to eat. At intervals throughout the city are signs pointing to places where people can go if on the street during an air raid. Some are built in cellars and some in the cliffs. Quite a number of people have been killed in Dover from these raids. The last raid was about three weeks ago. I also saw the place where the first airplane landed which made the flight from Calais to Dover "over the Channel." It is up on the top of the cliff in the meadow that used to be the old tourney ground of the Knights of Dover Castle. I had the extreme pleasure of visiting and going over, on top and under this castle, which now belongs to the Duke of Salisbury. It looked and I saw it just exactly as I have read descriptions of the place. I knew the different parts and what to look for and they were all there. The chalk or limestone cliff upon which the castle is built is an easy rock to tunnel in and advantage was taken of this. Over six miles of underground tunnels have been dug. Saw the location of the dungeon. Three tiers, only entrance by small entrance from tunnel. Ventilation must have been bad and suffering indescribable.



*June 14, 1918, Friday.* Left Dover this morning for Calais, France. Only A, one-half of B, C, Engineer Train and part of Sanitary came with us. We were at the dock at 8 a. m., but did not leave until 9:30. All preparations were made for submarine attack, or for being struck by a mine. We were convoyed by three destroyers. Every man was supplied with a life belt. Colonel Markham of the 303d Engineers, was on board and therefore commanding officer of troops on the boat. I was assigned "aft" to look after rafts and keep the men under control. We made the crossing of the channel without any accident. I had heard so much about the rough trip that I fully expected to be seasick but escaped. On reaching Calais our nearness to the front was again emphasized by the many, many wounded who were being unloaded from trains and ambulances and carried into boats for England. We formed the column on the docks and then marched to a Rest Camp about a mile and a half from the dock. The "rest" is questionable. This is the dirtiest camp we have been in yet. Officers are in large tents about twenty-four to a tent. Washing and bathing facilities are poor, but we will get along all right. The men are twelve to sixteen in small tents, no beds or mattresses, just their own blankets.

Air raids are frequent here and trenches and dugouts are available for those who are not in protected tents. We are not; our trench is about 300 feet from our tent. They are protections against shrapnel and flying splinters, etc. If the bomb hits your trench near you, your chances are slim of getting out whole. It was a very windy day, dry, and there was consequently a great deal of dust. The camp is in a sand flat, which made walking difficult. The walk over from the train was hot, the camp looked very uninviting, unkempt, unclean, the men were hungry and thirsty and were halted on our Block Parade Ground in six inches of sand. There was considerable speculation as to what we were to do, where to go, and what to become. There was no complaining among the men. The men stacked arms and were soon marched to mess hall. I have had a very depressed feeling all the evening. I am heartsick for you, dear heart, and kiddie boy, and the quiet of the dear home at Chapel



Hill. I am sleepy tonight and must turn in. I hope to get a good night's sleep regardless of the thought of air raids.

*June 15, Saturday.* About 10:30 last night there was considerable firing from the post, and air planes were heard. We in our tents all stayed abed. It was said to have been a small air raid. It rained last night which settled the dust and makes living here more comfortable. We have changed our U. S. rifles for the British rifles. Our men have also given up their Barracks Bags and all extra clothing has been turned in. The men now carry all their possessions on their backs. This all indicates that we are to be behind the British lines. Our camp is about thirty minutes' walk from the center of town. I walked down this morning and bought a Sam Brown belt, which I do not want, but have to have. Also bought one of the small hats or caps which I have to have but do not like. The town is very interesting, particularly the old town. All around the center of town are dugouts for the civilian population. Many of the houses are banked up with sand bags for protection. There are several beautiful parks which are being kept up in first class condition. Considerable area in each is devoted to the cultivation of crops. Gardeners are at work cultivating flowers, transplanting same, and carrying on as in peace time. Absence of young men is noticeable, and a great many women and girls are in black. In the afternoon I went down again to the Bank of France and changed U. S. money into French at the rate of 5.6 francs to the dollar.

*June 16, 1918, Sunday.* Last night was a mean one for me. Evidently ate something that did not agree with me and then with my nerves which have all been on edge for some time. I ended up with a chill, nauseated and with a little fever. Have been nauseated all day and have eaten but little. My men all went to gas school this morning, had gas masks fitted, and tested, and went through the gas house. Also they were issued the steel helmets. This noon Colonel Markham of the 303d Engineers, Lieutenant-Colonel —————, of the 303d Engineers, and myself went over to the gas school. The gas mask almost gets the best of me. I nearly suffocate with it, and can

hardly control myself from tearing it off. This is one of the worst phases of the war to me.

Had another air raid last night. I understand two bombs were dropped, but neither hit the camp.

I hated to have my men's clothing depleted as was done yesterday. I do not believe they have been left sufficient clothing for their comfort. They now only have two blankets, one suit of clothes and no overcoat. Will not get these again until October 1. The nights are *cold* and I have slept under three to four blankets.

Tonight I feel better but am still nauseated and not hungry. I have to force myself to eat. I am extremely homesick and lonesome. Good night, dear heart.

*June 17, 1918, Monday.* Another air raid last night about 11:30. No damage. Today we are entraining from Calais for Andreaug, about twelve to fifteen miles a little south of east. We thoroughly policed the portion of the "rest camp" we had used. Just before it was time for us to leave the major in charge of camp came to my camp and stated that our part of the camp had not been satisfactorily policed. I sent Captain Myers with him to investigate and a little later the major returned and apologized to me. Said our part of the camp was very satisfactorily policed, that the part in question had just been vacated by the 303d Engineers, and *not* the 105th Engineers.

My stomach is still bothering me. I hope when we get to our training camp that Captain Hunter will be able to help me. It was about three-quarters of an hour's walk to the Fontinette depot. I stood this walk all right. We passed through the portion of the city that had been bombarded by airplanes. Some houses were very badly demolished, others had walls cracked. Windows were broken for a wide radius. The people are evidently very fond of laces and curtains. Even the poorer looking homes have clean white curtains at the windows.

The train today was made up of freight cars, first, second, and third class coaches. We put twenty-five men in each freight car. I had a very comfortable first-class compartment. Our men were given supper at the station at 3 p. m., which was to last them until the next morning. Coffee was also served in

their cups. The train ride was only forty minutes, but before we reached our destination most of the men had eaten all their food. We marched about three miles to a little village called Nortkerque, where we were billeted for the night. The men were all billeted in barns, from twenty to sixty to a barn. Clean straw was on the floor and the men were comfortable. All officers were billeted in houses. I was well taken care of. At 8:30 we had an officers' meeting and decided on the time of departure, etc., for the next day. Our rations for the next day were sent to us at Nortkerque, but we had no range or anything to cook them. Arrangements had to be made with the people to let us make coffee and cook bacon on their stoves. About 9:30 p. m. Captain Humphries came over from Division Headquarters in a car to take me to Nordausques, where Colonel Ferguson was located. We reached there about 10:00 and I was sure glad to see him again. He has been made Corps Engineer and I become acting Division Engineer.

Major Herr, Chief of Staff.

Lieutenant-Colonel Burnett, G. 3, Billeting.

Skinner, G. 2.

Major Pope, G. 1, Transportation.

Major Perkins, R. E.

Aid to General Blacklock of 39th Division, to which we are attached.

Lieutenant-Colonel Couchman, C. R. E.

General (or Colonel) Babington, Army Corp Engineer.

*Nordausques*

Guard on Division Dump.

Infantry Unloading Detail, 30.

Each Engineer Company in line, 700 laborers.

Liaison for Engineers.

Army Dump 10-12 miles back of line.

Corps Dump 6-7 miles back of line.

Division Dump 4-5 miles back of line.

Engineer Supplies: Topographic, Pontoon, Roads, Bridges, Trench Camouflage, Mining Obstacles.

*June 8, 1918, Tuesday.* Colonel Ferguson told me this morning that we were going out to the second line trenches beyond Cassel. We were accompanied by Major Herr, Chief of Staff, and a British officer. We went *via* Watten, St. Omer, Argues to Cassel. It was a long way around but we, in trying to take a short cut, struck a road that was closed for repairs, and we



had to go on through St. Omer. Here we struck the main road to the front and there were countless auto trucks, wagons, etc. We were constantly passing "army dumps" of shells, etc., all camouflaged. British troops were at work on the roads keeping them up. At Cassel we went up to the roof of a hotel where we had a most extensive view from the ocean away into Belgium. We could see the location of the German lines and all, where they were shelling our lines. *At present* a very quiet sector. I saw Mount Kemmel that was recently captured by the Germans. Could see about where Ypres was situated but it was too hazy to see it. The view was most beautiful in every direction. Beautiful villas and villages, splendidly cultivated fields, etc. We had dinner at a hotel in Cassel, *very good, very expensive*. The city is built on top of a limestone hill, rising out of the plain.

After dinner we took the machine and made an examination of the location of the second line trenches and headquarters of the various battalions, regiments, etc. The trench system is practically in a level plain, slightly rolling. We also followed as closely as possible the front line trench of this system. Went almost to Hazebrouck. This is the closest we got to the front line. If heavy shelling had started we would have been in the danger zone. I saw thirty-eight airplanes in the air at one time. Many of them were very high in the air and it looked as though they were attacking. Streaks of smoke were seen frequently, but it may have been simply signaling. We spent about three hours looking over this trench system. We came back to Cassel via St. Sylvester. This town has been bombarded very little. The largest church has a hole in one wall near the roof. We were within four miles of the Belgium line. Mount Kemmel is in Belgium. The ride home was very delightful, and very much enjoyed. Coming into Watten from the east we came out on a ridge from which we have a splendid view of the town and canals. I am more and more impressed with the completeness of what has been done, houses, streets, canals, roads, fields, farm houses.

At supper tonight, Major, now Lieutenant-Colonel, Taylor, told me the good work of the Third Division, on or near the line



in front of Paris. This Division had gone through some maneuvers in liason very unsatisfactorily, and General Pershing had ordered them to spend the next week working on the problem. The following week they went through the same problem again very creditably. They had hardly finished before the Division was ordered to the front line trenches. A machine gun battalion was assigned a sector which the Major thought was in an out of the way place and that he had been assigned to it simply to get him out of the way. He found his place, arranged to set up his machine guns, and then noticed about 600 yards away a column of troops coming down a hill. He saw that they were Germans and called his captains together and they arranged to fire on them. The column turned towards them and were still coming down the hill, so the major held his fire until the column was within 250 yards of his machine guns, when he opened fire on them with twenty-four guns. (This was open warfare). It was dusk and they did not find out the full extent of the attack until next morning. Then over 1,000 dead were counted. The wounded had been removed during the night. It was estimated that there probably were 7,000 in the column. The attack was broken completely.

The French had only assigned a very small area to this Division, but after this effort it was increased and soon this Division was holding a sector three times as big as had been held by the French Division. A small piece of wood had balked the French for days and they had had a Division nearly broken up in attacking it, without any results. They had sent for siege guns and were waiting for them to be brought up before making another attack on the woods. The C. O. of the Third Division requested that the wood be included in his sector, which the French very gladly acceded to. The Staff Officer of the Third Division had studied the map thoroughly and found that a sunken road extended along the left flank of the wood and offered a good opportunity to flank the wood. Plans were made and while the woods were being shelled, a battalion of the Third Division went out this road and got in behind the wood. At a given signal the fire from our lines ceased and the battalion charged with fixed bayonets. They cleaned out the wood,

captured 150 machine guns, took about 250 prisoners, and in the report given, left no one to carry news of the disaster back to the Germans. Our line was moved up to include the woods, and the French the next morning were astonished at what we had accomplished and wanted to know how it was done. This news aroused the enthusiasm of the officers and made me feel more optimistic.

*June 19, 1918, Wednesday.* Colonel Ferguson left me this morning to go to Corps Headquarters at Fruges. This leaves me as Division Engineer and Regimental Commander. The Colonel has been made Corps Engineer.

After he left I went out to Sanghen to my regimental headquarters. Found all my men comfortably settled, and the work going on nicely. Headquarters are at Sanghen; First Battalion at Alembon; Second Battalion at Herbingham; Engineer Train at Hocquinghein. I took dinner at Headquarters mess, went over the work with the Adjutant, and returned to Division Headquarters at Nordausques about 2 p. m. I went out in a motorcycle side car. This is the first time I have ever ridden in one. I had my maps and found my way without much trouble. We went *via* Tournehem, Bonnibgues, Clerques, and Licques. I had a truck (or Lorrey, as it is called here) go out and bring in my trunk, bedding roll and three field desks. I have established Division Engineer Office in two rooms in a private home on the main road. They were formerly used by Division Headquarters. I am very comfortably fixed for office and very comfortably and delightfully settled for my habitation. It is in a beautiful chateau with extensive grounds that are still being maintained in pretty good shape. I have a large room on the second floor overlooking a meadow with a good trout stream, or river, flowing through it. An elderly lady and her daughter live there.

Tonight I was reading a newspaper in front of my window at 9:50. I am not used to the long twilight. It is light in the morning about 3 a. m. My Mazie's picture and the boy's are watching me tonight.

*June 20, 1918, Thursday.* Spent most of the day at Division Engineer office. Just after supper the men and the ladies of

the home were out in the yard and they invited me to look at their garden, flower and vegetable. It made me homesick for mine. The roses were very beautiful and also the pinks. Vegetable garden looked splendid. The strawberries were ripening and I had a handful of delicious ones. Some were perfectly white and yet ripe and sweet. Later we went into the house and as soon as the light was lit all blinds had to be shut.

*June 21, 1918, Friday.* Division Headquarters nearly all the morning. Called on the C. R. E. this morning in regard to engineer supplies and location of engineer dumps. At present we have no supplies and no transportation facilities. I tried all the morning to get a conveyance to take me out to the Regiment. Finally arranged for one for the afternoon. Left Division Headquarters about 1:50 p. m., and made a fast trip to camp trying to reach there by 2:30, at which time Colonel Campbell of the British Army was to deliver a lecture on physical training and bayonet work. I reached the drill field where all the regiment was assembled at 2:25 and then we waited until 2:45 before the Colonel showed up. He gave a good talk, that was helpful and encouraging. The boys all looked well and seemed contented. They are all billeted in barns and sleep on straw. The officers have rooms in near-by houses. After the lecture I visited the Headquarters of the Second Battalion and the Train, found everything in good shape. The policing is well done. The handicap is the manure piles in each court. The people will not let you clean them up and they are not very sanitary. The bigger the pile the more influential the family. Came back to Division Headquarters by a new road, through Guemy. Traveling over the country is very interesting indeed and there is always something new turning up to attract the attention. I have been extremely interested in road maintenance and reconstruction. Find that some of my ideas are being put into practice over here.

*June 22, 1918, Saturday.* Visited C. R. E. this morning and discussed location of Engineer dumps at second line trenches. At 1 p. m. started for Cassel with the C. R. E., Colonel Couchman and Major Fair, of the Military Police. Left the Major as Cassel and then the C. R. E. and myself examined location



for "forward Regimental Engineer dumps" and location for the Forward Divisional Engineer dump. Paid a visit to a company of Royal Engineers who are now working on this second line. It was near 4 p. m., and he wanted us to take *tea* with him. We declined as we were in a hurry to finish our inspection and get back to Cassel by 4:30 p. m. We next stopped at Hendeghen to see Colonel Close, R. E. He also wanted us to take *tea* with him, but we declined. We had told Major Fair we would be back for him at 4:30 and we reached the square at just 4:30 with a tire down. Colonel Couchman immediately suggested that we have *tea* while waiting and *tea* we had, with toast and sweet cakes. It tastes all right but I hate to see them stop work every afternoon for tea. The cost was 50 cents apiece. We came home by way of Wallon Cappel, Argues and St. Omer. From Wallon Cappel west there was a continuous line of ammunition dumps, from cartridges for rifles to heavy shells. All to be used to destroy man. It makes me almost sick to think of the human destruction that must take place before this war is over. I almost cry out when I think what my boys must go up against and that many of them will not come back. But it must go on until a victory for human liberty and freedom of thought can be assured. The waste of life is awful; the best is being stricken down and *only a very few* want it.

*June 23, Sunday.* Stayed in Nordausques all day. Considerable office work to be done, also night work getting ready for march problem on Monday.

*June 24, Monday.* Busy all day with march problem. First Battalion with northern column. Second Battalion with southern column. Each had a detachment with the advance guard. I stayed at Division Headquarters and my messengers kept me constantly informed of their position. Our liason was extremely good.

*June 25, Tuesday.* Morning devoted to office work in Division Engineer office. Reading General Orders, Special Orders, memoranda, etc. In afternoon had a *hot water* shower bath. First time since leaving Camp Mills. While taking the bath is the only time I have been real warm since reaching France except when in bed. Colonel Ferguson came in to Division



Headquarters. His appointment as Corps Engineer has been issued by Headquarters, A. E. F., and he is relieved of duties of C. O. of 105th Engineers. For the time being it places me in command of Regiment and makes me Division Engineer.

Talked with Colonel Ferguson about Corps and Division Engineer work. I told him if they put another Colonel at head of Regiment I wanted to go with him. Went out to Regimental Camp with **Captain Humphreys** and Major Pope, one of the U. S. officers recently attached to Division Headquarters, as G. 1. His attitude is "I know it all" and the U. S. National Guard is no good at all. To me he is very hard to get along with. He is "small." Tries to see something to find fault with, but does not help you.

*June 26, Wednesday.* Went to Regimental Camp this morning, with Colonel Ferguson. Inspected Regimental Headquarters, First Battalion and Second Battalion Headquarters. I returned in the Colonel's car to Division Headquarters as he had to go later to another Engineer Camp. We made the trip to Division Headquarters in about twenty minutes. We only hit the high places of the road. The Colonel and I talked over many things in connection with the training and condition of the Regiment. He knows nothing as yet as to who will be placed in command of the Regiment. There seems to be objection and *aversion* on part of the U. S. officers to put a National Guard officer in charge of a Regiment.

*June 27, Thursday.* Left Division Headquarters for Regiment Camp about 8:30 a. m., expecting to stay two or three days. Before leaving I was told that we might get orders to leave for the front on the 28th. On reaching camp I ordered the Regiment to prepare to break camp the next morning. I then went over routine matters with the Adjutant and later went out to the rifle range to see A Company practice on the thirty, and three hundred yard range. Had a phone message from Division Headquarters that Regiment was ordered to leave Sanghen the next morning three hours after zero hour, and that Major Pope would be out in the morning to go over the order with me. I waited until 4 p. m., before he came. He stated that II Corps order had been received for us to move and that Division Order

would be sent out later. I gave my orders for the Regiment, and returned to Division Headquarters with Major Pope via Headquarters of the 39th British Division. We had to arrange for horse shoes and equipment with which to put our horses in shape. This was arranged by sending men and shoeing outfits from the British Train, from the 118th Infantry. We ordered shoeing to begin at daylight. I had to make arrangements for transporting my sick from Regimental Camp to Divisional Headquarters and for taking care of my extra supplies that were not to be taken to the front. I left Division Headquarters at 9 p. m. for Regimental Camp, stopping en route at Licque Hospital where I arranged for two ambulances to come over the next morning to Sanghen and get my sick men and those unable to walk and take them to Division Headquarters. Reached camp about ten and from then to midnight was completing plans of the march. The last order was sent to Company Commanders at 11:45 p. m. I slept on the floor of office wrapped in my blankets. An airplane had to come down, near First Battalion this afternoon. It was en route for England to be left for general repairs. The aviator was to bring back a new one. We put a guard over the machine and arranged to send the aviator over to an aviation base where nearly all the machines report when en route to England. The aviator was only recently out of the hospital. He had been wounded while attacking a trench. Several machines form a line and at a certain signal all dive toward the trench firing their machine guns. They sometimes go as low as 75 feet above the trenches and then dash upward at a terrific speed. This method of attack is also used against marching troops.

Came near having a bad accident today. The entrance to my office is only about five feet and eleven inches high. In entering the office this afternoon I was walking rapidly and failed to stoop sufficiently to clear the door frame, with the result that I received a very severe blow on top of the head that nearly knocked me over. I had on the heavy campaign hat that saved me from a very bad wound. My head ached some and felt sore but I did not pay much attention to it. At supper it began to hurt some and I began to feel faint and sick at my stomach.

One of the officers asked me a question, but it was nearly a minute before I could answer him. I was soon all right again but felt a little faint all the evening. The ride out to camp and the excitement of getting ready to move camp helped me some to get over it.

*June 28, 1918, Friday.* Today we began our first real "war march." We started for the "front." We were up at 6 a. m. and the column left the initial point on time, 8:50 a. m. Everything went smoothly except a little tangle of transport and foot soldiers. I reached the initial point and found the road blocked. The transport of the First Battalion, failing to get in its place in the column behind the foot troops of the First Battalion, tried to pass the Second Battalion who were in behind the First Battalion. This filled up the road completely. To add to the tangle two motor ambulances came up and more completely blocked the road. I ordered the First Battalion to move forward for six minutes and then halt. Ordered the First Battalion transport to follow immediately behind the First Battalion. As they got into line they were to all hug the right hand of the road. As the transport pulled into line I had the motor ambulances follow and pass the First Battalion and at the end of six minutes the road was clear, every unit in place and we were well on our way to the front. I walked as I did not care much for my "steed." In fact, I could make better time on my feet. We marched at the rate of two and a half miles per hour and rested the last ten minutes of the hour. Our march was via Quercamp, La Wattine, Norbecourt to Inglenham, where we *bivouaced* for the night. It was a beautiful day and I enjoyed the tramp through the country very much indeed. The fields of grain and grass were filled with red poppies. They are not as thick as the yellow poppies of California and Arizona, but they remind me of our visit. We ate dinner along the roadside, consuming at the same time a great deal of dust. We reached Inglenham at 3:10 p. m. I picked out our camp ground on the north side of hill "104," a good place and plenty of room for all. We carry around our water in water carts which are filled at "certified" sources of supply. We had to send the carts about a mile and a half for water. The C. O. (myself



in this case) is given the best place and always looked after whether he wants to be or not. The men had recently been paid off, but had not been near any canteen until they reached Inglenham. Here they all spent a part of their funds for chocolate, sweet cakes, tobacco, etc. I am a little afraid of an air raid tonight.

(ENCLOSURE IN DIARY)

June 28, 1918.

COL. PRATT:

Instead of conferring with Lieutenant-Colonel Close as directed in Paragraph 2 of memorandum order, you will report to Major-General Kenyon who is in charge of the sector in question of the 40th Division at Ebblinghem Chateau.

J. K. HERR, C. S.

*June 29, 1918, Saturday.* Fortunately we had no aeroplane attack last night. I was a little fearful that a German might have seen us and bring over an air raid during the night.

We broke camp and the head of the column passed the initial point promptly at 9 a. m. I rode my horse for the first hour and then walked the next and rode the third period. We stretched out over a considerable area as we marched with an Advance Guard and ten yards between platoons, 100 yards between companies, and 500 yards between battalions. Our objective today was Arques, via Moulle, Tilques, and Stomer, to Arques. It took some time to get the regiment billeted, but before supper time all were settled. We were in that portion of the city north of the canal. We placed a sentry at each bridge over the canal, as I did not want my men to cross. Colonel Ferguson visited me again this afternoon, and I persuaded him to spend the night with us. We went over to Ebblinghem Chateau to see Major-General Kenyon regarding the engineering work to be done near Cassel on the trench system (2d line).

*June 30, 1918, Sunday.* There was an air raid last night over Arques and St. Omer. Some bombs were dropped but not very near us. The thought that an airplane is flying around dropping bombs does not improve your sleeping conditions. We were billeted in area that had been bombed. The column was formed and left the initial on time (9 a. m.). I put Captain Boesch in charge of the Regiment, as Colonel Ferguson wished



me to go on ahead with him to look over the areas where our troops are to live. We went in his auto first to Barinehove, then to Oxelaere. We left Lieutenant Ellicott, who came with us, at the R. R. at Barinehove, after we had looked over the billeting area together. The Colonel and I then went out to Dooneart to see Lieutenant-Colonel Close who has charge of the area in which our troops are to work. This took me through some new territory which I was very glad to see: Arneke, Oehtezeele, Wemaer, Cappel and Zuytpeence. I went over thoroughly with Colonel Close regarding the work on the second line trenches from Le Brearde to Rweld. Obtained maps of the work done and a map showing the three lines of defense in front of and to the rear of Cassel. We got back to Oxelaere in time for dinner. Found that Regimental Headquarters were in a beautiful chateau. The Second Battalion and Train billeted in and around Oxelaere. The First Battalion are *bivouaced* at Terdeghem, as they will be the first battalion to begin the work on the trenches. The men sleep in their shelter tents and these are pitched under the trees and under the hedges, so that the tents will not be visible to airplanes. This camp is within the shelling area of the German lines. I was very glad to have Colonel Ferguson with us during the day while straightening out our camps. Many of our officers slept out in the open. The British wished to *bivouac* us altogether in a small area. I objected to this as it made us more conspicuous, and also a shell would do a great deal more damage than if the men were separated. Many of the shells and bombs have a stick attached to them which hits the ground first and fires the shell or bomb 12 inches to 18 inches above the ground. This causes the shrapnel and broken pieces of the shell or bomb to scatter at a height that will catch men on the going. To protect against this the men build dirt or sandbag walls three feet high around where they are to sleep. This is a protection against shrapnel as it flies out sideways. Colonel Ferguson left in the evening for Fruges.

*July 1, 1918, Monday.* The worst air raid we have been in took place last night. Several bombs were dropped that sounded as though they were very close and that we were the

target. The search lights picked out the German machine and the anti-air-craft gunners fired a good many shots at it. It was very exciting and annoying. The firing on the front line could be heard very plainly, and flashes from the guns and shells could be seen. From Cassel, which is on a hill, a splendid view can be obtained at night of the location of the enemy's and our trenches. The flares and rockets lit up the general location of the trenches. There are three anti-air-craft batteries near us and last night all three were firing at the air-craft. I had a conference of Battalion Commanders and Adjutants this morning at 10:30, and went over with them the work they are to do and the training we must keep up at the same time. In the afternoon I tried to borrow an auto to go out to the trenches but failed. I sent Captain Myers out in the motorcycle sidecar and then had it return for me. We made an inspection of trenches and wiring from the La Briarde road to the St. Sylvester-Cappel road. The wiring south of this road is completed and the Australians are putting in a strong point just north of the La Briarde road. There is one line of wire in front of the main line of defense trench. Our first work is to put in two more lines, making two bags of wire. We will then, if we have time, make the entanglement 25 yards wide. We also have some Observation Posts to build and machine gun emplacements to locate. There are a good many French and British troops on this line. The Germans were able to get an aerial photo of these trenches and have got their range at several points. At one place we counted eight shell holes in a very small radius. At St. Sylvester-Cappel the church has a shell hole through it. The shell struck the roof, penetrated it, struck the side wall just over a window and went through that wall. The shell did not explode until it reached the ground. The cross-roads just east of St. Sylvester-Cappel have been shelled a good deal and a great many of the buildings have been destroyed. All are deserted. Took dinner with Major Harris of the British Army. He is in charge of anti-air-craft.

(ENCLOSURE IN DIARY)

I. VII. 18.

DEAR COLONEL:

Will you come and have dinner tonight and we can talk things over. We dine about 8 p. m.

Yours sincerely,

E. C. HARRIS, Major, O. C. T., B. 7, H. B.

*July 2, 1918, Tuesday.* Air raid not as bad as Monday night. Had a very bad night last night and this morning my stomach is bothering me a good deal. I could not eat any breakfast. Feeling of nausea all the time. May be a case of nervous indigestion. Whatever it is it is keeping me very uncomfortable. Was busy all day in the office, planning work and looking after details. About 6:30 p. m. Colonel Close, R. E., of the British called for a conference regarding the work on the line. After he left I sent for Captain Myers, commanding the First Battalion, and went over the work in detail with him. We are now without any side car and with practically no way of getting around except on *shanks mare*, which is pretty slow. Feel better tonight, but my stomach is still uncomfortable.

*July 3, Wednesday.* Camp and office work all day. Went over to Second Battalion Headquarters to see Captain Hall (dentist). I had broken out a filling. Captain Hall filled at 9 p. m. by daylight.

*July 4, 1918, Thursday.* Independence Day. Before another July 4th comes around, God grant that *Peace* may prevail on earth and that America may again be free and independent to carry on its work for its own people. The strain sometimes seems to be more than I can hold up against. This morning about 10 o'clock I had an unexpected and delightful call from General Godby, the C. E. of the II British Army Corps, with Headquarters at Houtkerque. We come under his corps after July 10th and he came down to see what we had, what we were doing, and what I wanted to see and find out. It ended by my going with him to visit the line he is working on just west of Ypres. We went first to his Headquarters where we had dinner. I met the Commanding Officer of the Corps, also General Kirby. General Godby went over with me the work he is doing,



showed me plans of his trench system, and plans of his trenches, shelters, machine gun emplacements, etc. We then went out to the line, passing through Watau into Belgium. We passed a great many troops of the 30th Division who have moved up to the second line west of Ypres. Watau is the Headquarters of the 30th Division. From Watau we headed straight for Ypres on the main road, going first as far as Poperinghe. Called "Pops" by the British. I examined the fortifications around the city, including concealed machine gun emplacements, trenches, etc. Went about two miles beyond the city to examine trenches, shelters, both concrete and earth, wire entanglements, etc. Also examined plans for blowing up roads and bridges and the location of the charges. I visited the old location of one of the large engineer dumps and work shops. These were moved further back on account of the constant shelling of this area. The city, which formerly contained about 12,000 is entirely deserted and is being slowly demolished. The large church has thus far escaped any injury. This is the first region I have been in that is really in the throes of the war. It sure does look its part. Overhead there were six or eight stationary observation balloons. These are constantly being fired at by the Germans and you can see the shells bursting near them. Only *occasionally* is one hit. Their greatest danger is when a German airplane darts over the line and attacks them. The men in the balloons are warned and jump with parachutes. In nearly all cases they reach the ground safely. One day a plane attacked three of the balloons, destroyed all of them. The men all got out but the parachute of one failed to open and he was killed. While this sector was quiet today, I felt for the first time that I was really in the fighting zone. Shells were exploding near by and you never know when one might fall right by you.

Our own work southeast and east of Cassel is nearer the German line than up here, but there has been no shelling of the area since we began the work. There are plenty of shell holes around showing that the German artillery have registered and that they know the range and the direction. Direction from Mount Kemmel, Road to Ypres, etc. A good many of the soldiers of the

30th Division are in camp north of "Pops," and had to march through this shelled area. There were no shells falling near them but they could hear them. They march in such an area, in one-half platoon and fifty to a hundred yards between each one-half platoon, so that if a shell hits a group or near a group it will not kill any except in the one group. I felt sorry for the boys, coming into such an area for the first time. They will get hardened to it, and after being up at the front line will be thankful to get back to "such an area." They did not know where they were going, where they were to sleep or eat. They were beginning to feel and taste the *real war*. It is a "taste." I have tasted it and *it is real*. I try to smile no matter what is going on and I find that it not only helps me but I can draw a smile from the men. They are "game" and I feel sure they will give a splendid account of themselves. I have heard from British, French and American officers that this Division has the best trained and physical men in France. They say my regiment is the best in the Division. It may not be true (I think it is) but it makes me feel good to hear such expressions about my men.

After we had completed our inspection we returned to Houtkerque via the Lovie Chateau and the Proven road. The ride through the Chateau grounds, which are most beautiful, was a delightful sequence to the desolation and waste that I had just been through. At Houtkerque we had *tea*. There were four of the British Generals at *tea*, and a Belgian General Staff. At 5:45 p. m. I started back for camp in the General's auto.

Colonel Ferguson came into camp and may be with us most of the time now. After supper we went over to the Second Battalion Headquarters remaining until nearly dark (10 p. m.). I gave the Colonel my room and went in with the Adjutant.

*July 5, 1918, Friday.* No air raid last night and therefore I had a most comfortable night and sleep. There was considerable shelling and twice during the night there was a continuous barrage fire lasting from half an hour to an hour. I slept through most of this. Today the Colonel and I have been going over the training schedule of the Regiment and I believe he was pretty well satisfied with what has been accomplished.

At 11:15 a. m. I had an appointment with Major-General Kenyon and Colonel Close of the British Army (40th Division) to inspect the work my troops had been doing. Colonel Ferguson, the Adjutant and myself went over to the works ahead of time in order to examine some of the British wiring and trenches. A strong point was being constructed by the Australians. If it had not been for the Colonel being here so we could use his car, we would have had to walk or ride on very poor horses. We met General Kenyon and Colonel Close on the line and inspected the wiring for a distance of about two miles. The General seemed very much pleased with the work and it was apparently satisfactory. I decided to change somewhat the method of construction of the wiring so as to conform more with the American method. This we are now building. I also worked out a plan, to try out, to see how easily and quickly we could cut our way through the entanglement. The General left us at the X-roads, and expressed himself again as being well pleased with our work. After dinner the Colonel and I had a long conference over our work and at 3 p. m. had a conference with the Battalion Commanders.

We gave a dinner party tonight to three of the British officers, the following being present: Colonel Ferguson, Lieutenant-Colonel Pratt, Major Campbell, Major DePaula (British), Major Harrison (British T Air Craft Battery), Captain Proctor (British), Captain Boesch, Captain Smith, Lieutenant Tucker, Lieutenant Sharp, Lieutenant Harper, and Lieutenant Smith. Our Chaplain, Lieutenant McElroy, took charge and arranged a good dinner: Soup, fish, chicken and vegetables, asparagus (fresh), dessert (fresh currant pudding), Welsh rarebit, coffee, cakes, candy, cheese, smokes. We sat around the table until nearly dark. We have no lights at night as we have no means of shutting in the light. All seemed to enjoy the dinner and I was very glad to be able to entertain the British officers. We borrowed dishes, etc., from the women in care of the chateau. For the most part we used our own field equipment dishes (enamel ware). Colonel Markham of 303d Engineers called this afternoon. His Regimental Headquarters at Oudezeele.



*July 6, 1918, Saturday.* Very quiet night. No air raids and very little bombardment. The Colonel left this morning for Corps Headquarters, but returned at night in time for dinner. I spent all the morning studying maps and plans, particularly around the Ypres sector. Right after dinner Captain Boesch, the Adjutant, and I rode horseback to Teredeghem to inspect the work done by the First Battalion and to see how they made arrangements to break camp. The First Battalion and the Second Battalion were to change camps and work. The Second Battalion were very much pleased with the change, and liked their new camp much better than the old one. I inspected the wire entanglement made by the First Battalion and consider it a more effective wire entanglement than what we made before. I am not quite satisfied with it yet, and want to have some larger stakes mixed in with the smaller ones in this low entanglement. As a whole the work was satisfactory. Coming back I took the cross-roads and trails as much as possible, which made the ride much more pleasant. The roads are very, very dusty and riding on the main highways is not very pleasant. No rain to amount to anything since we came here.

*July 7, 1918, Sunday.* Had a very quiet night and an extra nap this morning (being Sunday). Did not get up until 7:30. After finishing up the morning routine work, Colonel Ferguson and myself went in his car to see General Godby in regard to our Regiment coming into the sector held by the II British Army Corps. We spent about an hour with the General going over plans for work of the Regiment when it comes into his area. It was a very satisfactory conference. The first time I met General Godby I was very much attracted to him and my liking for him increased with this second meeting. He is whole-hearted and true, and interested in our work and our point of view. We left Houtkerque about 1 p. m., for Watau, the Headquarters of the 30th Division. We had dinner at a pretty fair Belgian restaurant. Charged six and a half francs. Spent a short time with Captain Humphrey. We three then went up to Proven to look over the ground that our troops will probably occupy for a central camp. It was not very prepossessing. If it should rain for a day or two the ground would be a mass

of mud. My headquarters will probably be at this camp for the next three weeks. Major Reynolds, the Commandant of the area, showed us around. He is a Canadian from Montreal. From Proven we took the Poperinghe road to its intersection with the Watau road, over which we returned to Watau and left Captain Humphrey. We then returned to camp via Steenvoorde. This is another deserted city (Population was about 4,250). It has been shelled several times and many of the buildings are demolished. The city was evacuated after Bailleu fell into the hands of the Germans. It makes me feel very sad to see these deserted and shelled cities. Colonel Ferguson had a bad headache, and on reaching camp I gave him some aspirin and he went to bed.

Mazie's letter of May 27th was received today. It brought tears to my eyes as I read it. It was a very, very dear letter.

(ENCLOSURE IN DIARY)

A red poppy, picked near Quercamp on march from Sanghen to Cassel, June 28, 1918.

---

(July 6 or 7, 1918, at Chateau near Cassel).

To be submitted through Military Channels, to the Adjutant-General G. H. Q., A. E. F., March 31, June 30, September 30, and December 31.

---

#### EFFICIENCY REPORT

(Required by G. O. 39, G. H. Q., A. E. F., 1918)

JOSEPH HYDE PRATT

(name)

Lieutenant-Colonel Engineers N. A., 105th Engineers

(Rank and Organization)

48

(age)

Lieutenant-Colonel 105th Engineer Regiment

(Duty during period)

Reported by:

H. B. FERGUSON

(name)

Colonel Engineers, N. A., 105th Engineers

(Rank and Organization)

## INSTRUCTIONS

I. In recording your judgment take into consideration the following points, but do not report on them separately:

- (a) Attention to duty.
- (b) Professional zeal.
- (c) Intelligence and judgment shown in instructing, drilling and handling enlisted men.
- (d) General bearing and military appearance.
- (e) Willingness to coöperate energetically and loyally with his superiors, regardless of his personal views.
- (f) His behavior in action.

II. Under the heading "Remarks," it is most desirable that the reporting officer describe the character, special qualifications and method of performance of duty of the officer reported upon with such fullness as will give a true estimate of him, independent of the other parts of the report. It should be a concise statement of his opinion on the subjects of general fitness to be a commissioned officer, his strong points and his limitations. This statement should be definite and to the point and not perfunctory or evasive.

III. To be used in reporting on Majors, Lieutenants-Colonels and Colonels only.

1. During the past three months his work has been of quality:

- (a) Excellent.

2. Physical Condition:

- (a) Strong and active.

3. Has he shown peculiar fitness or marked ability for detail on the General Staff or for duty in any particular Staff Department?

Yes, G. S. or Eng. Depart.

4. Is this officer in your opinion fitted for duty with and to command troops?

Yes.

5. This officer speaks and translates:

- (a) French—translates to some extent.

6. Recommended for:

- (b) Promotion to next grade.

7. Remarks:

Character, highest; conscientious and painstaking, accepts responsibility, is firm and fair in control of officers and enlisted men.

Ability is exceptional, versatile engineer, organizer and manager. Has sound military conceptions.

Feel utmost confidence that he will always satisfactorily perform any duties to which assigned.

A true copy:

CLARENCE E. BOESCH,  
*Captain Engineers, M. G., Adjutant.*



C. O. 105 Eng.

(For official circulation only).

G. O. 109

## G. H. Q., American Expeditionary Forces

General Orders—No. 109.

France, July 5, 1918.

July 14th is hereby declared a holiday for all troops in this command not actually engaged with the enemy. It will be their duty and privilege to celebrate French Independence Day, which appeals alike to every citizen and soldier in France and America, with all the sympathetic interest and purpose that France celebrated our Independence Day. Living among the French people, and sharing the comradeship in arms of their soldiers, we have the deeper consciousness that the two anniversaries are linked together in common principles and a common cause.

By Command of General Pershing.

JAMES W. McANDREW,  
*Chief of Staff.*

Official:

ROBERT C. DAVIS,  
*Adjutant General.*

LIST OF OFFICERS ON BOARD THE TRANSPORT TALTHYBIUS  
JUNE 1, 1918

Captain—H. D. Hazeland.  
Chief Officer—Neieur.  
Second Officer—A. Gow.  
Extra Second Officer—E. Mellor.  
Third Officer—J. R. Daivies.  
Ship Surgeon—Lieutenant Morton, U. S. R.  
Chief Engineer—Morgan.  
Second Engineer—Mitchell.  
Third Engineer—Drysdale.  
Fourth Engineer—Barker.  
Fifth Engineer—Kellet.  
Sixth Engineer—Davies  
Seventh Engineer—Smith.  
Purser—Holdsworth.  
Senior Wireless Operator—F. Gullen.  
Junior Wireless Operator—J. Clark.  
Steward—Cupit.

The following ships were in our convoy: H. M. S. Donegal, escort; Tunison, Plum Leaf, Talthybius, Burma; Cardiganshire, Ajax, Navara, Corinth, Botanist, City of Poona, Arawa, Port Lincoln; Crita, Mesaba.

(To be Continued)

## HISTORICAL NEWS

*Davidson College*, compiled by Cornelia Shaw, Librarian, was issued by the Fleming H. Revell Press in October last. It is a volume of 317 pages.

*Davidson College in the War* is a record of the 955 former students of the Institution who entered the service 1917-18. Of these 223 were in the Students' Army Training Corps, and, of the remainder, 356 were commissioned officers. This will be issued by the Presbyterian Standard Publishing Company, Charlotte, in January, 1924. It is a book of around 130 pages and was compiled by Cornelia Shaw, Librarian.

Professor T. W. Lingle and assistants have prepared an Alumni Catalogue of Davidson College which is now in the hands of the printers. This volume is expected in February. The last Alumni Catalogue was issued in 1891. The edition being prepared at this time will be of deep interest to all Davidson men. Information, so far as it has been possible to obtain it, will be given in regard to the matriculates of the College—numbering approximately 5,800 since its opening in 1837.

Dr. William E. Dodd, Professor of American History in the University of Chicago, delivered two lectures this fall at the North Carolina College for Women in Greensboro: (1) The Monroe Doctrine, (2) The Expanding Power of the Presidency.

The following additions to the history faculty of the North Carolina College for Women were made in September: Dr. B. B. Kendrick, formerly Associate Professor of History in Columbia University; Dr. A. M. Arnett, formerly head of the Department of History, Furman University; Professor C. D. Johns, formerly Associate Professor of History, University of Cincinnati; Miss Bessie Edsall, formerly head of the Department of History, New Mexico State Normal School; Miss Ethelyn Dewey, formerly head of the Department of History, Nebraska State Normal School; Miss Vera Largent, formerly Critic Teacher, Kansas State Normal School.

Mr. B. B. Daugherty, of the Appalachian Training School at Boone, is preparing an article on Tennessee history with particular reference to James Robertson and Andrew Johnson.

The faculty in History of Mars Hill College consists of Oren E. Roberts, Jessie L. Carzine, Miss Cornelia Howell, and Isaac N. Carr.

During the first week of December, 1923, The University of North Carolina celebrated the centennial of President Monroe's message to Congress in which was stated the principles of the Monroe Doctrine. For this purpose, Dr. William R. Shepherd, professor of history in Columbia University, was invited to deliver a public address and to conduct a seminary course on the Monroe Doctrine and the relations of the United States and the Hispanic-American nations. The topics treated in the course were: (1) Self-defense—the Monroe Doctrine, 1823; (2) Expansion—the Course of Empire, 1846; (3) Headship—the Policy of Regulation, 1881; (4) Pan-Americanism—a Sentiment of Coöperation, 1889; (5) A League of Nations—the "Regional Understanding," 1917.

The State Literary and Historical Association of North Carolina convened in Raleigh, December 6 and 7, in its twenty-third annual session.

Thursday afternoon, at the Presbyterian Church there was a meeting of the Sir Walter Raleigh Memorial Association, presided over by General Julian S. Carr, Chairman since the Association was founded in 1901. General Carr reported that, although about twenty-five hundred dollars had been raised toward the memorial, the interposition of the World War and other major matters had held up the work and that it needed thorough reorganization. It was decided at this meeting and ratified at the business meeting the next day to defer all action until a general meeting could be called in January, 1924.

Thursday evening at the Woman's Club occurred the first general meeting. Invocation was made by Rev. T. W. O'Kelley of the First Baptist Church, Raleigh. Dr. J. Y. Joyner, in a brief address, recounted the life and services of J. Bryan



Grimes, author, statesman, and patriot, and presented on behalf of his family an oil portrait of Colonel Grimes to the North Carolina Historical Commission. W. N. Everett, Secretary of State, accepted the portrait. Miss Fries then read her presidential address, "The Lure of Historical Research." She was followed by Mrs. Lindsay Patterson, who talked informally on "Flower Lore." After the exercises there was a reception in the club rooms to the members and guests of the association.

Friday morning President Fries called the association to order at eleven o'clock in the Woman's Club. She presented Rev. Douglas Rights, of Winston-Salem, who read a paper on "Traces of the Indian in Piedmont Carolina." He was followed by Miss Emma King, of Greensboro, who read a paper on "Some Aspects of the Education of Negroes by the Society of Friends." Mr. W. S. Pfohl, of Winston-Salem, then read a paper on "The Infant School."

The association was then called into business session. The following resolutions were passed:

1. Resolution of thanks to Mrs. Lindsay Patterson for the stimulating influence of the William Houston Patterson Memorial Cup, this year retired after seventeen years of award annually to North Carolina writers.

2. Resolution endorsing the effort of patriotic societies to fill the North Carolina Bay in the Cloister of the Colonies at Valley Forge. In this connection Dr. Albert Shaw, Editor of the *Review of Reviews*, made a contribution of one hundred and fifty dollars to this memorial.

3. Resolution endorsing the effort of the Virginia Dare Memorial Association to place a painting of the first baptism in America in the National Capitol.

The following officers were elected for the year 1923-1924:

President—W. C. Jackson, Vice-President North Carolina College.

First Vice-President—Rev. Robert Brent Drane, Edenton.

Second Vice-President—John Sprunt Hill, Durham.

Third Vice-President—Miss Nell Battle Lewis, Raleigh.

Secretary—R. B. House, Raleigh.

Friday evening at 8:30 President Fries called the association in final session in the auditorium of Meredith College. She

presented Dr. Frederic M. Hanes, of Winston-Salem, who made a brief address presenting to the State the portrait of Walter Hines Page. Governor Cameron Morrison accepted the portrait on behalf of North Carolina. Miss Fries then presented Col. W. A. Blair, of Winston-Salem, who introduced Dr. Albert Shaw, Editor of the *Review of Reviews*. Dr. Shaw delivered an address on Walter Hines Page.

The association then adjourned sine die.

The North Carolina Historical Commission has received the portraits of Walter Hines Page and J. Bryan Grimes for hanging in the Hall of History. The Page portrait is the gift of the State Literary and Historical Association. It is a copy of the original by Philip Alexius de Laszlo in the British embassy, and was made by the same artist. The Grimes portrait is by Louis Freeman, of Washington, D. C., and it is a gift from the Grimes family. Both portraits were presented to the State during the twenty-third annual session of the State Literary and Historical Association, in Raleigh, December 6 and 7. Dr. J. Y. Joyner made the address presenting the Grimes portrait, and it was accepted by Hon. W. N. Everett. Dr. Frederic M. Hanes made the address presenting the Page portrait. It was accepted by Governor Morrison.

During the past three months the Historical Commission has received for preservation the following papers and relics:

*Wills*: Originals from Carteret, Chowan, Onslow, and Perquimans, to 1800; Abstracts from Anson, Cabarrus, Carteret, Chowan, Craven, Cumberland, Duplin, Mecklenburg, New Hanover, Onslow, Randolph, Richmond, Robeson, Rowan, Rutherford; also a miscellaneous collection of wills from the office of the Secretary of State, 1663-1790.

*Marriage Bonds*: Ashe, Chowan, Jackson, Polk, and Lincoln.

*County Court Minutes*: Ashe, Chatham, Chowan, Jackson, Polk, Richmond, Wilkes.

*Court Dockets*: At Bath, 1742; at Wilmington, 1742.

*Land Patents*: Chowan, Edgecombe, Craven, and Perquimans, 1740.

*Inventories*: Chowan, 1723-1800; Perquimans, 1751-1800; office of the Secretary of State, 1663-1760.

*Deeds*: Chowan, 1699-1800.

*Tax Lists*: Chowan, 1766-1798.

Port of Roanoke: Records.

Daguerreotypes and Photographs of Civil War.

Flag: Thirty-eighth North Carolina Regiment.

Roster: North Carolina Troops in the Revolution, together with original vouchers from the Secretary of State, card indexed.

Pictures of the 30th Division in France, painted on the field by Lt. Col. Graham Seaton Hutchinson, of the Argyle and Sutherland Highlanders, and presented by him to North Carolina.

Relics of the Walker, Bolles, Hill, Whiting, and Meares families, of Wilmington, presented by Miss Hannah P. Bolles of Wilmington.

Original order issued by General Lee before the march into Maryland and Pennsylvania, presented by Archibald H. Boyden, of Salisbury.

Debates in Congress (2 vols) 1825-1831; Washington, Gales and Seaton.

By authority of the Council of State, the Printing Commission, and the North Carolina Historical Commission, there has been published *The Papers of Thomas Walter Bickett*, Governor of North Carolina.

Miss Eleanor Chase, a graduate of Radcliffe College, is a new member of the History faculty of Salem College. Her chief interest is in United States History.

The Salem College History Club, Miss Flora Binder, President, Miss Sara McKellar, Secretary, holds occasional meetings during the college year. It discusses phases of recent history, current events, and books. On October 10 Dr. Howard Rondthaler addressed the club on "How the Civilization of a State is determined by its Boundary Line." On October 11, Mr. Harry Long, Y. W. C. A. worker in Poland, addressed the club on the history of Poland.

Mr. J. T. Alderman, Superintendent, in the Annual Report of the Henderson Public Schools, 1922-1923, presents a twenty-one page history of "Old Time Schools in the Vicinity of Henderson." The record begins with 1817 and continues to the present. It is supplemented by illustrations.

The Woman's Club of Oxford has organized a historical department of which Mrs. Lucy Hays Furman is Chairman. The object of this department is to gather all the historic data of Oxford that is available. Enough material has been gathered to form a booklet which will be published. Among other items the department has secured a bound volume of the *Torchlight*, bound copies of the *Morning Clarion*, Oxford's first newspaper,



and an essay, "Newspapering in Oxford in the Seventies." All from Mr. J. A. Robinson.

Dr. W. K. Boyd, Professor of History in Trinity College, is preparing a history of Durham County. He is publishing articles on Durham County in the *Durham Herald*. The first article in the series appeared Sunday, October 7, in section two of the paper.

Dr. Randolph G. Adams, late Professor of History in Trinity College, Durham, has resigned to become Custodian of the William L. Clements Library of the University of Michigan.

Professor M. C. S. Noble, Dean of the School of Education in the University of North Carolina, is spending a year's leave of absence in preparing materials for a history of education in North Carolina since 1840. He is at present engaged with the collections of the North Carolina Historical Commission and those of the State Library.

Dr. Archibald Henderson, Head of the Department of Mathematics, University of North Carolina, is in Europe on a year's leave of absence. Dr. Henderson has just issued, through the Houghton Mifflin Company, a limited edition of *Washington's Southern Tour*, 1791.

The New Bern Historical Society was organized in 1923. It has a large membership and has held some interesting meetings. Special interest has been devoted to the Palatines.

Incidental to a recent visit to the North Carolina Historical Commission, Professor William R. Shepherd, of Columbia University, stated that he had found numerous papers of John Sevier, and of Western North Carolina and Tennessee in the Spanish archives in Seville. These papers emphasize the important influence of Spain on the development of North Carolina and Tennessee.

Colonel Joseph Hyde Pratt, a section of whose diary begins in this issue, has given to the North Carolina Historical Com-

mission not only his diary but a voluminous collection of papers and maps relating to the 105th Engineers, A. E. F., the early records of the North Carolina Council of Defense; and a valuable and interesting collection of relics picked up on the Somme battlefields. These collections form the most systematic and comprehensive series of records of North Carolina in the World War contributed by any individual.

Captain S. A. Ashe is preparing a sketch of William Joseph Williams, an artist born in New York, but for many years a resident of New Bern. Williams painted the portrait of George Washington, in 1793, that hangs in the Masonic Hall, Alexandria, Virginia, and said to be the only likeness of Washington in his old age.

Doctor E. C. Branson, Professor of Rural Economics and Sociology, University of North Carolina, is on a year's leave of absence in Europe. He is writing a series of travel letters for various North Carolina newspapers (Sunday issues) and for the *University of North Carolina News Letter*. These articles are replete with references to North Carolina, though mainly valuable as studies of contemporary institutions in Europe.

Professor Frank P. Graham, of the University of North Carolina, who was last year awarded an Amherst Fellowship for a two-year term, is at present engaged in study and research in Washington City. He will go to England in the spring, and after study there will carry on investigation in France, Germany, and other Continental countries, remaining abroad for the entire year.

The Department of History and Government of the University of North Carolina has this year added to its staff Chester P. Higby, associate professor; A. R. Newsome, assistant professor, and H. M. Shanks, R. H. Taylor, and D. H. Gilpatrick, instructors.

Professor Higby, whose particular field is Continental European history, is a native of Pennsylvania, a graduate of Bucknell University, and holds the doctor's degree from Columbia.

He has been for some years past a member of the faculty of West Virginia University. Professor Newsome, who is at present serving as chairman of the freshman course, is specializing in American history of the Middle Period, particularly that relating to the westward movement. He is a native of North Carolina, a graduate of the University, for two years head of the department of history in Bessie Tift College, and has been for the two years past an instructor in the University of Michigan where he has completed the residence work for the doctor's degree. Mr. Shanks is a native of North Carolina, a graduate of Wake Forest, and holds a master's degree from the University of Chicago. Mr. Taylor is also a North Carolinian and a graduate of Wake Forest College. He has a master's degree from the University of North Carolina, has been assistant professor at the Citadel, and has been for two years a graduate student at the University of Michigan where he held a fellowship in history. He has also completed the residence requirements for the doctor's degree. Mr. Gilpatrick is a native of Florida, a graduate of Stetson University, and a master of arts of Columbia. For some years past he has been head of the history department of the Durham High School.

There has been organized in the Roanoke Rapids schools a Halifax County Club. This club studies the early history of the county, its prominent men, and the relation of the county to the State. Among other sources it makes use of the county records in Halifax.

The last Legislature appointed a Commission, consisting of Bennehan Cameron, J. S. Carr, R. D. W. Connor, W. T. Bost, R. O. Everett, and D. H. Hill, to arrange for the acceptance from the heirs of Samuel T. Morgan of a memorial to mark the spot where the Confederate War practically ended when the army of Gen. Joseph E. Johnston capitulated to the army of Gen. W. T. Sherman at the Bennett House, near Durham. The memorial is a graceful double shaft situated in a park of thirty-five acres of land that was owned by Mr. Morgan, and which will hereafter be the property of the State.

The ceremonies of acceptance took place at the historic spot on November 8th. The presentation address was made for the



family by Gen. Julian S. Carr. Governor Cameron Morrison accepted the memorial in the name of the State. An introductory address by Colonel Cameron was followed by speeches from Dr. D. H. Hill, taking the place of Hon. R. M. Hughes, a nephew of General Johnston (who was detained at home by the serious illness of his son), and by United States Senator B. K. Wheeler, of Montana.

On June 7, 1923, the Richard Dobbs Spaight Chapter of the Daughters of the American Revolution of New Bern, unveiled on their court house square three handsome bronze tablets to the three Governors furnished to the State by Craven County. These, of course, were Abner Nash (1780-1781), Richard Dobbs Spaight (1792-1795), and Richard Dobbs Spaight, Jr. (1835-1836).

The exercises, presided over by the Regent of the Chapter, Mrs. Owen H. Guion, were excellently planned. Hon. Francis Nash, a great-grandson of Governor Nash, presented a sketch of the life and services of Governor Nash, and Judge Henry Grady outlined the careers of the two Spaights.

A marker to World War dead was erected recently on the court house lawn. J. C. B. Eringhaus delivered the memorial address.

## BOOK REVIEWS

JEFFERSON DAVIS—President of the South. By H. J. Eckenrode. (New York: The Macmillan Company, 1923. Pages, 371. \$3.00.)

This is an interesting book. Minor defects need not blind us to its real value. As a critical study of one of the most uninspiring of the great figures of our history it is refreshing after the gush and nonsense which characterizes so much of our Southern historical writing. The author has not attempted a biography of Davis, but rather to analyze the character, qualifications, and motives of the Confederate leader and in them to find an explanation of his great failure. All who read his book will feel that he has done his work in a skillful manner, but not all will find his conclusions convincing.

Davis had many of the minor qualifications for his task as President of the Confederacy. He had a wide range of information and experience. His brain was cool, clear, logical. He was a skillful debater. He had courage, dignity, industry, and determination. He had had executive experience. His integrity was undoubted. "In many respects he was a good choice for the head of the new government," and had the new government been firmly established and universally recognized, and had Davis been chosen its head in a peaceable and thoroughly constitutional manner, he would probably have made a successful chief executive.

But the new government was neither firmly established nor universally recognized. It was the offspring of revolution and its president was essentially the chief of a revolutionary movement. For such a position, Jefferson Davis had grave, fatal defects. He lacked political sagacity. "Sensitive, vain, egotistical, [and] open to flattery," his "sensitiveness led to jealousy," his egotism made him combative, dogmatic, unyielding, whereas the head of a revolutionary movement, with success dependent upon the earnest coöperation of all the revolutionary forces, he should have been conciliatory and open to conviction. He needed to win men to him, not to triumph over them. [In insisting upon his technical rights and powers under the Confederate Constitution, he easily won victories over Joe Brown and Zeb Vance, but they were worse than barren victories for they left those powerful politicians, and many others

like them, in the camp of his political opponents, if not of his personal enemies.] And so, Mr. Eckenrode concludes:

It was Davis's inability as a political leader that played a large part in the undoing. No sooner had the planter politicians set him up over them than they turned against him. They hated the government they themselves had made, and Davis was not the man who could bind them to himself by chains of personal loyalty stronger than any constitutional right. \* \* \* He inspired respect, though not affection or even liking. \* \* \* He was never popular, never the head of a party. He always stood much alone. \* \* \* He won some notable victories over his failings. But he could not quite rise to the heroic level demanded by his difficulties; he could not become the leader to inspire a desponding nation; he could not become a genius able to uphold a losing cause.

Why did the Confederacy fail? The blockade? "This," says Mr. Eckenrode, "is negatively true" only, because "the South might have won in spite of the blockade." Was it due to "the dearth of food?" Scarcely, because the Confederate soldier enjoyed good health and did some "great feats of exertion in marching and fighting" in spite of "a shortage of provisions." "Inferior military equipment?" No, because after 1864 the Southerners, in arms and ammunition, "were not much inferior to the Unionists." No, the answer lies in none of these, or the numerous other explanations usually given. The answer is found in the failure of the South to develop "an adequate strategic system."

The [Southern] armies were not directed with a common purpose: no strategic system was ever devised by the South. The North had two great strategic ideas—one originated by Halleck, the other by Grant. \* \* \* The South was frequently better in the strategy of single campaigns than the North—thus Lee was notably abler than the generals who opposed him—but it had no grand strategy, and wars are more often won by grand strategy than single battles. In the last analysis, the Union triumphed less because of large numbers, more food, money and equipment and its navy than because it had a strategic system it was able to carry out.

And why did not the Confederacy have a "grand strategy?" Mr. Eckenrode's answer is "Jefferson Davis." There was no unity of control because "Jefferson Davis directed the war and yet did not direct it fully."

"The successful conduct of the war called for all the ability and all the energy of some one directing mind. That mind could not, by any chance, be Jefferson Davis, because he was



President." As President of a revolutionary government his duties were primarily political. "Old governments run partly by mere momentum; people obey them from habit. A new government makes special demands on the ruler's qualities of leadership. A revolutionary ruler must inspire and persuade his people." This Davis failed to do. The Constitution gave him the powers of commander-in-chief, and he felt that he must exercise them. Instead of delegating military affairs to Lee as general in chief of all the Confederate armies, Davis "chose military administration as his particular province," and thus military policies were constantly mingled with political considerations to the ruin of both.

Davis's unduly cautious consideration of political situations at the expense of military demands and his insistence upon keeping military policies in his own hands, were responsible for the failure of the Confederacy to develop a system of grand strategy under the direction of a Lee which alone could have assured success to the South.

R. D. W. CONNOR.

University of North Carolina.

---

THE AMERICAN LANGUAGE—An inquiry into the Development of English in the United States. By H. L. Mencken. Third edition, revised and enlarged. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1923. Pages, ix+489.

Is "American" a language distinct from English? For the people of the United States is English a "Foreign Modern Language?" So seriously are these questions suggested that it was with alert interest, if not trepidation, I turned, after reading some chapters of Mr. Mencken's book, to the addresses delivered last spring in several of our cities, by Lord Robert Cecil. My reassurance was complete. Hardly a phrase or word was strange. We Americans still—

Speak the tongue

That Shakespeare spake: the faith and morals hold  
Which Milton held.

Lord Robert falls into the only disconcerting, yet somewhat typical, Britishism when he attempts a home-spun metaphor. He speaks of "putting a spoke in the wheel" of a nefarious set of men when he means obviously to block their evil designs!

The impression created by the title of this book, by the presentation of the subject, by the tone throughout, is that "American" and "English" will be before long, if indeed they are not now, as distinct languages, as, say, German and Norse. That differences exist in the spoken language of the uneducated masses in England and in America goes without saying. That variant terminology has been adopted in arts and industries that have developed independently in the two countries is equally obvious. It is interesting and instructive to have these differences indicated and discussed. But no well-informed student of the subject imagines that the language of the masses in Baltimore, to take Mr. Mencken's home city, differs more widely from the language of the masses in Liverpool than the dialect of Cornwall differs from the dialect of Yorkshire. "American" of the masses, really marvelous in its homogeneity, is, at most, not a separate and distinct language, nor likely to develop into one: it is only a dialect of that English common to the English-speaking world, and likely to remain so. None but Mr. Mencken sees (page 195) "the gap that begins to yawn between English and American."

Mr. Mencken has done in "The American Language" a laborious piece of work, yet he has succeeded in giving it an appeal to general interest. What is called the "differentiation" of "American" from English is first traced historically; then follows an exposition of present-day conditions in pronunciation, spelling and grammar. "Proper Names in America," "American Slang," and "The Future of the Language," close the body of the discussion. Appendices are: "Specimens of the American Vulgate," "Non-English Dialects in America," and "Proverbs and Platitudes." A most valuable feature is an elaborate and seemingly complete Bibliography. Full use is made of earlier special compilations; and although this book discusses more than three thousand words and phrases, it is clearly indicated that the subject is merely being opened up: that almost every phase cries out for full investigation. At this stage in the treatment of the "American" language no student of the subject can afford to disregard Mr. Mencken's book.

Yet the book lacks the true scholarly spirit. The detachment, the impersonality of the scholar, is sadly wanting. Mr. Mencken's prejudices are so obvious as to shake the reader's confidence. Entirely too much in evidence are his antipathy to

England and his partiality to Germany. One is even led to suspect that deep down in the writer's desire to thrust in the thin edge of the wedge to split this Anglo-Saxon world into two jealous, hostile camps: a purpose impossible of accomplishment so long as the two great branches of the parent stock speak the same language and freely exchange each other's literature.

Mr. Mencken takes opportunity to let the reader know his view on the liquor question by describing the prohibition period in America (page 102) as the "Methodist hellenium."

Accurate in the main, the book has some matters for correction. I note the following.

"Dr. J. J. Child of Harvard" (page 7) is probably Dr. Francis J. Child.

"Charles E. A. Gayerré (page 412) should be Charles E. A. Gayarré.

It is unpardonable in a Baltimorean to write (page 141, note) "Edgar Allen Poe."

Is it possible that an Englishman (page 128) "Calls a *rutabaga* a *mangelwurzel*?"

"Jakob Grimm, the founder of Comparative Philology" (page 382). Is Mr. Mencken acquainted with the work of Rasmus Rask?

The element "more," in *Biltmore* is not (page 363) "the Gaelic *Grundwort*, *more*," but is, I am told by one who had it from the lips of the late Mr. George Vanderbilt, the name of Mr. Vanderbilt's grandmother.

Further evidence is needed to support the derivation (page 286) of *spot* from *spit*, although both come from the same root.

If *strong* and *weak* had been used to indicate the two conjugations in English, it would have been easy to avoid such awkward expressions as (page 286) "regularly irregular."

"Beaufort is *byu-fort* in South Carolina, but *bo-fort* in North Carolina" (page 358). The difference is probably due to an earlier and a later borrowing from the French.

The relation of *my* and *mine* (page 300) might be more clearly explained by showing that formerly the same laws held between the two possessives as between *a* and *an*.

It is surprising not to find fuller use made of Kluge among the German and Skeat (referred to only once) among the English for etymologies.



Mr. Mencken's prediction of a wider divergence in future between English and "American" will fail, it seems to me, as a result of the unifying influences of more general education, and of easy and rapid communication among the various parts of the English-speaking world. A most wholesome tendency is the ready exchange of useful innovations in speech. Indeed, Mr. Mencken bears strong testimony, even if somewhat unwillingly, to the strengthening unity of English in the statistics he quotes showing its possibilities as a future world-language. Incidentally, two Chinese students now attending the North Carolina State College find it easier to converse with each other in English than in their Chinese dialects.

Although Mr. Mencken finds in the average American's speech a "timorousness," "In a land of manumitted peasants," he says, page 179, "the primary trait of the peasant is bound to show itself now and then": yet he quotes with apparent approval: "The American \* \* \* has an Elizabethan love of exuberant language"; and adds (page 195): "And on the other hand there is a high relish and talent for metaphor—in Brander Matthews's phrase, 'a figurative vigor that the Elizabethans would have realized and understood.'"

Those "manumitted peasants," by the way, they are you and I!

An example of "American," as Mr. Mencken conceives it, is given in a modernizing of The Declaration of Independence:

When things get so balled up that the people of a country have got to cut loose from some other country and go it on their own hook, without asking no permission from nobody, excepting maybe God Almighty, then they ought to let everybody know why they done it, so that everybody can see they are on the level, and not trying to put nothing over on nobody.

The administration of the present King, George III, has been rotten from the start, and when anybody kicked about it he always tried to get away with it by strong-arm work. Here is some of the rough stuff he has pulled:

He vetoed bills in the Legislature that everybody was in favor of, and hardly nobody was against.

He made the Legislature meet at one-horse tank-towns out in the alfalfa belt, so that hardly nobody could get there and most of the leaders would stay home and let him go to work and do things like he wanted.

He give the Legislature the air, and sent the members home every time they stood up to him and give him a call-down or bawled him out.

Ring Lardner has Mr. Mencken's heartiest approval.

THOMAS P. HARRISON.

North Carolina State College.

THE LIFE AND LETTERS OF WALTER HINES PAGE. By Burton J. Hendrick. Garden City, New York: Doubleday, Page & Company, 1922. 2 v.

It is now nearly two years since these two handsome volumes appeared and at once attracted wide and favorable attention. A review of them now, however, may not be inappropriate in this magazine; for though most of the working days of Page's nearly sixty-five years were spent outside of North Carolina, here he was born and reared, here he rather planned to do the work of his old age, and here he came to die among his kinsfolk in the beautiful region of Aberdeen. And since he was a North Carolinian, the review may, perhaps, best take the form of a study of the man and his career as revealed in Hendrick's book.

Walter Hines Page, we are told, came of good North Carolina stock, chiefly English with some admixture of French. His education, thanks to his family's means, was unusually good for Reconstruction days. At the Bingham School he learned for all time that personal integrity is the essential characteristic of a gentleman. Being Methodists, his people sent him to old Trinity, which he did not like, and then to Randolph-Macon where he displayed energy and versatility and was deemed by his fellows "alert" and "positive." He was in Gildersleeve's first class at Hopkins, and might, perhaps have become a teacher of Greek at the University of North Carolina had not his religious rationalism blocked the way. His interest, however, was in affairs of the present and his most obvious talent was for writing. Quite naturally, therefore, being in need of a job, he drifted into newspaper work in 1878 and during the five following years practiced this craft successively as small town editor, traveling correspondent, and special writer for metropolitan dailies. Thus Page at twenty-seven had come into an appreciation of the beautiful in literature and an understanding of specialization. He had also acquired a breadth of view and an interest in human beings that come best from a knowledge of many men and many places.

In 1884 Page settled in Raleigh as editor of the *State Chronicle*. Perhaps in no other year has the line appeared to be so sharply drawn between sectionalism and Americanism, between the spoils system and the merit system, between stand-pat and progressive policies. The young editor, accordingly, dedicated his paper to "preaching Cleveland ideals," and, above all, to exerting an influence on the development of a new Southern

spirit. Also, he organized the Wautauga Club, which "gave the State ideas that afterwards caused something like a revolution in its economic and educational status." To Page and his club the author accredits the founding of "State College." After a year and a half, however, Page became convinced that his native state "really had no permanent place for him." The trouble was that "he was forty years ahead of his times" in his insistence that leaders forget the past and concentrate upon the development of a *real democracy* through educating the hands and minds of its plain people. Aycock, indeed, wrote that "fully three-fourths of the people are with you \* \* \* in your effort to awaken better work, greater activity, and freer opinion." But the dominant leaders were not moved nor did they lose their hold though men laughed heartily at Page's characterization of them in his "Mummy Articles." Accordingly Page moved away. But to his creed of a real democracy expressed through the "improving of the fundamental opportunities and every day social advantages of the masses" he often recurred. Very notable was his Greensboro address of 1897 on the "Forgotten Man," which "etched itself deeply into the popular consciousness" notwithstanding the "excoriations" which he received from "Professional Southerners." And in his new field of work he was able to advance his cause very greatly through the enthusiasm and energy by which his membership on the great educational boards was marked. Particularly helpful was he in establishing the work of Dr. Knapp and Dr. Stiles. Not without reason, therefore, has Dr. Flexner called him "one of the real educational statesmen of the country, probably the greatest we have had since the Civil War."

From 1885 to 1913 Page resided in New York or Boston. For eight years he made the *Forum* influential—and profitable for its owners. Then the *Atlantic* called him to its editorship, "the top of his profession." Mindful of the future, however, Page wanted to own as well as edit a magazine. The consequence was Doubleday, Page & Co. and the *World's Work*, ventures satisfactory in every respect. Into each of these editorial tasks he threw his whole soul, fearless, lovable, dominating. He liked to select "live" subjects and then seek out the "inevitable man" to discuss them; but the discussion would not be printed unless it measured up to an exacting standard. "Don't write for the office. Write for outside." "Always work for



the next number. Forget the others. Spend everything just on that." Such were rules of his office.

Always interested in public affairs, Page "after 1900 \* \* \* became essentially a public man." In 1910 this interest took the shape of "grooming" for the Presidency Woodrow Wilson, whom he had long known as the writer of brilliant and illuminating studies, especially for the *Forum*. He put Wilson in touch with Colonel House, guarded him against "his fool friends," spread his fame through the press, picked him a man (Houston) for the Department of Agriculture, prepared him briefs for the first message and recommended its personal delivery for the sake of personal touch with Congressmen. Two things he looked for: realization of the "big country-life idea"—for he had served on Roosevelt's Country Life Commission—and "restoration of popular government." Wilson, in turn wanted Page as Secretary of Interior. Like a bolt out of the blue came the offer of the English ambassadorship.

Few ambassadors have worked on such broad lines and with such unsparing energy as Page did in London from 1913 to September, 1918; and none has left a more interesting and illuminating picture of an ambassador's opportunities and difficulties. He quickly came to know "the men and the currents of opinion" (the words are Wilson's) and strove to acquaint the Administration with them. The British, he wrote the President, in September, 1913, "make a sharp distinction between our people and our Government. \* \* \* They sincerely regret that a democracy does not seem to be able to justify itself." Therefore, with an infinite show of sportsmanship and good breeding, he tried to make Englishmen understand. His central idea soon came to be the coöperation of English-speaking peoples, under the lead of the United States as the most powerful part, for the promotion of peace and the uplift of humanity. "If we could find some friendly use," he wrote House, August 28, 1913, "for these navies and armies and kings and things—in the service of humanity—they'd follow us. \* \* \* They want a job. Then they'd quit sitting on their haunches, growling at one another. \* \* \* the cleaning up of backward lands is now in order—for the people that live there. \* \* \* Work on a world plan. Nothing but blue chips, you know." And

later to his children: "My plan is to lead the British \* \* \* All we have to do is to be courteous." With this in mind one can understand his humiliation and resentment at the State Department's negligence and its "leaks"—Page finally had to send his important information to House for personal transmission to the President. He wanted Wilson to come over and stand by the King so that the whole world could have a look at them. But on hearing of Bryan's proposed European tour he wrote: "Now, God restrain me from saying, much more from doing, anything rash. But if I've got to go home at all, I'd rather go before he comes." One can understand, too, his wanting joint intervention in Mexico but later thanking Heaven that you (Wilson) refrained, his joy at the repeal of the Panama Canal Tolls Bill as an act of honor and fair dealing, and his rebound from almost utter despair to unbounded joy and killing activity when the Administration changed from neutrality to participation in the World War. Did Page contribute to this change? One can not tell. Wilson called Page more British than the British; but Page, while maintaining outward impartiality, continually brought pressure by letters and once in an interview in behalf of a stand against militarism. This he called "waging neutrality." And in the end Wilson wrote: "You have performed your difficult duties with distinguished success." Roosevelt was more enthusiastic. As for the English, official as well as popular thanks seemed to come from the very heart. Grey was always his close friend and Balfour said, "I loved that man."

But Page had killed himself at his job. "I find myself," he wrote Mrs. Page in September, 1913, "thinking of the winter down South. \* \* \* I'm mortal tired. \* \* \* Nine and a half more days here. \* \* \* If it were nine and three-quarters, I should not stand it, but break for home prematurely."

It should be understood, however, that this is not a life in the usual sense. One looks in vain for formal description of personal appearance, private life or business transactions. Background is wanting in many important places: Why, for instance, were North Carolina leaders such standpatters in Page's early days? And what was the scheme of Wilson's thinking into which Page's special views failed to fit? Moreover, one

must do his own evaluating. Did Page, for example, sometimes over state for the sake of "getting across" his idea? Did he sometimes make bad mistakes in his estimate of men or his forecasting of the important next task?

None the less, it is a great study of a very great and lovable personality. And it affords an admirable background for the "Letters." As for these letters, they are mostly written from England, but are numerous and cover a wide range of topics. And they are, I think, as Wilson said in 1915, "the best letters I have ever read."

C. C. PEARSON.

Wake Forest.



## A SELECT BIBLIOGRAPHY OF RECENT ARTICLES ON NORTH CAROLINA

*Walter Hines Page*, Lawrence F. Abbott.

*The Outlook*, December 12, 1923.

*Issachar Is a Strong Ass*, Gerald W. Johnson.

*The Journal of Social Forces*, Vol. II, No. 1, November, 1923.

*Training for Rural Leadership (II)*, *The North Carolina Plan*,  
Wiley B. Sanders.

*Ibid.*

*Developing a State Through Student Club Work*, S. H.  
Hobbs, Jr.

*Ibid.*

*Money an Indisputable Argument*, N. C. Newbold.

*Ibid.*

*The Influence of War Travel on One Rural State (North Caro-  
lina)*, R. B. House.

*Ibid.*

*A Christmas City of the Old South*, Winifred Kirkland.

*The North American Review*, Vol. 218, No. 6, December, 1923.

*North Carolina's Recent Progress*, William H. Richardson.

*The American Review of Reviews*, Vol. LXVIII, No. 6, December, 1923.

*Kenyon Letters*.

*The Virginia Magazine of History and Biography*, Vol. XXXI, No. 4,  
October, 1923 (and No. 3 preceding).

*Sketches of Durham and Durham County*, W. K. Boyd.

*Durham Morning Herald*, October 7, 1923, and late numbers.

Students of North Carolina history, government, and economics will find the following publications of constant value:

The State Auditor, Raleigh: *Plan of Reorganization of State Departments, Boards, and Commissions*. Published 1923, and containing a brief summary of the legal status, functions, organization, and history of the several State departments, boards, institutions, and commissions.

The North Carolina Department of Agriculture, Raleigh: *Handbook: North Carolina The Land of Opportunity*, 1923.

*The University of North Carolina News Letter*. Published weekly by the University of North Carolina Press, Chapel Hill, N. C., and now in its tenth volume.

*North Carolina Agriculture and Industry*, published weekly by the North Carolina State College of Agriculture and Engineering, Raleigh, and now in its first volume.

*Natural Resources*, A bi-weekly publication of the North Carolina Geological and Economic Survey, Chapel Hill, N. C., and now in its first volume.

*Public Welfare Progress*, published monthly by the State Board of Charities and Public Welfare, Raleigh, and now in its fifth volume.

*North Carolina Highway Bulletin*. Published monthly by the North Carolina State Highway Commission, Raleigh, and now in its fourth volume.

# THE NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL REVIEW

---

VOLUME I

APRIL, 1924

NUMBER 2

---

## CONTENTS

RICHARD DOBBS SPAIGHT.....	95
ALEXANDER B. ANDREWS	
THE LURE OF HISTORICAL RESEARCH.....	121
ADELAIDE L. FRIES	
THE NORTH CAROLINA FUEL ADMINISTRATION.....	138
[DOCUMENTS]	
BOOK REVIEWS .....	176
HENDERSON'S <i>Washington's Southern Tour</i> —By E. M. CARROLL; MC- ILWAIN'S <i>The American Revolution</i> —By HENRY THOMAS SHANKS; SHAW'S <i>Davidson College</i> —By THOMAS P. HARRISON; BICKETT'S <i>Letters and Papers</i> —By O. J. COFFIN; RAYMOND'S <i>Lloyd George</i> — By CHESTER P. HIGBY; PRIESTLY'S <i>The Mexican Nation</i> —By W. W. PIERSON; WERTENBAKER'S <i>The Planters of Colonial Virginia</i> — By F. W. CLONTS.	
RECENT PUBLICATIONS ON NORTH CAROLINA.....	197
HISTORICAL NEWS .....	199
WAR DIARY OF COLONEL PRATT.....	210

---

Issued quarterly by the North Carolina Historical Commission, Raleigh, N. C.  
Subscription, \$2.00 a year, single numbers, 50 cents, special rate to mem-  
bers of the State Literary and Historical Association, \$1.00 a  
year. Entry as second class mail matter at the Post Office  
at Raleigh, N. C., pending.



# THE NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL REVIEW

---

*Published by The North Carolina Historical Commission, Raleigh, N. C.*

---

## THE NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL COMMISSION

THOMAS M. PITTMAN, *Chairman*

M. C. S. NOBLE

HERIOT CLARKSON

FRANK WOOD

W. N. EVERETT

D. H. HILL, *Secretary*

R. B. HOUSE, *Archivist*

---

*This review was established in January, 1924, as a medium of publication and discussion of history in North Carolina. It is issued to other institutions by exchange, but to the general public by subscription only. The regular price is \$2.00 a year. To members of the State Literary and Historical Association there is a special price of \$1.00 a year.*

---

## CONTENTS OF THE LAST NUMBER

JANUARY, 1924

WALTER HINES PAGE—MEMORIAL ADDRESS.....*Albert Shaw*

THE WAR SAVINGS CAMPAIGN IN 1918.....*Gilbert T. Stephenson*

DIARY OF COLONEL JOSEPH HYDE PRATT

HISTORICAL NEWS

BOOK REVIEW

RECENT ARTICLES ON NORTH CAROLINA

# THE NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL REVIEW

---

VOLUME I

APRIL, 1924

NUMBER 2

---

## RICHARD DOBBS SPAIGHT

BY ALEXANDER B. ANDREWS

Richard Dobbs Spaight was born in the city of New Bern, N. C., on March 25th, 1758.<sup>1</sup> His father was Richard Spaight,<sup>2</sup> a grand nephew of Governor Arthur Dobbs, who accompanied that illustrious Irishman when he came to North Carolina in October, 1754,<sup>3</sup> to become Governor of the Royal Colony, while his mother was a Miss Elizabeth Wilson, then the widow Moore, of Craven County.<sup>4</sup> His father, Richard Spaight,<sup>5</sup> was successively acting clerk of the Upper House in December, 1754, in 1755 Pay Master to the North Carolina Regiment commanded by Col. James Innis,<sup>6</sup> which was a part of the ill-fated expedition against the French and Indians on the Monongahela and Ohio Rivers, which terminated so disastrously in the battle near the present site of Pittsburgh. That same year he was commissioned Secretary of the Colony,<sup>7</sup> which *ex officio* made him clerk to the Upper House,<sup>8</sup> and sometime during 1756 he was married, as we learn from the letter of Governor Robert Dinwiddie of Virginia,<sup>4</sup> written on November 10th of that year, congratulating Secretary Spaight upon his marriage. He resided "three miles from New Bern on the other side of the Trent River," and was a parishioner of the Rev. James Reid, a missionary sent out by the Society for the propagation for the Church of England.<sup>9</sup> In 1757 he had a dispute with Mr. Joseph Leach about the entry of a tract of land of Batchelor's Creek, which transaction was criticized

---

<sup>1</sup> Wheeler's Reminiscences, p. 5; 4 North Carolina Biographical Sketches 397. (Sketches of Richard Dobbs Spaight by Marshall DeLancey Haywood.)

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. Life of Gov. Wm. Tryon. (Haywood), 46, 47.

<sup>3</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. VI, 978, Life of Tryon, 10.

<sup>4</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. V, 646; VI, 276.

<sup>5</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. V, 213.

<sup>6</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. VI, 273.

<sup>7</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. V, 442.

<sup>8</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. V, 515.

<sup>9</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. VI, 273, 264.

in the Colonial Assembly.<sup>10</sup> On February 4, 1757, he was commissioned as a member of the Council of the Royal Governor and was inducted into office on November 18th at New Bern.<sup>11</sup> He also had the power of attorney from George Augustus Selwyn,<sup>12</sup> who owned a large tract of land in the vicinity of the present city of Charlotte, including the site of that city. In 1759 we find him still participating in the deliberations of the Council,<sup>13</sup> and also he was one of the committee of seven on the building of the Court House at New Bern;<sup>14</sup> also acting as Associate Judge of the Court.<sup>15</sup> In 1760 he whips Thomas Core for slandering his wife, for which he was brought before the Assembly and excused.<sup>16</sup> In 1761 he with Joseph Leech and John Fonville was commissioned to complete the Court House at New Bern,<sup>16</sup> originally authorized by Acts 1759, Ch. 12.<sup>17</sup> On April 26, 1762, he was allowed 60 pounds, the value of a slave Cato, who was outlawed and died of wounds inflicted in being apprehended.<sup>18</sup> On December 11th<sup>19</sup> we find his last appearance in Council, and from a later date, February 23, 1763,<sup>20</sup> we learn by Governor Arthur Dobbs that Richard Spaight died prior to that date. Of him Rev. Mr. McDowell, of the Church of England, Missionary at Brunswick, writes to the Secretary of the Society for the Propagation of the Gospel in London under date of March 26, 1763: "Mr. Spaight, one of the King's Council and your late secretary, is lately dead, he came over with his excellency and was a very sprightly gay young man."<sup>21</sup>

Richard Spaight must have left considerable property, for on April 25, 1764,<sup>22</sup> Governor Arthur Dobbs and Frederick Gregg (with Richard Lyon and John Davis, Jr. as sureties) qualified as guardian of Richard Dobbs Spaight, giving bond for the sum of 10,000 pounds sterling money on Great Britain.

Little is known of the life of Richard Dobbs Spaight for the next fifteen years, his biographical sketches<sup>23</sup> stating that he was sent

<sup>10</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. VI, 274.

<sup>11</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. V, 817; XI, 126-7; V, 989.

<sup>12</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. VI, 797; VII, 17; V, 773-4-5.

<sup>13</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. VI, 75, 84, 115.

<sup>14</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XXV, 401, 462.

<sup>15</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. VI, 275.

<sup>16</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XXV, 462.

<sup>17</sup> N. O. Col. Rec. XXV, 401.

<sup>18</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XXII, 837.

<sup>19</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. VI, 758-762.

<sup>20</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. VI, 967.

<sup>21</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. VI, 978.

<sup>22</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. VI, 1042; XXIV, 848-849.

<sup>23</sup> See note above.



abroad to be educated and completed his education at the University of Glasgow,<sup>24</sup> the natural deduction being that he was in the care of his Dobbs relatives, his great great uncle and guardian having left two sons,<sup>25</sup> Mr. Conway Dobbs of Antrim, and Captain Edward Brice Dobbs of the English Army, the latter having served as a member of the Council in North Carolina.<sup>26</sup> About 1778 he returned to the Colony, and during the stirring times of 1778 and 1779 his personality must have impressed the people of his country, for on October 18, 1779,<sup>27</sup> he presented a certificate of election to the House of Commons from the town of New Bern in the place of Richard Cogdell who had been elected Treasurer of the District of New Bern. On October 19th, William Blount, afterwards, nine years later, his colleague in the Convention at Philadelphia and later United States Senator from Tennessee, filed a protest which the Committee on Elections on October 21st<sup>28</sup> sustained, the reasons given being as follows:

UNIVERSITY OF GLASGOW.  
21 November, 1912.

<sup>24</sup>MR. A. B. ANDREWS, ESQ., JR.  
Attorney and Counsellor At Law,  
230 Fayetteville St.  
Raleigh, N. C.

DEAR SIR: Your letter, addressed to the Principal, has been handed to me. The name of "Spaight" does not occur in our records at or near the period you mention. Our records, however, of those days are somewhat incomplete and not altogether satisfactory and Richard Dobbs Spaight may have been a student here although we have no record of him.

There is presently going through the press a book entitled "Matriculation Albums of the University of Glasgow, 1728-1858," annotated by W. Innes Addison (late Registrar) and from the proof sheets I cull the following regarding the Dobbs family, as it may be of interest to you:—

A. D. 1743.

"Nomina discipulorum in quacunq[ue] facultate qui prius in Academiæ album inscripti non fuerunt, quique nunc demum inscribuntur ut suffragium ferendi in Rectore Magnifico eligendo, juxta Academiæ Statuta, jure gaudeant."

(1038) "Conway Dobbs filius Arthuri Dobbs Armigeri in urbe Lisburne  
in Com: de Antrim."

"Otherwise Conway Richard Dobbs. Of Castle Dobbs. M. P. for Carrickfergus and High Sheriff of County Antrim, 1752. Died 11th April, 1811. Father of Richard Dobbs, matriculated in 1773—see No. 3023."

A. D. 1771.

"Nomina Discipulorum qui hoc Anno intrarunt sub Presidio  
D. Thomæ Reid Ethices Professoris."

(3028) "Richardus Dobbs Filius natu maximus Conway Richardi, Armigeri de Castle Dobbs in Comitatu de Antrim Hyberniciæ."

"Of Castle Dobbs. Died 24th January, 1840, aged 87. Son of Conway Dobbs, matriculated in 1742—See No. 1038.

Yours faithfully,

J. C. BALLANTYNE.

<sup>25</sup> 3 N. C. Biographical History (Sketch of Gov. Arthur Dobbs), 80-83.

<sup>26</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. VI, 75.

<sup>27</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XIII, 914.

<sup>28</sup> Ibid. 928.

Mr. Haywood, from the Committee of Privileges and Elections, reported as follows:

Your Committee, to whom was referred the Petition of Mr. William Blount, beg leave to report: That upon examination of Depositions, produced by said Blount & Mr. Richard Spaight, they find that an election was held at New Bern on the 25th and 26th of June, last, for Electing a Member to represent the said Town of New Bern in General Assembly, that the Poll was opened about 10 o'clock in the forenoon, that the Tickets were received and put in a Tin Cannister without a Top, and that the said Cannister at neither of the adjournments was sealed. That a certain David Thompson, a Soldier in the State Regiment, and a certain Richard O'Dowdy, offered their Tickets, which were refused by the Sheriff; the Ticket of the former because he was a Soldier, and that of the latter, because he had removed from New Bern to avoid the smallpox.

Your Committee further beg leave to report that it appears, by the Confession of the said Blount & Spaight, that many persons voted who had no right to do so.

Upon the whole, your Committee are of the opinion that the Election was illegal and ought to be set aside.

All which is Humbly submitted.

W. HAYWOOD, *Chairman*.

The House taking the said Report into consideration, concurred therewith.

On July 31, 1780, when he was an aide upon the staff of Major General Richard Caswell, then in command of the North Carolina Militia in camp four miles above Cheraw, we find him writing to Governor Abner Nash, his townsman and neighbor,<sup>29</sup> giving information as to military affairs, and we note that he was present at the Battle of Camden Court House. In 1781 at the session of the Assembly held at Wake Court House, he was again present as a member from the town of New Bern,<sup>30</sup> and on behalf of the House was appointed a committee with Colonel Williams of the Senate to notify Governor Thomas Burke of his election.<sup>31</sup> He was also a member of the committee on the Governor's message delivered two weeks later on July 9th to that same Assembly,<sup>32</sup> and three days later was elected First Major of Militia.<sup>33</sup> On April 16, 1782, he again represented the town of New Bern in the House of Commons in the Assembly which met at Hillsboro,<sup>34</sup> and at which session he was placed in

<sup>29</sup> *Ibid.* XV, 9 and 10.

<sup>30</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVII, 878.

<sup>31</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVII, 811, 896.

<sup>32</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVII, 852.

<sup>33</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVII, 952, 954.

<sup>34</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVI, 2, 29; XIX, 18.

nomination as a delegate to Congress,<sup>35</sup> the successful candidates being Abner Nash, William Blount, Dr. Hugh Williamson and Benjamin Hawkins, while he, with Thomas Person, Joseph Jones, Archibald Macline and Adlai Osborn, were also voted for. Again on April 18, 1783, the Assembly meets at Hillsboro and we find him the representative of the town of New Bern,<sup>36</sup> during the session of which Assembly he was appointed by Governor Alexander Martin as a delegate to the Continental Congress to succeed Colonel William Blount, resigned, which appointment he accepted on May 9th. He was re-elected by the Assembly in 1783 and 1784, the Congress sitting at Philadelphia. In 1784 we find him selected as one of the trustees of the New Bern Academy.<sup>37</sup> On November 19, 1785, the Assembly met at New Bern, when he with Abner Neale represented Craven County,<sup>38</sup> at which session he was elected speaker of the House of Commons.<sup>39</sup> He was named as one of the original trustees of the Kinston Academy,<sup>40</sup> and that year resigned his seat in the Continental Congress.<sup>41</sup>

In 1786 he was a member of the House of Commons from Craven County in the assembly which met at Fayetteville on November 18th,<sup>42</sup> where his and his colleague's seat were contested by John Allen and Albert Nixon, which contest the committee dismissed, affirming Spaight's title to his seat.<sup>43</sup> In this as in other Assemblies, we find him serving on many committees considering governor's messages and other financial matters relating to the State.<sup>44</sup> He opposed the bill to charter the Dismal Swamp Company and urged its delay until the succeeding year;<sup>45</sup> by Chapter 35 of that year he and John Wright Stanly, John Hawkes, Spyers Singleton and Abner Neale were the managers of a lottery, the proceeds of which were to complete a Poor House in New Bern.<sup>46</sup>

At the session of the Assembly held at Fayetteville commencing November 18, 1786, there was a foreshadowing of the bitter debate which was to come two years later at Hillsboro when the Convention of 1788 met to consider the Constitution of the United States,

<sup>35</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVI, 90.

<sup>36</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XIX, 234, 235.

<sup>37</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XXIV, 607.

<sup>38</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVII, 264.

<sup>39</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVII, 166.

<sup>40</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XXIV, 754, Acts. 1785, Ch. 32.

<sup>41</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVII, 338.

<sup>42</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVIII, 226.

<sup>43</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVIII, 247, 269.

<sup>44</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVIII, 127, 230, 250, 290, 309, 348.

<sup>45</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVIII, 350.

<sup>46</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XXIV, 821; XVIII, 341.



which had been framed at Philadelphia in 1787, which was then rejected and afterwards adopted by a large vote by the Convention of 1789 at Fayetteville.

In the closing day of 1786 a resolution was offered to investigate the conduct of the judges.<sup>47</sup> On Monday, November 27, 1786, Governor Richard Caswell sent to the House of Commons the petitions of Donald Shaw and Alexander McIver asking the House to take such orders on them as they should think proper.<sup>48</sup> This was sent over to the Senate, and the Committee of which John Rutherford was Chairman reported as follows: "That the inquiry into the present state of the administration of justice in the Superior Court is absolutely necessary, and they beg leave to recommend that the speakers of both Houses be requested to notify the Honorable, the Judges of the Superior Court of Law and Equity, that this inquiry will take place, in order that they may give their attendance if they think proper. Your committee also recommend that the Superior Court of the Wilmington District be requested to attend this committee to give such information as may come to his knowledge respecting the special abuses said to have been committed by the Honorable, the Judges of the Superior Courts, in the case of fines and forfeitures, all of which is submitted." At the same time John Rutherford made a recommendation on the memorial of McIver recommending mercy towards McIver and also a refunding of the moneys alleged to have been erroneously collected by him. Under date of December 14th, at Wilmington, Judge Samuel Ashe addressed a letter to the Honorable, the Speaker of the General Assembly, defending the action of the judges, which was spread upon the minutes of the Senate of Saturday, December 23, 1786, defending the action of the judges, demanding a strict inquiry into the charges made. It is impracticable in an article like the present to review his letter, occupying as it does five and one-half pages in the Colonial Records. However, the extract referring to the case of Bayard against Singleton, which had been argued at the May Term, 1786 in New Bern, is of interest, from which we quote:

As to the affair at New Bern (if it is in charge) the Houses may probably have a fuller information of it than I can give, but they will pardon and bear a short recital of it; as far as it respects myself it was thus: A suit in Ejectment had been commenced in the Superior Court at New Bern prior

<sup>47</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVIII, 479, 80.

<sup>48</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVIII, 255.

to the passing of the act entitled an act, &c., and at the Court in May term last the hasty defendant filed his affidavit (without producing his titles) setting forth that the property in dispute had been confiscated and sold by the Commissioner of the District, and prayed a dismissal of the suit, this brought on long arguments from the Council on each side on constitutional points; and then the pleadings were finished, the Court made a few observations on our Constitution and System of Government. I on my part (as far as I now recollect) observed that at the time of our separation from Great Britain we were thrown into a similar situation with a set of people ship-wrecked and cast on a maroon'd island, without laws, without magistrates, without Government or any legal authority. That being thus circumstanced, the People of this Country, with a general union of sentiment by their Delegates, met in Congress and formed that system or those fundamental principles comprised in the Constitution, dividing the powers of Government into separate and distinct branches, to wit: the Legislative, the Judicial and the Executive, and assigning to each several and distinct powers, and prescribing their several limits and boundaries. This I said without disclosing a single sentiment upon the cause, or the proceeding, or the law introduced in support of it. The other Judges proposed to take an advisari thereon, to which I readily agreed, as the printer had never furnished me with the law, and I had then only read it cursorily, and as I had reason to believe the next Assembly meant to revise the law, and in respect to them wished to decline an opinion, and lastly from a strange malady with which I was then attacked, having not slept three hours in as many days and nights next preceding the trial, though I had taken repeated doses of laudanum, I was afraid to give my opinion in that situation in any matter, especially in one of importance. I therefore immediately after the rising of the Court, fearing my malady would increase, left New Bern; the matter (I have told) was stirred again, but the result I know only from report. If my opinion of our Constitution is an error, I fear it is an incurable one, for I had the honor to assist in the forming it and confess I so designed it, and I believe every other gentleman concerned did also.<sup>49</sup>

From Judge Ashe's letter it would seem that the courts of that day were then accused of delay in business, which he mentions as follows:

As to the charge of delay of business whispered against the Judges, I candidly admit to be in part true; for tho' the delay has arisen from the Bar, the Bench are blamable; they have been to blame in not constraining the bar to a more punctual and close attention to the business of the Court; for often while the Court have been waiting they have been scouring and hunting after fees; the Bench have been to blame also for indulging the Bar in unnecessary long and rambling harangues, calculated only to amuse the client and pay him in empty words for the extravagance of the fee. But Sirs, for these blamable indulgences at the first, I had (and I believe my brothers in office also) laudable motives. I wished to convince the people at large (for the minds of many, though they acquiesced under, were not

<sup>49</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVIII, 137.

reconciled to, our Government) that the suitors would receive as much justice from the Courts of the present Government as from those in the former—that the present Judges were as easy of access, as patient in hearing and as desirous of redressing wrongs and doing equal justice as those under the Crown. These motives (with me) first gave rise to those indulgences which the lawyers (an encroaching tribe) have carried into a mischief.<sup>50</sup>

This letter was sent to a committee composed of MacLaine, William R. Davie, William Hooper, Richard Dobbs Spaight, J. G. Blount, John Stokes and John Sitgraves, who investigated the matter<sup>51</sup> on Monday, January 1, 1787.<sup>52</sup> The committee presented their report to the two Houses sitting as a Committee of the whole, Richard Dobbs Spaight being chosen as Chairman<sup>53</sup> and the Committee's report being of some four pages and calling by name Judges Spencer, Williams and Ashe, stating among other things:

That the delay of the judges was greatly increased by tedious disputes between Judge Spencer and Judge Williams, and all of the Judges, as it combined to waste their time and delay the business by long and frequent unnecessary charges to the jury, even in cases where they have been all agreed, seldom trying more than six or eight cases during the term.<sup>52</sup>

Also they referred to the decided case of Bayard against Singleton (1 N. C., 42, May term, 1787):

That at New Bern Court in May Term, 1786, in several Suits brought against Mr. Singleton and others, the Defendants under the Act for quieting in their possessions the purchasers of confiscated property, produced such Affidavits as the Act appears to require, and prayed that their suits might be dismissed, but the Judges declined to decide either for or against the Defendants, though another Term has elapsed since the Arguments were heard, whereas if any insuperable Doubts arose on that Subject your Committee submit whether they should not have stated them to the General Assembly, that the Act in question might have undergone a Revisal. See the New Bern Petition marked No. 12.<sup>52</sup>

The House sitting as a committee of the whole took the matter under consideration and brought in a report adjudging in (1) that the suspension of Peter Mallett did not amount to a misdemeanor in office, (2) that the judges were not guilty of any malpractice in the banishment of Francis Brice and Daniel McNeale, and (3) that the judges have not been guilty of any malpractice in office.<sup>54</sup>

<sup>50</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVIII, 137.

<sup>51</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVIII, 194, 348, 400.

<sup>52</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVIII, 213, 428.

<sup>53</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVIII, 194, 425.

<sup>54</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XVIII, 428.



Upon the roll call this report was rejected by a vote of forty-nine to twenty-two, every one of the seven members of the committee voting No excepting Stokes whose name was not recorded.

In view of the interest evoked by the late decision of Bayard against Singleton the criticising of the court for delay is of interest.

On the concluding day of the session there was entered the protest of William Hooper, William Pool, Richard Dobbs Spaight, John Sitgraves and John Hay against the action of the House in excusing the judges.

*Constitutional Convention of 1787*

On January 4, 1787, the General Assembly on joint ballot elected as delegates to the Convention to form a Constitution, to be held at Philadelphia on the second Monday in May, Governor Richard Caswell, General Alexander Martin, General William R. Davie, Colonel Richard Dobbs Spaight, and General Willie Jones.\* Governor Caswell declined the position, and William Blount, afterwards United States Senator from Tennessee was appointed April 23d.<sup>55</sup> Also on April 3d Dr. Hugh Williamson was appointed in place of General Willie Jones.<sup>56</sup> The session of Congress met on Monday, May 14th, but not until Friday, May 25th, when the majority of the New Jersey delegates appeared, making the number of States then represented seven, did the Convention open for busi-

\*N. C. Col. Rec. XVIII, 462. Samuel Johnston and Dr. Hugh Williamson were also placed in nomination. 1 Elliott's Debates (2d Edition, 1836) 169-170-176.

THE STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA.

TO THE HONORABLE RICHARD DOBBS SPAIGHT, ESQ.

*Greeting.*

Whereas, our general assembly at their late session, holden at Fayetteville, by adjournment, in the month of January last, did by joint ballot of the senate and house of commons, elect Richard Caswell, Alexander Martin, William Richardson Davie, Richard Dobbs Spaight and Willie Jones, Esqrs. deputies to attend a convention of delegates from several United States of America, proposed to be held in the city of Philadelphia, in May next, for the purpose of revising the federal Constitution.

We do therefore by these presents, nominate, commissionate and appoint you the said Richard Dobbs Spaight, one of the deputies for an in behalf of us, to meet with our other deputies at Philadelphia, on the first day of May next, and with them, or any two of them, to confer with such deputies as may have been, or shall be appointed by other states, for the purpose aforesaid; To hold, exercise and enjoy the said appointment, with all powers, authorities and emoluments, to the same weident and belonging, or in any wise appertaining, you conforming, in every instance, to the act of our said assembly under which you are appointed.

Witness, Richard Caswell, Esq. our Governor, Captain General and Commander in Chief, under his hand and our great seal, at Kinston, the 14th day of April, in the eleventh year of our independence, Anno Dom. 1787.

RICHARD CASWELL.

By His Excellency's command:  
WINSTON CASWELL,  
P. Sect'ry. (L. S.)

<sup>55</sup> 1 Elliotts Debates, 171.

<sup>56</sup> 1 Elliotts Debates, 171.

ness.<sup>57</sup> The States represented at that time were New York, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Virginia, North Carolina and South Carolina,<sup>58</sup> with New Jersey made seven. Three days later Massachusetts and Maryland appeared, and on the 30th Connecticut and Georgia were represented, and not until July 23d was the State of New Hampshire represented, this being after the majority of the New York delegates had withdrawn. The State of Rhode Island was not represented.<sup>59</sup>

We presume Colonel Spaight arrived in Philadelphia on May 20th and we find a letter from Governor Caswell to John Gray Blount, Esq., dated April 24th, 1787,<sup>61</sup> enclosing the commission of William Blount as Deputy to the Convention, and a warrant in favor of Mr. Spaight which he suggests may be forwarded to Mr. William Blount from Washington by such conveyance as he may think proper or else that Mr. Winston Caswell may take it to Spaight at New Bern. Under date of May 28th, 1787,<sup>62</sup> from New York Hon. William Blount writes to Governor Caswell acknowledging that he had been advised by Mr. Spaight soon after his arrival in Philadelphia of the commission for him (Colonel Blount) as a delegate to attend the Convention, and advises Governor Caswell that he had been sick and at that time was too indisposed to take a journey as far as Philadelphia, but as soon as recovered he would leave in a few days to attend the appointment. He further advises that on the 24th inst. only six States had appeared, among them North Carolina, which had four members, and that on the 25th there are seven, and at that period the delegates from Massachusetts had passed through the city.<sup>62</sup>

An interesting side light on the Convention is shown by several letters published in Volume 20 of the Colonial Records. Under date of June 12, 1787, Governor Spaight writes to Governor Caswell:

I should have done myself the pleasure of writing to your Excellency oftener than I have done, but not being at liberty to communicate anything

<sup>57</sup> 1 Elliotts Debates.

<sup>58</sup> 1 Elliotts Debates, 176-177-178.

Mon. May 28. "Also a motion was made by Mr. Spaight, one of the deputies of North Carolina, to provide that, on the one hand, the house may not be precluded, by a vote upon any question, from revising the subject matter of it, when they see cause: Nor, on the other hand, be led too hastily to rescind a decision, which was the result of mature deliberation."

<sup>59</sup> One Hundredth Anniversary of the Constitution of the United States by Hampton L. Carson. Volume 1, 33.

<sup>60</sup> Was present Friday, May 25, as were Gen. Alexander Martin, Gen. Wm. R. Davie and Dr. Hugh Williamson.

<sup>61</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XX, 682, 706.

<sup>62</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XX, 707.

that passed the Convention I have nothing to write about.<sup>63</sup> He then advises that it will probably take at least two months before the Convention will finish their work. Two days later General Martin, Colonel Spaight, General Davie, and Dr. Williamson join in a letter to Governor Caswell as follows:

By the date of this you will observe that we are near the middle of June and though we sit from day to day, Saturdays included, it is not possible for us to determine when the business before us can be finished, a very large field presents to our view without a single straight or eligible road that has been trodden by the feet of nations. An union of sovereign states preserving their civil liberties and connected together by such ties as to preserve permanent and effective government is a system not described, it is a circumstance that has not occurred in the history of man; if we shall be so fortunate as to find this in descript our time will have been well spent.<sup>64</sup>

Under date of July 7th these four Deputies again write Governor Caswell:

The Convention having on the 26th of last month finished the outline of the amendments proposed to the Federal system, the business was of course committed for detail and we have the pleasure to inform your Excellency that the report was received on yesterday. From the progress, which has already taken up near three months, we are induced to believe the result of our deliberation will shortly be presented to the United States in Congress, and as they are only to consider whether the system shall or shall not be recommended to the States, the business cannot remain long before them.<sup>65</sup>

Under date of July 26th we find Governor Caswell at Kinston writing Colonel Spaight at Philadelphia a letter from which we quote:

I have been very much indisposed a great part of the time since you left the State is the reason I have not before this done myself the honor of acknowledging your receipt of the 20th of May and 12th of June, which came to hand some weeks past. However, I am now able to be about and hope to get restored to health.

The Convention in my judgment have done wisely in enjoining secrecy in their members; was the case otherwise it would give more room to Babblers and Scribblers to exercise their powers than they can be at liberty to take in their present case.

From the hint you throw out in your first letter I am induced to think that the plan of a National Parliament and Supreme Executive with adequate powers to the government of the Union will be more suitable to our situation and circumstances than any other, but I should wish also an independent Judicial Department to decide any contest that may happen be-

<sup>63</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XX, 723.

<sup>64</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XX, 723, 724.

<sup>65</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XX, 733.



tween the United States and individual States, and between one State and another; this however is only a hint, you may not see the necessity of it as forcibly as I do and I presume now it is too late to offer any reasons for the establishment, as that matter I flatter myself is before this got over; all I can say respecting the Convention is to recommend a perseverance to the end, to the Deputies from this State.<sup>66</sup>

It is to be regretted that the debates of the Convention of 1787 have not been preserved. An examination of the minutes of that body, as well at Yates' Minutes of the Secret Sessions, show only the proceedings. As it was a representation of States the votes were taken entirely by States and never by individuals. It is interesting to note that while Colonel William Blount, the fifth member, did not appear until June 20th,<sup>67</sup> yet the entire time from May 25th to June 20th the North Carolina delegation never divided evenly, but always the delegation appeared unanimous, certainly it acted as the majority did. Towards the end of the proceedings the Convention seemed to refer everything to a Committee of States, selected by ballot, and North Carolina seems generally to have been represented by Dr. Hugh Williamson. Dr. Williamson was then a man of sixty years of age, considerably the senior of the other delegates, a Professor in the University of Pennsylvania, and probably his varied experience as a physician, a merchant, college professor, and a public official<sup>68</sup> doubtless gave him the tact to deal with the men he met in the diplomatic way that is so productive of achievement in legislative work.

Of the North Carolina delegation Mr. Hampton L. Carson in his One Hundredth Anniversary of the Constitution of the United States thus describes the several delegates:

RICHARD DOBBS SPAIGHT <sup>69</sup>

He proposed the election of United States Senators by the Legislatures of the States, and suggested seven years as the Presidential term of office. He was in favor of reconsidering the decision once arrived at, to choose the President by electors appointed by the State Legislatures, and objected to requiring more than a majority to pass a navigation act.

HUGH WILLIAMSON

In the Convention he was the most active member from his State. He proposed impeachment of the President for malpractice or neglect; preferred

<sup>66</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XX, 752.

<sup>67</sup> 1 Elliotts Debates, 216.

<sup>68</sup> Wheeler's History of North Carolina pp. 91-93. 5 North Carolina Biographical History, (Sketch of Hugh Williamson, by Stephen B. Weeks).

<sup>69</sup> One Hundredth Anniversary of the Constitution of the U. S. by Hampton L. Carson, Vol. 1, page 194.

the consent of an executive council to appointments instead of either branch of the legislature; suggested the appointment by Congress of a provisional successor of the President; thought that the Presidential term should be six years. On the whole, he preferred an executive of three persons to a single one, and strongly disapproved of the seat of government being at a State Capital. He wished the Senate to be a small select body, with its members chosen for a term of six years, and thought that representatives should be paid by the State legislatures. He urged a compromise between the large and small States as to representation, and the protection of Southern interests in apportioning representation. He approved of the exclusive right of representatives to originate money bills, the prohibition of a tax on exports, and contended for a provision for trial by jury. He doubted whether controversies between the States should in all cases be decided by the judiciary.

ALEXANDER MARTIN

In the Convention he desired that the ineligibility of representatives should be limited to offices created or augmented during their term. In this he warmly supported Mr. Madison. When it was moved by Mr. King "that the States at the first meeting of the general legislature should be represented by sixty-five members," in which five representatives were allotted to North Carolina, Mr. Martin contended that his State was entitled to six members, but his views did not prevail. He supported Mason of Virginia in his views that it was highly improper that the seat of the general government should be at any State capital, first because it tended to produce disputes concerning jurisdiction, and next because of the intermixture of the legislatures tended to give a provincial tincture to the national deliberations.

WILLIAM R. DAVIE

He proposed an impeachment of the President for malpractice or neglect, a matter which he deemed of vital importance to secure the good behavior of the executive, "for," said he, "if he be not impeached whilst in office, he will spare no effort or means whatever to get himself re-elected." He proposed eight years as the executive term, but subsequently supported Mason in his motion "that the executive be appointed for seven years, and be ineligible for a second time." He insisted that slaves be included in the ratio of representation.

WILLIAM BLOUNT

So far as the records show, he took no active part in the debates.

The Assembly which met at Tarboro on November 19, 1787, found Richard Dobbs Spaight as a member of the House of Commons from Craven County.<sup>70</sup> He appeared on November 19th,<sup>71</sup> and upon his qualification was immediately added to the Committees on Finance and directed to prepare bills of a public nature.<sup>72</sup> Later in December he was made a member of the Committee to prepare a bill of

<sup>70</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XX, 119.

<sup>71</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XX, 151.

<sup>72</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XX, 152, 339, 157.

Impeachments, which was introduced,<sup>73</sup> and also introduced a bill to change the time of the meeting of the General Assembly.<sup>74</sup> On December 15, 1787,<sup>75</sup> names were placed in nomination for a delegate to Congress, Spaight's name not being among them.

As Chairman of the Committee he introduced the bill to define treason by reason of the action of the people of the western country.<sup>76</sup>

At this same session (1787) he is named upon a Committee on the resolution about the navigation of the Mississippi River,<sup>77</sup> and his acquaintance with matters of taxation and the attempted equal distribution of those burdens is shown by his voting No on taxing the lands west of the Cumberland Mountains one shilling for each 100 acres, and voting Aye for taxing the lands east of the Cumberland Mountains two shillings for each 100 acres.<sup>78</sup> At that same session by Acts, Chapter 35, he frees a mulatto slave by the name of Mary Long.<sup>79</sup>

#### *Convention of 1788*

On July 25, 1788, the Convention called by the General Assembly to consider the ratification of the Constitution of the United States met at Hillsboro in the Presbyterian Church. It was composed of 284 delegates, each county being represented in proportion to the number of senators and representatives of that county and the borough towns within its boundaries, and those present representing Craven County were Richard Dobbs Spaight, Joseph Leech, Abner Neale, Benjamin Williams, and Richard Nixon<sup>80</sup> For able men no other body ever assembled in North Carolina has equaled the personnel of the Hillsboro Convention, including as it did Governor Samuel Johnston, Ex-Governors, Judges, Legislators, soldiers, and men of property and prominence. Present in the Convention were William R. Davie and Richard Dobbs Spaight, who had sat in the Convention that formed the Constitution of the United States. Also Richard Caswell and Willie Jones, who had been elected to that body and declined. Upon its assembling they unanimously elected Governor Samuel Johnston as President of the Convention, his well known fairness being apparent to every one. Leading the fight for

<sup>73</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XX, 205, 387.

<sup>74</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XX, 211.

<sup>75</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XX, 244.

<sup>76</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XV, 248, 433.

<sup>77</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XX, 274.

<sup>78</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XX, 287.

<sup>79</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XXIV, 930.

<sup>80</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XXII, 1.

<sup>4</sup> Elliotts Debates, 33.



the adoption of the Constitution was James Iredell, a clear-headed lawyer of Edenton, known by reputation to all the members of that Convention by his work as Attorney-General for four years and following that service Judge of the Superior Court for that same length of time he then being thirty-seven years of age and in the practice of law. At that time the Superior Court sat only at eight places in the State, namely Edenton, Halifax, New Bern, Wilmington, Fayetteville, Hillsboro, Salisbury and Morganton,<sup>81</sup> and it was the custom of the lawyers to ride the circuit of courts with the judges.

One is now led to ask why it was that General Davie or Colonel Spaight, each of whom had sat in the Constitutional Convention of 1787, were not selected to lead the fight for the adoption of the Federal Constitution. Of their eminent abilities as leaders there can be no doubt, as future events and the honors upon each of them show. The reason for the choice of Judge Iredell must have been because of his preëminent ability and qualifications and not by any discredit to the others. Colonel Spaight was not a lawyer and was seven years younger than Judge Iredell. General Davie was a lawyer, and like every lawyer testified to Judge Iredell's able scholarship, distinguished learning, and clear-headed legal ability, and besides Judge Iredell was probably the only man among those advocating the adoption of the Constitution who was known to the larger number of people. It is true they knew Governor Samuel Johnston, but his position as chief executive for the entire State precluded selecting him, and likewise Ex-Governor Richard Caswell, while known to many, would probably not be in touch with the younger element of the Convention as would a young man leading such a fight.

Fortunately for the country the debates in this Convention which sat from July 21st to August 2d, 1788, inclusive, were taken and preserved and ordered printed for distribution among the people as information.<sup>82</sup> There is a world of information and learning in the 200 pages of Elliott's Debates comprising the proceedings of this Convention. Judge James Iredell, as before stated, led the fight, being most ably seconded by General William R. Davie, afterwards Governor of North Carolina, and General Richard Dobbs Spaight, each of whom had sat in the Convention, also Governor

<sup>81</sup> Wheelers History of N. C. 100, 104.

Iredell was Justice of U. S. Supreme Court, 1790-1799.

<sup>82</sup> 2 McRee's Life of Iredell, 231.

Samuel Johnston and Mr. Archibald Maclaine, a lawyer of Wilmington.<sup>83</sup> The result of their efforts was that the opposition, headed by General Willie Jones of Halifax though he did not take the lead in the debate, defeated the advocates of the Constitution by an overwhelming vote of 184 to 84 votes,<sup>84</sup> and delayed its adoption until next year when this overwhelming vote was reversed when the Convention met at Fayetteville on November 16, 1789, and on November 21, 1789, adopted the Constitution by a vote of 195 to 77, adjourning on the 22d day of November.<sup>85</sup> Why was this seeming revolutionary change in sentiment of the people of North Carolina in the space of fifteen months? The one answer is that the thinking people read the debates of the Convention and to them the speeches of Iredell, Spaight, Davie, Johnston, and McAlaine read like essays upon political government, and they fully answered every argument raised against the adoption of the Constitution, and to the larger number of the open-minded people they carried conviction and decision of the justness and timeliness of the Constitution of 1787.

In the proceedings eleven times does Mr. Spaight address the Convention,<sup>86</sup> sometimes almost as though answering an inquiry, at other times making an extended speech, always clear and trying to remove any doubts as to the advantages of the Constitution, never beclouding its meaning. Through his address can be traced his ideas of government, such as the fact that the Constitution was intended for the building of the nation, and that it was not to destroy individual States. The central government was to be one in fact and not in name, yet that central government should not interfere with the affairs of the individual States. The most interesting speech that he made in this Convention was on Wednesday, July 30, 1788, when in defending the Constitution he said:<sup>87</sup>

"Mr. Chairman, I am one of those who formed this Constitution. The gentleman says we exceeded our powers. I deny the charge. We were sent with full power to amend the existing system. This involved every power to make every alteration necessary to ameliorate and render it perfect. It cannot be said that we arrogated powers altogether inconsistent with the objections of our delegation. There is a clause which expressly provides for future amendments, and it

<sup>83</sup> 2 McRee's Life of Iredell, 231.

<sup>84</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XXII, 28.

<sup>85</sup> N. C. Col. Rec.

<sup>86</sup> 4 Elliotts Debates, 39, 43, 73, 82, 100, 101, 108, 109, 127, 181 and 209.

<sup>87</sup> 4 Elliotts Debates, 207-210.

is still in your power. What the Convention has done is a mere proposal. It was found impossible to improve the old system, without changing its very form. For by that the system of three great branches of government are blended together. All will agree that the concession of powers to a government so constructed is dangerous. The proposing of a new system to be established by the assent and ratification of nine States arose from the necessity of the case. It was thought extremely hard that one State, or even three or four States, should be able to prevent necessary alterations. . . . . It was therefore thought by the Convention that if so great a majority as nine States should adopt it, it would be right to establish it. It was recommended by Congress to the State Legislatures to refer it to people of different States. Our Assembly has confirmed what they have done by proposing it to the consideration of the people. It was there not here that the objections should have been made. This Convention is, therefore, to consider the Constitution, and whether it is proper for the government of the people of America, and had it been proposed by any one individual, under these circumstances it would be right to consider whether it be good or bad. The gentleman has insinuated that this Constitution, instead of securing our liberties, is a scheme to enslave us. He has produced no proof, but rests on his bare assertion—an assertion which I am astonished to hear, after the ability with which every objection has been fully and clearly refuted in the course of our debates. I am, for my part, conscious of having had nothing in view but the liberty and happiness of my country, and I believe every member of that Convention was actuated by motives equally sincere and patriotic.” (Pages 207, 208.)

His reply to Judge Spencer attacking that section of the Constitution providing for the Federal Judiciary<sup>88</sup> reads so much like a

<sup>88</sup> 4 Elliotts Debates, 150.

Mr. Spaight—Mr. Chairman, the gentleman (Judge Spencer) insinuates that differences existed in the federal convention, respecting the clauses which he objects to. Whoever told him so was wrong, for I declare that, in that convention, the unanimous desire of all was to keep separate and distinct the objects of the jurisdiction of the federal from that of the state judiciary. They wished to separate them as judiciously as possible, and to consult the ease and convenience of the people. The gentleman objects to the cognizance of all cases in law and equity arising under the laws of the United States. This objection is very astonishing. When any government is established, it ought to have power to enforce its laws or else it might as well have no power. What but that is the use of a judiciary? The gentleman from his profession; must know that no government can exist without a judiciary to enforce its laws, by distinguishing the disobedient from the rest of the people, and imposing sanctions for securing the execution of the laws. As to the inconvenience of distant attendance, congress has the power of establishing inferior tribunals in each state, so as to accommodate every citizen. As congress have it in their power will they not do it? Are we to elect men who will wantonly and unnecessarily betray us?



lawyer that one hearing Colonel Spaight was not a lawyer would at once realize the study he had given to this question, when on July 28th he spoke as follows:

The gentleman insinuates that differences existed in the Federal Convention respecting the clauses which he objects to. Whoever told him so was wrong, for I declare that in that Convention the unanimous desire of all was to keep separate and distinct the objects of the jurisdiction of the Federal from that of the State judiciary. They wished to separate them as judiciously as possible, and to consult the ease and convenience of the people. The gentleman objects to the cognizance of all cases in law and equity arising under the Constitution and the Laws of the United States. This objection is very astonishing. When any government is established it ought to have power to enforce its laws, or else it might as well have no power. But what is the use of the Judiciary? The gentleman from his profession, must know that no government can exist without a judiciary to enforce its laws. By distinguishing the disobedient from the rest of the people and imposing sanctions for securing the execution of the laws. As to the inconvenience of distant attendance, Congress has power of establishing inferior tribunals in each State so as to accommodate every citizen.

This defense of the Federal Judiciary by Colonel Spaight is all the more remarkable as an evidence of his strength of mind in being able to have a fixed opinion, and then have that opinion entirely reversed and declare for a contrary state of affairs when the error of his former position is shown. As stated above, in this address Colonel Spaight had originally held very strong grounds against the Judiciary, and especially against the Judiciary nullifying an act of the Legislature.

The North Carolina Historical Commission has found the following notice of the marriage of Governor Spaight in the *Columbian Magazine* for October, 1788:

NORTH CAROLINA.—At New Bern, The Hon. Richard Dobbs Spaight, Esq. late member of the Federal Convention, to Miss Mary Leech, daughter of Col. Joseph Leech, of that town; a young lady whose amiable character and beautiful person, added to an extensive fortune, promise much felicity to this worthy pair.—Page 614.

The magazine being printed in October in Philadelphia, it is impracticable to state whether his marriage occurred prior to the Hillsboro Convention or subsequent thereto. Also it is impossible to state whether Colonel Joseph Leech was the identical Leech who with Governor Spaight and three others was the representative of Craven County in that Convention, but as propinquity is a valuable adjunct to matrimony, that conclusion can be drawn. Similarly it

is impossible to state whether this is the same Colonel Joseph Leech who in 1757 had a dispute with Richard Spaight, the father of the subject of this sketch, about the entry of the tract of land on Batchelor's Creek, yet it is a reasonable conclusion to believe that he was the same person. Here we have one generation engaged in contentions and strife about business matters, and the next generation uniting their lives. Truly "Man proposes but God disposes."

Of this union there were born several children, three of whom survived him,<sup>89</sup> namely (1) Richard Dobbs Spaight, Jr., born 1796, and in 1834 elected Governor of the State, this being the one instance in the history of North Carolina where father and son had each held the gubernatorial chair, (2) Charles B. Spaight, born in 1800, and (3) Miss Margaret Spaight, who married Hon. John R. Donnell, afterwards a Judge of the Superior Court. Neither of Governor Spaight's sons were ever married, so the only descendants of his now living are those of his daughter, Mrs. Donnell, several of whom live in New Bern.

Richard Dobbs Spaight was graduated in 1815 from the University of North Carolina, and like his illustrious father early entered public life, serving continuously in the State Senate from Craven County from 1820 to 1834, when he was elected Governor, with the exception of 1823 and 1824, when he was a member of the United States Congress. In 1831 he was elected Grand Master of the Grand Lodge of Masons and served two terms. Charles B. Spaight was a member of the House of Commons from the borough of New Bern in 1829 and 1830.

In 1789 the Assembly met at Fayetteville at which time we find Chapter 22 chartering the University of North Carolina names Colonel Spaight as one of its Board of Trustees,<sup>90</sup> likewise by Chapter 32 he and eight others are named as Wardens for the Episcopal Church at New Bern to hold property for that body.<sup>91</sup> On November 24th Colonel Spaight was one of the eleven placed in nomination to be named for United States Senator, the others being the two successful candidates, Governor Samuel Johnston and Colonel Benjamin Hawkins, the other eight being Colonel Joseph McDowell, Hon. Timothy Bloodworth, Thomas Person, William Blount, John

<sup>89</sup> Richard Dobbs Spaight, by John H. Wheeler (1880), page 21 and 22.

<sup>90</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XXV, 22.

<sup>91</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XXV, 35.

Williams, William Lenoir, William Pope, and James White.<sup>92</sup> Later the names of Colonel Spaight and James White were withdrawn.<sup>92</sup> In February of that same year he resigned as Colonel of Artillery.<sup>93</sup> It is stated that at this time he was enfeebled from disease and hence his enforced inactivity for the years 1789, 1790, and 1791.<sup>94</sup>

In 1792 he again entered the General Assembly, being returned as the member of the House of Commons for the town of New Bern, which Assembly met in that city on November 15th.<sup>95</sup> On November 20th we find placed in nomination for Governor, William Lenoir, General Williams, Richard Dobbs Spaight, Judge Samuel Spencer, and John Macon,<sup>96</sup> while later the names of Judge Samuel Ashe and General Benjamin Smith were added. (Before the balloting Judge Spencer's, Judge Ashe's, and General Smith's names were withdrawn.) The Assembly balloted for four days without an election, and on Wednesday, December the 12th, General Spaight was elected,<sup>98</sup> and accepted the following day, and on Friday, December 14th, he was inaugurated Governor.<sup>99</sup> His first message was delivered December 5, 1793, when the Assembly met at Fayetteville,<sup>100</sup> and contains little of interest to the present time. He refers to the violation of the neutral dry law by a sloop at Wilmington which had seized a Spanish brig. Also the correspondence with Governor Moultrie of South Carolina on the subject of the dividing line between the two States. Mentions the pestilential fever existing in Philadelphia, and recommends the proper person vested by law to take proper steps to prevent the introduction into this State. The special message on December 9th deals with the troubles had with the Indians in the western part of the State. On December 14, 1793, he was re-elected Governor<sup>101</sup> and inaugurated on December 26, 1793.<sup>102</sup>

On Tuesday, December 30, 1794, the Assembly met for the first time in the city of Raleigh.<sup>103</sup> On the following day Governor

<sup>92</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XXI, 253.

<sup>93</sup> N. C. Col. Rec. XXI, 529.

<sup>94</sup> Funeral sermon of Rev. Thos. P. Irvine. 4 N. C. Biographical History (Richard Dobbs Spaight, by Haywood), 401.

<sup>95</sup> House Journal, 1792.

<sup>96</sup> House Journal, 1792.

<sup>97</sup> House Journal, 1792.

<sup>98</sup> House Journal, 1792.

<sup>99</sup> House Journal, 1792.

<sup>100</sup> Senate Journal, 1793.

<sup>101</sup> Senate Journal, 1793.

<sup>102</sup> Senate Journal, 1793.

<sup>103</sup> Senate Journal, 1794.



Spaight was placed in nomination for re-election as Governor, the other names mentioned being General William Lenoir, and Judge Samuel Ashe, both of which names were withdrawn, and he was elected January, 1795, for this third term.<sup>104</sup> His second message on January 6th deals largely with local matters, the principal one being the withdrawal of the patrol in the Indian country as the Indians were friendly. On January 27th he sends a special message about the Great Seal of the State, which had been ordered in the fall of 1793, but the sickness prevailing in Philadelphia had prevented the order being executed until the summer of 1794, and that the seal when completed and sent to New Bern lacked a screw and hence was useless.<sup>105</sup>

In November 1795, the Assembly again met in Raleigh,<sup>106</sup> and in the Governor's Message that year<sup>107</sup> he refers to the navigation proposition to deepen the Catawba River and for the construction of the Club Foot and Harlow Canal; also refers to the late storms and freshets destroying the crops of Indian corn and suggests an embargo on the shipping of corn out of the State. On November 15th Judge Samuel Ashe, General Allen Jones and General Leigh were placed in nomination for Governor, and Judge Ashe was elected and inaugurated on November 19, 1795,<sup>108</sup> Governor Spaight giving up the office after three years of service satisfactory to the people.

In 1796 he was chosen one of the electors to cast the vote of the State for President and Vice-President, as he had been in 1793 when a member of the General Assembly.

Of interest in connection with General Spaight's holding the high office of Governor and at the same time being one of the electors to cast the vote for President, it is of interest that he was the first native born North Carolinian to be chosen Governor, as all of his predecessors who so honored that office had been born abroad, or in a few instances in other colonies, and had moved to North Carolina to make their life work.

The years 1796 and 1797 he seems to have spent quietly at New Bern. These seem to have been the only years that he was not active

<sup>104</sup> Senate Journal, 1794.

<sup>105</sup> Senate Journal, 1794.

<sup>106</sup> House Journal, 1795, p. 1.

<sup>107</sup> House Journal, 1795, p. 16.

<sup>108</sup> House Journal, 1795, p. 22.

Resolved unanimously, that the thanks of this Gen. Assembly are due to Richard Dobbs Spaight for his able, faithful and disinterested services as Chief Magistrate of the state; and that a joint committee of both houses be appointed to communicate when this expression of the confidence and gratitude of his country.

in a representative capacity in public work, excepting the years 1789, 1790, and 1791, and the Spring of 1792, when he was a young man then only thirty-one years of age, his health broke down from the arduous duties of public life. This enforced idleness must have chafed on a man of activity. It is remarkable when we consider the honors held by him, namely a member of the House of Commons at twenty-one, an Aide to Governor Tryon at twenty-two, a member of the Federal Congress at twenty-five, a member of the Convention to frame the Constitution of the United States at twenty-nine, a delegate to the North Carolina Constitutional Convention at thirty, and its Governor at the age of thirty-four, and dying at the early age of forty-four. In this time, when honors come to men only in middle age, it is all the more surprising when we realize how early honors came to Governor Spaight.

On Monday, June 4, 1798, William Bryan, the member of Congress from his district, died, and General Spaight was selected to succeed him, taking his seat on December 10th,<sup>109</sup> Congress then sitting at Philadelphia. At that Congress came up the question of the impeachment of Hon. William Blount, United States Senator from Tennessee, who had served with Governor Spaight in the Constitutional Convention of 1787. The managers at a previous session offered a report that they be instructed to compel the personal appearance of Senator Blount. This report was rejected by the House of Representatives by the decisive vote of 69 to 11, Governor Spaight voting against compelling the appearance.<sup>110</sup> In passing it may be stated that the offense for which Senator Blount was charged was that of inciting the Indians to make war against the French and English, which would result to the advantage of the American States in their colonizing. Today such a man would be hailed as a benefactor to his country, but at that time it was thought otherwise, and while the Senate expelled Senator Blount, the people of Tennessee rallied to his support, chose him Speaker of their Senate, and would have elected him Governor of the State except for his death.<sup>111</sup>

<sup>109</sup> Annals 5th Congress 2425 (Dec. 10, 1798).

A new member, to wit: Richard Dobbs Spaight returned to serve in this House as a member for North Carolina, in the room of Nathan Bryan, appeared, produced his credentials, and took his seat in the House; the oath to support the Constitution of the United States having been first administered to him by the Speaker.

<sup>110</sup> Annals 5th Congress 2485. Impeachment of William Blount, Annals 5th Congress 2245-2416.

<sup>111</sup> Wheeler's History, 3 N. C. Biographical History (William Blount, by Haywood), 27.

The Sixth Congress of the United States met at Philadelphia on December 2, 1799,<sup>112</sup> and on January 2, 1800, Governor Spaight appeared and took oath of office.<sup>113</sup> We find frequent roll calls which attest his presence at that session, lasting continuously through until May 14th.

Again he was present at the session of that Congress which met at Washington on November 17, 1800.<sup>114</sup> He appeared on November 18th, and remained until the adjournment of the Congress on March 4th.

This was the House of Representatives which had to decide the tie vote between Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr, the leading candidates for the presidency, no one having received a majority of the electoral votes. From the Annals of Congress of that time we learn that Governor Spaight, together with Hon. Willis Alston, Nathaniel Macon, Richard Stanford, David Stone and R. Williams, invariably voted for President Jefferson, who was finally elected.<sup>115</sup> The other representatives from North Carolina, Messrs. Archibald Henderson, William H. Hill, Joseph Dixon, and William Barry Grove voted principally for Mr. Burr, three of them voting on the first ballot for Mr. Jefferson. He voted to reject the Sedition Act,<sup>116</sup> also voted against the act to provide a uniform system of bankruptcy,<sup>117</sup> while favoring the appropriation to General Washington for \$50,000.00, voted against increasing that appropriation to \$100,000.00.<sup>118</sup>

In 1802 Governor Spaight was a candidate for the State Senate from Craven County, and was elected at the election held on August 13th, and at the same time William Bryan and Lewis Fonville were elected to the House, while Edward Harris was elected from the town of New Bern.<sup>119</sup> That campaign grew very bitter, and out of incidents connected with it came the circumstances that led up to his unfortunate duel with Mr. John Stanly. The *Raleigh Register* of Tuesday, September 14, 1802, contains the notice of the tragic event including the correspondence,<sup>120</sup> which is too long here to note, stating that the challenge passed on Sunday, September 15th.

<sup>112</sup> Annals 6th Congress, 185.

<sup>113</sup> Annals 6th Congress, 230.

<sup>114</sup> Annals 6th Congress, 780.

<sup>115</sup> Annals 6th Congress, 1032, R. D. Spaight by John H. Wheeler, 18.

<sup>116</sup> Annals of 6th Congress, 1032.

<sup>117</sup> Annals of 6th Congress, 1061.

<sup>118</sup> Annals 6th Congress, 1071.

<sup>119</sup> Raleigh Register, Aug. 24, 1802. (2d page).

<sup>120</sup> Wheeler's History, 112-114.



The parties, with their seconds, met near this town (New Bern) at about half past five o'clock on the afternoon of the 5th inst. and upon the exchange of the fourth shot Mr. Spaight received a wound in his right side, of which he expired in twenty-three hours. On Tuesday the 7th his remains were deposited in the family vault at his principal country seat near New Bern with expressions of universal sorrow and of those testimonials of respect which were due to his acknowledged merit.

At the session of the Legislature which met on November 15th, Mr. Stanly petitioned the Legislature asking that they memorialize the Governor to grant him a pardon,<sup>121</sup> the petition being presented by Felix Walker, representative from Rutherford, which was reported to a General Committee of three from the Senate and three from the House. This Committee recommended a pardon, which report was rejected on the grounds "that the memorial at first blush carried a strong and direct distrust of the relations of the deceased, that they would not rest contented, but that they would carry on a legal prosecution. It was believed that there was not the least well-founded apprehension that such a prosecution would be attempted; that on the contrary, sufficient assurance had been given the memorialists that nothing of this sort would be done." And that this was a matter in which the Governor ought to act, and that while the Legislature had the right to act they would not recommend to the Governor.<sup>122</sup>

The Rev. Thomas P. Irvine, Rector of Christ Church, New Bern, Governor Spaight being a communicant of that church and having been one of its vestrymen, was to have preached the memorial sermon on September 12th, as we learn from the *Raleigh Register* of Tuesday, October 5, 1802, which states: "On Sunday the 12th ulto. the public would have been favored by the Rev. Mr. Irvine with a funeral discourse on the death of the unfortunate Mr. Spaight had not indisposition prevented, and since his recovery he had had the following extract to be made, which though concise will give some idea of the character of that worthy man." His address in part reads as follows:

The worthy personage to whom this tribute of respect was paid, was descended of respectable parentage. His mother was a woman whose amiable virtues had so endeared her to society that her name is to this day repeated with veneration, and the respectability of his father may be estimated from the offices which he filled, and the marks of royal confidence.

<sup>121</sup> *Raleigh Register*, Nov. 23, 1802. (3d page, 1st column.)

<sup>122</sup> *Raleigh Register*, Nov. 30, 1802. (2d page, 1st column.)

with which he was frequently honored, but he was not destined to know the advantages of birth or to reap the fruits of parental attention, for before the age of nine he was unfortunately bereaved of both his parents and consigned to the care of a guardian. In him, however, he found a friend, as far as compliance with the injunctions of his father, relative to his education, can merit the name of friendship. At this early age he was sent to Ireland, where he continued until he had finished the usual course of academic studies, when he was removed to the University of Glasgow. There he completed his education, and about the year 1778 returned home to his native soil an ornament to his friends and a blessing to his country. On his arrival he found his Alma Mater engaged in a bloody war with that very government under which his youth had been spent, and calling on her true-born sons to aid her in her struggle for liberty. His sentiments and his conduct evidenced him to be of the number, and confidence in his talents and integrity was soon manifested by his being called into active service as Aide-de-camp to Major-General Richard Caswell.

After referring to his service in the Legislature, he thus refers to the Constitutional Convention:

In 1787 when United America thought proper to amend her government by the fabrication of a new Constitution, he was deputed as one of the representatives of North Carolina, to assist in the accomplishment of that arduous work. This he did with cheerfulness and so much to the satisfaction of his constituents that we find him in the succeeding year nominated as a member of the State Convention for discussing its merits and deliberating on the propriety of its adoption.

Here a chasm of about four years interrupts his political career, occasioned, however, by no loss of the confidence of the people or miscarriage in his public demeanor. He was afflicted by the hand of Providence. A malady of very uncommon severity, and not much inferior perhaps to that which exercised the patience of the Patriarch of Uz, called him from the period of political life and consigned him to the chamber of affliction. The West Indies and various parts of the United States were visited by him in search of relief. At last, after enduring almost as much as the firmness of manhood could bear, he was blessed if not with entire recovery, at least with such a restoration of health as enabled him to return home and witness once more the congratulations of his friends.

No sooner had he returned than his fellow citizens again elected him a representative for the town of New Bern, and as if anxious to omit no opportunity of testifying their affection, the next session of the General Assembly appointed him Governor of the State, which office for three years successively he administered with dignity, fidelity and moderation.

In describing his Legislative services, including those in the Fifth and Sixth Congresses, he says:

Such was the firmness and independence of his conduct through the most tumultuous sessions which we have ever witnessed since the organization of our government, that I am authorized to say that he not only experienced the equitable approbation of his constituents but conciliated and received

the respect and esteem of many wise men to whom before this test of opinion he was but little known. Afflicted with a constitutional disease and worn out in the service of the public, though not old, he felt some of the infirmities of age, and having withstood this conflict of parties and serving two long campaigns of warfare with honor and applause, he now anxiously hoped, as I have heard him frequently declare, to spend the residue of his days in domestic retirement, but domestic retirement was not for him. He was destined for a political career, and his friends omitted no opportunity of availing themselves of his usefulness. In 1801 they found employment for him in the Senate of the State Legislature, and had again re-elected him to the same office but a few weeks before his unfortunate and tragical end.

On this short history I shall make but a single comment. When a man without art or intrigue has so entwined himself in the affection of a people as to preserve their unshaken confidence for the space of four and twenty years, he must have merit—he must have worth.

As a private citizen General Spaight was upright in his intentions and sincere in his declarations, methodical and even mercantile in his business, no errors of ignorance or blunders of negligence involved him in litigation with his neighbors.

We regret that this article is too long to be reproduced in full, but it closes with this language:

His domestic character may be comprised in a few words. He was a tender, affectionate and attentive husband, he was a loving and indulgent father, and a compassionate and lenient master. He was consistent in his hours of study, of business, and of recreation. No irregularities disturbed the repose of his family—no improper indulgences created in him remorse. The day commenced and closed with uniformity—but alas! he is gone and snatched from us too at an hour when we least expected it. Yes, he has gone, and let the living lay it to heart. He is gone lamented by the good and revered by the brave—he is gone loaded with honors of his country and the benediction of his friends.

So sleeps the brave—he sinks to rest  
In all his country's wishes blessed.  
When Spring with dewey fingers cold  
Returns to deck his hallowed mold,  
She there shall deck a sweeter sod  
Than fancy's feet have ever trod.  
By fairy hands his knell is rung,  
By forms unseen his dirge is sung,  
There honor comes a pilgrim gray,  
To bless the turf that wraps his clay,  
And freedom shall awhile repair  
And dwell a weakened hermit there.



## THE LURE OF HISTORICAL RESEARCH

BY ADELAIDE L. FRIES.<sup>1</sup>

Some time ago a friend asked me on what I was going to speak this evening, and when I said "Jig-Saw Puzzles" he looked both mystified and shocked! But really, is there a better three-word description of the lure of historical research? To many persons history is dry, as dry as the dust of ages, and they feel much as did a little lad of our town, who was fretting over his history lesson. His mother, trying to interest him, asked: "Son, don't you like to learn about what people did a long time ago?" In real surprise he looked at her and queried: "Do you mean these things really happened?" "Why, yes," she said, "what did you think?" and with a sigh the little fellow answered: "I thought somebody just wrote it to make little boys study!" Whether the historian or the teacher was at fault in this particular instance I cannot say, but I do know that the writer of history has a much more thrilling experience than the person who reads it. None of you would go into a store and buy a cheap print showing a family of cats, in a basket, in a barn, and yet there are probably not a few of you who have spent hours fitting together the hundred or more irregularly shaped pieces of wood or cardboard which, properly placed, made a picture no more thrilling than that. It was not the picture you cared for but the sense of achievement, the pleasure of bringing order out of apparent chaos. And therein lies the real charm of historical research. Most of us must buy our historical pictures ready-made, framed in paper or cloth or leather according to the taste of the publisher and the size of our purse, but when it is possible to make even one little picture for ourselves it is more exciting than the purchase of a dozen made by others, and the people in it are real people to us, and the things that happened actually did happen.

Sometimes in the making of a Jig-Saw Puzzle there is a place where nothing seems to fit, and as piece after piece goes elsewhere, avoiding that spot, you almost come to the conclusion that a piece is hopelessly lost,—then suddenly you find it. If your Puzzle hap-

---

<sup>1</sup> Presidential address at twenty-third annual session of the State Literary and Historical Association, Raleigh, Dec. 6, 1923.—Editor's Note.

pens to be a Family Tree the finding of the missing piece may be both novel and exciting, as well as satisfactory. It may even be a bit dramatic! You stand in an abandoned graveyard, surrounded by trees and underbrush, with no trace of a mound or stone, and turn helplessly and hopelessly away. Just then a neighbor comes up, and tells you that the stones lay flat, and are probably covered with leaves; you seize a stick and scratch here and there, you locate one stone, then a second, then a third, and when from the top of the fourth stone you remove four inches of leaf-mold, and reveal the name, and the date of birth, and the date of death, which prove your theory of descent correct, family tradition to the contrary notwithstanding, you care not one whit that this link has nothing in the world to do with your own Tree, and you feel like Columbus and Lord Carnarvon combined, though with no fear of having raised a ghost!

Perhaps your Jigg-Saw Puzzle is a historical incident, and the missing piece seems the most important in the picture. Then the temptation is to force into the place a piece that nearly fits, but really is a misfit, and throws the whole picture out of drawing. If you have ever dealt with one of these misfits you know how easily some one else forced them in, and how very hard it is for you to force them out, and perhaps, if you yourself placed them in the wrong position, you know how every atom of pride in your nature urges you to assert they are right, rather than admit you guessed wrong. It is tempting Providence to even mention the Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence in this connection, but to one who has watched the progress of the controversy without participating in it that is a most curious case of Pros and Antis continuing to say "'Tis so," "'Taint so," in spite of the fact that newly-discovered bits of evidence have forced both sides to change their ground more than once within the last decade. When I first became interested in history the advocates of May 20th were insisting on the verbal accuracy of the Mecklenburg Declaration, and almost staking their whole case on the "lost *Cape Fear Mercury*"; while the opponents were vehemently explaining that "the news of the Battle of Lexington could not possibly have reached Mecklenburg by the twentieth of May, and besides nobody ever heard of a Declaration until 1800." Now it is admitted that the text of the Mecklenburg Declaration as given today was "rewritten from memory"; it has been proved beyond a peradventure that

rumors of what happened in Lexington were current in North Carolina as early as May 8th, that confirmation of these rumors reached Wachovia on May 16th, not by courier but through a citizen returning from Pennsylvania, and while Mecklenburg was not then on a national highway it certainly must have reached there by the twentieth. History is but the story of human nature in action, and can you imagine a group of hot-headed, high-strung men, irritated for years by the English discrimination against their Church, indignant over Stamp Act and Taxes on imports, inflamed by rumors of blood shed by English soldiery, receiving definite news that Americans have been attacked and killed, and then—doing absolutely nothing for ten full days, at the end of which time they produced a calm, orderly, and well-written set of “Resolves”? Is there not a strange misfit in that Jig-Saw Puzzle? Possibly I too am partisan, in that I pin my faith to the contemporary Moravian Records, but were I teaching history to a class of young North Carolinians I should say something like this:—“Tradition is not always correct, but the burden of proof lies with those who disbelieve a tradition, not with those who accept it. In this case Tradition and the Moravian Records fit, and show that reports of trouble in New England reached Mecklenburg about May twentieth, on which day an angry company passed some sort of a fiery Declaration of Independence, and followed it with the appointment of a committee which drew up the Resolves of May 31st; and they made their Declaration effective by displacing all their local, English-appointed, officials, replacing them with men of their own selection.” By the way,—did you ever hear any one stress the point that Mecklenburgers really did make themselves “free and independent” immediately, so far as their local government was concerned? A decade ago I was told, confidentially, that the Mecklenburgers had nothing to boast of, for they talked about Independence but continued to act as British subjects. But in a letter written in June, 1775, Bishop Graff, the Salem diarist, refers to Mecklenburg County, “where they have unseated all Magistrates and put Select Men in their places.” If you, knowing all this, had had Captain Jack as your guest on his return from Philadelphia wouldn’t you have asked him most particularly about what had happened in Mecklenburg, and wouldn’t you expect to be believed in what you wrote down about it for use in an official his-



torical sketch at the close of the War? I hold no brief for Mecklenburg, but I trust Bishop Graff and Traugott Bagge!

If an historical Jig-Saw Puzzle is too controversial suppose you try to reproduce the city plan of a forgotten town. On the hill above Donnahah, in Forsyth County, there is a hole in the ground, pointed out as the site of the old Richmond Court House. The Moravian Diary says that the second Court House for Surry was built there in 1774, and that the "town plan" was drawn by Col. Martin Armstrong. Forsyth has always been in the part cut off and re-named when a new County was erected, so the records are at Dobson, fifty miles from your study in one direction, at Danbury, thirty miles in another direction, while Donnahah itself is twenty miles distant. Ten or more days of country travel; six hundred miles by automobile; parts of numerous days in the Forsyth Court-House; uncounted hours spent in piecing together the information found in fifty deeds, dating from 1762 to the present;—is it worth while? Perhaps not, if judged solely by the map, but surely yes, if the joy of the chase and the pleasure of achievement be considered.

Biography is another form of Jig-Saw Puzzle, different, but no less fascinating, and I am going to take the liberty of giving you one recently completed picture, instead of talking about it. It has nothing directly to do with North Carolina, except that it was found here, but it may interest at least some of you as showing a woman who stood shoulder to shoulder with the men a hundred and fifty years before the term "woman suffrage" was coined. It is the story of a little shepherdess of Moravia, who rose to high rank in the Unity of Brethren; of a woman making possible the building of a city in Pennsylvania. The details have been gathered bit by bit from a seven-foot stack of manuscript in the Salem Archives, a Diary sent out in weekly installments and containing the account of the daily doings of the governing Boards of the Unitas Fratrum, or Moravian Church, together with sermons, Mission reports, birthday poems, personal news, and a host of other things. (I might add that there is no Index!) Hardly two consecutive sentences of the story come from the same page, wherefore I do not hesitate to call it a Jig-Saw Puzzle; nor do I apologize for its religious tone, for it was the men and women of stalwart faith who laid the best stones in the foundation of our Nation. Moreover, the door opened by a woman's hand in Pennsylvania not only led to congregations there but also

to the settlement of Wachovia, in North Carolina, so that indirectly her story is ours as much as theirs.

This, then, is a picture of

*Anna Nitschmann, "the Handmaid of the Lord."*

She was born Nov. 24, 1715, at Kunewalde, Moravia, (now a part of Czecho-Slovakia), the daughter of David Nitschmann, farmer, carpenter, wagon-maker, and Anna, maiden name Schneider. The family was nominally Roman Catholic, as they needs must be in order to live in peace under the despotic Catholic government, but by inheritance they were Protestant, being descendants of members of the *Unitas Fratrum*, that earliest of Protestant Churches, which in the middle of the Fifteenth Century was founded by followers of the Bohemian Reformer and Martyr, John Hus, in the Sixteenth rose to a position of commanding influence in Bohemia, Moravia and Poland, and in the Seventeenth was crushed by the Jesuits. For one hundred years the Unity seemed lost to earth, its doctrines and discipline buried in the hearts of the "Hidden Seed," but almost coincidentally with the birth of Anna Nitschmann this Seed began to quicken with new life. She was two years old when the possibility of emigration to some Protestant country began to be discussed; she was six when the first party went out from Moravia, was received on the estate of the young Lutheran nobleman, Count Zinzendorf, in Saxony, and there founded Herrnhut.

When Anna was seven a Catholic priest, as was customary, prepared her for her first communion, she was deeply impressed by the sacred ceremony, and with this act her child life seems to have ended. Her father and his friends began to hold meetings, to read the Bible and such other religious books as they could secure, to discuss the doctrines of Hus, and the possibility of reviving the Ancient *Unitas Fratrum*. So soon as this was known the Catholic oppression was renewed. Their books were seized and burned,—they clubbed together and bought new ones; they were imprisoned and tortured,—and continued to meet and encourage each other in their desire for godly lives; their homes were destroyed, their property confiscated,—and they bore it and refused to yield. It was a time calculated to make a child old far beyond her years, for not only was she permitted to attend the meetings and listen to the matters there discussed, but

she was often sent to the prison to give such comfort as she could to her father and brother and their friends, and her chief thought seems to have been pride that they were brave enough to bear all this for the sake of Christ.

When summer came she was sent into the fields to tend her father's sheep, but she held aloof from other children and their light-hearted ways, and spent her time dreaming of the days of Hus and the early Brethren, mourning over the evils of her own time, rejoicing in the hope that God would yet give them freedom of worship, and singing the hymns of the old Bohemian-Moravian Church, which she dearly loved.

By the time Anna was nine the limit of endurance was reached, and her brother Melchior,—a young man of twenty years, who had endured awful torture, but was momentarily free,—slipped away and went to Herrnhut. His father escaped from prison soon after, and the story rivals that of Peter and his deliverance from the soldiers of Herod. David Nitschmann and his friends sat together, bound two and two, in irons. Suddenly David said: "Tonight I shall bid you farewell," and his friend Schneider answered: "I will go with you." With a knife in his right hand Nitschmann put his left hand on the door, intending to try to force the lock, and behold, it was already open! Greatly cheered, he turned to the shackles on his feet, and succeeded in taking them off, and also in freeing Schneider. Then quietly telling the others good-bye, the two men slipped across the court-yard, to look for a ladder with which to scale the wall, but first Nitschmann went to the entrance, which was secured by two gates, and behold, the inner one was open and so was the outer! Once outside the castle they removed the rest of their irons and laid them on the wall; they paused at Nitschmann's home long enough to tell his wife what had happened and arrange a plan for the rest of the family, then going some miles to the home of a friendly count they lay hidden there for three days before finally escaping from Moravia.

From Neundorff, Nitschmann sent back for his family. At one o'clock in the morning of February 5th, 1725, Mrs. Nitschmann and her family left the town, the watchman, "smitten with blindness," failing to notice their departure. Through cold and snow they made their way across the country, and it is small wonder that Anna's courage faltered, and she thought of home and friends,



and was half minded to turn back; but she remembered the many times in the fields when she had prayed that God would take them out of this land, and so she went on, content.

Three weeks of travel brought them to Herrnhut, and after a short stay there David Nitschmann entered the service of Count Zinzen-dorf, whose residence was at Berthelsdorf, a mile away.

It was a great change for the little Moravian maid, and its first effect was none too good. She lost all interest in religion, and became intent on simply having a good time, and as the months wore on her parents and brother became so worried over her conduct that they moved back to Herrnhut, which suited her not at all, for now she could not do as she pleased. Various residents of Herrnhut attempted to remonstrate with her, and recommended that she become converted, and her retort was: "First get converted yourself, and then talk to me!" But if she distrusted others she could not doubt the reality of the faith of her brother, Melchior, and when at midnight she time and again heard him praying for his little sister her heart was touched, and she was among the children who prayed much between the Thirteenth and Seventeenth of August, of that memorable year of 1727, when the Unitas Fratrum was reborn.

Having received "the seal upon her heart that she was the Lord's own, and would so remain forever," the young girl was filled with zeal for service. She longed to do great things, but had the good sense to begin with what was close at hand, and quietly dedicated herself to work among the girls of Herrnhut, who were nine in number. Under her leadership they organized a club, a miniature congregation, with officers copied from those of the Herrnhut Congregation. They had an Eldress, an Assistant, a Superintendent, an Admonisher, a Sick-Nurse, and so on, (one wonders who was left to be the plain members!) and Anna, modestly refusing to be Eldress, acted as Assistant and Admonisher. The congregation at large paid little attention to what the children were doing, but a few were watching, and when she was thirteen Anna Nitschmann was made a member of a small inner circle, which met from time to time in special services. She was by far the youngest of the group, and her admission caused much comment and some jealousy on the part of those not so honored. Naturally, therefore, when something said in a meeting became a matter of outside gossip the critics opined: "Of course,—that

*child* has tattled". This was soon proved to be untrue, but the resentment against her remained in some quarters.

During these early years of the renewal of the Unity at Herrnhut there was no Moravian ministry, Herrnhut being technically a part of the Lutheran congregation of Berthelsdorf. But the need of better spiritual supervision was felt, and in 1727 twelve Elders were elected, "men of good repute," with Count Zinzendorf and Baron Friedrich von Watteville at their head. No definite term of service was specified, but in 1730 Count Zinzendorf, preparing for a somewhat extended trip, resigned his office, and the entire Board followed his example, thus making a new election necessary. Some were re-elected, some changes were made, and Martin Linner, a baker, 27 years of age, became Chief Elder. It was expected that the Elders should be active in the spiritual concerns of the Congregation. "They were called to bear upon their hearts the Congregation in general and each individual in particular, and to support the other officials with their prayers and blessing; it was theirs to advise, to pray, and to decide important questions" after assistants had fully considered them and prepared them for final decision.

The day after the Elders were installed a committee of women waited on Count Zinzendorf. They came, they said, to ask for the appointment of a Chief Eldress among the women, as had been done in the Ancient Unitas Fratrum; they were sure that if a man like Martin Linner sufficed for Chief Elder, a woman could be found who would do as well! The Count was much disturbed, not liking the spirit in which they came, but he yielded to their desire, and bade the women of Herrnhut to prepare their votes for four candidates, from whom the Chief Eldress would be chosen by lot. Much to his surprise Anna Nitschmann's name was given in the four, not, he more than suspected, because they wanted her, but because they felt sure the Lord would never order the lot so that a child would be chosen, and to have another put in over her head would rebuke her supposed pride! The Count felt confident the use of her name was a scheme to hurt her feelings; he also strongly disapproved of giving her the office, for she was only fourteen and a half years old and he thought such untimely elevation to high position would turn her head and spoil the sweet spirituality of her nature, so he did his best to persuade the women to withdraw her nomination, and when they refused he left the room in disgust. It fell therefore to Countess Zinzendorf

to draw the lot, and when the chosen slip was opened there stood the name, *Anna Caritas Nitschmann!* The consternation of the schemers may be imagined; not one was willing to tell the child what had happened; so the next day Count Zinzendorf had to send her the official notification. He says that he wrote her a "sharp letter," hoping that she would refuse the office; but that she accepted it in "a truly Moravian fashion," quietly and humbly, believing that since the Lord had spoken, through the lot, it was her duty simply to obey.

Count Zinzendorf was a man who wrote verses for all occasions, personal and congregational, and on one anniversary of Anna's election as Chief Eldress he told the story and gave the result:—

With simple faith she heard the call,  
Though her surprise was seen by all;  
And, ere man dreamt it, she was known  
As "the good child" by every one.

It was a most unexpected result, and it speaks eloquently of her modesty, sweetness, tact and good judgment, that she was able so to fill her office among women who began with a prejudice against her, many of them much, much older than she was, for as Chief Eldress she was charged with the spiritual oversight of all the women, old and young. For two years she "was and remained a child," according to her own statement, but she must have been the most remarkable child the Moravian Church ever possessed, and it was said of her that "when she spoke or prayed or sang all hearts stood open to her."

Six weeks after her election as Eldress, Anna Nitschmann led in an organization of the unmarried women and older girls of Herrnhut, which eventuated in the entire "Choir system" of the Moravian Church, a system of which remnants remain to this day in the "Covenant Days" of various divisions of the older Moravian congregations, and the arrangement of graves in their graveyards. Oddly enough it is because of this organization that Anna Nitschmann has been known throughout the years, rather than through her far more noteworthy office.

There was no salary attached to the position of Elder or Eldress, so at first Anna continued to live at home, supporting herself by the spinning of wool. When she was seventeen she moved into a separate house, with thirteen other young women, where they began by hav-



ing all things in common, with much prayer and burning zeal, then they fell out with each other in truly human fashion, then with a better mutual understanding went on again. There is a tendency to paint the early Church fathers and mothers with halos around their heads, but in reality they were intensely human, and in her autobiography Anna Nitschmann speaks frankly of one period when she felt uplifted by the dignity of her position, and her brothers and sisters "spoke sharply" to her until she recovered her poise, and of other months when she felt keen spiritual unrest, which she later recognized as the not unusual experience of youthful years, though at the time she worried herself pale and thin.

In addition to the difficulty of adjusting herself to the house-life with the other young women, this year in which she was seventeen was memorable for several other occurrences. In May she was critically ill. In June one of her best friends suddenly died. It was being considered whether she or this friend should be asked to become the bride of John Nitschmann, Sr., and now the proposal came to her, but having no desire for matrimony she promptly refused.

When she was eighteen there came the most unique experience of her life, the one in which no other woman has followed her. Martin Linner, Chief Elder, had been in poor health for two years, and she had been obliged to relieve him from time to time in his official duties. In February he died, and Leonard Dober was elected to take his place, but Dober was a missionary in the West Indies, and with the slow communication of those days twelve months passed until the letter of notification could reach him and he could return to Herrnhut. Meanwhile eighteen-year-old Anna Nitschmann was acting Chief Elder of the Moravian Church! Zinzendorf is authority for the statement that "during this time a woman ruled the Congregation as Deborah ruled Israel." "She looked after the spiritual affairs of the Brethren as well as of the Sisters; she concerned herself with questions of doctrine which were under consideration; cast the deciding vote in Conferences; and gave clear instructions to those taking office; and no one thought, much less said, a word against it." Not only must she do personal work among the members, but she must confirm candidates for the Communion, and give the parting blessing to the dying; she must, in short, do most of the things covered by the phrase "the pastoral work" of a minister. The Episcopate of the Ancient Unitas Fratrum had not yet been transferred

to the Renewed Unity, so her induction into office had been presbyterial rather than episcopal, and she seems not to have been baptized, or consecrated the elements for the Holy Communion, but apart from this she was the spiritual head of the Moravian Church in name, and in fact was second only to Count Zinzendorf, who found in her a most satisfactory co-worker. There were a very few other General Eldresses of the women during the early years of the Renewed Unity, but no other had jurisdiction over the Brethren also, and no other shared her unique position in the esteem of the members. Countess Zinzendorf was a more able woman, in many ways, and highly honored, as befitted her rank and her character; but from a little shepherd lass of Moravia to Chief Eldress of the Renewed Unitas Fratrum was a change without parallel.

Leonard Dober reached Herrnhut in February, 1735. On the 12th he was installed as Chief Elder, and three days later he and Anna Nitschmann each received a letter, in the name of the Congregation, suggesting that it might be for the good of the Congregation, especially the married people, if they two would wed. The Eldress was greatly perplexed, she did not want to marry, but she did not want to be discourteous to the Chief Elder, and she did not want to act contrary to the will of the Lord, if she knew what that was. While she hesitated she received a letter from Dober, who was apparently no more enthusiastic over the proposal than she, though he politely left the matter to her judgment and decision; and greatly relieved she declined to follow the suggestion of the Congregation, but promised to look after all the women, married and single, while Dober undertook the care of all the men.

In 1736 Count and Countess Zinzendorf went to Holland, and during their absence word came to Herrnhut that by order of Government the Count was forbidden to return to his estates. The cause of this need not be considered, except to state that it was the work of political and sectarian enemies. The Count's household included many of the leading members of the Unity, men and women, and wherever they happened to be there was the seat of government of the Church; and as they tarried in the ruinous castle of Ronneberg, in Holland, Marienborn, or England, there new Congregations sprang up,—which was not at all the intention of the Count's opponents. Anna Nitschmann was with the rest, attending on the Countess and her daughter, sharing in all the privations, making friends

with the girls and young women wherever they happened to be, always the Eldress who sought to win souls for Christ, and always successful, no matter how unpromising the place.

In 1739 Zinzendorf and several others made a voyage to the West Indies, where Moravian Missions had been begun among the negro slaves in 1732. He intended to go from there to Pennsylvania, but the only vessel scheduled to sail for that Province was in such bad repair that it had to winter in the Islands, so Zinzendorf returned to Europe. He regretted this the less because of the reports which Spangenberg gave of conditions in Pennsylvania. "Among the religiously-minded inhabitants of that Colony there was great animosity; the men, especially, were so self-sufficient that if a stranger came they united in opposing him, though when they had gotten rid of him they again opposed each other. As for eighty years the Government of the Province had been in the hands of Quakers that denomination had achieved a certain credit among them, and because of that influence the word of a Phebe was given more weight than the message of an Ephroditus. The proud men would not listen to the teaching of a man, for they felt certain he could not tell them anything they had not already known for a long time; but they would at least hear what a woman had to say before they judged her, provided conditions pleased them,—that is, she must be plainly clad, must work with her hands, etc. Circumstances therefore demanded the presence of a Sister, for it appeared that congregations in Pennsylvania could be begun only through the influence of a woman, and the only one fitted for the task was the Eldress, Anna Nitschmann." Both Zinzendorf and Spangenberg were sorry to reach this conclusion, for they did not see how she could be spared at home, but they decided to lay the matter before the Synod when it met at Gotha. Synod decided that the hoped-for benefits outweighed the dangers, and gave her the call for service in America.

Printed histories speak of the party now sent to Pennsylvania as having been led by Bishop David Nitschmann, accompanied by "Father" David Nitschmann, his daughter Anna, and others, but this is not correct,—they should say that in 1740 Anna Nitschmann went to Pennsylvania, accompanied by the Bishop, her father, and others! Zinzendorf, and others who wrote at the time, give her full credit for having started the work there. While the men bought land and made arrangements for building, she and a companion were



out on the farms, making friends. They shared in the farm work, they softened many hearts as they talked with the families, and to the winning personality of the Eldress was due the breaking down of the barrier, which gave others the chance to gather in the thousands that ultimately formed the Pennsylvania congregations. If others reaped the harvest it was she that sowed the seed, and her name should be written in capitals in the church history of Pennsylvania, instead of being only casually mentioned!

One year after the arrival of the first company Zinzendorf and a second party reached Pennsylvania. The Count keenly felt his position, for as a stranger, without sufficient funds, and unable to speak the language, he was at a disadvantage to which he was not accustomed. Then Anna took command of the situation. She had not spent the money given her for her own expenses, but had supported herself by the work of her hands, and now she cared for all the group, as though she were mother of them all, not only superintending the finances but accompanying the Count and his party on various preaching tours. "During 1742 we went three times among the heathen," she says, "and the last time we camped for 49 days in the Indian country, under open sky, among poisonous snakes and other wild beasts. . . . The preaching of the Gospel spread through all the land, and I had part in it. I liked it in America." The ability to rejoice in hardships seems to have been a family characteristic:—Anna's brother Melchior had found a grave beneath the gallows in Bohemia whither he had gone to preach the Gospel; her mother lay in a mission grave in the West Indies; and many others had wrought well for the cause of Christ, so well indeed, that on one occasion Zinzendorf summed it all up in this wise:—

The New World, and the frozen north,  
The Islands of the sea,  
They know how you Moravians  
True, unto death, will be.

Then turning to the woman who had for so long been his co-worker he became reminiscent, recalling the days when she came to Herrnhut, a child, looking up to him with awe and reverence; then the young Eldress, calling him "Brother" as together they labored for the welfare of the congregation. He knew her not only brave in danger, and patient under privation, but tenderly sympathetic in sorrow, when

She wept, but from another's cheek  
She wiped the tears away.

and it is no wonder that he sang:

The Martyr Seed she represents,  
God's Church, below, above;  
"The Lord's Handmaid," by God's good grace,  
Who lives in Jesus' love.

After her return from America Anna labored in many places, for Count Zinzendorf was still an exile from Herrnhut, and his household shared his wanderings, the Countess returning home at intervals to keep things going there. While claimed particularly by the Single Sisters, that is the unmarried women of the Unity, Anna gave her services just as willingly to the married or widowed; and she wrote a number of hymns, which were published in the earlier editions of the Moravian Hymnbook.

Soon after the edict of banishment against Count Zinzendorf was revoked, his wife, Countess Erdmuth Dorothea, died in Herrnhut. She was a noble woman, able, generous, self-sacrificing, the comrade, friend, and helper of the Count, and her death almost prostrated him. So unlike himself did he become that when a year had passed his friends decided to interfere, and begged him to marry again, and again take up his accustomed work in the church. He agreed, but would consider no one except Anna Nitschmann as the companion of his remaining years. Since their return from America she had been his chief assistant among the women, she knew more of the general affairs of the Unity than any other, and he felt that he would be doing the will of the Lord, and acting for the best interests of the Church, if she, and she only, was considered. He was of noble birth, and she of humble, but he plainly stated that she was of so remarkable a character and so highly honored by every one, that no one could doubt the suitability of his choice; and his rank did not need to be considered, for he had long ago withdrawn from the public life of a nobleman, preferring to serve the cause of the Lord through the church. The wedding took place in the drawing room of the Count's home in Berthelsdorf, the ceremony being performed by Bishop Leonard Dober, in the presence of members of the family and such leaders of the Unity as were within reach.

That there were those who criticised the step goes without saying, certain of the Single Sisters thought Anna should have remained a Single Sister to the end of her days, while certain relatives thought the Count should not have married out of his social rank, but while the two winced a little they quietly went their way, and soon the objections were forgotten, at least it is recorded that on the first anniversary of their marriage they had a family dinner-party for twenty-four of their relatives, and the last official act of their lives was a Lovefeast for 70 leaders of the Single Sisters Choir.

Between their marriage and this Lovefeast there were three busy years. They made an extended trip into Switzerland, and paid a number of shorter visits to the congregations which had been established here and there. Perhaps the most striking event recorded is a Lovefeast held on March 17, 1760, the thirtieth anniversary of Anna's election as Chief Eldress, for on this occasion there were present forty out of the fifty men and women who had been living in Herrnhut in 1730 when the little maid was so suddenly and unexpectedly elevated to the high position which she had filled so worthily for thirty years. Her title, indeed, had changed from time to time. The office of Chief Eldress she had laid down before she went to America, so that another might assume her duties, and she might go to the women of Pennsylvania without the barrier of title, "exchanging the throne of a priest for the position of a servant," as Zinzendorf said; but "Eldress," "Sister," "Mother," they had called her, to Deborah, Miram, Phebe, Esther, they had likened her, and now all titles and characteristics were summed up in the one phrase "the Handmaid of the Lord."

Every life story must have its end, and some are sad, and some are tragic, but hers was dramatically appropriate. She was quite ill when the Count was taken sick, and on May 9, 1760, he passed away "as a prince of God." So soon as his son-in-law, Bishop John von Watteville, could control his tears he took the news to Anna, who wept with him, but gently said: "I have the best prospect of you all, for I shall soon go to him." Next day she had herself carried to the Count's room and left with him for a while; then he was borne to the drawing room and placed in a violet-colored casket, and lay in state until the 16th, when he was borne to the place of burial by his Brethren and was laid into his final resting place.



Anna watched the funeral procession from the window of the Sisters House, to which she had asked to be carried, and she saw the thousands of sorrowing friends and respectful acquaintances gathered to do him honor; and then she quietly lay down to wait, but not for long. On May 21st, between six and seven in the evening, the Lord answered her prayers and released her from all pain. The trombones announced her home-going with the usual melodies; the congregation gathered, and Bishop von Watteville spoke of her as "an ideal Handmaid of the Lord, who had served and led the Unity of Brethren for thirty years, and with Count Zinzendorf had been used of God to shape its constitution and develop its activities." All the honors which had attended the obsequies of the Count were now accorded to her. Sorrowing friends bore her to the drawing room of the Zinzendorf home. They dressed her in the white surplice and crimson girdle which she had worn when serving in Communion and on other solemn church occasions. They laid her in a violet-colored casket; they kept watch and ward around her for seven days; and on May 28th she was borne to the graveyard by twenty-eight Presbyters and Deacons, and was solemnly laid to rest beside her husband, in the presence of the entire congregation of Herrnhut, and some two hundred other friends.

Bishop von Watteville, who twelve days before, "with tear-filled eyes," had written the official announcement of the death of Count Zinzendorf, now sent out the account of the "Lord's taking of His Handmaid to join the Congregation which is around Him." He calls her "a mother in Israel," a true handmaid of Jesus, whose like we shall never see again." "She was Count Zinzendorf's helper and best co-worker through this entire period of our church's history. The Saviour gave them success; and as they worked together faithfully and untiringly, so now He has permitted them together to close their labors and enter into His joy." "Her blessing," added the Bishop, "will rest upon her people, and she will never be forgotten by us until we, one by one, are called home by our Lord."

Upon her tombstone there is this simple inscription:

Here  
rests the body  
of a true handmaid of Jesus Christ,  
Anna  
maiden name Nitschmann.  
She was born  
Nov. 24, 1715,  
at Kunewalde, in Moravia.  
Married  
to the  
Ordinarius  
of the Unity of Brethren  
June 27, 1757,  
and fell asleep  
May 21, 1760.

---

Her work  
in the house of the Lord  
remains a blessing.

## THE NORTH CAROLINA FUEL ADMINISTRATION

[The following account and the documents forming the appendix are part of the records of the State Fuel Administration, all of which are deposited with the North Carolina Historical Commission.—Editor's Note.]

The Fuel Administration was created by an act of the 65th Congress approved August 10, 1916, entitled "An act to provide further for the national security and defense by encouraging the production, conserving the supply, and controlling the distribution of food products and fuel." Pursuant to the authority conferred upon him by this act the President of the United States, on August 23, 1917, appointed H. A. Garfield, United States Fuel Administrator.

The Fuel Administration began its activities in North Carolina on the 28th day of September 1917, when A. W. McAlister, President of the Southern Life and Trust Company of Greensboro, was appointed Federal Fuel Administrator for this State. Mr. McAlister was a man well fitted for the place and assumed his duties at once with much zeal and enthusiasm. He never failed to place the work of his country before his own personal affairs. The only compensation received by Mr. McAlister was \$1.00 a year, thus making his a patriotic service.

His first official act was the selection and appointment of C. Leroy Shuping, a prominent young attorney of Greensboro, as Executive Secretary of the State Administration. Thus the work of organizing the State and supplying North Carolina with coal was begun by Mr. McAlister and Mr. Shuping. The Southern Life and Trust Company of Greensboro donated the offices and equipment for carrying on the work. The offices were opened with only one stenographer, but as the time passed and the work increased, additional stenographers were added until the force consisted of four stenographers and one clerk.

An Advisory Committee was also appointed by Mr. McAlister, composed of the following: E. K. Graham, Chapel Hill; Clarence Poe, Raleigh; A. M. Scales, Greensboro; B. W. Kilgore, Raleigh, and J. S. Holmes, Chapel Hill.

The field organization of the State Fuel Administration consisted of a local Fuel Committee in each county, composed of three members, one of which served as chairman. In several of the larger



cities separate committees were named in order to better facilitate the handling of the fuel conditions in such cities. The members of all of these committees were voluntary employees. The entire state organization consisted of more than three hundred and fifty members. Thus the organization of the State Administration was made complete,<sup>1</sup> viz:

1. Mr. McAlister, Administrator.
2. State Advisory Committee.
3. Mr. Shuping, Executive Secretary.
4. County Committees (three members).

From an industrial standpoint the coal year is generally known to begin on the first day of April, and it is a custom with industries and retail coal dealers to arrange for their coal supply during the summer months. In spite of this question, however, investigation by the Fuel Administration developed the fact that many consumers took no active steps with respect to their coal supply until the fall of the year and in many cases coal was bought as it was needed. The consumers "lived from hand to mouth," so to speak; and although the Fuel Administration was not created and thoroughly organized until very late in the season, it found itself confronted with a wide field for necessary immediate action. During the winter of 1917-1918 the North Carolina Fuel Administration, besides aiding two hundred and seventy-eight dealers and industries in securing coal, and in many instances aiding them continuously throughout the season, secured directly for individuals, industries and communities 1,511 carloads of coal which they were not able to secure through any other agency, and no doubt was instrumental in securing at least this many cars again. The value of this will be appreciated when it is considered that all of this was emergency coal and that the Fuel Administration was appealed to as a last resort, and that without the relief afforded there would have been serious suffering, as well as the closing down of many industries.

A survey of the coal needs of the State was made during the first of October, 1917, in order to ascertain a fair idea of the State's requirements.

The supply of coal being inadequate to meet the demands, it was necessary to find a substitute, and wood was naturally decided upon. A vigorous campaign was decided upon, and days and nights were spent in working out plans and giving publicity to it. Both house-

<sup>1</sup> See appendix.

(a)	Average price of Bituminous run of mine coal..\$7.47 per ton.	
	Bituminous lump coal.....	8.43 " "
(b)	Estimate average price, estimated by Local Fuel Chairmen, without government regulations, Bituminous run of mine coal, \$10.56 per ton.	
	" " " lump coal .....	12.25 " "

(f) Thirty counties out of thirty-three reported that the price of wood was advancing when the price was fixed, and twenty-nine out of thirty-one reported that the fixing of the price stopped the advance. The average price, estimated by Local Fuel Chairmen, if price had not been fixed, of four and eight foot wood was \$7.29 per cord, of sawed and split wood, \$10.10 per cord. These estimates are well supported by prices prevailing in Virginia and South Carolina where the price was not fixed, and represent a saving to consumers of \$379,650 in those thirty counties in which the price was fixed by the State Fuel Administration.

(g) Thirty counties out of thirty-three reported that wood came on the market more freely after the price was fixed, and twenty-four out of thirty reported that there had been no shortage in the supply of wood since the price was fixed. Those few reporting that there had been a decreased supply or shortage usually explained that this was due to condition of roads and weather.

(h) All without exception reported that the system of buying and selling wood by the cord or fraction thereof instead of by the load had proved satisfactory.

(i) Thirty-one out of thirty-two reported that the fixing of the price of wood had been satisfactory to the consumer, and twenty-three out of twenty-nine reported that it had been satisfactory to the producer also.

(j) Seventeen cities and towns were reported as operating municipal wood yards; fourteen of these reported that the municipal wood yard had been successful in contributing to the supply of wood, and two to the contrary; thirteen reported that the municipal wood yard had been successful in contributing to the regulation of the price, and two to the contrary.

(k) All without exception reported that the municipal wood yard had not interfered unjustly with the legitimate business of the local wood dealer.

(l) Ten replied that municipal authorities were having wood cut; fifty-four replied in the negative. Four replied that municipal authorities had contracted for wood, sixty-three replied in the negative. Seven towns replied that they had in prospect for next winter an average of 1,165 cords; five answered "plenty in prospect"; forty-nine answered "not any." Thirty-eight replied that the farmers in their respective counties were cutting wood for next winter's market, and twenty-eight answered in the negative. Many counties reported that little if any wood was being cut because all available labor was being used in preparation for the spring crops, especially in the trucking sections in the eastern part of the State.

On the 9th day of November, 1917, the National Administration issued an order to take effect on the 15th day of November, 1917, restricting the consumption of coal for generating electricity for illuminated advertisements, notices, signs, etc. Under this order display signs could not be illuminated before the hour of 7:45 p.m.



or after the hour of 11 p.m., and on Thursday and Sunday nights display signs were eliminated entirely. This order was known as the Lightless Night Order, and was issued in line with the conservation policy of the Administration. The order was universally observed throughout the state of North Carolina, and both as a State and National measure resulted in the conservation of a tremendous amount of power and fuel. One of the principal benefits derived from this order was the diversion of electric power heretofore used for advertising to the useful purpose of operating electric driven industries. The order of November 9, 1917, remained in effect until vacated on November 18, 1918.

It was soon learned that the coal supply was materially affected by delay in unloading and the slow return of cars to the mines. The Administration at once took active steps to facilitate the unloading of cars and to hasten their return to the mines for reloading. Its action met with ready response by consignees and the railways, and the movement of coal to North Carolina was thereby increased.

The shortage of coal in North Carolina was very acute. By the early fall of 1917 the railway companies had so little on hand they were forced to confiscate coal that was in transit to industries and domestic consumers. It was with reluctance that they confiscated this coal, but they were compelled to do so in order to operate troop and munition trains essential to the prosecution of the war. Whenever possible the railway companies replaced the coal. However, the confiscation sometimes caused factories to shut down until they could get relief through the Fuel Administration, and, but for wood, domestic consumers would have suffered.

It was evident that there would soon be suffering if something was not done to relieve the dire domestic situation. After repeated appeals by the State Administration, the National Administration at Washington agreed to divert, and did divert on or about January 5, 1918, two hundred and fifty-five cars of coal consigned to tide-water for use of the Navy and for shipment to New England. This coal was distributed throughout the State and relieved what promised to be one of the most critical periods in the history of the State, the winter being one of the most severe in the recollection of the present generation.

January 3, 1918, was set aside as National "Tag-your-shovel day" by the United States Fuel Administration. On that day school

children tied to every coal shovel in the country tags bearing instructions for coal saving. Their purpose was to remind each man, woman, and child who used a coal shovel that every shovel full of coal saved meant just so much additional power, health, and support for the American soldier and sailor on the firing line. The miners did their part to aid the Fuel Administration in its task. They mined more coal than ever before. The over-burdened railroads grappled with the problem of transporting this unusual quantity of coal, in addition to the great amount of war freight which was congesting their lines. As a result of all these efforts an extra million carloads of coal were mined. This was fifty million tons more coal than had even been mined before in any year in the history of the United States. We needed another million carloads. It was a physical impossibility to produce this additional amount at once. It had to be saved from the coal already available. The American people were asked to do their part in this emergency by saving shovelful by shovelful in factory and home, and this was the reason for "Tag-your-shovel day."

Another important conservation measure adopted by the Fuel Administration was under an order issued by the National Fuel Administration under date of January 17, 1918, prohibiting manufacturers or manufacturing plants from burning fuel or using power derived from fuel for any purpose on the following days: January 18, 19, 20, 21 and 22, 1918, and continuing up to and including March 25, 1918. Several different classes of plants were excepted from this order:

(a) Plants which necessarily must be continuously operated seven days each week to avoid serious injury to the plant itself or its contents. These plants were allowed to use such quantity of fuel as was necessary to prevent injury to the plant or its contents.

(b) Manufacturers, or plants manufacturing perishable foods or foods for necessary immediate consumption.

(c) Printing establishments.

This order was known as the Closing Order, and not only required the closing of plants as above enumerated, but also required the closing of all business or professional offices, except offices used by the United States, county, or municipal governments, transportation companies, public utilities, telegraph and telephone companies, banks, trust companies, physicians, or dentists. It also required wholesale

and retail stores, other business houses, theaters, moving picture houses, private or public dance halls, and all other places of public amusement to close. The fuel conserved as a result of this measure greatly assisted the Government in the operation of railroads, army and navy cantonments, transport and supply vessels, and battle-ships. Fuel conservation under this order was an active and progressive measure in the prosecution of the war.

On or about February 1, 1918, the State Administration found it necessary again to appeal to the National Administration at Washington for relief of the domestic situation in the State. In response to this appeal one hundred and forty cars were diverted from tidewater.

On March 8, 1918, the following plan was adopted regarding the retail distribution of coal for the year 1918:

(A) Every consumer was urged on or before April 1, 1918, to place with his regular dealer his order for his reasonable normal requirements for the year ending March 31, 1919. Such orders were to be made in writing and to state substantially the information called for in regulation (c) hereinafter set forth. When such orders were entered, the dealers proceeded to make deliveries thereon, until each customer willing to accept it received two-thirds of his normal annual requirements, provided that orders of six tons or under were filled in full. When all consumers, who were willing to accept it, received two-thirds of their normal annual requirements, the dealers proceeded to fill the balance of such orders up to normal annual requirements of each consumer. (The provision for two-thirds delivery applied only to anthracite. With respect to bituminous coal for domestic use, the dealer proceeded to deliver the consumer's normal annual requirements.) If a consumer already had a quantity on hand, he received only such additional amount as made up his normal annual requirements.

New consumers who were unable to have their orders accepted by a dealer applied to the Local Fuel Administrator who saw that their requirements received attention from the proper dealer. Carload or bargeload lots were not delivered to a single domestic consumer, or to a group of consumers, except with the permission of the Local Fuel Administrator. Dealers filed with the Local Fuel Administrator on the first of each month a statement containing the



names and addresses of consumers to whom deliveries were made during the previous month and the quantity delivered to each.

(B) The following regulations were established by the United States Fuel Administration:

“(a) Until further notice no domestic consumer of coal or coke shall purchase, receive, or otherwise take possession of, more coal or coke than is required for his actual and necessary requirements prior to March 31, 1919. If such consumer already has a quantity on hand he shall receive only such additional amount as shall make up his actual and necessary requirements prior to that date.

“(b) No person, firm, association, or corporation, whether acting alone or in conjunction with others, shall, directly or indirectly, provide any domestic consumer of coal or coke with more coal or coke before March 31, 1919, than is necessary, with the amount already on hand, to meet the actual and necessary requirements of such consumer prior to that date.

“(c) On and after April 1, 1918, no person, firm, association, or corporation shall sell or deliver coal to a domestic consumer who does not first furnish to the person selling or delivering such coal a statement which the consumer declares in writing to be true, and which specifies (1) the amount of coal the consumer has on hand, (2) the amount of coal he has on order and the name of the person from whom ordered, (3) the amount of coal used by him in 12 months ending March 31, 1918, and (4) the amount of coal needed to meet his actual and necessary requirements prior to March 31, 1919; *provided, however*, that this regulation may be modified by any State Fuel Administrator within his own State under such circumstances and conditions as he may deem proper.

“(d) On and after April 1, 1918, and until further notice, no retail dealer shall, unless authorized by the State Fuel Administrator, deliver or cause to be delivered to any domestic consumer more than two-thirds of his normal annual requirements of anthracite coal until each domestic consumer who has placed his order with said dealer and is willing to receive delivery of the same has received two-thirds of his normal annual requirements for the year ending March 31, 1919; *provided, however*, that orders of six tons or less may be filled in full.

"(e) Carload and bargeload lots shall not be delivered to a single domestic consumer or to a group of consumers, except with the permission of the Local Fuel Administrator.

"(f) Dealers shall file with the Local Fuel Administrator, on the first of each month, a statement containing the names and addresses of consumers to whom deliveries have been made during the previous month and the quantity delivered to each.

"Any dealer or consumer who violates the foregoing regulations will be subject to the penalties prescribed by the Lever Act.

"Such further regulations will be issued as may be necessary to enforce the essential features of the foregoing plan."

The purpose of the plan was to secure the broadest and most equitable distribution possible during the year. The Fuel Administration was assured by the representatives of the National Retail Coal Merchants' Association that the retail dealers throughout the country would lend their hearty coöperation in the performance of this patriotic service.

The United States Fuel Administration, in coöperation with Director-General of Railroads, announced a Zone System to govern the distribution of bituminous coal during the coal year beginning April 1, 1918.

The purpose of the zone plan was to save transportation by the elimination of unnecessary long hauls and to avoid cross hauls, thereby conserving the car supply and increasing car utility. Heretofore coal had been distributed practically without regard to the distance between mine and the consumer. Under the Zone System coal was distributed to consuming territory under restrictions that avoided as far as possible waste of transportation facilities, but were nevertheless consistent with the maintenance of the greatest possible production and a proper coal supply to all coal users. The general effect of the Zone System was to restrict eastern coal to eastern markets and fill the vacancy in the central and western states with nearby coal produced in those states. Therefore, zones were established so that the coal supply could be normally derived from mines relatively near, thus preventing abnormal and wasteful transportation movements, insuring more normal distribution of cars to the mines and more steady employment of mine labor.

The restrictions imposed upon the movement of coal by the Zone System made necessary some road readjustment of fuel transportation

in various communities affected by these restrictions. The Administration, therefore, confidently hoped for the patriotic coöperation of every coal consumer who might be inconvenienced by the use of fuel to which he was not accustomed, or who might be affected by the cutting out of unnecessary transportation. When a consumer found that he no longer had the opportunity to get his coal from a distant mine, according to his custom, it was hoped that he would realize that his using another sort of coal was an essential part of the scheme of conservation in the interest of the national defense.

The plan as established provided for elasticity through a system of special permits issued by the Fuel Administration when, and as, necessary. Under these regulations coal of particular quality or characteristics for special purpose, such as by-products, gas, blacksmith and metallurgical work, was permitted to move by permit beyond limits imposed by the zone system. Permits were issued to the individual consumer having need for this special purpose coal where a supply was not available in the producing districts which were permitted to ship into the consuming zone where the customer was located. Applications for permits were made through the Local Chairman who in turn communicated the same to this office for handling with the Permit Bureau of the United States Fuel Administration, Washington, D. C. The application of the consumer stated in detail the necessity for the special coal and the amount required during the period for which a permit was requested. In the case of a consumer having more than one plant, or requiring special coal from more than one producer, separate applications for permits were required for shipment from each producer as well as to each plant. Application forms were obtained from this office.

The Zone System affected all bituminous coal except:

Coal for railroad fuel, for which special arrangements were made by the Fuel Administrator and the Director-General of Railroads.

Coal for movement on inland waterways, which was in no way restricted by the system.

Coal delivered to Canada, which was subject to regulations of the Fuel Administrator.

Consumers in the State of North Carolina were restricted to the coal producing districts in Tennessee, Georgia, Kentucky mines on the L. & N. Railway main lines and branches connecting at and south of Corbin, and, on the C. N. O. & T. B. Railway south of Som-



eriset, all Black Mountain and Stonega District in Lee, Wise and western Russell counties, Virginia.

The consumers of low volatile coal in North Carolina were restricted to the low volatile fields of West Virginia mines in the Pocahontas, Tug River, and New River Districts on the N. & W. railway, the C. & O. Railway and the Virginian Railway and the Clinch Valley Districts in Tazwell and eastern Russell counties, Virginia, along the N. W. Railway.

The early buying of the winter's supply of coal by consumers throughout the country was considered imperative. Many of the mines in many of the producing districts throughout the country were unable to keep up their production in the summer months because of the decreased demand for their products. Under the zone system these producing districts were allotted consuming territory which demanded a large increase in production, thus coal which had long been available, but not used, was added to the aggregate supply for the country as a whole. Consumers in these zones filled their bins during the summer and kept these mines running every day of the week in order to avoid serious coal shortage in the winter.

On April 1, 1918, a meeting of the entire State organization was held at Greensboro to afford an opportunity for the exchange of ideas. This meeting no doubt had a decided influence on the successful activities of the Local Committees in the period following. For many weeks following the Greensboro meeting, the State office gave its attention to the directions of the United States Fuel Administration, advising consumers to establish connection with their usual sources of supply, where zoning permitted. Information was furnished covering the location of zones and the names of operating companies in the various zones which supply this state. Assistance was rendered consumers of all classes in establishing connections where they were unable to do so by their own efforts, with the result that retail dealers, industrial plants, and other consumers were at least partially successful in establishing contract connections for the greater part of the tonnage required by them for the coal year. Along with this effort, a campaign urging the early buying of coal was persistently waged to the end that retail dealers had on file July 1st declaration cards for practically all the coal required by domestic consumers for the year ending March 31, 1919. Circular

letters and general correspondence, together with newspaper publicity, kept local committees and the consuming public advised of all orders and regulations as issued, and information was furnished on all subjects relating to production, distribution and price fixing of coal.

From the first of April, 1918, the beginning of the new coal year, and throughout the early months of the season a "Buy coal now" campaign was vigorously waged. The purpose of this campaign was to avoid the experience of the past winter. The Fuel Administration took the necessary steps to clear the way for the ceaseless activity of the mines in increasing the supply, and for the steady, swift, distribution of the nation's fuel as rapidly as it could be taken from the ground and moved over our over-burdened transportation systems.

There was necessity for conserving the country's resources for the prosecution of the war, and an increased demand for fuel for industries engaged in the production of munitions and commodities required in the conduct of the war. Moreover, owing to the limitations upon transportation facilities and other causes resulting from the war, the supply of fuel was found insufficient for even normal times. It was, therefore, essential to the national security, and for the support and maintenance of the army and navy, to restrict the consumption of fuel in certain lines of industry, and on April 13, 1918, an order was issued restricting fuel consumption by manufacturers of clay products as follows:

Face Brick.....	50	per	cent	restriction
Common Brick.....	50	"	"	"
Paving Brick.....	50	"	"	"
Terra Cotta.....	50	"	"	"
Roofing Tile.....	50	"	"	"
Floor and Wall Tile.....	50	"	"	"
Sanitary Ware.....	50	"	"	"
Hollow Ware.....	25	"	"	"
Draining Tile and Sewer Pipe.....	25	"	"	"
Stone Ware (except chemical).....	25	"	"	"

The per cent of restriction was based on the average fuel consumption by manufacturers during the years 1915-1917. Statistics of results obtained in fuel conservation by four thousand clay product companies, representing practically the entire industry of the

country, showed an actual total fuel saving in this industry alone of 1,846,996 net tons during the first six months of 1918.

From estimates made of the country's coal requirements, it seemed evident that sufficient coal would not be transported to all parts of the country to satisfy the needs of all consumers. Consequently in order to insure that there should be no interference with the country's war program, it was necessary in view of the threatened shortage, to recognize that certain consumers should have preference in the distribution of coal. Therefore, on May 25, 1918, a preference list was issued and all consumers of coal, except domestic consumers, were recorded under the following classifications:

- (a) Railroads.
- (b) Army and Navy, together with other departments of the Federal Government.
- (c) State and County Departments and Institutions.
- (d) Public Utilities.
- (e) Retail dealers.
- (f) Manufacturing plants on War Industries Board Preference list.
- (g) Manufacturing plants not on War Industries Board Preference list.
- (h) Jobbers.
- (i) Lake.
- (j) Tidewater.

Classes a, b, c, d, e, and f comprised the Preference List, and preference coal shipments were given to all consumers within this class, in accordance with instruction issued from time to time by the War Industries Board. The distribution of coal to consumers in other classes was left to the State Fuel Administration. Industries and consumers not included in the Preference List necessarily occupied a secondary rank in receiving their coal supply.

One of the most important steps taken by the Fuel Administration was that of regulating the price of coal. The National Administration fixed the price on all coal at the mines, but the fixing of retail prices was left to the State Administration. The plan followed in arriving at a proper price was first to ascertain the cost of the coal delivered upon the yards of the retail dealer and then to ascertain the expense of the dealer in handling the coal and what would be a fair and just margin of profit. The items which entered into the cost of coal to the dealer were: price of the coal at the mines; transportation charges; war tax; commission allowed the broker or purchasing agent. The retail gross margin embraced the following items:



retail dealers' expense of unloading; yard expense; delivery expense; general expense; degradation; and net profits. The result of this action on the part of the Government held down the price of coal at the mines, as well as the retail price to the consumer. The highest authorized price paid per ton for bituminous coal delivered in the bins of North Carolina consumers during the coal year of 1918-1919 was \$9.75, with a minimum of \$6.50 and an average of about \$8. If the Government had not fixed the price of coal at the mines and the price to be charged by retail dealers, prices would very probably have been in excess of what they actually were. The Department at Washington was frequently importuned on the subject of increasing the prices at the mines and on occasions it was necessary to grant the request of the Miners' Association. Retail dealers also urged from time to time that their margin of profit be increased. All appeals were carefully considered and the Government allowed in each case a fair and reasonable profit. Its action thus prevented profiteering and saved the people of North Carolina and other States many thousands of dollars. It is reliably reported that in France coal cost \$60 per ton, with the heating season cut to three months.

On June 28, 1918, Mr. McAlister resigned as State Fuel Administrator and the following is a copy of letter issued by him to the Local Fuel Committees, setting forth the reason for giving up the work and confirming the announcement of the appointment of R. C. Norfleet of Winston-Salem, N. C., as his successor:

This is to confirm the press report of my resignation as Federal Fuel Administrator for North Carolina, and of the appointment of Mr. R. C. Norfleet, of Winston-Salem, as my successor.

For several months after my appointment as Fuel Administrator it was necessary for me to give practically my entire time and thought to the duties of the office. The result has been that I have found it imperatively necessary to ask to be relieved in order that I might have a seriously needed rest from the arduous work and in order that I might give to my business that time and attention which I have been forced for several months to withdraw from it almost entirely.

In laying down the duties of this office I wish to express my appreciation for the fidelity and efficiency of you, the Local Fuel Chairmen of the State, in the discharge of your duties. Your willingness to sacrifice your time and your convenience for the public good has evidenced an unselfish and patriotic devotion which has seldom been equaled. I shall never cease to be grateful for the whole-hearted coöperation you have given to the State Fuel Administration.

It was my privilege to recommend to the United States Fuel Administration the appointment of Mr. R. C. Norfleet of Winston-Salem. I have been associated with him for several months as Local Fuel Chairman for Forsyth County. His experience as an aggressive, faithful, successful, Local Chairman gives him the best equipment that he could possess for the duties of the office. He has solved the same difficulties, has overcome the same obstacles, has had the same problems which you have had and are having. As a preëminently successful Local Fuel Chairman, as a man of successful business experience and of sterling character, I wish to bespeak for him the same splendid coöperation and support that you have given me. He has accepted a most difficult task at the salary of \$1.00 per annum, and is entitled to the patient support and coöperation of the people of North Carolina whom he is endeavoring to serve.

It also affords me much satisfaction to be able to announce that Mr. C. L. Shuping, who has been Secretary of the State Fuel Administration from the beginning, and who has devoted himself to the work with rare fidelity and efficiency, will continue to serve in this capacity.

Mr. Norfleet named Mr. McAlister and James A. Gray of Winston-Salem as members of the State Advisory Committee, in addition to the gentlemen who served with Mr. McAlister.

On the 3d day of July, 1918, the offices of the State Fuel Administration were moved from Greensboro to Winston-Salem and there located in the Post Office building.

During the month of July, 1918, plans were adopted and immediately put under way for making a systematic survey of the coal needs of the State for the coming season. Separate surveys were made of the requirements of domestic consumers through retail dealers, industrial plants of all classes, public utilities, State and county institutions, public and private educational institutions, and charitable organizations. Following this an additional survey was made to ascertain present and former sources of supply of all consumers. These surveys enabled the office to open an individual account with the three hundred and thirty-nine retail dealers and one thousand and eighty industrial plants in the State, showing, receipts for the coal year April 1, 1917, to March 31, 1918, and requirements from April 1, 1918 to March 31, 1919, together with tonnage on hand April 1, 1918 and receipts April 1st to July 1, 1918. Beginning with July 1, 1918, weekly reports of coal dealers and industries made it possible to determine the exact standing of coal stocks of all consumers as represented by these accounts. All accounts were classified under the following heads:

Retail dealers, which were alphabetically arranged in the order of counties, towns and names of dealers; Brick; Flour; Furniture; Oil; Fertilizer and Lime; Public Utilities; Tanneries; Textile; Tobacco; Wood-Working; Miscellaneous; Schools and Colleges; Hospitals and Orphanages.

This arrangement made it possible to determine the requirements, receipts and storage of the State as a whole, the county as a unit, a given community or an individual coal dealer. With the industries classified and alphabetically arranged it was possible to determine not only the requirements, receipts, and storage of individual plants, but of a given industry as a whole, as well as of all the industries in the State. These accounts, with the files built up by the various surveys, were indispensable in handling the fuel situation in this State.

The above surveys indicated that the total industrial requirements of the State for the season of 1918-1919 were 2,053,390 tons, and the domestic requirements 861,000 tons, or a total of 2,914,390 tons. The State was allotted 2,006,000 tons for industrial use and 861,000 tons for domestic use, or a total of 2,867,000 tons.

The tremendous increase in demand for coal for special war purposes in the eastern part of the country, particularly for the Navy and Transport service, made it necessary to draw more heavily on the eastern coal fields than was originally contemplated. In order to secure this coal and accomplish the desired result it was necessary to limit the amount of coal storage industrial plants would be allowed to accumulate and carry on hand, and to fix a uniform amount for each state. Industries in North Carolina engaged in war work and designated as preferred industries, including public utilities, were allowed to carry a thirty days' supply. All other industries known and designated as non-preferred industries, were allowed to carry fifteen days' supply. The result of this measure brought about a more equitable distribution of coal and at the same time enabled the Government to supply adequately strictly war industries, the navy transport vessels, and, therefore, to carry out the very purpose for which the Storage Limitation Order was issued.

On or about the 27th day of August, 1918, the National Fuel Administration made an earnest and patriotic appeal to all users of gasoline to discontinue the use of gasoline for pleasure riding on Sunday. The order, or request, was known as the Gasolineless Sun-



day Order. The request met with patriotic response from the entire nation, and North Carolina played well its part. The loyal public response to the appeal east of the Mississippi River saved at least 1,000,000 barrels of gasoline and made it possible for the Government to give to the men at the front the supply required in the prosecution of the war.

In line with the policy adopted for other States, the United States Fuel Administration, in the late summer of 1918, undertook to conserve fuel in North Carolina by enlightening the public in the most approved scientific method. The campaign was conducted by a Commission composed of a Director and an Advisory Committee, whose services were voluntary. Efforts were made to conserve fuel in hotels, in private plants, in large industrial steam plants, in ice and refrigerating plants; and to substitute, wherever possible, the use of hydro-electric power for steam power.

Charles E. Waddell, a consulting engineer of Asheville, who for many years was engaged in the hydro-electric and industrial development of the southern states, was made Director of Conservation in charge of this Commission. With the exception of two paid assistants the conservation work of North Carolina depended entirely on voluntary services. The work was of too short duration to form a very accurate opinion as to what was accomplished. It may be stated, however, that inquiries poured in from various industries begging them for help and advice. Several mills reported that by the suggestions offered they effected material reduction in their fuel consumption. One mill reporting a saving of forty per cent of fuel and that it was selling coal that it had expected to use during the winter in heating its building. In several other instances large and notable hotels adopted suggestions offered, which resulted in not only a saving of fuel but in general conservation and more satisfactory service to their guests.

One of the most effective pieces of work done by the commission was the assistance rendered the Southern Power Company in building a development at Bridgewater in the foothills of the mountains of Western North Carolina. From this development it is estimated that power sufficient to release 530,000 tons of coal per annum will be available on the North Carolina systems.

The Commission urged that secondary customers buy steam-generated electric power rather than operate their own plants, wherever it was possible to do so, because the power companies where generating from steam, were securing a higher efficiency than the isolated plants. This plan not only presented an easier problem in getting fuel to large central plants, but it also released a number of employees occupied in running the isolated plants whose services could be more valuably employed elsewhere.

On the 1st day of October, 1918, C. L. Shuping was appointed Director of Enforcement for the State of North Carolina. This appointment conferred upon him the power and authority to enforce in the said State the provisions of the Lever Act, the proclamations and executive orders of the President relating to fuel, and the orders, rules and regulations of the United States Fuel Administration. The appointment was given Mr. Shuping by virtue of the fact that he was an attorney. The services rendered by him were in addition to those rendered as Executive Secretary.

The Spanish influenza epidemic in the coal fields had its effect upon the production of coal during the month of October, 1918, and for some time presented a difficult and what promised to be a very serious situation. The districts supplying North Carolina were the hardest hit by the epidemic and for a time almost the entire coal supply for this State was threatened with being cut off. To relieve the situation appeal was made to Washington to increase the movement from the Pocahontas fields to North Carolina.

During the early part of November the Administration found it necessary to issue a formal order restricting the movement of fuel wood by limiting rail shipments to thirty miles, except upon permission of the State Fuel Administrator. This plan guaranteed a local supply relieved of the competition of the distant and larger market. The termination of hostilities relieved the general fuel situation to such an extent as to make possible the cancellation of this order on December 16, 1918.

The signing of the armistice on November 11, 1918, practically brought to a close the activities of the Fuel Administration in State and nation. On December 6, 1918, all orders for coal placed by the Administration were cancelled, and on January 31, 1919, all Administrations restrictions were removed.

The allotment of only 192,000 tons of Pocahontas and New River coal against normal receipts of 1,250,000 tons annually was one of the principal disturbing factors in the coal supply for the State of North Carolina during the early fall of 1918. This, with the large orders placed in the Southwest Virginia fields for shipment of domestic sizes to camps and cantonments, made it necessary to find new sources of supply for a large number of industries and retail dealers in this State. The result was that it was necessary for this office to place approximately 2,500 requisitions covering the movement of more than 16,000 cars of coal. Acute situations arising out of those conditions were relieved from time to time by diversions of tidewater coal by the Department at Washington at the request of the State Administration. These diversions, the activities of the office, and the movement under contract and direct purchase resulted in the movement of a total of approximately 36,000 cars of coal into the State from April 1 to December 1, 1918.

It was not possible to secure any Pennsylvania anthracite coal for consumption in North Carolina. The transportation situation was such that Pennsylvania anthracite was the only domestic fuel available to New England, eastern New York, Pennsylvania, and New Jersey, and with the materially greater needs due to large increases in population as a result of essential war industry work, it was necessary, in order to take care of the minimum needs of those sections, to cut off shipments to North Carolina and other southern states, and to a number of western states.

A modern filing system was maintained in the office of the State Administration, embracing more than 1,500 files. These files were closely inspected to insure prompt attention and follow-up until final disposition. The average weekly correspondence reached more than two thousand pieces of incoming and outgoing mail matter.

In conclusion, it is well to say that the people of North Carolina treated with the greatest respect all orders, regulations, rules and suggestions of the Fuel Administration. Violations were practically nil. Coöperation and satisfaction was the rule. The more than three hundred and fifty members of the State organizations served with loyalty and efficiency. The joy of service and the nation's victory has been their reward.



## APPENDIX

## LETTER CREATING COUNTY FUEL ADMINISTRATORS

[Greensboro, N. C.,  
September 28, 1917]

DEAR SIR:

The Fuel situation in North Carolina is serious and not a day is to be lost in doing whatever is going to be done to relieve or improve it. Nothing is going to contribute more towards winning the war than a wise conservation and administration of fuel.

I have undertaken the work of Fuel Administrator for the State of North Carolina because the Government asked me to do it, and because I regarded it as a call which I could not decline. I can accomplish nothing, however, without the prompt support of the men whom I am asking to assist in this work.

It is necessary to have a County Fuel Administration Committee in each County, and I am writing to ask you to serve as Chairman of this Committee for \_\_\_\_\_ County; and that you will appoint to serve with you, at least two other men of the highest character in your community,—men who stand out as representing the best there is in the community, and who will be regarded as being so fair and just, and unprejudiced, that their decisions will not be apt to be questioned. Do not appoint anyone who is interested directly or indirectly in the fuel business, or men who represent special interests.

It is desired that the Administration of Fuel be kept out of politics, and it is therefore suggested that in the selection of your committee, no one party be given undue preponderance over another. The test of selection should be fitness for the position, and ability to secure speedy and effective results.

This is a call of the country and you can answer that call, and at the same time render an important public service, if you will *wire* me immediately accepting this appointment.

Very truly yours,

A. W. MCALISTER,  
*State Fuel Administrator.*

AWMcA/H

## ORGANIZATION OF STATE FUEL ADMINISTRATION FOR NORTH CAROLINA

OCTOBER 10TH, 1917 TO JULY 1ST, 1918

Name	Address	Designation	Date of Appointment	Salary
McAlister, A. W.	Greensboro.	State Fuel Administrator	Oct. 10th, 1917.	Volunteer
Graham, E. K.	Chapel Hill.	Member Advisory Committee.	Oct. 10th, 1917.	Volunteer
Poe, Clarence.	Raleigh.	Member Advisory Committee.	Oct. 10th, 1917.	Volunteer
Scales, A. W.	Greensboro.	Member Advisory Committee.	Oct. 10th, 1917.	Volunteer
Kilgore, B. W.	Raleigh.	Member Advisory Committee.	Oct. 10th, 1917.	Volunteer
Holmes, J. S.	Chapel Hill.	Member Advisory Committee.	Oct. 10th, 1917.	Volunteer
Anthony, Tince.	Greensboro.	Stenographer	Oct. 10th, 1917 to Dec. 24th, 1917	Salary
Holshouser, Mrs. C. W.	Greensboro.	Stenographer	Feb. 23d, 1918 to Oct. 10th, 1917 to Feb. 2d, 1918.	Salary
Jennings, Mrs. J.	Greensboro.	Stenographer	Nov. 23d, 1917 to June 30th, 1918.	Salary
Shuping, C. L.	Greensboro.	Executive Secretary	Oct. 10th, 1917 to June 30th, 1918.	Salary
Trent, Ruby.	Greensboro.	Clerk.	Jan. 3d, 1918 to June 30th, 1918.	Salary
Wharton, Kathleen.	Greensboro.	Stenographer	Jan. 14th, 1918 to Mar. 18th, 1918.	Salary

# ORGANIZATION FROM JULY 1ST, 1918 TO CLOSE OF WAR

## THE NORTH CAROLINA FUEL ADMINISTRATION

159

Name	Address	Designation	Date of Appointment	Salary
Norfleet, R. C.	Winston-Salem	State Fuel Administrator	July 1st, 1918	Volunteer
McAlister, A. W.	Greensboro	Member Advisory Committee	July 1st, 1918	Volunteer
Graham, E. K.	Chapel Hill	Member Advisory Committee	July 1st, 1918	Volunteer
Poe, Clarence	Raleigh	Member Advisory Committee	July 1st, 1918	Volunteer
Seales, A. M.	Greensboro	Member Advisory Committee	July 1st, 1918	Volunteer
Kilgore, B. W.	Raleigh	Member Advisory Committee	July 1st, 1918	Volunteer
Holmes, J. S.	Chapel Hill	Member Advisory Committee	July 1st, 1918	Volunteer
Gray, James A.	Winston-Salem	Member Advisory Committee	July 1st, 1918	Volunteer
Anthony, Tince	Winston-Salem	Stenographer	Aug. 8th, 1918	Volunteer Salary
Blackwood, Sallie	Winston-Salem	Stenographer	Aug. 1st, 1918	Salary
Dalton, Ethel	Winston-Salem	Stenographer	July 12th, 1918 to Dec. 31st, 1918	Salary
Holshouser, Mrs. C. W.	Winston-Salem	Stenographer	July 1st, 1918 to July 31st, 1918	Salary
Jenkins, Sallie	Winston-Salem	Stenographer	July 17th, 1918 to Nov. 5th, 1918	Salary
Jennings, Mrs. J.	Winston-Salem	Stenographer	July 1st, 1918 to Aug. 18th, 1918	Salary
Shuping, C. L.	Winston-Salem	Executive Secretary	July 1st, 1918	Salary
Stewart, O. T.	Winston-Salem	Traffic Manager	Sept. 15th, 1918 to Jan. 8th, 1919	Salary



LIST OF LOCAL FUEL COMMITTEES IN NORTH CAROLINA  
ALL BEING VOLUNTEER EMPLOYEES

County	Name	Address	Designation	Date of Appointment	Date of Resignation
ALAMANCE:	Long, J. Elmer	Graham	Chairman	10-15-'17	
	Scott, Chas. A.	Graham	Committeeman	10-15-'17	
	White, Sam	Graham	Committeeman	10-15-'17	
	BURLINGTON, town of				
	Sharpe, W. E.	Burlington	Chairman	10-15-'17	
	MEBANE, town of				
	Ray, U. S.	Mebane	Chairman	8-1-'18	
	Warren, B. F.	Mebane	Committeeman	8-1-'18	
	Crawford, W. S.	Mebane	Committeeman	8-1-'18	
	Connolly, J. C.	Taylorsville	Chairman	10-17-'17	
ALEXANDER:					
	Carson, J. T.	Sparta	Chairman	1-7-'18	
ALLEGHANY:					
ANSON:	Liles, W. Henry	Wadesboro	Chairman	10-23-'17	
ASHE:	Colvard, J. B.	Jefferson	Chairman	10-19-'17	
	Neal, F. H.	Jefferson	Committeeman	10-19-'17	
	Taylor, D. M.	West Jefferson	Committeeman	10-19-'17	
AVERY:	Clay, M. W.	Newland	Chairman	10-29-'17	
	Baird, Harrison	Newland	Committeeman	10-29-'17	
	Wall, R. N.	Newland	Committeeman	10-29-'17	
BEAUFORT:	Williams, W. H.	Washington	Chairman	10-9-'17	
	Leach, Geo. T.	Washington	Committeeman	10-9-'17	
	Meekins, J. C. Jr.	Washington	Committeeman	10-9-'17	

# THE NORTH CAROLINA FUEL ADMINISTRATION

161

BERTIE:	Lyon, W. L.....	Windsor.....	Chairman.....	10-25-'17
	Gatling, E. L.....	Windsor.....	Committeeman...	10-25-'17
	Cooper, J. W.....	Windsor.....	Committeeman...	10-25-'17
BLADEN:	Dunn, C. C.....	Bladenboro.....	Chairman.....	10-26-'17
BRUNSWICK:	Guthrie, M. C.....	Southport.....	Chairman.....	11-12-'17
	Cramer, E. H.....	Southport.....	Committeeman...	11-12-'17
	Davis, R. W.....	Southport.....	Committeeman...	11-12-'17
BUNCOMBE:	Ramsey, D. Hiden.....	Asheville.....	Chairman.....	11-15-'17
	Williamson, W. B.....	Asheville.....	Committeeman...	11-15-'17
	Hayes, R. P.....	Asheville.....	Committeeman...	11-15-'17
BURKE:	Tate, F. P.....	Morganton.....	Chairman.....	10-24-'17
	Ervin, W. C.....	Morganton.....	Committeeman...	10-24-'17
	Mull, John M.....	Morganton.....	Committeeman...	10-24-'17
CABAREUS:	Houston, Dr. W. C.....	Concord.....	Chairman.....	10-11-'17
	Gibson, W. H.....	Concord.....	Committeeman...	10-11-'17
	Hartsell, A. F.....	Concord.....	Committeeman...	10-11-'17
CALDWELL:	Nelson, J. L.....	Lenoir.....	Chairman.....	10-18-'17
	Seagle, J. C.....	Lenoir.....	Committeeman...	10-18-'17
	Broyhill.....	Lenoir.....	Committeeman...	10-18-'17
CAMDEN:	Stevens, P. W.....	Camden.....	Chairman.....	12-18-'17
CARTERET:	Huntley, Geo. W.....	Beaufort.....	Chairman.....	10-26-'17
	Smith, W. P.....	Beaufort.....	Chairman.....	3-20-'18
	Potter, J. H.....	Beaufort.....	Chairman.....	8-14-'18
	Wade, T. C.....	Beaufort.....	Committeeman...	10-26-'17
	MOREHEAD CITY, town of			
	Webb, W. M.....	Morehead City.....	Chairman.....	11-8-'17
	Hales, W. J.....	Morehead City.....	Chairman.....	5-23-'18
	Taylor, R. W.....	Morehead City.....	Committeeman...	11-8-'17
	Leary, L. L.....	Morehead City.....	Committeeman...	11-8-'17

10-2-'18  
(Deceased)

3-19-'18  
8-13-'18

5-20-'18

County	Name	Address	Designation	Date of Appointment	Date of Resignation
CASWELL:	Winstead, M. C.	Milton	Chairman	10-23-'17	
CATAWBA:	Yount, John P.	Newton	Chairman	10-17-'17	
CHATHAM:	Gregson, J. C.	Siler City	Chairman	1-4-'18	
	Hayes, R. H.	Pittsboro	Committeeman	1-4-'18	
	Harris, M. W.	Goldston	Committeeman	1-4-'18	
CHOWAN:	Woods, John C. Jr.	Edenton	Chairman	10-20-'17	5-6-'18
	Owens, Willis	Edenton	Chairman		10-9-'18
	Privott, H. C.	Edenton	Chairman	10-18-'18	(Deceased)
CHEROKEE:	Martin, A. L.	Murphy	Chairman	10-31-'17	
CLAY					
CLEVELAND:	Griffin, I. C.	Shelby	Chairman	10-12-'17	
	Lineberger, Wm.	Shelby	Committeeman	10-12-'17	
	Washburn, S. A.	Shelby	Committeeman	10-12-'17	
COLUMBUS:	Phillips, W. H.	Whiteville	Chairman	12-17-'17	
	Powell, J. L.	Whiteville	Committeeman	12-17-'17	
	Tucker, I. B.	Whiteville	Committeeman	12-17-'17	
Craven:	Blades, J. B.	New Bern	Chairman	10-15-'17	9-15-'18
	Basnight, J. S.	New Bern	Chairman	10-1-'18	(Deceased)
	Dunn, Wm. Sr.	New Bern	Committeeman	10-15-'17	
	Miller, J. S.	New Bern	Committeeman	10-15-'17	

CUMBERLAND:	McAlister, C. C. ....	Fayetteville .....	Chairman .....	10-13-'17
	Horne, W. W. ....	Fayetteville .....	Chairman .....	10-13-'17
	DeVane, J. M. ....	Fayetteville .....	Chairman .....	10-13-'17
CURRITUCK:				
DARE:	Daniels, E. R. ....	Wanchese .....	Chairman .....	10-25-'17
	Hayman, M. D. ....	Wanchese .....	Committeeman .....	10-25-'17
	Crisp, B. G. ....	Wanchese .....	Committeeman .....	10-25-'18
DAVIDSON:	Mountcastle, G. W. ....	Lexington .....	Chairman .....	10-19-'17
	THOMASVILLE, town of			
	Lambeth, Frank S. ....	Thomasville .....	Chairman .....	10-17-'17
	Hinkle, W. G. ....	Thomasville .....	Committeeman .....	10-17-'17
	Morris, J. A. ....	Thomasville .....	Committeeman .....	10-17-'17
DAVIE:	Sanford, R. B. ....	Mocksville .....	Chairman .....	10-20-'17
	Smithdeal, H. T. ....	Advance .....	Committeeman .....	10-20-'17
	Ledford, J. N. ....	Cooleemee .....	Committeeman .....	10-20-'17
DUPLIN:	Pierce, H. F. ....	Warsaw .....	Chairman .....	11-9-'17
	Stevens, H. L. ....	Warsaw .....	Chairman .....	7-26-'18
DURHAM:	Hobgood, Burke .....	Durham .....	Chairman .....	11-7-'17
	Fuller, Jones .....	Durham .....	Committeeman .....	11-7-'17
	Underwood, Norman .....	Durham .....	Committeeman .....	11-7-'17
EDGEcombe:	Cook, R. E. L. ....	Tarboro. ....	Chairman .....	12-11-'17
	Bridgers, Jno. L. ....	Tarboro. ....	Chairman .....	10-23-'18
	Walston, A. T. ....	Tarboro. ....	Committeeman .....	12-11-'17
	Hyatt, R. B. ....	Tarboro. ....	Committeeman .....	12-11-'17
FORSYTH:	Norfleet, R. C. ....	Winston-Salem .....	Chairman .....	10-20-'17
	Bahnsen, A. H. ....	Winston-Salem .....	Chairman .....	7-1-'18
	Coan, Geo. W. ....	Winston-Salem .....	Committeeman .....	10-20-'17
	Shaffner, H. F. ....	Winston-Salem .....	Committeeman .....	10-20-'17
	Miller, A. C. ....	Winston-Salem .....	Committeeman .....	10-20-'17

(Deceased)

7-26-'18

10-22-'18

7-1-'18



County	Name	Address	Designation	Date of Appointment	Date of Resignation
FRANKLIN:	Cheatham, E. J.	Franklinton	Chairman	10-28-'17	
	McKinne, F. B.	Louisburg	Committeeman	10-28-'17	
	Perry, G. M.	Yongsville	Committeeman	10-28-'17	
GASTON:	Robinson, J. Lee	Gastonia	Chairman	10-24-'17	8-28-'18
	Allen, F. M.	Gastonia	Chairman	8-27-'18	
	Hall, F. B.	Belmont	Committeeman	10-24-'17	
	Davenport, R. K.	Mt. Holly	Committeeman	10-24-'17	
	Rhyne, Fred	Stanley	Committeeman	10-24-'17	
	Wilkins, Dr. S. A.	Dallas	Committeeman	10-24-'17	
	Mauney, M. L.	Cherryville	Committeeman	10-24-'17	
	Kennedy, R. C.	Bessemer City	Committeeman	10-24-'17	
	Hofler, J. L.	Gatesville	Chairman	10-21-'18	
	Phillips, R. L.	Robbinsville	Chairman	11-12-'17	
GRANVILLE:	Royster, B. S.	Oxford	Chairman	10-17-'17	8-30-'18
	Baird, J. M.	Oxford	Chairman	8-30-'18	
	Powell, A. H.	Oxford	Committeeman	10-17-'17	
	Lewis, R. H. Jr.	Oxford	Committeeman	10-17-'17	
GREENE:	Frizelle, J. Paul	Snow Hill	Chairman	11-14-'17	
GUILFORD:	White, David	Greensboro	Chairman	10-17-'17	
	Patterson, J. W.	Greensboro	Committeeman	10-17-'17	
	Robins, Marnaduke	Greensboro	Committeeman	10-17-'17	
	HIGH POINT, town of				
	Smith, C. D.	High Point	Chairman	10-20-'17	8-1-'18
	Snow, W. E.	High Point	Chairman	8-1-'18	
	Lyon, Arthur	High Point	Committeeman	10-20-'17	

7-20-'18

HALIFAX:	Joeey, N. B.	Scotland Neck	Chairman	10-18-'17
	Dunn, S. A.	Scotland Neck	Chairman	7-20-'18
HARNETT:	WELDON, town of			
	Daniels, W. E.	Weldon	Chairman	10-18-'17
HAYWOOD:	Spears, H. T.	Lillington	Chairman	10-18-'17
	DUNN, town of			
HAYWOOD:	Young, E. F.	Dunn	Chairman	10-18-'17
	Boyd, J. R.	Waynesville	Chairman	10-20-'17
HENDERSON:	Ray, C. H.	Waynesville	Committeeman	10-20-'17
	Moock, J. M.	Waynesville	Committeeman	10-20-'17
HENDERSON:	Oates, R. M.	Hendersonville	Chairman	10-8-'17
	Clarke, R. C.	Hendersonville	Committeeman	10-8-'17
HERTFORD:	Brooks, C. E.	Hendersonville	Committeeman	10-8-'17
	Bridger, R. C.	Winton	Chairman	1-5-'18
HOKE:	Gurek, E. J.	Ahoskie	Committeeman	1-5-'18
	Dickson, Paul	Raeford	Chairman	10-27-'17
HOKE:	Brown, G. W.	Raeford	Committeeman	10-27-'17
	Covington, W. T.	Raeford	Committeeman	10-27-'17
HYDE:	Cartwright, R. N.	Fairfield	Chairman	11-21-'17
	Thomas, W. A.	Statesville	Chairman	10-18-'17
IREDELL:	Hoffman, J. H.	Statesville	Committeeman	10-18-'17
	Goodman, Geo. C.	Statesville	Committeeman	10-18-'17
JACKSON:	Davis, Wm.	Sylva	Chairman	10-18-'17
	Moeer, E. H.	Selma	Chairman	11-7-'17
JOHNSTON:	Talton, J. H.	Clayton	Committeeman	11-7-'17
	Woodall, H. C.	Smithfield	Committeeman	11-7-'17

County	Name	Address	Designation	Date of Appointment	Date of Resignation
JONES:	Dixon, J. K.	Trenton	Chairman	10-18-'17	
	Mattocks, E. L.	Maysville	Committeeman	10-18-'17	
	Brock, J. K.	Trenton	Committeeman	10-18-'17	
LEE:	Pardo, Jas.	Sanford	Chairman	10-19-'17	
	Jones, S. M.	Sanford	Committeeman	10-19-'17	
	Hoyle, K. R.	Sanford	Committeeman	10-19-'17	
LENOIR:	Rouse, N. J.	Kinston	Chairman	10-15-'17	
	Ormond, Y. T.	Kinston	Committeeman	10-15-'17	
	Dawson, Jas. B.	Kinston	Committeeman	10-15-'17	
LINCOLN:	Abernethy, J. A.	Lincolnton	Chairman	10-17-'17	
	Wilson, Rev. W. S.	Lincolnton	Committeeman	10-17-'17	
	McNairy, W. H.	Lincolnton	Committeeman	10-17-'17	
McDOWELL:	Neal, W. W.	Marion	Chairman	11-8-'17	
	McCall, C. R.	Marion	Committeeman	11-8-'17	
MACON	Johnston, T. J.	Franklin	Chairman	11-9-'17	
	Wright, J. C.	Franklin	Committeeman	11-9-'17	
	Sloan, J. S.	Franklin	Committeeman	11-9-'17	
MADISON:	Ebbs, Plato D.	Marshall	Chairman	10-18-'17	
MARTIN:	Biggs, John D.	Williamston	Chairman	11-24-'17	10-1-'18
	Crawford, A. T.	Williamston	Chairman	10-1-'18	
MECKLENBURG:	Little, J. H.	Charlotte	Chairman	10-13-'17	
	Murphy, M. C.	Charlotte	Committeeman	10-13-'17	
	Glover, F. W.	Charlotte	Committeeman	10-13-'17	

MITCHELL:	Greene, Chas. E.	Bakersville	Chairman	11-12-'17
	Cochran, W. B.	Mt. Gilead	Chairman	10-22-'17
	McQueen, J. R.	Pinchurst	Chairman	10-28-'17
NASH:	Battle, Thos. H.	Rocky Mount	Chairman	10-15-'17
	Winslow, F. E.	Rocky Mount	Secretary	10-15-'17
	Gay, R. R.	Rocky Mount	Committeeman	10-15-'17
	Bissette, Geo. N.	Nashville	Committeeman	10-15-'17
	Willard, M. S.	Wilmington	Chairman	10-22-'17
NEW HANOVER:	Worth, Chas. W.	Wilmington	Committeeman	10-22-'17
	Hanby, J. R.	Wilmington	Committeeman	10-22-'17
	Pugh, Wilson B.	Jackson	Chairman	12-31-'17
NORTHAMPTON:				
ONSLow:				
ORANGE:	Collins, P. C.	Hillsboro	Chairman	10-17-'17
	Venable, Dr. F. P.	Chapel Hill	Committeeman	10-17-'17
	Webb, H. W.	Hillsboro	Committeeman	10-17-'17
PAMLICO:				
	Rawls, Z. V.	Bayboro	Chairman	10-17-'17
PASQUOTANK:	Robinson, Chas. H.	Elizabeth City	Chairman	10-22-'17
	Brown, C. P.	Elizabeth City	Chairman	5-7-'18
	Leigh, J. B.	Elizabeth City	Committeeman	5-7-'18
PENDER:	Bannerman, J. R.	Burgaw	Chairman	1-3-'18
	Williams, R. J.	Rocky Point	Committeeman	1-3-'18
	Hawes, E. A.	Atkinson	Committeeman	1-3-'18
PERQUIMANS:				
	Whedbee, Chas.	Hertford	Chairman	10-27-'17

5-7-'18



County	Name	Address	Designation	Date of Appointment	Date of Resignation
PERSON:	Tucker, Dr. E. J.	Roxboro.	Chairman	10-15-'17	
	Carlton, L. M.	Roxboro.	Committeeman	10-15-'17	
	Long, J. A.	Roxboro.	Committeeman	10-15-'17	
	Winstead, T. D.	Roxboro.	Committeeman	10-15-'17	
PYTT:	James, F. G.	Greenville	Chairman	10-17-'17	
POLK:	Lindsey, W. T.	Tryon	Chairman	10-25-'17	
	Ballinger, B. L.	Tryon	Committeeman	10-25-'17	
	Corwith, H. P.	Saluda	Committeeman	10-25-'17	
RANDOLPH:	Robins, H. M.	Asheboro.	Chairman	10-20-'17	7-25-'18
	Crauford, C. C.	Asheboro.	Chairman	7-26-'18	
	Neeley, J. M.	Asheboro.	Committeeman	7-26-'18	
	Morris, P. H.	Asheboro.	Committeeman	7-26-'18	
	McNair, W. E.	Rockingham	Chairman	10-28-'17	
RICHMOND:	Gordon, J. R.	Hamlet	Committeeman	10-28-'17	
ROCKINGHAM:	Watlington, J. F.	Reidsville	Chairman	10-17-'17	
	LEAKSVILLE and SPRAY, towns of Wall, R. E.	Leaksville	Chairman	10-17-'17	
	McAlister, H. M.	Lumberton	Chairman	10-28-'17	
ROBESON:	MAXTON, town of Armstrong, J. M.	Maxton	Chairman	1-29-'18	

ROWAN:	Linn, Stable.....	Salisbury.....	Chairman.....	10-13-'17	9-30-'18
	Rendleman, Jno. L.....	Salisbury.....	Chairman.....	10-1-'18	
	McCorkle, J. M.....	Salisbury.....	Committeeman.....	10-13-'17	
	Peacock, P. N.....	Salisbury.....	Committeeman.....	10-13-'17	
	Valentine, Marie.....	Salisbury.....	Stenographer.....	10-13-'17	
RUTHERFORD:	Edwards, M. L.....	Rutherfordton.....	Chairman.....	10-19-'17	2-1-'18
	Bethune, L. A.....	Clinton.....	Chairman.....	10-15-'17	
SCOTLAND:	Blue, L. M.....	Gibson.....	Chairman.....	10-29-'17	
	Caldwell, Jno. L.....	Laurinburg.....	Chairman.....	2-6-'18	
	James, H.....	Laurinburg.....	Committeeman.....	2-6-'18	
	Malloy, H. W.....	Laurinburg.....	Committeeman.....	2-6-'18	
	Hearne, S. H.....	Albemarle.....	Chairman.....	10-19-'17	
STANLY:	Moody, L. M.....	Albemarle.....	Committeeman.....	10-19-'17	2-1-'18
	Colson, Thos.....	Norwood.....	Committeeman.....	10-19-'17	
	Covington, T. J.....	Walnut Cove.....	Chairman.....	10-20-'17	
SURRY:	Lovill, G. C.....	Mount Airy.....	Chairman.....	11-8-'17	
	Fawcett, Geo. D.....	Mt. Airy.....	Committeeman.....	11-8-'17	
	Sargent, J. D.....	Mt. Airy.....	Committeeman.....	11-8-'17	
	Snow, W. E.....	Pilot Mountain.....	Committeeman.....	11-8-'17	
	Elkin, town of Roth, G. T.....	Elkin.....	Chairman.....	11-8-'17	
SWAIN:	Coburn, J. E.....	Bryson City.....	Chairman.....	10-22-'17	10-20-'17
	Black, S. W.....	Bryson City.....	Committeeman.....	10-22-'17	
	Frye, Frank E.....	Bryson City.....	Committeeman.....	10-22-'17	
	Breese, W. E.....	Brevard.....	Chairman.....	10-20-'17	
TRANSLYVANIA:	English, E. H.....	Brevard.....	Committeeman.....	10-20-'17	
	Deaver, R. R.....	Brevard.....	Committeeman.....	10-20-'17	

County	Name	Address	Designation	Date of Appointment	Date of Resignation
TYRRELL:	Walker, A. L.....	Columbia.....	Chairman.....	10-20-'17	
UNION:	Blakeney, W. S.....	Monroe.....	Chairman.....	10-17-'17	
	Riddle, J. L.....	Monroe.....	Committeeman.....	10-17-'17	
	Henderson, F. G.....	Monroe.....	Committeeman.....	10-17-'17	
VANCE:	Roberts, C. W.....	Henderson.....	Chairman.....	10-17-'17	10-29-'18
	Singleton, C. V.....	Henderson.....	Chairman.....	10-30-'18	
	O'Neil, M. J.....	Henderson.....	Committeeman.....	10-17-'17	
	Ranson, Robert E.....	Henderson.....	Committeeman.....	10-17-'17	
	Thompson, A. A.....	Raleigh.....	Chairman.....	10-17-'17	
WAKE:	Chamberlain, J. R.....	Raleigh.....	Committeeman.....	10-17-'17	
	White.....	Raleigh.....	Committeeman.....		
	WAKE FOREST, town of				
	White, R. B.....	Wake Forest.....	Chairman.....	10-17-'17	
WARREN:	Peck, Thos. D.....	Warrenton.....	Chairman.....	10-17-'17	
WASHINGTON:	Ausbon, W. F.....	Plymouth.....	Chairman.....	10-25-'17	
	Clark, B. S.....	Roper.....	Committeeman.....	10-25-'17	
	Gatlin, J. C.....	Creswell.....	Committeeman.....	10-25-'17	
WATAUGA:	Brown, Jno. E.....	Boone.....	Chairman.....	10-17-'17	
WAYNE:	Land, E. M.....	Goldsboro.....	Chairman.....	10-17-'17	
	Bland, D. H.....	Goldsboro.....	Committeeman.....	10-17-'17	
	Dixon, D. H.....	Goldsboro.....	Committeeman.....	10-17-'17	

WILKES:	Finley, T. B. ....	North Wilkesboro ..	Chairman .....	10-22-'17	7-15-'18
	Cardwell, G. ....	North Wilkesboro ..	Chairman .....	7-15-'18	
	Bullis, W. A. ....	North Wilkesboro ..	Committeeman ..	10-22-'17	
	Willis, E. C. ....	North Wilkesboro ..	Committeeman ..	10-22-'17	
	Brame, R. M. ....	North Wilkesboro ..	Committeeman ..	10-22-'17	
WILSON:	Barkley, E. B. ....	North Wilkesboro ..	Committeeman ..	10-22-'17	
	Bruton, Jno. F. ....	Wilson .....	Chairman .....	10-13-'17	
	Darden, E. A. ....	Wilson .....	Committeeman ..	10-13-'17	
	Hays, J. W. ....	Elm City .....	Committeeman ..	10-13-'17	
YADKIN:	Reece, D. M. ....	Yadkinville .....	Chairman .....	10-18-'17	
YANCEY:					



ORGANIZATION OF CONSERVATION DIVISION STATE FUEL ADMINISTRATION  
FOR NORTH CAROLINA

Name	Address	Designation	Date of Appointment	Salary
Covington, C. C.	Wilmington, N. C.	Committeeman	Nov. 1st, 1918	Volunteer
Erwin, W. C.	Durham, N. C.	Committeeman	Nov. 1st, 1918	Volunteer
Jones, Edward M.	Asheville, N. C.	Assistant Director of Conservation	Oct. 15th, 1918	Volunteer
Laxton, Josephine	Asheville, N. C.	Stenographer	Oct. 20th, 1918	Salary
Lee, W. S.	Charlotte, N. C.	Committeeman	Nov. 1st, 1918	Volunteer
Lilly, Frances H.	Asheville, N. C.	Stenographer and Clerk	Nov. 1st, 1918	Salary
Raoul, Thomas W.	Asheville, N. C.	Committeeman	Nov. 1st, 1918	Volunteer
Riddick, W. C.	Raleigh, N. C.	Committeeman	Nov. 1st, 1918	Volunteer
Robertson, R. B.	Canton, N. C.	Committeeman	Nov. 1st, 1918	Volunteer
Waddell, Charles E.	Asheville, N. C.	Director of Conservation	Oct. 1st, 1918	Volunteer

MEMO OF CORRESPONDENCE HANDLED IN OFFICE OF  
STATE FUEL ADMINISTRATOR

Letters received to July 1st, 1918.....	15,039
Letters written to July 1st, 1918.....	23,616
Letters received after July 1st, 1918.....	19,587
Letters written after July 1st, 1918.....	25,917
Telegrams received to July 1st, 1918.....	1,169
Telegrams written to July 1st, 1918.....	3,660
Telegrams received after July 1st, 1918.....	799
Telegrams written after July 1st, 1918.....	2,631
157 Requisitions for 2,012 cars coal <i>for Dealers</i> before July 1, 1918.	
231 Requisitions for 1,548 cars coal <i>for Industries</i> before July 1, 1918.	
1,200 Requisitions for 2,153 cars coal <i>for Dealers</i> after July 1, 1918.	
735 Requisitions for 7,258 cars coal <i>for Industries</i> after July 1, 1918.	
Letters received in <i>re</i> Fuel Order January 17, 1918.....	495
Letters written in <i>re</i> Fuel Order January 17th, 1918.....	885
Telegrams received in <i>re</i> Fuel Order January 17th, 1918.....	332
Telegrams written in <i>re</i> Fuel Order January 17th, 1918.....	1,440
Weekly Coal Reports received after July 1st, 1918.....	30,000

## SUMMARY

Total number letters received .....	35,121
Total number letters written .....	50,418
Total number telegrams received.....	2,300
Total number telegrams written .....	7,731
Total number requisitions .....	12,971
Total number weekly coal report cards received.....	30,000

PRINCIPAL SUBJECTS DEALT WITH BY STATE FUEL  
ADMINISTRATION

Organization of United States Fuel Administration; Organization of Federal Fuel Administrator for North Carolina; Organization of State Office; Appointment of County Administrators; Duties of Local Committees; Wood; Conservation; Cross Ties; Closing Schools and Colleges; Lightless Nights; Anthracite Coal; Gross Margins; Car Supply; Confiscations; Diversions; District Representatives; "Tag-your-Shovel-Day"; Clean Coal; Closing Order; Oil Mills; Distribution Plan; Zone System; Jobbers; Greensboro Meeting; Washington Meeting; "Buy Coal Now" Campaign; Chicago Meeting; Coal Supply 1918-1919; Clay Product Order; Florists; Priority Orders; Cotton Gins; Cotton Mill Operatives; Mr. Norfleet's Appointment; Survey; Country Clubs; Storage; Ice Plants; Conservation Engineer; Laundries; Gasolineless Sundays; Skip-stop System; Director of Enforcement; Closing Stores; Virginia Anthracite; Transportation; Duties of County Committees.

## OFFICE EXPENSE

1917

October .....	\$ 322.93
November and December.....	328.00

1918

January .....	\$ 762.00
February .....	817.76
March .....	676.99
April .....	332.96
May .....	433.32
June .....	412.55
July .....	743.05
August .....	918.29
September .....	1,449.72
October .....	1,233.54
November .....	943.34
December .....	1,206.75

1919

January .....	\$ 860.49
February .....	573.92
March .....	500.00

Total .....\$12,565.67

SPECIMENS OF FORMS USED BY STATE FUEL  
ADMINISTRATION OFFICE  
SHIPPING INSTRUCTIONS  
UNITED STATES FUEL ADMINISTRATION  
R. C. NORFLEET

No. 1599

FEDERAL FUEL ADMINISTRATOR FOR NORTH CAROLINA  
WINSTON-SALEM, NORTH CAROLINA

Date

To

District Representative

Dear Sir:

You are hereby directed to ship:

Consignee .....	Route.....
Destination.....	Rate of shipment.....
Total quantity.....	Class of equipment.....
Grade of coal.....	
Contract with .....	
Previous source of supply.....	

Please acknowledge promptly receipt of this order.

Yours very truly,

R. C. NORFLEET,  
State Fuel Administrator.

UNITED STATES FUEL ADMINISTRATION

.....N. C....., 19..

Mr. Norfleet:

We have today forwarded check to Mr. A. H. Land, District Representative U. S. Fuel Administration, Huntington, W. Va., for \$...... to cover .....cars.....coal, which you have requested him to ship us.

.....  
(Signature)

UNITED STATES FUEL ADMINISTRATION

Office of State Fuel Administrator

WINSTON-SALEM, N. C.

Local Chairman,

Dear Sir:

This is to advise that on....., at the request of this office, order was placed with..... of.....for shipment of.....cars.....coal and.....cars.....coal to.....

This shipment is covered by certified check for \$....., which we understand consignee deposited with Mr. Land, District Representative, Huntington, W. Va.

R. C. NORFLEET,  
*State Fuel Administrator.*

UNITES STATES FUEL ADMINISTRATION

Office of State Fuel Administrator

WINSTON-SALEM, N. C.

Local Chairman,

Dear Sir:

As requested we have today placed order with Mr. A. H. Land, District Representative U. S. Fuel Administration, Huntington, W. Va., for shipment of.....cars.....coal and.....cars.....coal to .....

We have notified consignee direct and instructed that certified check in the sum of \$150.00 for each car be sent Mr. Land.

R. C. NORFLEET,  
*State Fuel Administrator.*



## BOOK REVIEWS

WASHINGTON'S SOUTHERN TOUR, 1791: Houghton, Mifflin Company, 1923.  
By Archibald Henderson.

Washington had already journeyed to New England, and in 1791 it was agreed by all that he should next gratify the patriotism and cement the loyalty of the southern states. Once it had been decided that Congress should not meet in special session that summer, plans were laid for the President's southern tour so that he might return before the sickly months of July and August. Late in March a small crowd, Thomas Jefferson, then Secretary of State, and General Knox of the War Department among others, gathered to bid God-speed to the President. With characteristic thoroughness in detail Washington wrote in his journal: "In this tour I was accompanied by Major Jackson (his secretary), my equipage and attendance consisted of a charriot—four horses drove in hand—a light baggage wagon—two horses—four saddle horses besides a led one for myself and five—to wit—my Valet de Chambre, two footmen, coachman, and postilion." The "charriot" had been recently decorated and overhauled for the occasion, enameled in white, the family crest and charming designs of the four seasons painted upon the doors, the front and the rear. To this glitter of white and the mellow glow of burnished brass were added the brilliant colors of the red and white livery of the servants. All this must have seemed something more than Republican simplicity to Jefferson.

The first of the presidential swings around the circle, like their successors, required careful consideration. Roads, the need of economizing time, and the desirability of traversing representative sections of the South presented problems of some difficulty. At length it was arranged that the route southward should pass through the more eastern sections of the states, with stops at Fredericksburg, Richmond, New Bern, Tarborough, Wilmington, Georgetown, Charleston, Savannah. The return North was to be by way of the back country stopping at Augusta, Columbia, Camden, Charlotte, Salisbury and Salem. Questions of etiquette were involved for Washington was urged all along the line to accept the hospitality of private individuals. Washington decided that as a general rule he

should provide his own accommodations. This seemed to be necessary because of the purposes of the tour: to strengthen the feeling of loyalty to the general government and to learn at first hand something of public opinion and conditions in the South.

From the historical point of view, the record of Washington's tour has interest as revealing something of his own reactions and also those of the people to his presence. Circumstances, if not his own personality, made impossible anything like a thorough examination of conditions in the South. Everywhere he was monopolized and lionized by people who were in substantial agreement with his political ideas. They were in general of the upper classes. As a rule he did not meet those who disagreed with the strong government point of view, just as Andrew Jackson when he invaded New England in 1833 did not come into contact with "the clergy, the learned professions and the great middle class" as one National Republican newspaper put it. The respect which was universally felt for Washington before the appearance of partisan politics and the oppressive dignity which was natural to him made difficult the frank expression of opinions that were in opposition to his own preconceived ideas. If Lord Erskine, one of the most brilliant of English legal minds, could write that Washington was "the only human being for whom I have an awful reverence," not many men would have the courage to tell him disagreeable facts. A North Carolinian, William Blount, wrote after a visit at Mount Vernon, "... I verily believe he is as awful (awe inspiring) as a God . . . ." The general attitude of the people towards the excise tax, a tax that was to arouse the first violent resistance to federal authority, was represented to him in the brightest colors and he was certain that if there was any discontent it was the work of demagogues.

Washington's journal covering this period, which is here reprinted, contains little that is of unique importance. One searches in vain for the expression of opinions such as are so abundant in the diary of John Quincy Adams. Occasional observations upon the appearance of the country, facts as to geography or the nature of crops and commerce represent the trend of his interests. He was one of those who appreciated keenly the importance of the West but there is no evidence here that he was equally far-sighted in regard to the sectional problems of the South. Originality of ideas was certainly not characteristic of his thinking. His replies to public addresses

were phrased, as Mr. Henderson remarks, in "punctilious and lifeless propriety," and even in his journal there is a frigidity, a formality that illumines his personality. Yet this record throws light upon a more human characteristic in that it reveals his pleasure in his reception by the women of the South. They apparently constituted his chief interest in the numerous balls given in his honor for in every case he noted in his journal the number present. In Charleston an unheralded visit paid him by "a great number of the most respectable ladies" (inspired) an unusual expression of emotion. It was the "first honor of the kind I have ever experienced and it was as flattering as it was singular." The President's inclination was recognized and measures were sometimes taken accordingly. At a banquet table he was placed with the most important woman in Charleston, the governor's wife, at his right, the wittiest at his left and the most beautiful facing him across the table.

Mr. Henderson has made it his chief concern to gather all information that would throw light upon the various episodes of the tour. The names of all who were active in welcoming the President are recorded and the author has rescued from oblivion much useful information in regard to them. Hundreds of lines of dreary verse, written in his honor, responses which were often phrased by Major Jackson are all assembled here. From these documents and from the reports of balls and dinners one may gather materials with which to reconstruct southern society of that day in its more formal aspect. The inevitable toasts, frequently punctuated by the discharge of artillery, suggest the ideas that were uppermost in men's minds: the fate of the new experiment in republican government, state pride, interest in commerce and agriculture. Wide interest was evident in the events that were taking place in France for numerous toasts were drunk to Louis XVI and the National Assembly. The Jacobins and the Reign of Terror had not yet cooled the sympathies of conservative Americans.

This record of Washington's tour in the South shows clearly that people had already come to regard him as the father of his country. It is evident in the respect and affection expressed in the addresses read to him. It appears most significantly in a eulogy delivered in Georgetown, South Carolina, after his death: "It was not a triumphant general who came amongst us, nor yet the semblance of a monarch, it was the first magistrate of a free people, it was a father

who visited his children, who delighted in their caresses, and who kindly accepted their efforts to please, and to entertain him."

E. M. CARROLL.

Trinity College.

---

THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION: A Constitutional Interpretation. By Charles Howard McIlwain. (New York: The Macmillan Company. 1923. pp. xi, 198, \$2.50.)

The American Revolution has ever been a subject over which historians have disagreed. The Bancroft interpretation "that all Americans were *ipso facto* patriots and all Englishmen oppressors *per se*" held sway until a more critical and less "patriotic" school of historians developed. Rapidly the pendulum has swung far to the other extreme until recent writers have seen in the American Revolution a struggle between two people of rapidly diverging economic and political interests one of whom, the Americans, realizing that they no longer needed protection from the mother country concocted certain untenable constitutional arguments as justification for their disregard of the laws of Parliament. With this latter group of historians Mr. McIlwain takes issue. He holds that the contentions of the American colonies were tenable and that the main cause of the American Revolution was constitutional. This, indeed, constitutes the principle thesis which he examines and defends in this interpretative essay.

Reversing the chronological order of the contentions held by the colonies at the different stages in the course of the controversy of 1761-1776, he first takes up the last contention, namely, that Parliament had no legal right to make any laws for the colonies since they were subject to the King out of Parliament rather than the King in Parliament. This claim was first expressed by the House of the Massachusetts' Legislature in 1773 in the "Great Controversy" with Governor Hutchinson. Next year in his *Novanglus* John Adams made a more complete statement of the American case. A similar contention was held in the First Continental Congress; and at the time of the drafting of the Declaration of Independence few leaders in the colonies questioned the contention. Some recent historians have pronounced this assumption on the part of the colonies "absurd"; but Mr. McIlwain contends that there are precedents to



support the claims of the colonies. He has made a painstaking search in rare manuscripts to learn how other portions of the dominions have regarded the supremacy of Parliament. And of all dominions he finds that Ireland offers the nearest parallel to the American case. On May 19, 1649, Parliament for the first time stated that "The people of England and all the dominions and territories thereunto belonging" are to be governed henceforth "by the supreme authority of this nation, the Representatives of the people in Parliament." In replying the Irish Parliamentarians and jurists in a number of pamphlets and speeches contended that Ireland had never been connected with the Crown of England and that the Irish were a separate people under the control of the king as their feudal lord instead of the king as the ruler of England. Mr. McIlwain has devoted the larger portion of his essay to an examination of these arguments of the Irish and the response of the English. He recognizes the fact that the cases of Ireland and the American colonies differ in that the former dominion was conquered and that the latter was settled by the king; but since in both cases it was the king as feudal lord who originally dealt with each, he considers their relationship to England and its government similar. Whether or not he proves his point, he at least makes a plausible case.

The author finds further precedents in the relationship of the Channel Islands and the Isle of Man to Parliament. Few would question the claim that the Channel Islands were connected to the king as his independent possessions instead of composing territory subject to legislation by Parliament, but there is ground for doubting whether the American colonies and the Channel Islands furnish parallel cases. The former were settled while the king was ruler of England, while the latter belonged to the Duke of Normandy before he became King of England; the former were established by English trading companies and English religious sects, while the latter were instrumental in capturing for their feudal lord England itself; and the former accepted English forms of government and English Common Law, while the latter retained its self-government and civil law acquired before the conquest of England.

In addition to these precedents from the several dominions Mr. McIlwain shows by reviewing the decisions of two very noted English court cases, *Calvin's Case* and *Craw v. Ramsey*, that the allegiance of a person to his sovereign required no obedience to the laws of any

of that sovereign's dominions beyond the dominion of which that subject is a member. His allegiance is declared personal not national.

Turning to the statement of the colonial claims we find that the colonists held that they owed their allegiance to the king as a feudal lord who had originally granted them land and government as feudal concessions, and that since they were outside the realm, Parliament could not gain control except through conquest or consent of the colonies neither of which had happened. Mr. McIlwain merely quotes the well known reply of the Massachusetts' House to Governor Hutchinson in 1773 as proof of the legality of the colonists' claims that they had always been under the king as feudal lord. A short discussion is given to the second of the colonial contentions that under the natural law as engrafted in the English constitution, Parliament could not legislate for the Americans. Here, again, the author relies on precedent in the dominions and court decisions of the realm. After brushing over the charter claims which he does not consider valuable in sustaining the colonial contentions, Mr. McIlwain, who is in no part of the essay militant and dogmatic, states his belief which he adheres to as a result of the examination of the material considered in the book. "It is not entirely easy to say with absolute assurance that the British Empire precisely was or was not *One Commonwealth* in 1774, but I do venture to believe that John Adams' view of this pivotal question of the American Revolution seems somewhat more consonant with all the precedents I have been able to find than the opposing theory supported by Lord Mansfield in the eighteenth century." Whether or not this conclusion be accepted, the book deserves consideration, for the author as a result of a very discriminative study of precedents in English Constitutional history has presented in a scholarly manner a new interpretation of that ever puzzling subject, the American Revolution.

HENRY THOMAS SHANKS.

University of North Carolina.

---

DAVIDSON COLLEGE. Intimate facts compiled by Cornelia Rebekah Shaw, Librarian. New York: Fleming H. Revell Press. Copyright, 1923, by William J. Martin.

No institution, save, perhaps, Union Theological Seminary at Richmond, has been so closely bound up with the Southern Presby-

terian Church or has exerted so profound influence in its life as Davidson College has done. This school has been, since its founding in 1837, the main source of supply of the ministers and many of the elders of the church. These men with the distinctive Davidson stamp upon them have gone, moreover, throughout the South, carrying, sooner or later, into almost every village, every city, every community, the uncompromising ideals of life, the Spartan severity instilled by this college, itself, at least in its earlier years, the incarnation of the Covenanter Spirit.

Miss Shaw in compiling the history of the College, which she dedicates "To the Sons of Davidson," has done a piece of work meriting the unstinted praise and the sincere gratitude of every Davidsonian: of every man who has ever matriculated in the college or who shall do so hereafter. She has collected and preserved much which otherwise might soon have been forever lost. The admirable spirit, the unhesitating veracity which dares to paint the wart on Cromwell's nose, the correct perspective which has enabled her with fine discrimination to discern the noble truth through, at times, humiliating fact, unwearied patience, unsparing labor: these, it seems to me, are the outstanding characteristics of Miss Shaw's work.

Three chapters of the book are occupied with "the beginnings" to the Civil War, one chapter each with the Civil War and the ten years of turmoil following, "The Period of Transition," and "The Period of Expansion," 1901 to 1923." Following the history proper is a chapter containing "Miscellanea," one on "Student Life," and one on "Davidson Men in the World's Work." Appendices and an Index complete the volume.

Until the beginning of "The Period of Transition," the story of the College is one of the triumph of faith over discouragement and difficulty. From the administration of Dr. R. H. Morrison, the first president of the College, who resigned in 1841, after three years' service because "physically unequal to the cares of his office"—although he lived until 1889—, to 1874, it seemed a question whether or not the College would survive. Financial straits, a severe curriculum, only three or four teachers usually in the faculty, and a system of discipline fundamentally unsound, including flogging and inquisitorial surveillance, caused troublous times that contained only one conspicuously propitious occurrence: the bequest in 1856 from Maxwell Chambers of approximately \$150,000. The Chambers



Building, burned 1921, was erected, and two new professorships established; but a large part of the invested funds were swept away by the Civil War.

After the demoralization of the Civil War and the disturbed decade following, Davidson struggled for twenty years to find itself. The events of deepest significance during this period are the laboratory method of teaching Chemistry begun by Colonel W. J. Martin, and the same innovation in Physics by Professor H. L. Smith, the establishment of a Chair of English, first occupied by Dr. W. S. Currell, and the placing of Bible study definitely in the curriculum by President J. B. Shearer.

The bonds of tradition and conservatism were too firmly fastened to admit of broad expansion until Dr. Henry Louis Smith became President in 1901. Under the only two laymen, both scientists, who have occupied the presidential chair, Doctors H. L. Smith and W. J. Martin, Jr., Davidson has, during the past twenty-two years, made marvelous growth. Owing to the coming of economic prosperity to the South and the awakened interest in education, all institutions of learning have prospered. None more so than Davidson. The period of highest usefulness of the College is just beginning.

The men of the Faculty who remain in the memory of the reader as outstanding in their ideas are, General D. H. Hill, Professor of Mathematics, 1854 to 1859; Dr. A. D. Hepburn, Professor of Latin and French, 1874, changed to the Chair of Mental Philosophy and English Literature a year later, and President 1877 to 1885; and Dr. Henry Louis Smith, Professor of Natural Philosophy, 1887, President, 1901 to 1912. Many Davidsonians will dissent; but those who have sat under the Faculty are obviously not in position for detachment or impartiality in their judgment.

General Hill, himself a West Pointer, attempted the interesting but impossible task of making Davidson into a Second West Point in disciplinary rules, and in grading on work, even to the extent of publishing the relative standing of the students with their absolute arithmetical grades, including those on conduct, in the annual college catalogue. He had the courage of his convictions. No telling what he might have accomplished had not the Civil War torn him away.

Dr. Hepburn highly disapproved the system of irritating espionage exercised by the Faculty over the students in matters of conduct, which led, says one professor, to "carryings on" by the Faculty "that



were barbarous and even cruel." He strove mightily to create a different relation between the two elements in the collegiate body. He was ahead of his time. "The underlying principle with him was that of confidence in the student, presuming every one to be a gentleman until the contrary was proven."

Dr. Smith was the first president of Davidson who, after a long and arduous struggle, succeeded in practically breaking the old traditions and instituting a new order. Under his administration, the change being aided by a much larger body of students, wider interests of the students, and a general elevation in college spirit, the relations between faculty and students gradually grew in harmony, and the students abandoned the pranks which, as Dr. Smith remarked, "a maturer judgment deems unworthy and degrading." This wholesome change is only part of what Dr. Smith accomplished, but it is indicative of the richer, fuller spirit he infused into Davidson during the quarter-century of his connection with the College.

History loves a completed life, epoch, or institution. It delights in final estimates. However, in this case, it must be content to give a past which is only an earnest of a greater future. Greater—yes, if Davidson is true to the unique mission which belongs to this favored child of a noble mother church. More than any other institution, Davidson, because of age and prestige, will continue to mould opinion in this church. To fulfill this mission, Davidson must lead in recognizing and formulating truth. Davidson must not lag behind, seeking to be clothed in the rags of an outworn creed until forced shamefacedly to accept truth which can no longer be denied. It is not a question between Fundamentalist and Modernist; it is a question of accepting or rejecting the glorious liberty which the Gospel of Christ so abundantly offers, made manifest in the light of the continuing revelation of God's truth to the world.

THOMAS P. HARRISON.

North Carolina State College.

---

LETTERS AND PAPERS OF GOVERNOR T. W. BICKETT, 1917-1921. Compiled by Sanford Martin. Edited by R. B. House, 1924, N. C. Historical Commission.

"Letters and Papers of Governor T. W. Bickett, 1917-1921," which same is the public papers of the late Governor Bickett com-

piled by Stanford Martin, private secretary to North Carolina's World War Governor, and edited by R. B. House, archivist of the Historical Commission, may not sound like reading which is good for the blues and a boost over the infection period of spring fever. To that citizen in whom stirs the urge to treasure that which has been made a permanent part of North Carolina by the human coral which so busily and often so unconsciously build on the commonwealth it should prove more inspirational than "Lives of the Saints" bound in hand-tooled leather and emblazoned with gold.

This despite the fact that Messrs. House and Martin have merely collected the material from the files at the Governor's office and assembled it under the heads of "Messages to the General Assembly," "Proclamations by the Governor," "Appeals to the Public," "Public Addresses," "Statements and Interviews for the Press," "Public Letters and Telegrams." True, a satisfactory index has been placed in the volume; but it hardly needs that to make the book a most companionable compendium of the strivings of the spirit in North Carolina during four of the most critical years of its history.

For Governor Bickett, who ever spoke from the heart outward, lives in his letters, his messages, his appeals to the public and even his statements to the press and telegrams. And with him lives the spirit that was North Carolina's during the World War. Not that Thomas Walter Bickett sat down and analyzed what was taking place in North Carolina: he did not. He spoke and wrote from impulse. Nor were all of these as they appeared then or as they now appear in print the result of pure reason—many of them had the beautiful inconsistencies of that illogic which, sure of the correctness of its motives, drives straight ahead and refuses to count the cost or to strip itself to make any definite weight at the ringside.

As one who loved him sincerely but yet often excepted to the announced results of his mental processes, I have in rereading his public papers been struck not with the inconsistencies which I saw or fancied I saw before the ink dried, but with the temerity and tediousness of one who would quibble and split hairs with a man so singularly gifted at giving expression to the best that was in all of us. His sincere devotion to the task in hand—and he said himself that the "one stupendous immortal thing" connected with his administration was the part North Carolina played in the World War—was so clear-cut, the faith of him so robust and his delight in giving of him-

self to his State and its people so unalloyed that my chief feeling is one of surprise that I ever scratched around on the surface to find items on which to disagree with him.

Rather should we all have thrown ourselves into the job confessing the faith that was in us as he confessed it and have left the inconsequently small points in disagreement for time to smooth out, as indeed time has.

The Letter Book, so-called, is Bickett and his administration. It has with the strength and sincerity of the State at that time something of its lack of finish and precision. It cannot be properly termed history; it is much more than the chance expressions of one man.

Messrs. House and Martin have not attempted to do more than assemble and relate the material. Had they attempted more they would have exceeded their authority without promise of accomplishment. As it is the book speaks for itself, every page of it. And it is Thomas Walter Bickett voicing the faith and aspirations of the North Carolina as it has been given few to do it.

This was undertaken for a review at the request of the Historical Commission. It isn't that. Nor will the reaction to or comment on by others who read the volume run to analysis, but to an appreciation.

O. J. COFFIN.

Raleigh, N. C.

---

LLOYD GEORGE. By E. T. Raymond. New York: George H. Doran Company. 1923. pp. 366. \$3.00.

For a quarter of a century Lloyd George has been an important figure in British politics; for the last decade he has been an outstanding character in world politics. He first attracted the attention of his countrymen by his opposition to the Boer War. When the liberals were returned to power he became chancellor of the exchequer. During the World War he was first minister of munitions and then prime minister. After the war he represented England at the Peace Conference. He possesses withal the gift of personality to an unusual degree. Both his record and his personal qualities make him an interesting figure and one deserving of a good biography.

In his recent biography of Lloyd George Mr. E. T. Raymond has given us a unique study of this unique individual. Most biographies

of contemporary statesmen are disappointing to the historian. They are usually written by either opponents or admirers. They are apt to be given to fulsome, uncritical flattery or to the mean, petty gossip of the cloakroom. In this biography, however, the author has successfully avoided both extremes. Avoiding both flattery and petty criticism he gives his readers a fine, objective account of the career and character of Lloyd George, in a work that sparkles with epigrammatic phrases and illuminating analyses.

There is much of interest in the story of the early struggles of Lloyd George. Many will be surprised to learn that the most famous living Welshman was born at Manchester, England; and that the self-styled "cottagebred man" was by "pedigree . . . family traditions and . . . upbringing . . . authentically middle class." While a law clerk he read very widely and acquired an extensive acquaintance with both the French and the English classics. In rising to fame he encountered terrible difficulties, that left their scars upon his character; "the worst of them was simple want of money." In fact he surmounted this obstacle largely through the help of a generous and self-effacing brother. His opposition to the Boer War closed the period of obscure struggles and made him a national figure in British politics.

His first ministerial post was the presidency of the Board of Trade. Shortly after the liberals returned to power the cabinet was reorganized under Mr. Asquith and Lloyd George became chancellor of the exchequer. In the opinion of Mr. Raymond Mr. George was promoted at this time because peace could be purchased only at this price. The beginning of the well-known antagonism between the two men really dates from this period. His new position gave Lloyd George his great opportunity. In 1909 he introduced his revolutionary budget, an act which put him in the very center of the picture. He has remained there almost continuously since that date. Between the budget and the war, however, came the painful and humiliating episode known as the Marconi affair, which threatened for a time to ruin him politically.

In the World War, which soon followed, Lloyd George went from triumph to triumph. For a time he continued to act as chancellor of the exchequer. It is generally admitted that he acquitted himself well in handling the unparalleled situation which the war forced on the treasury. He was responsible, too, for the formation of the



first coalition cabinet. In this cabinet he became minister of munitions. In this post he foresaw the need of big guns, produced undreamed of quantities of munitions, and created the factories and machinery needed to produce them. Upon the death of Lord Kitchener Mr. George was transferred to the War Office. Here he soon clashed with Sir William Robertson, the British chief of staff, over war policies. For in strategy Mr. George was a believer in the Eastern Front. In addition he held most of the British military leaders in very moderate esteem. As Mr. Asquith sided with his military rather than his civilian adviser Mr. George forced the Prime minister to resign and organized his own famous war cabinet instead. For a time the course of events hardly justified the change of leaders. The personnel of the new war cabinet was inferior in quality and its first acts resulted in blunders rather than in achievements. The new cabinet, however, did finally justify itself on two occasions. The placing of the allied armies under the command of General Foch and the transportation of the new American Army to France were its two outstanding achievements. As a war minister Lloyd George's chief qualifications were vigor and decisiveness. Many of his appointments were disappointments, however, and much of his vigor was expended in cleaning up administrative messes caused by imperfect plans or the faulty execution of imperfectly understood instructions.

The author has no great opinion of Lloyd George as a peace minister. Over the statesmen of the Peace Conference he exercised the same personal ascendancy that his ability and personal magnetism had previously given him over his British colleagues. But as a negotiator he displayed many defects. He showed little interest in other than purely British problems and more than one important international question was decided because of his changes in mood or in advisors. It was never easy to predict on which side of the question he would be found or how long he would remain there. As leader of England during the difficult period of reconstruction the author considers him as almost a complete failure.

In these pages Mr. Raymond has done a really admirable piece of biographical writing. He has written a life of a contemporary, controversial figure, calmly and dispassionately, according to the best canons of historical objectivity. He gives his readers both the outward biographical details and the inward meaning of facts. And

the whole work is written in a sparkling style. There is scarcely a dull page in the book.

CHESTER P. HIGBY.

University of North Carolina.

---

THE MEXICAN NATION, A HISTORY: By Herbert Ingram Priestly, Ph.D.  
(The Macmillan Company, New York. Illustrated. 1923. pp. xix, 507.  
\$4.00.)

Professor Priestly, the author, is a member of that enterprising and capable school of history at the University of California, which in the field of Hispanic-American history has developed a high quality of leadership and great energy in productivity. The present volume "seeks to interpret to the interested American public" the history and "the progress of the conscient element of Mexico in their century-long struggle toward the fixation of a national entity." This purpose is consistently sustained and is fulfilled with logical precision. The divers materials pertinent to such a theme—ethnical, geographical, historical, institutional, economic, ecclesiastical, diplomatic, "personalistic," "constitutionalistic," socialistic—are combined and arranged in a well-ordered unity. All of this, in brief, is set forth in an introduction which is in itself an essay showing much power of generalization. The work, as a whole, is a product of research and observation which will be welcomed by scholars and students of the history of Mexico as well as by the "public" which seeks enlightenment in the formation of opinion.

The book may be roughly divided into four divisions—that with respect to the land and the original Indian peoples, that as to the Spanish conquest and the colonial period, that as to the war of independence, and finally that which deals with the period of independence including the various types of republican government and the two empires. Despite the preponderance of Indians in the Mexican population, Professor Priestly regards the Spanish influence as fundamental. It is true that (p. viii) he remarks that "The contribution of Spain was cultural rather than governmental." A few lines further on, however, he writes that "in spirit and essence the autocracy of the colonial epoch survived and still rules in the political and social organization in Mexico as elsewhere in Hispanic-

America." Later (pp. 125-26) it is stated that "The society of Hispanic-America, however much authors may argue to the contrary, is essentially Hispanolized, that is to say, the social organization, the recognition of social groups or, in these later years, the more evident revulsion of feeling against socially and politically privileged groups, is inherently and characteristically Spanish in type. Governmental forms, judicial formulæ, language, and race feeling, are all more or less conformed to the Spanish norms." He praises Spain for the transmission of European and Spanish culture as manifested in education, literature, art, architecture, and social amenities. He condemns her for the autocratic paternalism in government; for the exclusive monopoly, the rigid mercantilism, and the vexatious regulations in commerce; for the "outworn spirituality, antiquated education, . . . descrepit and ill-directed charity"; and for the imposition of a "caste stratified" society. The struggle for independence was due to these errors of policy and to the crisis in Spain not only, but to the "rise of the mestizo group" (*i. e.* the Spanish-Indian half-breeds). To this group are attributed the cause of the reforms of Benito Juarez and the "revolutions of the second decade of the twentieth century" (126).

To the "interested" American public, the most important and fascinating part of the book will be that which is concerned with the republican or modern and contemporary periods of Mexican history. Then "the Mexican chaos began, the struggle between indisciplined liberalism and egotistic reaction." This story is graphically summarized as follows:

There was to be a long and sanguinary struggle between written law and living custom, between tradition and progress, centralism and federation, privilege and equality, between dictators and petty local tyrants, between military and clerical tyranny, or against both in the name of individualism. Anarchy one day to be replaced by tyranny the next. There were to be Spanish tradition, imitation of the United States, and French centralism, all in inextricable confusion. (pp. 257-8.)

As might be expected in an effort to make Mexico intelligible to a present day student, the story is written with a greater wealth of detail as the Diaz rule gives way to the revolution of 1910-1920. Professor Priestley leads the reader through the bewildering succession of presidents, governments, revolutions, international relations, and reforms to a conclusion as to and bearing of it all upon Mexico and upon the United States in its relation to Mexico.

The conclusion of the matter is obvious. Reforms which leave unobserved the elemental equities bring their own destruction. If in their conception they break too suddenly with experience, they command no respect, win no friends and inevitably fail. If they are accompanied by flagrant dishonesty, their end is surer. But on the other hand the system of colonial exploitation has also failed to satisfy the large proportion of the dominant peoples, and the echoes it produces among the dependent peoples ring from every colonized area of the earth. There is somewhere a remedy if there is a goal of success for society. It has not yet been found. It does not lie in the adoption of socialism or communism in dependent states, nor in their free license to utter hostile legislation against the development of natural resources existent in poorly governed areas under control of politically incompetent peoples. Nor does it lie in the exclusion of foreign investments from countries where business organization, exploiting skill, and economic initiative are not developed among the indigents highly enough to provide society with the raw products and artefacts upon which its normal activities have come to depend.

A solution is suggested in the growth of a possible new spirit "which shall provide for the dependent nation possessing great natural wealth its political and economic opportunity to the limit of its growing capacity, at the same time affording the highly organized nation full opportunity—mutually profitable opportunity, to assist in the progressive labor of reducing the resources of the earth to the service of mankind." The mechanics of making this solution pragmatic and realizable are not suggested.

Although the author warns us against the "superiority complex" which English-speaking peoples sometimes enjoy, and although he respects the social traditions of the Mexican people and doubtless admires the "Hispanic-American spirit," it is difficult to read his book without the feeling that he contrasts the Mexican and the Anglo-Saxon to the former's discredit.

There will doubtless be difference of opinion among scholars as to Professor Priestley's conclusions. Probably they will differ from him as to selection of data and as to emphasis. All will recognize in this book, however, a work of trained and informed scholarship. Its merits as a history are demonstrated on every page.

W. W. PIERSON.

University of North Carolina.



THE PLANTERS OF COLONIAL VIRGINIA. By Thomas Jefferson Wertenbaker. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1922. Pages 260.

Contrary to the generally accepted idea, Mr. Wertenbaker has shown in his study of *The Planters of Colonial Virginia*, that Virginia in the seventeenth century was a colony of small farmers. In this century Virginia was comparatively free from negro slaves, the servant class being indentured white servants that, upon the completion of their term of service, became land owners and respectable citizens. It was in the eighteenth century that negro slavery came to be the dominating institution of Virginia, and it was then that the great gentleman class arose which is usually associated with the early days of that colony and state. And for an understanding of colonial Virginia tobacco is the key, says Mr. Wertenbaker.

Any one who has found satisfaction and enjoyment in using "the Indian weed" will like the planters of colonial Virginia. Tobacco was revered by the Indians. "To them it was an especial gift direct from the Great Spirit, and as such was endowed with unusual properties for doing good. When the fields of maize were dried and parched for lack of rain they powdered the tobacco and cast it to the winds that the evil genii might be propitiated; their priests on great occasions fed it to the sacrificial fires; when the usual catch of fish failed it was scattered over the water. Smoking was considered a token of friendship and peace." And soon after the white man's contact with the Indian the white man learned to appreciate the qualities of this mysterious plant. Its use spread rapidly, although not without opposition, in Europe during the latter part of the sixteenth century. In the seventeenth century its demand was so great that the Southern planter found the cultivation of tobacco a source of wealth.

During the greater part of the seventeenth century Virginia was a colony of small planters. The average size of land holdings was small, "far smaller than has been imagined by some of the closest students of the period," Mr. Wertenbaker says. Possibly 300 acres would not miss far the average size of the planter's land during the seventeenth century. Before 1666 the estimation of settlers coming to the Colony as indentured servants is placed at between thirty and forty per cent. From this indentured class the small farmers were recruited. Upon the completion of the term of service a small amount of land was procured and the servant entered the class of

yeomanry. "In the first fifty years of the colony's existence conditions were favorable for the graduation of the servant into the class of small freeholders, that the records amply prove that many succeeded in doing so, but that at this period a fair proportion of free immigrants also came to the colony. Before the expiration of the Commonwealth period was formed from these two sources, perhaps in not unequal proportions, a vigorous, intelligent, independent yeomanry, comprising fully 90 per cent of all the landowners." These small farmers accumulated a little wealth, lived well, for food was in abundance, although they were less fortunate in regard to clothing, and exerted their power through the House of Burgesses. Up to and through the period of the Commonwealth this class was successful in forcing the royal governors and councils to consider and protect their interest. "In fact, Virginia was governed during this period (Cromwellian), the happiest and most prosperous of its early history, by the small proprietor class which constituted the bulk of the population."

Up to the period of the Restoration, Virginia was a prosperous colony. And this prosperity was founded on tobacco. "Immigration like everything else in the colony was shaped by the needs of tobacco. For its successful production the plant does not require skilled labor or intensive cultivation." "Tobacco was the universal crop of the colony and upon it every man depended for his advancement and prosperity." And "it is evident that the planter, even when entirely dependent upon his own exertions, could produce a goodly crop." The British Government early placed regulations and restrictions upon the trade in tobacco but in the period prior to the Restoration Virginia was never fully subjected to the operation of the British colonial system." When prices fell in England the planters traded directly with the Dutch or others, the result being that the tobacco planter realized fair returns for his labor. "It is not too much to say that the average annual income from the labor of one able worker at any time prior to 1660 was not less than £12. When we take into consideration the fact that the planter produced his own food, and that out of the proceeds of his tobacco crop he paid only his taxes and his bills to the English importers, it is evident that he had a goodly margin of profit to lay aside as working capital."

But the situation in Virginia was materially affected by the restoration of Charles II. "No sooner had the Royal Government

been safely installed than it set to work to perfect and to enforce the colonial policy which in principle had been accepted from the first." The loss of foreign markets, the Dutch wars and the loss of Dutch ships which had been used in exporting the tobacco played havoc with trade. English markets were flooded with tobacco. Prices dropped. "The margin of profit which formerly had made it possible for the freedman to advance rapidly was now wiped out entirely and the poor man found it impossible to keep out of debt." (These facts are significant to the student of North Carolina history since the settlement of the Albemarle was begun during this period by persons coming mainly from Virginia.) "With the price of tobacco so low that no profit was to be derived from it, with his family in rags, the small planter might well have sold his land to his more wealthy neighbor and joined the newly freed servants in moving on to Western Carolina or to the northern colonies." In referring to Carolina Mr. Wertenbaker did not mean "Western Carolina" but the Albemarle section. Before 1700 the only settlers in North Carolina lived in the vicinity of Albemarle Sound, which is neither western nor western from Virginia.

This period of depression in Virginia lasted about a quarter of a century and then tobacco not only regained its former importance but surpassed in value and magnitude anything known up to that time. Several causes contributed to this revival of trade the chief of which were the gradual acceptance and adjustment of the Navigation Acts, and the growing demand in Europe for American tobacco. In the years from 1689 to 1699 the production of tobacco trippled, and whereas in 1699 the industry yielded about £30,000, at the end of the century it brought about six times that amount. But this return in prosperity brought a great change in the social situation in Virginia. "Tobacco, despite its widened market, experienced no very pronounced rise in price. The average return to the planters during the good years seems to have been one penny a pound. This, it is true, constituted an advance over the worst days of the Restoration period, but it was far from approaching the prices of the Civil War and Commonwealth periods. For the poor freedman, it was not sufficient to provide for his support and at the same time make it possible to accumulate a working capital. He could not, as he had done a half century earlier, lay aside enough to purchase a farm, stock it with cattle, hogs and poultry, perhaps even secure a servant.



or two." With lower returns for the yield success in tobacco now depended on quantity, and as quantity depended on labor the servantless planters did not share in the restored prosperity.

The solution for the wealthy was slaves. Virginia during the seventeenth century was comparatively free from slavery. It was the end of that century that witnessed the rise of this institution in that colony. "During the years from 1699 to 1708 no less than 6,843 came in, a number perhaps exceeding the entire importations of the Seventeenth century." With the eighteenth century the "Black tide" continued. "Virginia in the eighteenth century was to be the land of slave holder, not of the little planter."

Against this turn of affairs the little farmer class struggled hopelessly. The adversities of the restoration period had sent this class to other colonies. Now it was the competition with slave labor. This migration to Carolina, Delaware, Pennsylvania, and elsewhere caused serious concern to the authorities in Virginia, and efforts were made to discover its cause. Various reasons were assigned, but "they came nearer the real cause when they added that the low price paid by the merchants for tobacco obliged many to leave." Slavery, however, did not ruin or drive out all the small farmers. Some had fair success in raising a superior quality of tobacco, and others entered the little slave holding class. With from one to five slaves "they continued to constitute the bulk of the white population of Virginia for a century and a half," but Virginia was no longer the colony of a "vigorous, intelligent, independent yeomanry." It was the land of the great slave owner, the aristocrat. "In fact, the eighteenth century was the golden age of Virginia slave holders. It was then that they built the handsome homes once so numerous in the older counties, many of which still remain as interesting monuments of former days; it was then that they surrounded themselves with graceful furniture and costly silverware, in large part imported from Great Britain; it was then that they collected paintings and filled their libraries with the works of standard writers; it was then that they purchased coaches and berlins; it was then that men and women alike wore rich and expensive clothing."

Such is the revelation which Mr. Wertenbaker has given us in his scholarly work on *The Planters of Colonial Virginia*. Particularly commendable are the sources of material used in the compilation of this study. The original records in Virginia and manuscripts in the



British Public Record Office have been supplemented with comments by contemporary writers and present day authorities in a pleasing and instructive fashion. And to the student of the colonial period of our history, especially of colonial North Carolina, the book is an indispensable contribution. It throws light on the character of the settlers of the Old Dominion and gives a new interpretation to the early history of the colony that had so much to do with the settlement of the Albemarle.

As a result of reading this book some questions concerning North Carolina naturally arise. When these settlers from Virginia came to North Carolina what crops did they cultivate? Did they continue to grow tobacco? And if they did, what did they do with the tobacco? In North Carolina, did these settlers become slave owners? Did there arise a slave owning aristocracy? Or did these settlers continue here to be a "vigorous, intelligent, independent yeomanry?" There are other questions of importance and great interest suggested by Mr. Wertenbaker which should be answered by North Carolinians.

F. W. CLONTS.

Wake Forest College.

## RECENT PUBLICATIONS ON NORTH CAROLINA

*The Ku Kluxer.* By Gerald W. Johnson. The American Mercury (Knopf). Vol. 1, No. 2, February, 1924.

*Stories and Poems From the Old North State.* Edited by Mrs. Sturgis Elleno Leavitt. (North Carolina Federation of Womens Clubs).

*The State Normal School Idea In North Carolina.* By Edwin M. Highsmith, Ph.D. Meredith College Bulletin, Series 17, No. 1, November, 1923.

*A History of the Tar River Baptist Association, 1830-1921.* By Thomas J. Taylor, D.D. 1924: Tar River Baptist Association, Cloth, 334 pp.

*Centennial Ceremonies Held in Christ Church Parish, Raleigh, North Carolina, A.D. 1921.* Papers by Bishop Joseph Blount Cheshire, Marshall De Lancey Haywood, Samuel A. Ashe; Poems by Irma Deaton, Margaret Busbee Shipp, Lila Vass Shepherd. Raleigh: 1922, Bynum Printing Company.

*Boundaries, Areas, Geographical Centers and Altitudes of the United States and the Several States, With a Brief Record of Important Changes in Their Territory.* By Edward M. Douglas, Washington: 1923 U. S. Geological Survey Bulletin 689, Government Printing Office, Paper, 234 pp, with maps, Section on North Carolina, pp. 128-134.

*American Historical Activities During the World War.* Section on North Carolina by R. B. House, pp. 259-262 Annual Report of the American Historical Association for 1919. Volume I. Washington: Government Printing Office, 1923.

*Economic and Social Conditions of North Carolina Farmers.* By Carl C. Taylor and C. C. Zimmerman. Pamphlet, 87 pp. Published by N. C. Board of Agriculture, 1923.

*Studies in Citizenship for Women.* By D. D. Carroll, University of North Carolina Extension Bulletin, Vol. III, No. 5, November 1, 1923.

*Celebrated Homes.* By Fred A. Olds. The Uplift, Concord, N. C. Vol. XII, No. 9. January 19, 1924.

*How Educational Work in State Is Apportioned.* By Jule B. Warren, News and Observer, Raleigh, N. C. February 3, 1924, p. 15.

*Kennon Letters.* The Virginia Magazine of History and Biography, Vol. XXXII, No. 1, January 1924, (to be continued.)

*Fathers Saw Education As The Business of The State.* By Jule B. Warren. The News and Observer, Raleigh, N. C., January 27, 1924.

*Confederate War Diary.* By Captain H. A. Chambers. The Landmark, Statesville, N. C. January 21, 1924 and later numbers.

*War Record Davidson College, 1917-1918.* Compiled by Cornelia Rebekah Shaw. Charlotte: Presbyterian Standard Publishing Company, 1923. Paper, 133 pages, contains records and, in part, photographs of 959 Davidson men who served in the World War.

*Governor Abner Nash.* By Frank Nash. North Carolina Booklet, Vol. XXII, Nos. 1, 2, 3, 4, combined, July 1922-April 1923.

*A Turning Point in the Life of the People of the State.* By S. A. Ashe. *Ibid.*

*Henry McCullough and His Irish Settlement.* By V. Faison Williams. *Ibid.*

*Residence of John Gray Blount.* By Lidia T. Rodman. *Ibid.*

*Alonzo Thomas Jerkins; Charles Cawthorn Clark; John Louis Taylor.* By Marshall De Lancey Haywood. *Ibid.*

*Historical Reminiscences of Centre Hill.* By Richard Dillard. *Ibid.*

*Old Carolina College.* By W. A. Smith. *Ibid.*

*Race and Rehabilitation.* By Collier Cobb. *Ibid.*

*North Carolina Troops at Gettysburg.* By Walter Clark. *Ibid.*

*The Grave of General Francis Nash.* *Ibid.*

"A Tribute (to) George Louis Wimberley." By H. G. Connor. Raleigh News and Observer p. 13. January 20, 1924.

*Last Active Chaplain of the Confederacy.* By Ben Dixon McNeill, News and Observer, Raleigh, N. C., January 17, 1924.

*Memoirs and Speeches of Locke Craig, Governor of North Carolina, 1913-1917.* Edited by May F. Jones, Asheville, 1923, Hackney and Moale Company, 284 pp.

*Our Over-Populated Southern Farms.* By Alfred G. Smith. The Worlds Work, Vol. XLVII, No. 3, January, 1924.

*The Public Letters and Papers of Thomas Walter Bickett, Governor of North Carolina, 1917-1921.* Compiled by Santford Martin, edited by R. B. House, Archivist of the North Carolina Historical Commission. Raleigh: The North Carolina Historical Commission. Edition limited to 1000 copies.

*Walter Hines Page: A Southern Nationalist.* By R. D. W. Connor, The Journal of Social Forces, Vol. II, No. 2, January, 1924.

*The Orphanage Population of One Southern State.* (North Carolina). By Mary G. Shotwell. *Ibid.*

*Rural Standards of Living in the South.* (Refers in part to North Carolina.) By Roland M. Harper. *Ibid.*

*History of the Courts of Chancery of Tennessee.* By Samuel Cole Williams. Tennessee Law Review, Vol. II, 1923.

*Race Relations in North Carolina: A Field Study of Moderate Opinion.* By C. Chilton Pearson, South Atlantic Quarterly, Vol. XXIII, No. 1, January, 1924.

*My Recollections of the Bench and Bar.* By Judge Oliver Allen, Raleigh, 1923. Paper, 32 pp.

*Benefit of Clergy.* By W. K. Boyd. Rockingham Post Dispatch, December 13, 1923.

*First General Assembly of North Carolina Under the State Constitution of 1776.* By Zeb V. Walser, Greensboro Daily News, January 6, 1924. February 24, 1924.

*The University of North Carolina Record, December, 1923. Number 205, President's Report.*

*University of North Carolina Extension Bulletins:* Vol. II, No. 6. *How Farm Tenants Live*, by J. A. Dickey and E. C. Branson; Vol. II, No. 9. *Home and Farm Ownership*, by E. C. Branson (editor); Vol. II, No. 13. *Agricultural Graphics: North Carolina and the United States, 1866-1922*, By Henrietta R. Smedes; Vol. III, No. 3, *Studies in the History of North Carolina*, By R. D. W. Connor.

## HISTORICAL NEWS

The Dare County Board of Education has issued *The Echo*, 1923, a pamphlet of 32 pages illustrated, giving historical and other items of Dare County, and a study of educational progress there.

"Why America Should Prohibit Immigration for Five Years" is the subject on which the American Legion conducted a National essay contest among school children. The North Carolina section of the contest was won by Virginia McIntyre, Wilmington; Elmer Cloer, Statesville; Edward R. Parker, Poticasi. These winners pass automatically into the National contest for the three best places. The national awards are scholarships valued respectively at \$750.00, \$500.00, and \$250.00.

The University of North Carolina Press announces two books for the first quarter of 1924: *Law and Morals*. By Roscoe Pound, Dean of the Harvard Law School; *Religious Certitude in an Age of Science*. By Charles Allen Dinsmore, Professor of Spiritual Interpretation of Literature in Yale Divinity School.

There has been organized in the Law School of the University of North Carolina, a Law School Association of which Professor Albert Coates is Chairman. Within the association are seven clubs with a membership of 15 students each. These clubs are conducted as appellate courts before which students go with typewritten briefs. Their purpose is to train in actual court practice. The association will have a series of addresses by the justices of the Supreme Court this year, by Superior Court judges next year, by members of the Bar the year following. This scheme will continue in rotation so that during the three years of the law course the students will hear addresses from the three main bodies of practice.

At Ashland, Virginia, in December there was dedicated a new library known as the Walter Hines Page Memorial Library.

By a vote of 3 to 0 the University of North Carolina upholding the negative defeated the University of South Carolina in a debate in Chapel Hill, December 8. The question was whether a constitutional amendment should be adopted giving Congress power to pass a Federal divorce act.



Doctor George J. Fisher, national field executive of Boy Scouts of America, in an address before the Greensboro Rotary Club, January 14, declared that the present is an age of cynical distrust of men in office, of waning ideals, and of physical deterioration. He characterized the discipline and outdoor life of "scouting" as an antidote.

In Winston-Salem, January 14, Hon. Leslie M. Shaw, Secretary of the Treasury under President Roosevelt, addressed the Chamber of Commerce on "Representative Government Against Pure Democracy." He declared that the Constitution was adopted by men of big vision, denounced the primary as "infernal," and stated that to be successful governments must be guided by experienced hands. Representative government, made up of men approved by delegates and not the masses, he declared to be the fundamental safeguard of America.

The *Asheville Times* (January 14) announces a straw vote to determine the site of a proposed new Library.

With fourteenth annual debate between Trinity College and Swarthmore, February 29, there was introduced for the first time in the South the open forum plan of debate, introduced into this country by Oxford a few years ago. Under this plan the debate is similar to that in a legislative body. Speakers representing both sides of the question may be from the same institution. Those who take part are simply allowed so much time and may choose either side of the question. The audience acts as judges and casts votes for the winning side of the argument, not for the winning institution. The question was, "Resolved that the Power of the United States should be limited." Later in the season Trinity will debate with Emory on, "Resolved that France was justified in invading the Ruhr."

Plans are on foot to purchase old Fort Macon at Beaufort and make of it a playground in the east to match Mitchell Park in the west. The fort and 410 acres of land can be purchased from the Federal Government for \$7,500, on condition that they be maintained as a public park. North Carolina has an option on this property until April 2, 1924.

There are no State funds available for the purchase, but Colonel Joseph Hyde Pratt, who is in charge of the plans to purchase, hopes to raise the amount by private subscription. Fort Macon is one of

the few well-preserved fortifications of the old order and represents the best example of defensive engineering prior to the Civil War. It is planned to preserve the fort for its intrinsic value and also as a further step toward reserving suitable parks in North Carolina while there is yet time.

On Wednesday Evening, December 12, 1923, Mr. Henry Dwire, editor of the Winston-Salem *Sentinel*, lectured before the History Club of Salem College on "The Constitution of the United States of America. Dr. Dwire described (1) the significance of the American Revolution in the struggle for liberty, (2) the practical problems of the Confederation, (3) the formation and adoption of the Constitution, (4) the document itself as preamble, main body, and amendments, (5) present attitudes toward the Constitution.

"Bits of Arden" is the title of a small book of poems by Florie Florrie Jean Lightfoot, privately issued by her through the Cumberland Printing Co. of Fayetteville, 1923.

"Peace with Honor" is the title of a twenty page brochure issued by General Julian S. Carr, containing his address at the unveiling of the Bennett House Memorial, November 8, 1923. General Carr rehearsed briefly the history of the movement to establish the memorial, recounted the significant events leading up to Johnston's surrender, and asserted that the marker was a memorial to the reunion of the American people.

January 2, 1924, in the Governor's Office in Raleigh there was presented to the State a portrait of Jonathan Worth, Governor of North Carolina 1865-1868. Associate Justice W. A. Hoke made the address of presentation on behalf of Mrs. E. E. Moffitt, and Mrs. Adelaide Worth Bagley, the two surviving daughters of Governor Worth. Judge Hoke portrayed the trying period following the Civil War during which Governor Worth was head of the State. He declared that Worth "was charged with conducting the affairs of the State in the presence of a victorious and hostile government, and of a dominant watchful, and suspicious people. Yet, in the presence of these trying conditions, so well did he conduct himself, so wisely did he exercise the powers intrusted to him, that he won over and held the confidence of the Government at Washington . . . and was often consulted by it." Worth was an opponent of secession.

Yet, when the State was committed to it, he threw all his powers behind the movement. He was chosen governor by the conservative element of the state, and right well did he justify the confidence of responsible people and lead them along most difficult paths toward an enduring peace.

January 2, 1924, at Fayetteville there was unveiled a tablet commemorating historic events in Fayetteville, N. C., at "Ye Olde Market House." The occasion was sponsored by the Colonial Dames.

Colonel Fred A. Olds has prepared a series of County Histories which are now running in *The Orphans' Friend*. Abstracts of them are also being transmitted to the press through the Associated Press.

The North Carolina Press Association held its mid-winter session at Pinehurst January 3-4, 1924. Attention was specially devoted to Pinehurst and the Sandhill Section of North Carolina. The association was addressed on this subject by Leonard Tufts. Mr. Bion H. Butler then outlined the economic and industrial advantages of Moore County. A second theme treated was The Old North State, her opportunities and her developments. Among the speakers were Josephus Daniels, E. C. Brooks, Wallace Odell, M. L. Shipman, Minnie Harmon, and R. R. Clark.

In a recent article in *Hearst's International Magazine* Irvin S. Cobb reviewed the awakening of North Carolina along the general theme that this state possesses everything except a press agent. The suggestion is being acted on by the Tuttle advertising agency of Greensboro. This company published January 14th a sheet called *North Carolina, The Garden Spot of the World*, in which it proposes an organization, North Carolinians, Inc. Its slogan is "Let's sell North Carolina to the World."

The Raleigh Chapter, Daughters of the Revolution will unveil in May a tablet on the Ramsgate road. The tablet is now ready and bears the following inscription: "Ramsgate road was cut westward from this place by order of Governor William Tryon while in camp with his troops at Hunting Lodge while marching against the Regulators. Erected by Bloomsbury Chapter, D.A.R. and North Carolina Historical Commission."

Mrs. J. R. Chamberlain, author of "History of Wake County" is working in the collections of the North Carolina Historical Commission on a life of Mrs. Cornelia Phillips Spencer.

The *Alumni Review* of the University of North Carolina for February, 1924, carries a copy of a letter from Joseph Caldwell, first president of the University, written on January 15, 1815, to Reverend William Neill of Albany, N. Y. It gives a picture of life at the University in 1815. The letter forms part of the North Carolina Collection in the University library.

The University of North Carolina Library has recently received three gifts which add distinction to the collection of material relating to North Carolina and the South. The first in order of receipt is that from the Indianapolis Public Library of sixty-three volumes of bound newspapers covering the period 1876-1878. Inasmuch as this was the period in which the South was emancipating itself from the evils of Reconstruction, the addition of the papers is particularly important historically. The seventeen papers making up the collection are: the *Baltimore American and Commercial Advertiser*, the *Boston Daily Advertiser*, the *Boston Post*, the *Chicago Times*, the *Cincinnati Enquirer*, the *Louisville Courier-Journal*, the *Pittsburg Daily Post*, the *Detroit Free Press*, the *Boston Evening Gazette*, the *New York Evening Post*, the *Montreal Gazette*, the *Light of Truth*, the *Charleston News and Courier*, the *St. Louis Republican*, the *Springfield Republican*, the *Toledo Morning Commercial*, and the *New York World*.

The second is that of the autograph album of William H. Maverick, of San Antonio, Texas, of the Class of 1869, who died last December. It is presented by his son, William E. Maverick, and it contains the signature of his father's classmates and the professors of the University when the old line faculty was succeeded by the Reconstruction incumbents in 1868-69.

The third gift is a framed steel engraving of the late Stephen B. Weeks, '86, presented by Mangum Weeks, '16, and Charles L. Van Noppen, '92. It is a stipple-steel engraving made by E. G. Williams from the portrait of Dr. Weeks now in the Hall of History in Ra-



leigh and painted by Paul E. Menzel. The engraving is beautifully framed and is signed by both the artists.

William Willis Boddie, '97, Law '03, is the author of the *History of Williamsburg*, (S. C.) concerning which the *Charleston News and Courier* of December 2 had in the course of a long and commendatory review, the following to say:

From time to time during the past several years the Kingstree County *Record* has printed sketches of Williamsburg County from the pen of William Willis Boddie. These sketches attracted, more than local attention. They were uniformly readable. They displayed a gift for historical narrative. Copied by the *Sunday News* and other newspapers, they were widely read, and the hope was frequently expressed that Mr. Boddie would expand his newspaper pieces into a history of Williamsburg County. This he has now done and the book which has resulted fulfills and more than fulfills the promise which the earlier sketches gave.

Sunday, February 10, 3:30 p.m. was generally observed in North Carolina as an occasion of addresses and celebrations in honor of Woodrow Wilson. The press of the state carried many notices of such celebrations in the issues of February 11.

The Greensboro *Daily News* for Sunday, February 10, devotes three large sections to a review of business in North Carolina in 1923. The editor gives interesting reports of construction, statistical tables, and articles on the progress of numerous towns and cities.

January 19, is a legal holiday in North Carolina. It commemorates the birth of Robert E. Lee. All sections of the State celebrated the day in various forms of exercises too numerous to mention.

Chief Justice Walter Clark addressed the University of North Carolina Law School Association at Chapel Hill, Friday, January 25. His was the opening address in a series to be delivered in Chapel Hill by the justices of the Supreme Court. This address was a severe arraignment of the system of reported cases or precedents. The system must break down of its own weight, Judge Clark declared. It results in delay and confusion, attracts attention from the arguments of the case itself, and pretends to sift a mass of reports that no court can cover.

The Thursday Book Club of Newton met January 26, and discussed a paper by Mrs. George Moose, "Fighting under Washington." The club is pursuing the course of study in North Carolina history outlined by the University extension division.

Construction work is already under way on a building which Wayne County will erect as a World War Memorial. The building will be in Goldsboro. It will contain a gymnasium, lounge room, American Legion quarters, Red Cross quarters, and rooms for the Boy Scouts and other organizations. Over thirty thousand dollars have been subscribed for the structure.

On January 14, in Henderson, Secretary of State W. N. Everett addressed the Chamber of Commerce on "North Carolina," reviewing the progress of the past twenty years, and attributing it to the spirit of unity that prevails in the state.

Leon L. Daughtry, Post No. 22 of the American Legion, is campaigning to erect a hospital in Sampson County as a memorial to Sampson County's World War dead.

On January 18, Elon College lost to Emory and Henry in a debate on "Resolved: That the defeated bonus measure for World War Veterans should be passed." Elon upheld the affirmative.

Arrangements have been made to present to the City of Durham the portrait of Doctor Bartlett Durham for whom the city was named. Mrs. J. M. Stagg is the donor of the portrait.

On January 17, at Raleigh there was unveiled in the Thompson School a tablet commemorating the services of Mrs. Mamie B. Terrell, for many years a teacher in the schools of Raleigh.

The field activities of the Department of Rural Social Economics of the University of North Carolina during the last year are as follows:

(1) Twelve addresses by E. C. Branson, head of the department, and four by S. H. Hobbs, Jr., acting head of the department; (2) 22 studies of nation-wide range, 14 of which have been given to the public in *The University News Letter*; (3) 38 studies of State-wide range, 18 of which have appeared in part in *The University News Letter*; (4) 51 special county studies, some of which are now

on the press and will appear in the form of county bulletins; (5) 12 special studies; (6) daily work with 98 students in laboratory studies mainly upon North Carolina economic and social problems; (7) *The North Carolina Club Year-Book* on "Home and Farm Ownership," which appeared during the year. This book contains 22 chapters and 210 pages. It is the first book on this subject to be published in the United States. During the past year the Club has made 17 economic and social studies, which will be published in the next issue of *The North Carolina Club Year-Book* under the title of "What Next in North Carolina." (8) A field survey was made of 329 farm homes in Chatham county. The findings have been published in a bulletin entitled, "How Farm Tenants Live in a Mid-State Carolina County" by J. A. Dickey, and E. C. Branson. (9) Work with 34 students in correspondence courses; (10) Field investigations with the State Legislative Committee on Land Settlement.

*The University News Letter* carrying many special studies worked out in the department laboratory appeared 50 times during the year. Concerning *The News Letter*, the following is quoted from *Collier's Magazine*:

Once a week for nearly ten years every doctor, lawyer, banker, preacher, teacher, editor, office-holder, and every known forward-looking citizen in the commonwealth has been getting a little five column, one page sheet called *The University of North Carolina News Letter*. This tells with embarrassing frankness exactly what is wrong in the State and how it can be remedied.

Each year the department receives several thousand letters calling for information on an indefinite variety of subjects in which North Carolinians and people from other states are interested and active. No letter ever goes unanswered. If the information is available it is compiled and forwarded to the person requesting it. Requests for information grow in volume as the years pass. No one except persons actually searching for such information can comprehend the time and attention involved.

Marked growth was recorded in the North Carolina Collection of the University of North Carolina Library during the past year. It now numbers about seven thousand five hundred bound volumes and seventeen thousand pamphlets. Eight hundred and twenty-seven bound volumes and three thousand, three hundred and three pamphlets were added. Through the efforts of Dr. Archibald Henderson, the Library acquired an unusually valuable collection of

Salisbury newspapers, including files of the *Western Carolinian*, the *Watchman and Old North State*, the *Old North State*, and the *Carolina Watchman*. This collection was originally given by T. K. Bruner to the Rowan Historical Society and has now been presented to the University through Theo. Buerbaum, the only living member of the Society. Covering a period of about seventy years, these newspapers furnish practically the only source of material extant for the history of western North Carolina. Other newspaper files added are: the *New Bern Journal*, 1882-1898, the *New Bern Times*, 1873, the *Kinston Journal*, 1878-1887, the gift of J. B. Dawson; forty-eight volumes of early North Carolina newspapers collated and bound from collections stored in the Library basement; a file of the *Hillsborough Recorder*, including the years from 1822 to 1885, bound and made accessible; and a large collection of photostat copies of North Carolina newspapers prior to 1800 bought from the Massachusetts Historical Society. In addition to the newspapers mentioned above, the Collection has received other notable gifts. The Patterson Memorial Collection, given by Mrs. Lindsay Patterson in memory of her husband, added a number of early newspapers, pamphlets, periodicals and account books. Mrs. Richmond Pearson gave a valuable collection of early law books. Miss Florence Dixon sent files of North Carolina periodicals. Other donors are noted in the list following this report. The Library gratefully acknowledges the continued support of John Sprunt Hill, whose assistance has assured the steady growth of the Collection.

During the first quarter of 1924 the North Carolina Historical Commission secured for preservation: Additional executive papers up to 1799; medals of Kiffin Yates Rockwell; records of Edgar F. Halyburton; Council of Defense records; Halifax County war records; Photostat copies of miscellaneous newspapers prior to 1800; List of Magistrates appointed 1763-1768; Robeson County wills, 1784-1800; Chatham County court minutes, 1774-1785; relics of the cruiser *Raleigh*; several Civil War lists and rosters. Also from the family of the late Judge Walter A. Montgomery, the manuscript of Judge Montgomery's *Political History of the Confederacy*.



In *Time* for February 25, 1924, there is an advertisement of Hendrick's "The Life and Letters of Walter Hines Page." It shows a fac-simile of the memorial tablet to Page unveiled in Westminster Abbey July 3, 1923. We reprint the inscription:

TO THE GLORY OF GOD  
AND IN MEMORY OF  
WALTER HINES PAGE  
1855-1918  
AMBASSADOR  
OF THE UNITED STATES  
OF AMERICA  
TO THE  
COURT OF ST. JAMES  
1913-1918  
The friend of Britain in her  
sorest need.

We are in possession of advance notices of a new book, "*Old Warrenton*" from the pen of Mrs. L. H. Montgomery. This book will be reviewed in the July issue of THE NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL REVIEW.

The March 1, number of *The Survey* carries many references to North Carolina, among them "In The Southern Appalachians" by Joseph Hyde Pratt.

Colonel Fred A. Olds gives us the following description of his historical work for the *Orphans' Friend*:

"I began to write for the Oxford *Orphans' Friend* in June, 1915, and the first story was about "Salemberg," (in Sampson County); the first model community in the United States. In the nine years since that date more than 1400 subjects relating to North Carolina have been covered.

"These include the histories of the 100 counties in the State; in brief first and later in detail, as well as travel stories in all the counties. The battle-grounds, in all the wars, have been visited and described; the Cherokee Indians; the great manufacturing plants; institutions for the State's wards of all classes; the coast country; the highways; the resorts; the Sand Hill Country; the

mountain region; the cities and towns; the canals and waterways; the fisheries; the forest reserves; birth places and homes of noted people, etc.

"Scores of sketches of famous men; stories of the Indian period, colonial and provincial times, the Revolutionary period and that of the War between the States; the State Museum and Hall of History; the customs of older days; slaving in the state; the colleges and schools of all degrees; the first airplane; stories of the World War; Cape Hatteras; cheese manufacture in the state; its mines; its caves; its lakes; the leading authors; our native birds; great events in the State; the army hospitals; marriage bonds, wills, etc.; the early Quakers; the war with the regulators; old-time resorts; amusements of early days; blockade running in 1862-65; the old forts; community schools; welfare work; court houses; the animals, the flowers, the insects, the trees and plants; hydro-electric powers; the libraries; the orphanages.

"These stories have been bound in annual volumes and carefully indexed, and placed in the Archives department of the Historical Commission, in the State Library, the North Carolina Library Commission and the libraries of the State University and the State College for Women. Those of the counties of the State, 100 in number, have been clipped and mounted as leaflets, each in a cover. The county histories have been given to the Associated Press.

"A highly condensed summary of the important and interesting public laws of the state is now appearing, covering the period from 1790 to 1870, with the year and the titles clearly set out.

"Every nook and corner of the State has been covered by these stories, which have been furnished free of any cost whatever. They have been read by old and young."

As this issue goes to press it is announced that the Aycock Memorial will be unveiled in Raleigh, March 13. The speakers will be Doctor Edwin A. Alderman, Honorable Josephus Daniels, and Governor Cameron Morrison. A full account of the exercises will be given in this section of the July number of THE NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL REVIEW.

# DIARY OF COLONEL JOSEPH HYDE PRATT, COMMAND- ING 105TH ENGINEERS, A. E. F.

(Continued from Volume I, Number 1, January, 1924.)

(*Enclosure in diary*)

Wallon Cappel, 125.  
5.7.'18.

1 (b) A. H. Q.

Second Army.

Ref. 1 P. C.

Re Morale.

Little or no change from past week.

The increasing arrivals of Americans troops are  
creating a good impression.

S. GREENBAGH,  
A/Sgt.

*July 8, 1918, Monday.* The Colonel left again for Corps Headquarters. I spent most of the day at Regimental Headquarters, studying maps and planning for the movement of the regiment to its new camp in the Proven Area, Belgium.

Before the Colonel left we went over to Headquarters 1st Battalion and then with Battalion Commander Captain Myers we visited his companies C. and A. Saw them at drill and pleased with the condition of the men and the way they handled themselves. B. Company was at the Rifle range for the day. The Companies are all separated from each other and from Battalion Headquarters, and in visiting them we had a walk of about  $3\frac{3}{4}$  miles. I enjoy the walks notwithstanding the thick dust. Part of our walk was through lanes bordered with trees and hedges. Very beautiful and very attractive. I have a splendid opportunity of seeing and studying the section of country in which the Regiment is located, by reason of its units being camped in so many different places. My only means of getting about from camp to camp is either on a poor riding horse or on "shanks mare." Of the two I prefer the latter. The horse I have is of an indescribable color (yellowish-tan with speckles of dirty brown). He is small, has uneasy (for rider) trot, but a rather fast walk (his redeeming trait). He balks a little, but usually is easily persuaded to go where his rider desires. It is a great come down from the good horse I had at Camp Sevier.

In the evening (7 p.m.) we had a rather hard thunder shower, the first in France. I sat in the doorway of the Chateau and watched it for nearly  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour.

*July 9, 1918. Tuesday.* A quiet and restful night. Received orders to move the regiment from the Cassel Area to the Proven Area (Belgium). I had a conference with the Battalion Commanders at noon and went over with them plans for the march. Sent the billeting officer and detail from each Battalion to Proven to make arrangements for billeting the regiment. They will meet me enroute and the men with them will be able to guide the units of the Regiment to their camping or billeting sites. In the p.m. went over to Terdegheem with Major Lysterly to inspect the work done by the Second Battalion during the past two days. It consisted largely of wiring, continuing the length of the wire entanglement of the 1st Battalion. They built the double apron type and the low entanglement. For the most part they did splendidly.

*July 10, 1918. Wednesday.* Orders were issued yesterday to move the regiment to the Proven Area, Belgium. Regimental march orders were issued and at 8 a.m. the regiment was en route for Belgium and new scenes. The Headquarters Company, 1st Battalion and Train started from Oxelaere, and went through Cassel, the 2d Battalion from Terdegheem joining the column at Riweld (27/J 27 b 2. 3.). Had one hard shower en route near Droglandt. Although some of the men got somewhat wet (most of them put on their rain coats) the shower was very acceptable as it settled the dust. The 1st Battalion reached the Proven Area about 12:30 p.m. and stopped for dinner near the old "Proven flying field" (28/F 13 a. 9.9.) and the 2d Battalion halted just north of Watou. Our guide from the advance party which we sent ahead to Proven to arrange for our billeting met each Battalion and the Train and guided them to their respective billets.

Major DePaula and Captain Hillyer, who had received orders to accompany us to our new camp and then rejoin their command, left us after dinner. These British officers (10) who have been attached to us for the last month have been delightful companions and of a great deal of assistance to me in our general training. They have also been very willing to give our officers all information possible and did not seem to mind the steady stream of questions we asked



them. We have been able to obtain a large fund of information relating to the British method of carrying on the war.

Our central camp is located at Strathcona Farm (27/F 13 d.7.4). The Regimental Headquarters office is in a corrugated iron oval hut and I live in a small wooden shack. It is quite a change from the "Red Chateau." Headquarters Company is billeted in a barn on the adjoining farm and the 1st Battalion and Engineer Train on the Strathcona Farm, some in the barn but most of them in their shelter tents scattered around the edges of the farm under the hedges and trees. The 2nd Battalion was billeted for the night in huts in Couthove Camp on both sides of the main Proven-Poperinghe Road (27/F 14 d.3.4). Colonel Ferguson made the trip in his automobile and part of the time I was with him, inspecting the column and correcting mistakes and errors in "march discipline." As a whole the men marched very well and did not violate any of the road regulations. I rode my horse part of the time, but walked considerable of the way. I find that walking still appeals to me more than riding a horse that is not in any sense a saddle horse. Watou is a Belgian town of about 3,750 population, and is on the France-Belgium line. The frontier line is on the edge of the town and a custom post is located on the road we were marching on. The custom officer did not bother us any this time. In fact we have traveled across England, France, and into Belgium without any realization that there was anything like a custom officer around, or a custom system in operation.

We have moved into the celebrated Ypres sector which has seen more fighting during the past four years than any other sector on the whole front. Part of the sector is known as "Hell's Half Acre." Some of our men and officers have already been through it.

Our camp is located about 9 miles back of the front line, but our work extends up to the front line. This section has been shelled but little. We are within range of the big guns.

The Belgians are good farmers and every bit of land is utilized. Many of them are also very fond of flowers and at my quarters there is a flower garden with some splendid roses, equal to any hot house plants.

*July 11, Thursday.* We had expected to send out 18 platoons of the Regiment in various jobs, but received orders this morning countermanding all that related to the platoons of the 1st Battalion. I moved the Second Battalion at 1 p.m. to its new position. It is divided into

five sections, all under Major Lyerly, and with the exception of one platoon, E 4, are working on the East and West Poperinghe trench lines. One camp at the Gaunt Farm is about 4 miles east of our camp. Each side of the camp is the home of a large Observation Balloon.

Colonel Ferguson's auto came in very handy for me, as he took me around to visit the camp sites where my troops were to live and enabled me to see them settled for the night.

The 1st Battalion and Train spent the day cleaning the "Central Camp" and getting settled. The camp was pretty dirty and it was up to us to clean up. Arrangements for officers were poor for a camp of this sort. We finally got a place in which to serve Headquarters officers' meals. Markets here are not very good and we are living for the most part on the straight "British Rations" which includes an allowance of tobacco. We supplemented this ration with eggs (9-10 cents apiece) and milk (20 cents a quart), oranges (10 cents apiece). We are beginning to experience a little of the "Flanders mud." It has rained each day we have been here and the black sticky mud makes it difficult and nasty getting around. It will be fierce this winter.

*July 12, 1918. Friday.* Found there was a mix-up regarding the camp of the five platoons camped at 28/A 19 b 1.8 1.9. The Area Commandant told Major Lyerly that that camp was reserved for the 114th Machine Gun Battalion and that we could not have it. I gave orders to the Major to hold the camp unless he received orders from me or some general officer to the contrary. I took the matter up with Corps Headquarters (II British Corps) and they told me we could have that particular camp. I moved one-half of the Engineer Train to same camp to be used by the 2d Battalion in hauling supplies to its various jobs. Although the camps contain several platoons, the work is scattered over an area several miles in diameter. I spent most of the day in camp catching up on routine office work.

*July 13, 1918, Saturday.* I was made very glad today by the return to camp of the nine officers who had come over to France as an advance party of the regiment. All the party returned looking pictures of health and all seemed very glad to be back with the regiment. We have been very handicapped in our work by their absence. They all reported a very successful session of the Army School which they attended. At the time we made the three-day march referred to

about ten days ago there were 21 officers absent from the regiment, and it made it very much harder to handle the regiment on the march. At that time both Majors were absent on "school duty."

The 2d Battalion officers were sent over to their respective commands this p.m. I went over with them in order to see that everything was all right at the camps, and to be sure that arrangements for handling rations and forage were satisfactory. Major Cothran went with us and we all walked. I pointed out the places of interest, particularly such places at Mount Kemmel, now occupied by the Germans, and which commands a view of the greater part of the Ypres sector. Many of our roads have had to be screened to keep the Germans from observing what we were doing and hauling. One "danger corner" is in full view of Kemmel.

At one corner, the junction of the "Duffield Road" with the International Corner—Poperinghe Road, the German artillery have registered on this road with at least four heavy shells, three of which are in the corners.

On the return trip Major Cothran and I came by the camp occupied by the 11½ platoons under Lieutenant Ellicott. We tried to take some short cuts but the roads we went on twisted and turned so much that we gained but very little if any.

*July 14, Sunday.* Sundays are not the days of rest and relaxation that I would like to have; the work goes on just about the same as on other days. I did keep the men off work, but this was objected to later by the British and I presume while we are here at the front Sunday work will have to go the same as other days.

I had a conference with the C. of G.; G.; Division Medical officer, and Division Engineer at Division Headquarters. The Colonel very kindly sent out his auto to take me in. All conferences were in relation to the construction of shell proof shelters for the Division Headquarters officers and of Battalion Aid Posts and Relay Posts.

We will put in supports under the first floor of the building in which Division Headquarters is located and make them a 5.9 shell proof shelter. We examined the location for Battalion Aid Posts in which wounded can have their wounds redressed and the doctor be protected from shell fire, 5.9 shells. The Relay Post is simply splinter proof, and is where the stretcher bearers change or shift. We got back to Watou for dinner about 1:15 p.m. Went over to a Belgian restaurant that has been started since the war, started in a

rather attractive house. We had a good omelette, coffee and dessert. In the afternoon we rode over to Houtkerque to see General Godby regarding our work and assignments. We came back by camp and the Colonel had supper with us.

*July 15, Monday.* Today we have been busy planning our work for two Battalions of Infantry which are to work under our supervision on the West Poperinghe Line. We had a long conference with General Godby and arranged our plans for the work. Also arranged to go over the Support and Reserve lines so as to know definitely what has to be done. This work will be done under the supervision of Major Lyerly and other officers of the 2d Battalion. We went back to Watou where we had supper and at nine o'clock I came back to camp.

*July 16, 1918, Tuesday.* Last night we not only had an *air raid* but our camp was bombed. One bomb hit near a group of tents at the end of the stable where the Engineer Train horses were kept. It was not one of the large bombs but it was very destructive. It killed Sergeant John D. Huffman of the Train and wounded Master Engineer Walter E. Allen, Corporal Fred W. Hildebrand of the Train, Private Albert T. Corpening of the Train, Herbert I. Champion of the Medical Detachment. It also wounded Lieutenant Albert T. Spence of Company B. Two horses were killed outright and three so badly wounded that they had to be killed. Seven other horses were wounded slightly. Lieutenant Church of B. Company had a very narrow escape. He was covered by his overcoat and this was cut and torn in several places by a piece of shrapnel. All the men behaved themselves very well indeed and after the wounded had been taken to the Field hospital the camp quieted down and all the men (or most of them) went to sleep again. We have been in camps before that were attacked by air planes but this is the first time our own camp has actually been hit. It almost made me sick in the morning as I began to think about it—the *killing of my men*. The worst of these air attacks is the feeling it causes you to have. You know you are perfectly helpless and if he can make a direct hit on your hut or tent, you are a "goner." You can build up around your hut and tent a barricade of dirt two feet thick and three feet high which will protect you from the shrapnel if the bomb bursts on the outside. But as you lie in bed listening (if you are awake) to the air planes coming nearer, you and your tent or hut begin



to grow larger and larger until it seems to you as though you were bigger than anything else out doors, and that you stand out so distinctly that you just know the air plane is going to drop its bomb on you. It is a very *disagreeable* feeling. It is a helpless feeling. There is nothing you can do to further protect yourself and you lie "awake" expecting the bomb to hit your tent or hut. It is not only one night, but night after night.

The work of Private Herbert I. Champion of the Medical Department last night shows the grit our boys are made of. Although wounded, he assisted in getting the other wounded men to the Infirmary and also assisted Major Campbell in dressing the men's wounds. After the surgeon had finished with the others, Private Champion turned to the surgeon and asked him to see how badly he (Private Champion) was wounded. It turned out that he was as badly hurt as several of the others.

Work went on today as usual and there was but little sign or indication among the men that anything unusual had occurred.

At nine-fifteen the Colonel and I left the camp in his car to meet General Godby and his Adjutant, and Major Lyerly, Captains Seelye and Sullivan, and inspect the West Poperinghe line. We had to plan out the work for two Battalions of Infantry who are to work on this line under the supervision of the Engineers.

We spent all the morning going over the line from the Lovie-Poperinghe road to the Rhodes Corner-Poperinghe road. We brought Major Lyerly and Captain Seelye back to dinner with us and completed our plans for the next day's work. The West Poperinghe line is not shelled very often. The East Poperinghe line is shelled quite frequently. We have men of the 105th working on both these lines as well as up in the front line east of Ypres. My regiment is not split up into its various component units and are scattered at work from Proven to Ypres. I can only get over this work once in a while as I am still obliged to use "shank's mare" as my principal means of travel. Colonel Ferguson's automobile and General Godby's have enabled me to get over the work much oftener than I otherwise would.

*July 17, 1918, Wednesday.* The expected air raid did not take place last night and nearly all of us had a very comfortable night. Late last night I received a message from Colonel Ferguson that the Infantry would not report for work today and I sent a runner about midnight to Major Lyerly that his details would not be needed.

We are greatly handicapped in our work by lack of transportation, and also of supplies. We have British equipment, transportation and supplies, and they are not equal to what we had in the States and which we are constantly wishing for. With all the resources at our command, the supplies and equipment that I know we have in France and that our country can furnish, I can see no reason why our equipment and all the other supplies should not be just as good "here" in Flanders as in the States and as our troops have in Southern France. Just because we are with the British and under the II British Corps should not cause us to be restricted to the British limitations.

We started in on a four-week training schedule which was planned to be carried out back of our own lines in a quiet sector in Southern France. Instead we have been moved three times and are in a front sector, and have been for the past three weeks. We are doing our best and are getting some very good training, a large part of which is practical. Our men are becoming very accustomed to the sound of shells and many of them have had them explode close by. Several of our working details have had to stop work and move out on account of the shelling.

Today I have been in camp doing Regiment work a part of the time and have also been on the work with Colonel Ferguson.

Was in Watou for dinner. We had inspected our Sanitary Detachment work. Found our Engineer men on the job but no others. Arranged during the p.m. for details for Thursday.

*July 18, 1918, Thursday.* I started out on the rounds this morning on my horse, but only used him for a short time (rode about three miles). Went down to the Reserve Line of the West Poperinghe Line and while looking that over, Colonel Ferguson came by in his machine and I went with him to examine other parts of our work. The Colonel came back to dinner with me.

We had another distressing accident today. One of the drivers of our water carts was killed by being run over by his cart. The water cart had just drawn up at B. kitchen and one of the cooks was drawing water from under the cart at the rear, when he accidentally hit the faucet with . . . . .

*July 19, 1918, Friday.* We listened to several German machines last night as they passed over us and awaited anxiously the change in sound which would indicate they had passed over or had

turned to locate "us" or some one else near by. For our peace of mind and slumber they passed over. Most of our air machines are out at night over the enemy's country, keeping many people uneasy. There is very little attempt made by our aeroplanes to attack the enemy machines at night. The protection of towns, etc., is left largely to anti-aircraft guns and lights. When these are not around, you cannot help but feel that you are absolutely at the mercy of the aeroplanes. The allies' machines make a continuous purr or "whirr," while the German machine makes more of a buzz, first loud and then softer. 1111 111 11 1 1111 111 11 1 1111 111 11 1. They can readily be distinguished from each other. I gave orders yesterday to have everything in readiness to move on 15 minutes' notice. This order also keeps up today. We are expecting a German attack in the Ypres sector and if so we may have to move quickly. I sincerely hope that it will mean that we go forward and that our principal work will be the repair of roads, railroads, so as to open and maintain communication from our base to our front line troops. Men and Officers are cut down nearly to a minimum in regard to what they carry. If on a sharp advance we would leave bedding rolls and practically all our clothing except what we wear and can carry in a small pack on our backs or in saddle bags. No means of transportation this a.m. but I had sufficient map and other work to keep me busy. Spent considerable time working schedule for changing of battalions on July 24.

Colonel Ferguson sent out his machine to me for the p.m. and I took Major Cothran with me and visited our Battalion Aid Posts and Relay Post, also 2d Battalion Headquarters. There was practically no shelling of our work area today.

Later in the evening Colonel Ferguson came out to camp and we had a conference regarding tactical problems for the regiment. The Mail Orderly was very good to me today—he brought me one of Mazie's precious letters, one from father and one from mother. It made me homesick to be back home again.

One of the Allies observation balloons broke loose today. The Observer jumped and escaped by means of his parachute. Both the

allies' and the German guns were firing at it. It was drifting generally toward the German line. We were firing at it to destroy it so that it could not come down in German territory, and the Germans were firing at it to keep it from coming down in our territory and we get the benefit of any information that there might be in basket. It was finally set on fire by one of our own planes.

*July 20, 1918, Saturday.* Another air raid last night. Fortunately no bombs hit our camp. Three bombs were dropped about 400 yards from us, on a British camp. One officer was killed, four men wounded and several horses killed. The raid occurred just after I had turned in. Perrin was outside and he said he could not see the aeroplane but could hear the bomb singing in the air as it dropped. He also dropped flat on the ground as he could not tell where it was going to fall.

General Godby called by for me this morning at 9:30 and we inspected together the work that is being done by the 105th Engineers and under their supervision. We drove in his car to the southern boundary of our sector and walked back over the Support Line, which is being constructed under the supervision of Captain Seelye and non coms by the 118th Infantry. They are completing the trench and getting it ready to be occupied. We followed this trench to the Proven-Poperinghe Road. Then examined a machine gun emplacement and an observation post we are building in Hooge Cabinet. This was proceeding very well as far as the construction work is concerned, but we are badly handicapped for crushed stone for the concrete. We are now using old bricks which we break to right size. Many of the brick, however, are soft and do not make good material. Although we are thus handicapped our men are doing good work and are very much interested in it. After inspecting West Poperinghe line we drove through Poperinghe to the East Poperinghe line, where we inspected the observation posts, machine gun emplacements, shelters, etc., that are being constructed by Royal Engineers and by our Engineers. A few shells were being fired into the area but not enough to become a menace. The shells that reach the ground before exploding are not as bad as those with time fuse that explode at an altitude and scatter schrapnel. In the latter case the steel helmet comes in very conveniently. In the former case if the shell hits within a couple of hundred yards, you drop to the ground and try to get into a depression in the ground



or into a trench, which will protect one from the schrapnel which scatters laterally from the bursting shells. The big high-explosive shells will scatter schrapnel for nearly 450 yards. We saw a good many big and little shell holes, but fortunately we were not bothered seriously by shell fire. Got back to camp about 1:45 p.m., but in time for dinner. Spent most of the p.m. at camp working on records, studying Emergency Order for occupying the East Poperinghe Trench System. While it is supposed to be our training period, it is in fact a real order to occupy the trenches with a possibility that they will be attacked and our troops must hold them. They are also shell fire from the German batteries. Our engineer camps are well to the front now and in some of them the men are living in dugouts.

This morning while on the inspection trip we met Major General Lewis, the new commanding officer of the 30th Division.

*July 21, 1918, Sunday.* Today is the anniversary of the Independence of Belgium, and celebrations are being held in all the churches of Belgium. I was invited to attend the services at Proven, to represent the American forces of this particular Proven area. General Girdwood represented the British. We each had several Staff and Field Officers with us. I was accompanied by Major Lyerly, Major Campbell, Captain Boesch and Captain Seelye. The ceremony followed a regular morning service, and nearly all stayed for the "Independence Celebration." The church was crowded and an opening had to be made down the main aisle for the visitors to march through. General Girdwood led and I followed him, then came the Belgian Commandant attached to the British Forces. There were about thirty American, British and Belgian officers present. The ceremony opened by two priests who were gorgeously robed, and accompanied by three pages dressed in red gowns and white surplices. The ceremony only lasted 11 minutes and consisted of chanting by the Priest with responsives by the choir, the organ playing all the time. Whether the Priest and choir chanted in Latin, French or Flemish, I am not sure, and I did not understand a single word. It was very impressive, however. One thing surprised me, and that was that they did not play or sing their National Anthem.

Sunday noon the Colonel called by for me to talk over and discuss the occupation of the West and East Poperinghe lines by the

30th Division in case the Germans made an attack on the Ypres sector. We were working out the position that each unit would occupy and the necessary march orders to get the units to their positions. It is expected that an attack will be launched tonight, and if so we will put up a counter barrage and our troops will move into their positions. We mapped out positions and then visited our various camps and notified the commander of what disposition they were to make of their troops. This kept me busy until nearly dusk. We went back to Watou, made our final decision and then I returned to my camp, reaching here about 10:15 p.m. I then had to confer with the Adjutant, Major Cothran and Captain Brooks in regard to what they would have to do. I had not any supper and by the time we were through the conference I wanted to go to bed, and did so forgetting all about supper. I was expecting to be awakened about midnight by the expected bombardment. I slept right through the night. No bombardment or shelling with gas shells. I had given orders to the Officer of the Day to caution his sentries to be particularly on the lookout for gas shells and to be sure and wake up everybody in camp if a gas attack was started.

*July 22, 1918, Monday.* In preparation for a possible attack and our occupation of the East Poperinghe Line, Colonel Ferguson and I made another inspection on the firing line of this system. We went through Poperinghe and took the Poperinghe-Reninghelat road. We had to take the long way through the town on account of the one way traffic regulation (not that there is now any traffic to amount to anything, but to prevent any chance of blocking a street and to insure that they will be open in case of need.) Soon after we left the city several shells fell within it. There was some doubt at first as to whether or not I had taken the party over the right road, as the road led direct to the front line trench and the German line and was subject to a good . . . of shelling. I was anxious myself that we should be on the right road (and we were). As we passed the support line of the East Poperinghe system I asked the Colonel if he wished to stop, and he said no, go on to the firing line or to the outpost line of their system. We went on for another  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile or more, when I knew we were beyond the line. I was watching the side of the road toward the Germans. The road had been screened to prevent the Germans from seeing what passed on

it, and I was trying to look through this screen to see the trench, which as it turned out afterwards had not yet been built on that side of the road. We went as far as the cross road leading over to Buzzboom. There was a railroad track crossing near by, and I knew we should not cross that. There was a British non. com. with some men working on some wiring to the right of the road. I asked him the map reference and he told me a reference that I knew was not right (which if it had been would have had us nearly a mile further toward the German line). He said we were at 28 N.W./G24c.5.5. while I made us at G21 a.6.3. I was right. We turned around and went back to G15 c.0.2, where the trench we wished to examine was located. We passed one shell hole in the road that had been made the night before. The German artillery have nearly all these roads "registered" and can put shells on or near them any time they wish. For this reason, when you are riding on these roads, you are apt to *think once in a while* that a shell may be on its way for the particular spot on the road that you are approaching. Then comes a comforting thought: "The shell and you must reach the *same spot* on the road at the *same* time or the shell cannot get you." Of course it does happen that shells and men meet each other on the road, but there are very many that miss each other. It creates a somewhat nervous atmosphere and condition, but this is gradually lessening and we do not now think very much about it, either officers or men.

We sent the automobile around via Poperinghe to Captain Myers camp, and began our inspection of Firing Trench of the East Poperinghe line where we join the 27th Division to Captain Myers camp which is near the northern boundary of our sector where we join a Belgian Division. The 119th and 120th Infantry are occupying the southern section of our sector, and the 117th and 118th Infantry the northern section. Each of these Regiments also have one battalion in the front line facing the Germans, and we (Engineers) have seven platoons in the front line and five working in the east Poperinghe Line. Six are working in the West Poperinghe line and six are at our Central Camp near Proven. The East Poperinghe firing line is in very good condition but has practically no shelter for the men. They are now beginning to build splinter proofs in the Parados. The bomb proofs are in the Support Line 100 to 300 yards in rear of the main firing line. Many of the infantry had con-



structed improvised shelters, which were placed in the most conspicuous places and offered little or no protection from shrapnel. One particular case was a shelter built facing the enemy so that its opening looking directly toward Mount Kemmel. All the protection against shrapnel was a single bag of dirt or thin sheet of corrugated iron.

At G4 b 7.4 where Lieutenant R. M. Williams is working his platoon on shelters, machine gun emplacements, there has been considerable shelling, especially early Saturday morning. The wire entanglement through which they pass to and from work had three large shells go through it (probably 12-inch shells). They made holes in the ground 15 to 20 feet across and 10 to 15 feet deep. During the shelling a British soldier who was in charge of a stable of five horses, and which was within the area being shelled, tried to get the horses out. He entered the stable and was leading out the horses when a shell struck the stable and killed the soldier and all the horses. The lead chain was clasped so tightly by the dead soldier that his fingers had to be pried loose before it could be removed.

Lieutenant William's platoon was delayed about an hour before they could enter the area. Just as they were ready to start through the wire entanglement, a dead shell dropped within 15 feet of them. They had the scare but no casualties.

Master Engineer Ledbetter's section working on the observation post at G15 a.5.9 had some narrow escapes. A shell exploded near them and dropped shrapnel on the board where they had been mixing concrete just a minute before. They had all ducked when the shell whistled. One of our men was scratched slightly on the hand with a bit of shrapnel. No other casualties.

We reached Captain Myer's camp at Guant (Gwent) Farm G28 a.1.9, about 1:15 p.m. in time for dinner, which we both enjoyed very much. We found the auto there awaiting us. Right after dinner we were swapping experiences and Lieutenant R. M. Williams seemed to have had the most narrow escapes. This same morning he had gone down toward the support line of the East Poperinghe Line to see where the 117th and 118th Infantry were working. He had just left (about 200 yards from shelter 23) Lieutenant Dunbar (Supply Officer) of the 117th Infantry, with whom he had been talking, when he heard a shell singing in the air. He dropped down flat in the trench and after the shell had hit and



exploded, he found that it had killed Lieutenant Dunbar and wounded several privates of the 117th.

There are several Observation Balloons located around the camp at Guant Farm and frequently they are shelled by the Germans. They fire time fuse shells which explode as they reach the vicinity of the balloon and scatter shrapnel in all directions. They occasionally hit the balloon but much oftener do not. All this shrapnel, however, has to fall to the ground, and there are more casualties amongst the soldiers on the ground than to the men in the balloons. During and right after dinner the Germans were shelling two balloons near the camp. We could hear the shell coming and hear it explode. We could also see the smoke indicating the place where the shell exploded. The shells seemed to be exploding at such a distance that the shrapnel would not fall near us. Colonel Ferguson, Captain Myers, Lieutenants R. M. Williams, D. M. Williams, McLeod and Sill and myself were all standing outside the mess room, when a shell exploded in the air near one of the balloons, but no shrapnel fell near us. All the others but Lieutenants D. M. Williams and McLeod and myself moved down to the end of Captain Myer's hut. We three were standing near the entrance to the mess hall, Lieutenant D. M. Williams and myself leaning against the sandbag barricade around Captain Myer's hut. Another shell was heard coming and it exploded near one of the balloons. Although not thinking seriously that any shrapnel would fall near us, I told the Lieutenant I was going to step inside the mess hall for protection. What made me do it was a sentence in father's letter that I had received the day before, in which he said "to take advantage of all protection." As the shell exploded that sentence flashed through my mind, and I went into the mess hall. Lieutenant Williams moved up to where I had been, which was nearer the door, and leaned against the barricade in nearly the identical spot I had just left. In a second I started to come out of the mess hall when Lieutenant McLeod said, "Wait a few seconds more, for it has hardly been time for the shrapnel to reach the ground." I stopped and got my steel helmet and just then a piece of shrapnel struck Lieutenant D. M. Williams on the head. It knocked him down, but he was up again in a second. We thought at first it was only a flesh wound but later developments showed the piece of shrapnel buried in the bone of the skull. If I had stayed at my original place when I heard the shell I would very

probably have been the one to be hit. One of the Sanitary Detachment men dressed his wound, and the Colonel and I brought him to camp. Major Campbell then examined the wound and found the piece of steel in the bone. He was then sent to the Field Hospital 132, and from there to an operating hospital "somewhere in France."

The Colonel and I then rode over to Headquarters 2d Battalion for a conference with Major Lyerly. On return to camp I had to hustle to get ready for a dinner engagement with General Girdwood of the British Army. The dinner was at eight o'clock and I went with Major Reynolds (Canadian) who is the Major Commandant of this area. It was a very enjoyable dinner, both socially and appetizingly. It is the best meal I have had in a long, long time (since leaving the steamer). General A. C. Girdwood is commander of the 96th British Infantry Brigade No. Q. 166. He is a north of Ireland Irishman and very pleasant and sociable. He is in a reserve Division and while in the Proven Area he is planning amusements for the soldiers, children of the villages and towns and others. He is a good man and I believe a good soldier. We left the General's about 10 p.m. It was raining a little, but no one objected as the rain usually means a quiet night and no bombing by aeroplanes.

*July 23, Tuesday.* A very quiet night and one we all enjoyed. It is still raining today and I have spent most of the day in the office studying maps, trenches, orders, and writing my attack order which will go into effect tomorrow. The two battalions change places and that means not only getting out orders for the change, but also a new attack order adapted to the various units in their new positions. These were prepared and ready for the Colonel's approval in the p.m. He was at camp for dinner but left immediately afterwards for Headquarters 2d Battalion. While here he thought that several of our orders had not been carried out and that we had made some bad breaks in our work by not keeping in close enough touch, by runner, with our officers. I heard from him later that we were O.K. and that the trouble was not with our men but the Infantry officers who had not done their part.

The Colonel did not stop by on his return but sent the car in for me about six and wanted me to come into Watou, which I did. This obliged me to cut a dinner engagement with Major Reynolds, but I had told him the night before that my acceptance depended upon what duties I might be called upon to perform. He said that

was taken for granted and recognized. We can never tell what orders we may receive or where we may be sent.

I reach Watou about eight and stayed with Colonel Ferguson until nearly ten, when I returned to camp. He approved the orders I had prepared. We took a walk around Watou and inspected the site for Headquarters Company of the Regiment when we move there, which we will probably do if the attack order becomes effective.

*July 24, Wednesday.* Last night was a beautiful moonlight night, a few clouds but clear. Just the kind that the aeroplanes want in making their raids. We knew the German planes would be over and we were *not* (agreeably) disappointed. They come over and it seemed as though one of them just persisted in circling our camp looking for a good place upon which to drop a bomb. Each one of us feels that our hut or tent is the particular one that the aeroplane is hunting for, and as one lies there, listening to the enemy plane, he begins to swell up and grow in size until he knows that it is impossible for the observer to miss seeing him or the bomb to miss hitting him. That was the way I felt last night. I just knew that particular machine was flying continuously back and forth over my hut looking for a good place to drop a bomb. Nothing happened and I got a pretty good night's sleep. I can sleep through the artillery fire even if the guns are somewhat close by.

Today has been the day of evacuation of the Battalion and the taking over and occupation of the other's territory. Nearly everything went smoothly in this change, and the transfer of work was accomplished without any serious interruption of the work. Before night all the changes had been made and reports sent in of safe arrival of all troops at their new camps.

In the p.m. Captain Boesch and I made a reconnaissance of the location one of our battalions is to occupy in case of attack. It is on the southwest edge of one of the National Forests known as "Teak Wood." We were working out routes for getting the Battalion to its destination and how to distribute them so as to get protection from artillery fire. The forest has several railroads through it cutting it into rectangles. We selected a site for Battalion Headquarters near the southwest edge of the wood and plan to have the men scattered partly in the wood and partly in the grain field adjoining, where they can get into and live in ditches in case of heavy shell fire. The Battalion Commander will have a small dugout



constructed that will be shrapnel proof. He will have a runner who will keep him in touch with Division Headquarters, Engineer Regiment Headquarters, and Brigade Headquarters. If it was fall or winter we would have to change these plans somewhat because the ditches would be filled with water. We came back through the wood and through several farms, all these latter being intensely cultivated. The grain is all rapidly ripening and it makes the field look luxuriant. All the reaping in this section is done by hand. I have not seen a single mowing machine, reaper or planter here.

Tonight is clearer and brighter than last night. A full moon and not a cloud in sight. I shall sleep on the floor close up to my sand bag protection.

The Adjutant and the band have gone to a dinner at the Commander Royal Engineers of the 49th British Division.

*July 25, Thursday.* Last night the aeroplanes were again buzzing around disturbing our sleep. They dropped several bombs but none near us. There are now several machine guns near us that open on the aeroplanes when they come too near this section, and help to protect us. The aeroplanes also carry machine guns and turn them on us.

Last night about taps a supposed Belgian soldier was found in the camp. He talked good English and was inquiring his way to the 27th American Division. It was a little bit suspicious, his being around for that purpose, and as it was 10 o'clock I ordered his arrest. Major Lyerly then communicated with the Area Commandant, and he sent over two officers to examine the man. The stories were conflicting and it now appears that he is either a deserter from the Belgian army or a spy. The officers took him away under arrest. Have not heard what he turned out to be.

This p.m. Major Lyerly and I made a reconnaissance of the Teak Wood, as he will be in command of the Battalion that goes there, if the attack takes place this week.

This morning there was practice by aeroplanes of dropping small arms ammunition into trenches for the men when it cannot be brought up any other way. The practice took place on the old aeroplane field just north of us. A package of ammunition was attached to a small parachute and dropped from the aeroplane at the proper time. There were four machines taking part in this practice.



Another moonlight night, not quite so clear as last night but good enough to make bombing the order of the evening. It has been raining some nearly every day and one of the officers wanted to know, "if it always rains here in the day time and there are always moonlight nights." It seems to be that way.

One of our men on the East Poperinghe Line looking up at a German plane flying rather low called out: "Hey you big bird, don't you lay one of those hard eggs and drop it on me."

The Observation Balloons have been the scenes of many exciting times recently, which have been observed by our men. A German plane darted out of a cloud one morning and dove down and attacked one of the Observation balloons between Poperinghe and Vlameringhe. The plane seemed to just touch the balloon. The plane immediately flew upward and disappeared in the cloud. In a second the balloon was in flames. The observer escaped by means of a parachute.

A day or two ago during a very severe thunder shower one of the balloons was struck by lightning. The balloon was destroyed but the observer escaped by means of his parachute. These balloons are at altitudes varying from 2,000 feet to 6,000 feet and are attached by cable to trucks which run up and down the roads moving the Balloon to a new position if the German shells begin to come too close to it. Another balloon was hit and the observer jumped but his parachute failed to open. He landed in the top of one of the heavily foliated trees and escaped with only a few bruises.

The French vouch for an aeroplane story that is still more remarkable. A German plane was disabled and fell. The aviator climbed outside on to the wings of his machine and when the machine struck the ground he was thrown from the wings but was not seriously hurt. He was taken prisoner by the French.

*July 26, 1918, Friday.* The aeroplanes were out last night again in full force, no bombing right near us. Two German planes were brought down about two or three miles from us by machine guns. Today has been a rainy day and I have spent nearly all the time in the office.

Today General Girdwood sent out an invitation to the American troops to a picture show at Proven, 7-9 p.m. I presume many of our boys will go, as it is the first time in two months they have had an opportunity of seeing moving pictures.

(Enclosure in diary)

96th Infantry Brigade No. Q. 166.

O. C., 105th U. S. Engineers.

O. C., 117th U. S. Supply Column.

O. C., 110th U. S. Supply Column.

15th Lincs. Fusrs.

16th Lincs. Fusrs.

For information.

2nd Manchester Regt.

96th T. M. Battery

There will be a special show for American Troops only at the Cinema, near Aerodrome PROVEN from 7 to 9 p.m. on the 26th instant.

I should be glad if you could bring this to the notice of the troops under your command.

Seating accommodation—about 400.

A. C. GIRDWOOD,

*Brigadier-General,*

*Commanding 96th Infantry Brigade.*

Headquarters,

25th July, 1918.

It is still raining tonight and we expect a quiet night. An article appeared in the *Saturday Evening Post* of June 22, 1918, entitled: The Horrors of Moonlight, by George Pattullo. I have just read it and it is true to life. A moonlight night + an enemy aeroplane = mental torture. But like all things the sharp edge and penetrating point wear off to some extent. It is a hard life to become accustomed to. One thing riles me a good deal and that is our means of transportation. We are in British sector and have to (for some reason higher up) conform to the British organization and equipment. We are entitled under our own organization to 4 autos, 16 mortorcycles (12 with side cars) and 94 riding horses, to say nothing of our 16 motor trucks. Horse and wagon equipment about the same. We have the wagon equipment (almost), are allowed no autos or motor cycles, but 12 bicycles of which we have two; 33 riding horses of which we have 9 so-called saddle horses (they are not good riding horses). The result is we are terribly handicapped in the inspection of our work. If the British had turned over to us good saddle horses instead of keeping all the good ones and turning over the "played out" ones and the very poor ones to us, in other words shared equally with us, I would not get riled over the situation, for I am ready to play the game to the limit and to take what is legitimately

coming to me. I do not feel that we should be handicapped in our work just because we are attached to a British sector. We should have as good as the British at least. Yet while we are restricted to riding horses and they are so poor none of us like to ride them, the orderlies and non. coms. of the British are riding much better horses than we have. You can draw your own conclusion as to what the officers are riding. I cannot help but feel that there are plenty of automobiles in France to enable us to have what we are entitled to. The British wanted us to come to this sector. In fact they needed us badly. They are anxious to turn this sector over to the U. S. Army and I am afraid our general will let it be forced upon us. There seems to be considerable uncertainty as to why the British lost Mount Kemmel and the high ground in front of Ypres, which together commanded the area way to the west of Poperinghe. Some of the British lay it to the withdrawal of a Portugese Division, others say they do not know, that they were ordered to retreat but do not know who gave the order. Some officers have expressed themselves as believing that Mount Kemmel could have been held. It has surely toughened the job of holding the Ypres sector, which I believe should have been relinquished before the fall of Mount Kemmel and the fortified line made on the high ground extending from Kemmel, Mont de Cats and Cassel, St. Omer. If necessary, flood the area from near Ypres back toward Calais. It would have saved a lot of men, guns and ammuniton, and given the British a most commanding position. They would have had the high ground to hold and the Germans the low wet ground. We are now holding a good deal of the low ground. The British officers at Dover, Calais, and at several other places we have been have talked about being "fed up" on the war and ready for the Americans to take it over. The talk sometimes was extremely depressing and showed up the British officers in a very poor light. The Canadians and Australians that we have met are entirely different as are also the men we have met up here at the front. As a whole the men we have come in close contact with have been fine fellows.

The attached note from a British Sergeant is indicative of the feeling about the Americans coming over, and I believe our coming has heartened the British a great deal. This Ypres sector which they want to palm off on us and in which our men are now working is

known as the "Devils Half Acre." It is a mean place to live in, work in, or fight in, especially in *winter*.

*July 27, 1918, Saturday.* Last night was quiet, thanks to the rain and cloudy sky. It has rained more or less all day today, and again I have been in doors most of the time. I am studying the ground between Proven and Ypres and working out the problems of what we will do in case the Germans break through and the British are driven back. I would much prefer to work on the problem of what we would do if the British advance. I am working also along that line. It seems to me that the plans of the British have been too much concerned with the defensive and making preparations for a retreat, instead of making preparations for an advance. It may be that if I had been at this business for four years I would be willing to sit tight in my defenses but I do not believe I would.

(Enclosure in diary.)

#### GERMANY'S LOST CAUSE.

##### Officer Prisoners' Admission.

In order to form an idea of the effort made by the Germans since March 21 to obtain a decision, says Havas, it may be recalled that during 1917 in all 370 engagements were fought in the Franco-British operations on the Aisne, the Chemin des Dames, Flanders and the Cambrai front. This year in the period of only four months since March 21 no fewer than 430 engagements have been fought, and about 66 of these during the present battle.

The Germans have been loud in their scorn of what they termed "American bluff" but the German High Command itself, although it sought to deceive the people, has had no illusions since June about the American danger. An important attack in the Ourcq region should have been carried out in June, but the Germans' plans were changed, because some preceding engagements with American troops had proved their extremely hard fighting value and their extraordinary tenacity.

Some German officer prisoners, whose troops have fought Americans, freely admitted that "if all the American Army had the same dash, Germany's cause was lost."

Daily Mail, July 26/18.

The Germans are learning that the Americans can and will fight. The next drive will make them realize it more than ever.

*July 28, 1918, Sunday.* Another quiet night as far as aeroplanes are concerned, thanks to the continuous cloudy weather. The German's long distance guns decided to tune up and threw three or four shells, probably from H. V. guns, in this direction. They



landed near Watou, in the vicinity of the camp of one of our machine guns. No casualties.

This morning I went to church with Captain Winthrop at Proven. Service conducted in Latin and Flemish. While I could not understand the words I could get the spirit of the meeting and enter into its worship. I enjoyed the service (Catholic). Personally I believe it would be much better if the Priest would talk in such a manner that the people could really understand what he said. The only time during the service that it seemed to me the people understood what he said was when he entered the pulpit and began to preach or talk to the people. There were individual chairs in the church, which had to be turned around when the people sat down, returned when they wanted to kneel again, and turned another time in the direction of the pulpit from which the Priest spoke. It was all done without very much noise and no commotion. During the "sermon" an old lady took up a collection for some purpose, I do not know what. It seemed to be something regular for she gave back change in nearly every case. The required amount was of some copper coin value. I gave a two franc piece and motioned no change. Later one of the men took up a collection which was apparently the regular congregational collection. They passed me by on this one.

Spent the balance of the morning and part of the afternoon in the office. Colonel Ferguson came out in the P.M. and went over some regimental business he wanted me to get up for him. Later we went into Watou together. I got his reports in Engineer Regimental Training to bring back with me.

I left Watou about 5 p.m. and walked back to camp. The Colonel wanted to send me back in his car but I knew he was going to leave for Corps Headquarters tonight, and was afraid the car might be late getting back. I enjoyed the walk and the exercise does me good. I would get hot, however, when an officer of lower rank than a major, or an orderly, passed me riding a good horse. I am still sore on account of the way we have been treated in regard to transportation. I can walk and do not mind walking and do walk a good deal; but it is bad from a military standpoint for a field officer to be *obliged to walk*, especially when your own men see British officers of all ranks, orderlies and non. coms., riding good horses. Also, if I do ride we do not have horses enough so that my orderly can ride. I borrow the horse assigned to the Adjutant if I take my orderly.

Tonight the Chaplain had a good service out in the field. The band helped with the music. A large percentage of the men in camp attended. Our chaplain, Lieutenant McElroy, is an energetic young man and is giving himself to the men. He follows the men up into the front line, carrying them tobacco, candy and other things. Goes through the same hardships and dangers that they do. Is ready to work early and late for their comfort.

*July 29, 1918, Monday.* Another fortunate night. Although not raining it was hazy and the aeroplanes were not busy last night around here. We all are thankful for these quiet nights. Up at our front at Ypres it gets noisy at night and there are always some casualties. This shelling we can hear but we can now sleep through it.

The strain sometimes becomes rather severe. Two of our men have given way to it and are now in the hospital, Private Moore of B. Company and Private ——— of E. Company. Private Moore was in this camp and it was due to the aeroplane attacks that he became insane (I hope only temporarily). Private ——— of E. Company was with his platoon enroute to the front line, when he became rather violently insane or unbalanced.

I have been working all the morning on the tabulation of our training since we reached France and what we have accomplished. We have advanced some in our training and particularly in our experience. It has been uphill work and sometimes I have been very discouraged. There are contradictory orders, each apparently as important as the other, each of them practically impossible to carry out. One order says *no* body of troops must be sent out without a commissioned officer with them. Other orders say you must appoint one of the officers as Battalion Supply officer, another Transport officer, and they be relieved of all duties; that another officer of each Company shall be detailed to do the paper work of his Company first. When we send out all platoons in separate directions we do not have enough officers in the regiment to carry out the above orders, and yet the Colonel says "they are orders and must be carried out." I reckon they must be and I am doing my best.

In the afternoon I walked over to the Headquarters 1st Battalion for a conference with Major Cothran regarding his work. I walked instead of riding the horse allotted to me as I was in a hurry. I went the regular road going to the north of the Lovie Chateau. As

usual passed a number of British and Belgian officers and orderlies all riding good horses, and looking at me with apparent surprise that an American Officer of my rank should be walking. I smiled at them and put on a look that was to tell that "I much preferred to walk, and that I left my good horse back in the stable."

Returning from the 1st Battalion Headquarters I came to the south of the Lovie Chateau over a new route to me. I like to explore new routes and there are always scenes of country village and people. I passed the main entrance to the chateau which I had not seen before. The road leads from in front of the house to the Proven-Poperinghe road a distance of  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile. It is lined with two rows of poplar trees and ———. The outside was in Lombardy Poplars, and the inside row of ——— arching over the road. The road is perfectly straight and it is a beautiful picture looking down the road to the Chateau house in the distance. In the lower end of the driveway there are three batteries of 9-inch guns. I was very much interested to see these and the way they had been camouflaged.

The dog teams are interesting and Joe would enjoy seeing them. I have seen wagons drawn by one to five dogs. One dog and a man will often pull the little wagon. Sometimes there are three dogs in front and one under the wagon, all harnessed so that each has to pull his share of the load.

At one farm house I saw a big broad wheel right up against the side of the house. I asked what it was. It was connected by a wood shaft with the churn. A dog is put in the wheel and as he starts to walk or run the wheel turns and the power is used to churn the butter.

A good story was brought in last night about one of the Infantry sentries up in the front line. Captain Sullivan of Company E. and one of the Royal Engineer Captains were going from their camp near Ypres up to where some of our men were working on the front line. They came toward a sentry at the junction of an approach trench with the support trench. This was about 11 p.m. The sentry called "halt" and challenged them. The Royal Engineer Captain called out "Royal Engineer" and started to go on, but the sentry knew nothing of Royal Engineers and emphatically called

"Halt" again. The Captains halted and tried to explain what the Royal Engineers were and what "R.E." meant, but it did not make much impression on the sentry. Finally he asked them "What is the Pass Word?" The Captain said "Blythe." The sentry replied: "Well I will be damned; that is not what they told me. They told me the word was 'Hot.'" He then let them go on.

*July 30, Tuesday.* Spent a busy but quiet day in camp. I inspected quarters and stables. Prepared march orders, etc., for the evacuation of the several platoons on August 1.

Received word that 124 new men were enroute to fill up the regiment. I am now somewhat anxious to know what kind of men they will be. We had some fresh string beans today for dinner which tasted fine. Also lettuce.

I have been talking with some of my officers who have been working up at the front in regard to what the British are doing. The opinion seems to be that the 33rd British Division in the Southern part of our sector is doing splendid work and trying to get their line in first class condition, while the 49th British Division is doing but very little actual work. The Commanding Officer of the 49th likes to have raids made and consequently raids are made nearly every night at the expense of the work.

The British do not seem to make the same preparation for defensive or offensive that the French do, and nothing like what the Germans do. The British do not seem to be at all particular about getting things completed, consequently both in defensive and offensive warfare they are not ready with certain structures that should have been completed and which are necessary to the fullest success of either form of warfare.

In the present retreat or "strategic retirement" of the Germans they are playing the game much better than the British did in their retreat at Cambrai. They are taking heavier toll from the Allies than the British did from the Germans. A good rear guard with plenty of machine guns can make the advancing troops pay very heavily for every yard of territory that they gain.



(Enclosure in diary.)

MERRIS CAPTURED BY AUSTRALIANS.  
GERMANS SURROUNDED.

British Official.

Tuesday morning.

We captured a few prisoners last night in successful raid near Ayette (south of Arras). Shortly after midnight Australian patrols entered the enemy's positions about Merris (near Bailleul). Forty prisoners have been taken by our troops in the locality.

Hostile artillery has been active with gas-shell northwest of Albert, and has also shown activity at a number of points between La Basse Canal and Ypres.

Evening—During the latter part of the night the patrols of the first Australian Division, who had entered the German positions about Merris, successfully established themselves east of the village, which was surrounded and captured. One hundred and sixty-nine prisoners and a number of trench mortars and machine guns were taken by us. Our own casualties were remarkably light. A few additional prisoners were captured by our patrols during the day in the Nieppe Forest sector (southwest of Merris.)

Hostile artillery has shown great activity today against our new positions at Merris.

Daily Mail, July 31, 1918.

We need more artillery at the front and plenty of ammunition so that we can have and maintain a superiority of fire. If we could get sufficient of our guns in position and then supply them with sufficient ammunition so that a continuous fire could be maintained on the German line, particularly to the rear of the very front lines, I believe we could steadily advance without such serious losses as we are having at the present time. Then again we need more and heavier aeroplanes. We should have a continuous stream of aeroplanes passing over the German lines and on into Germany, not only bombing the huts, powder factories, manufacturing plants, depots, etc., but the cities, particularly Berlin. This would have more effect in breaking down the German morale than anything else, and I believe would lead to peace very shortly.

Tuesday p.m. the Colonel and I went out to the target range to see our men B. and B. target practice.

(To be Continued.)

# THE NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL REVIEW

---

---

VOLUME I

JULY, 1924

NUMBER 3

---

---

## CONTENTS

THE AYCOCK MEMORIAL.....	239
CHARLES BRANTLEY AYCOCK—AN APPRECIATION.....	243
DR. EDWIN ANDERSON ALDERMAN	
CHARLES BRANTLEY AYCOCK—HISTORICAL ADDRESS.....	251
THE HON. JOSEPHUS DANIELS	
TRACES OF THE INDIAN IN PIEDMONT NORTH CAROLINA....	277
REV. DOUGLAS L. RIGHTS	
BOOK REVIEWS .....	289
CRAIG's <i>Memoirs and Speeches</i> —By J. Y. JOYNER; DAVENPORT AND COOKE <i>Oil Trusts and Anglo American Relations</i> —By C. P. HIGBY; FRENCH's <i>The Pioneer West</i> —By A. R. NEWSOME; GOSNELL's <i>Boss Platt and His New York Machine</i> ; MCELROY's <i>Grover Cleveland</i> —By B. B. KENDRICK; PUTNAM's <i>Memories etc.</i> ; REDFIELD's <i>With Congress and Cabinet</i> —By J. G. DER. HAMILTON; THOMAS's <i>One Hundred Years of the Monroe Doctrine</i> —By J. M. CALLAHAN; BARNES's <i>Sociology and Political Theory</i> ; TANNENBAUM's <i>Darker Phases of the South</i> —By A. M. ARNETT; ADAMS's <i>Shakespeare</i> —By T. P. HARRISON; BRIEFER MENTION—By D. L. CORBITT.	
RECENT PUBLICATIONS ON NORTH CAROLINA.....	326
HISTORICAL NEWS .....	328
CORRESPONDENCE ON ANDREWS' RICHARD DOBBS SPEIGHT	340
WAR DIARY OF COLONEL PRATT.....	344

---

---

Issued quarterly by the North Carolina Historical Commission, Raleigh, N. C.  
 Subscription, \$2.00 a year, single numbers, 50 cents, special rate to members of the State Literary and Historical Association, \$1.00 a year. Entry as second class mail matter at the Post Office at Raleigh, N. C., pending.

# THE NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL REVIEW

---

*Published by The North Carolina Historical Commission, Raleigh, N. C.  
R. B. House, Managing Editor*

---

## THE NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL COMMISSION

THOMAS M. PITTMAN, *Chairman*

M. C. S. NOBLE

HERIOT CLARKSON

FRANK WOOD

W. N. EVERETT

D. H. HILL, *Secretary*

R. B. HOUSE, *Archivist*

---

*This review was established in January, 1924, as a medium of publication and discussion of history in North Carolina. It is issued to other institutions by exchange, but to the general public by subscription only. The regular price is \$2.00 a year. To members of the State Literary and Historical Association there is a special price of \$1.00 a year.*

---

## CONTENTS OF THE LAST TWO NUMBERS

### JANUARY, 1924

WALTER HINES PAGE—MEMORIAL ADDRESS.....*Albert Shaw*  
THE WAR SAVINGS CAMPAIGN IN 1918.....*Gilbert T. Stephenson*  
DIARY OF COLONEL JOSEPH HYDE PRATT  
HISTORICAL NEWS  
BOOK REVIEW  
RECENT PUBLICATIONS ON NORTH CAROLINA

### APRIL, 1924

RICHARD DOBBS SPAIGHT.....*Alexander B. Andrews*  
THE LURE OF HISTORICAL RESEARCH.....*Adelade L. Fries*  
THE NORTH CAROLINA FUEL ADMINISTRATION.....*[Documents]*  
BOOK REVIEWS  
RECENT PUBLICATIONS ON NORTH CAROLINA  
HISTORICAL NEWS  
WAR DIARY OF COLONEL JOSEPH HYDE PRATT





THE AYCOCK MEMORIAL  
*Executed by Gutzon Borglum*





QUOTATIONS FROM AYCOCK APPEARING ON MONUMENT

I

*In Semicircular Portion Back of Monument:—*

CHARLES BRANTLEY AYCOCK  
1859-1912

II

*East Inscription, Front of Monument, Under Tablet Representing Education:—*

"The equal right of every child born on earth to have the opportunity to burgeon out all there is within him."

III

*West Inscription, Front of Monument, Under Tablet Representing North Carolina:—*

"I would have all our people believe in their power to accomplish as much as can be done anywhere on earth by any people."

IV

*West Inscription Back of Monument:—*

AN IDEAL FOR NORTH CAROLINA

"I would have all our people to believe in the possibilities of North Carolina: in the strength of her men, the purity of her women, and their power to accomplish as much as can be done anywhere on earth by any people.

"I would have them to become dissatisfied with small things; to be anxious for higher and better things; to yearn after real greatness; to seek after knowledge; to do the right thing in order that they may be what they ought.

"I would have the strong to bear the burdens of the weak and to lift up the weak and make them strong, teaching men everywhere that real strength consists not in serving ourselves, but in doing for others."

V

*East Inscription Back of Monument:—*

IDEALS OF PUBLIC SERVICE

"Equal! That is the word! On that word I plant myself and my party—the equal right of every child born on earth to have the opportunity to burgeon out all there is within him." . . .

"No man is so high that the law shall not be enforced against him, and no man is so low that it shall not reach down to him to lift him up if may be and set him on his feet again and bid him godspeed to better things."

"There is but one way to serve the people well, and that is to do the right thing, trusting them as they may ever be trusted, to approve the things which count for the betterment of the State."

QUOTATIONS FROM AYCOCK APPEARING ON MONUMENT

I

In Semicircular Portion Back of Monument:—

CHARLES BRANTLEY AYCOCK  
1850-1912

II

East Inscription, Front of Monument, Under Tablet Representing

Education:—

"The equal right of every child born on earth to have the opportunity to burgeon out all there is within him."

III

West Inscription, Front of Monument, Under Tablet Representing

North Carolina:—

"I would have all our people believe in their power to accomplish as much as can be done anywhere on earth by any people."

IV

West Inscription Back of Monument:—

AN IDEAL FOR NORTH CAROLINA

"I would have all our people to believe in the possibilities of North Carolina: in the strength of her men, the purity of her women, and their power to accomplish as much as can be done anywhere on earth by any people."

"I would have them to become dissatisfied with small things; to be anxious for higher and better things; to yearn after real greatness; to seek after knowledge; to do the right thing in order that they may be what they ought."

"I would have the strong to bear the burdens of the weak and to lift up the weak and make them strong, teaching men everywhere that real strength consists not in serving ourselves, but in doing for others."

V

East Inscription Back of Monument:—

IDEALS OF PUBLIC SERVICE

"Equal! That is the word! On that word I plant myself and my party—the equal right of every child born on earth to have the opportunity to burgeon out all there is within him."

"No man is so high that the law shall not be enforced against him, and no man is so low that it shall not reach down to him to lift him up if may be and set him on his feet again and bid him Godspeed to better things."

"There is but one way to serve the people well, and that is to do the right thing, trusting them as they may ever be trusted, to approve the things which count for the betterment of the State."







AYCOCK IN HIS LATER YEARS  
This is the last photograph taken of him.

*Sincerely yours,  
C. B. Aycock.*

# THE NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL REVIEW

---

VOLUME 1

JULY, 1924

NUMBER 3

---

## THE AYCOCK MEMORIAL

*Unveiling of monument erected in Capitol Square, Raleigh, to CHARLES BRANTLEY AYCOCK, born November 1, 1859, Governor of North Carolina 1901-1905, died April 4, 1912. Addresses of Presentation in City Auditorium, Unveiling and Acceptance on Capitol Square, Thursday, March 13, 1924.*

---

### AYCOCK MEMORIAL COMMITTEE

GEORGE C. ROYALL, *Chairman*

B. R. LACY, *Treasurer*

NATHAN O'BERRY, *Chairman Finance Committee*

J. Y. JOYNER, *Chairman Unveiling Committee*

WM. R. ALLEN\*

D. Y. COOPER\*

ALBERT ANDERSON

JOSEPHUS DANIELS

T. W. BICKETT\*

E. C. DUNCAN\*

E. C. BROOKS

P. M. PEARSALL\*

R. D. W. CONNOR

F. D. WINSTON

---

### PROGRAM OF EXERCISES

DR. EDWIN A. ALDERMAN, *PRESIDING*

---

12 M.—City Auditorium:

*Prayer*—Reverend Richard Tilman Vann, D.D., Raleigh.

*An Appreciation of Charles Aycock*—Dr. Edwin Anderson Alderman.

*Historical Address*—The Honorable Josephus Daniels.

1 P. M.—Audience follow State College Band to Capitol Square, where unveiling will occur immediately.

1:10 P. M.—*Unveiling of Monument*, under direction of Presiding Officer, Presenting it to the People of the State—Unveiling by Master Charles Brantley Aycock, Goldsboro, N. C., and Master Charles Aycock Poe, Raleigh.

1:15 P. M.—*Acceptance of Statute on Behalf of State*—His Excellency, Cameron Morrison, Governor of North Carolina.†

1:30 P. M.—*Benediction*—Elder Fredrick W. Keene, Raleigh.

---

†Represented by W. N. Everett, Secretary of State. MSS of these remarks unobtainable as we go to press—EDITOR'S NOTE.

\*Deceased.

## HISTORY OF THE AYCOCK MEMORIAL

By DR. J. Y. JOYNER

The suggestion that a suitable monument should be erected to the memory of Charles Brantley Aycock was made very soon after his sudden death in Birmingham, Ala., April 4, 1912, but the World War and its aftermath prevented the effective furthering of the idea until three or four years ago.

From the first, the Aycock Memorial Committee had three ideas in mind.

I. One was that the monument should be a free-will offering by the people he loved and served, and of the boys and girls for whom he gave the gladdest service of his heroic life, and that no contribution should be received from the public treasury. About a third of the total amount came in pennies and dimes from countless boys and girls of the public schools all over North Carolina for whom Aycock had widened the door of educational opportunity, while the remainder expresses the love of men and women, sons and daughters of North Carolina, who followed him in his great campaigns and wished to express their appreciation of his life and service.

II. The second purpose of the Committee was that the memorial should not be the mere statue of a man, a mere representation of Aycock's form and features, but that in some beautiful and enduring way it should symbolize the ideals and aspirations for which Aycock stood, and for which North Carolina stood under his leadership; that through this memorial Aycock should still live and speak his high message to all succeeding generations of North Carolinians. Through the genius of the artist as expressed in two remarkable historical panels, reinforced by some of Aycock's own eloquent words, this hope has been realized.

III. The third hope of the Committee was that the memorial should be a genuine and notable contribution to the art treasures of North Carolina and the South. To this end, the Committee secured the services of Gutzon Borglum, undoubtedly one of the world's greatest sculptors. Already distinguished for having wrought out



some of America's greatest statues, it is felt that his supreme achievement—the Stone Mountain Confederate Memorial—will rank with the Pyramids for majesty and sublimity. Avoiding a traditional smoothness and over-emphasis of detail, Borglum works in the style of his great master, Rodin, achieving effects by bold, rugged, and vigorous outlines, giving his statues an expression of life, force, and virility rather than mere passive elegance.

#### A NOTABLE OCCASION

After years of patient work and waiting, the Committee's dreams and hopes were realized even beyond their expectation in the notable success of the occasion.

The heavens smiled and the weather was perfect. The great auditorium, with a seating capacity of five thousand, was filled to overflowing, and throngs were standing crowded about the doors. In the audience were more than a thousand teachers from all parts of North Carolina, delegates to the North Carolina Education Association in session in Raleigh at that time, hundreds of students from the colleges of the city, scores of the members of Governor Aycock's family, hundreds of his old friends and neighbors from Goldsboro and Wayne County, hundreds of other citizens from many surrounding counties. On the stage sat the distinguished speakers, the members of the Aycock Memorial Committee, the Historical Commission, the sculptor, the Supreme Court, the State officers, and all living ex State officers of Aycock's administration. During the entire exercises, lasting two hours, the order was perfect and the attention of that great audience was rapt and reverent.

When the exercises in the auditorium were over, the great audience moved in orderly procession, led by the State College Band, up Fayetteville Street to Capitol Square for the final unveiling ceremonies. Thousands lined the sidewalks along the line of march and filled the Capitol Square around the monument and the streets in front of which all traffic had been stopped.

In the bright sunshine under the cloudless blue sky of the perfect spring day the vast multitude stood with uncovered heads in reverent



silence while the statue was unveiled by the two little grandsons and the preacher pronounced the benediction. None who witnessed that scene can ever forget it. It was beautiful, it was touching, it was historic. Twelve years after his death, from every walk of life multitudes of men, women and children of all ages had come—some of them from hundreds of miles away, like pilgrims to some sacred shrine to pay this tribute of honor and love to their great, unselfish leader and human-hearted friend.

Only one who, living, loved his people with a surpassing love could, dead, receive from them a spontaneous outpouring of love like this.

## CHARLES BRANTLEY AYCOCK—AN APPRECIATION

By DOCTOR EDWIN ANDERSON ALDERMAN  
*President of the University of Virginia*

The people of North Carolina have chosen to put aside their cares and businesses this day for a simple and noble process of thought—the enshrining in their hearts and memories of a man whom they grew to love; a fellow citizen who incited them to lofty action; and of a public servant who modestly, but radiantly, served the interests of his people and mankind. This out-pouring of a great people with every mournful ceremony of affection and remembrance is very impressive proof that North Carolinians do not will that the renown of their great servants shall hereafter suffer neglect, but rather that all that art and genius can do shall be done to hand on to other ages the bronze or marble images of those who dreamed wide dreams of social perfection and peace and struggled manfully for their realization.

We are giving thought today not to the death of Charles Brantley Aycock, for such as he can never quite be imprisoned with the dead, but to his steadfast and romantic life which shall endlessly endure, inspire, and teach. It is in such high ways that great states, grown to maturity in intelligence and discernment, pay homage to character and make solemn public declaration that a life of pure purpose carried forward usefully constitutes in this Republic a patent of nobility which time will not permit to lapse or posterity to terminate.

I am grateful for the privilege and honor accorded to me to preside at this memorial meeting. It is not possible for one born and bred of this soil to stand in this presence without a big stir of emotion. It will be a memory to cherish and keep green throughout all of life. It is not my part or purpose to attempt to present to you today a formal memorial address, but rather to speak as one who knew Charles Aycock when both of us had youth and walked together in the early morning of life; to seek to re-create his gallant figure in some faint measure for the eyes of those who did not know him; and to pick out for contemplation some of the saliences of his character, which thus move a great people to set him up so grandly at the center of their life.

I had sight of Charles Aycock for the first time in the fall of 1878, forty-six years ago, at the University of North Carolina, in the little academic village of Chapel Hill, which both of us then were learning to love with a love which lasted him to his death and shall last me to mine. He was a Senior and I a Freshman; he was a "Phi" and I a "Di." He was country born and bred and I city born and bred, with the understanding that my city, though the most populous we then had, must not be thought of as a thronging Babylon but as a very charming and cultivated little Southern town. These were estranging circumstances, but we soon came to know each other. He was plainly rural to the ordinary eye, but only a dullard could fail to perceive a certain distinction in his presence, a certain authority in his manner, and a certain significance in the very cadences of his voice. Through the mists of memory, I see him standing clear against the stark simplicity of that environment—a figure of vividness and strength, the bony structure of his great projecting forehead, blue eyes that had in their depths speculation and aspiration, and, now and then, a flash such as warriors have in the hour of battle; a mouth scornful of weakness and set in grim lines of pride and purpose—about the whole personality a soaring quality, a lift of the head, a lilt of the voice as of one not bound to earth and the things of the earth, but aware and wistful of better things that are not seen and fiercely bent upon their attainment.

It is a common and beautiful custom for those of us clad in the sober russet of middle life or advancing years, to think with emotion of the old collegiate quadrangle where was housed in Cardinal Newman's phrase, "the bright colored garments of a youth apparently endless," but I take leave to say that there could not have been in all the world a better place for the tutelage of the spirit and the nourishment of the mind than Chapel Hill in that day of small but serene things. We were all of us poor. We knew each other and called each other by names. Student ambitions tended almost entirely toward law, politics, or scholarship. The tocsin soon to sound the birth of the great industrial awakening, which was to transform our civilization from an agricultural into an industrial democracy, had not quite sounded. Our standards demanded character not possessions. Loyalty and courage were the virtues that touched our imaginations, and on the pathway of all of us lay the light reflected from the patient faces of our fathers and mothers who had outfaced war and its suffer-

ings and poverty and its trials, but had not failed to keep their honor bright and their names without stain. The one thing we learned more valuable, perhaps, than all the learning of the meagre and struggling University, and which the bronze figure of Charles Aycock will proclaim to generations of youth, was the beauty that lies in annexing oneself in youth to some large truth and some just cause with the knowledge that though we fail, the cause will not fail but goes marching on, and our souls march on with it, because we believed in it and gave it service.

It was my good fortune, as soon as I entered as a worker into the world of men, to find myself a fellow citizen with Charles Aycock in a small, sincere, dignified, progressive community, not given to overpraise or over-blame, but level-headed, equable, just, and wonderfully kind. Goldsboro was almost as well adapted to train the young citizen as Chapel Hill had been to train the young scholar. Aycock was busy building a home and laying, by honest labor, the foundations of his great professional reputation. I was learning, to my astonishment, the fateful significance of education in a scheme of self government. We sometimes walked and talked together about all the framework of the land and the things that seem significant when life lies before. These contacts revealed to me that Aycock, like Lincoln, was not primarily a logician or a polemic but a poet and a man of letters. I do not mean that he actually wrote verse, but I do mean that his mind worked best through images created by his imagination, and that he loved and was deeply moved by beauty—

Beauty, old, yet ever new,  
Eternal Voice and Inward Word,

without which our democracy shall surely perish.

Listen to him, in his maturity, preaching to cool, appraising North Carolina audiences the doctrine that growth, in state or individual life, means sacrifice and suffering. "No man reaches the highest mountain peak until he has bruised his knees and scrambled over boulders and fallen into gulches in his way up to the height. Indeed, before he reaches there, his head shall split with aching, his back shall break and the nails on his fingers shall be torn out by the roots as he pulls himself up the rugged way. But when he does reach the top, the world lies at his feet and the pathway seems to him no longer difficult. The boulders are out of sight, gently covered by



the grass that grows by the wayside, while the flowers burst into the beauty of the eternal morning. The struggle upward is worth the cost, and without the cost would not be worth while."

There are offered here no tabulated statistics—no major and minor premises and conclusions, but just pictures, such pictures as the Great Teacher and Democrat of us all, envisaged long ago in Syrian fields and, hanging forever in our minds, excel all others in wisdom and beauty.

We talked of education now and then. My own mind at that time was just possessing itself of the profound and exciting conviction which has been the moulding force in my life, not then a dogma of common belief—that every human being has the same right to be educated that he has to be free. One of the cherished hopes of my heart, my fellow citizens, is that I may have dropped some thought into the soil of his creative mind, then engrossed in the law and the reason thereof, about the free education of all the people as the foundation of a democracy and the highest function of an enlightened Commonwealth that made clearer for him, however dimly, the vision which, in later years, he carried in such knightly fashion to the citizenry of North Carolina, which he caused to be translated into political action, and so laid the foundation for his native state to bulk larger in American consciousness than she has done in the two hundred and sixty years of her existence as a self-governing community.

The story of the way in which Charles Aycock, self-forgetful and thrilling with purpose and energy, went to a tax-hating people and convinced them that ignorance was no remedy for anything; that taxation, though it may be a curse, when used wisely and sanely, is the greatest beneficent contrivance of civilization to achieve high public ends; and that faith in trained men and women was the supreme tenet of American democracy, has become a political legend. Whenever and wherever that perennial struggle is going on, that tale is told. Only the other day I saw fit to tell the tale over again to the General Assembly of Virginia and to say that, though political parties are forever dying, no permanent disaster ever befell a leader or a platform of progress in education, and, further, that I was coming here to help set up a statue to a friend of mine who had the coolness and foresight and sagacity to tie his policy to man and freedom, to the training of the sons and daughters of all the people, rich and

poor, black and white, and, lo! had become for all time a popular hero to a great and progressive Commonwealth.

And so we come to the core of this whole matter, to the significance of this hushed assembly, to the spiritual reason for this majestic monument, done by a master's hand, with its lofty serenity, its stately repose, and its power to lift the hurrying throngs moving about its base to unselfish thoughts and generous impulses. I think Charles Aycock may well be accounted a man of good fortune—fortunate in his ancestry; fortunate in his birthplace and in the age in which he was born; fortunate in his profession and in his public work; thrice fortunate in his death, with his powers unwasted, his form erect and vital, his very passing from mortal eyes a glorious gesture of patriotic devotion.

There was a pleasing versatility about Charles Aycock. He had interest in many things. He loved nature and he loved books. There was joy to him in the procession of the seasons, the greenness of springtime, the austere splendor of autumn, the witchery of white winter, and there was delight to him in the companionship of the great masters of thought and phrase potent in his age like Tennyson, and Carlyle and Macaulay. But he most loved men and men loved him. This love of his for men was no form of superlative amiability and inexhaustible sweetness of temper. He was quite equal to putting fools and self-seekers in their places, for his love for men had its roots deep down in the potency and mystery of our common life and destiny on this earth. "Thou shalt love the Lord thy God. Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself." This is the summation of Democracy as well as Christianity. They both are counsels of perfection to upward struggling humanity. They both are far from ruling the world of men, and just now both have fallen on evil days, but they forever gleam, invite, and beckon, and we poor mortals build monuments to those strong souls who follow their light and will not turn aside. They become mankind's liberal heroes.

Aycock not only loved masses of men philosophically, but the individual man was near to his curiosity and his interest. Many great liberal souls like Thomas Jefferson and Woodrow Wilson have loved mankind and would have been willing to go to the stake to protect all men against tyranny and oppression, but they were not particularly interested in any individual, ordinary Tom Jones whom they met along the roadside. Aycock loved Tom Jones on the roadside,

especially if it was a North Carolina roadside and a Tar Heel Tom Jones, and was by him beloved, and this relation put into his hands the flashing weapon of sympathy and understanding by which he hewed his way to usefulness and power. Tom Jones after all is a very interesting fellow. Jesus Christ loved to talk to him by the byways and the highways. Socrates spent all day, every day, talking to Tom and evoking from his contacts a noble philosophy of life. Lincoln loved to "rassle" with him, and John Marshall, though he denied him ability to govern himself or others wisely, liked nothing better than to pitch horse shoes with him in the tavern yard.

Aycock was an ambitious man, but he did not lend his voice to the mob or find contentment with tawdry public acclaim or give ear to popular frenzy. He was the very antithesis of the demagogue. He went out among the people in an interesting moment of social assertion, and there came to him a mounting enthusiasm that so expressed itself in tone, gesture, manner, and substance, as to move strongly any body of men. Like Gladstone, what he received from his hearers as vapor, he returned to them as rain. There lived in him the power to kindle sympathy and trust in himself through the might of his own affection and single-mindedness, and when this was achieved, he told men not what they might be then howling for and wanting to hear, but what they ought to think and do. That is leadership—a rare but glorious compound of intelligence, courage, sympathy, and patience, tipping, as with fire the tongue of him who possesses it.

George William Curtis loved to point out how Lord Chatham's glowing form, when he stood at the head of England organizing her victories by land and sea and telling in Parliament their splendid story, was Britain's self, and the roar of British guns and the proud acclamation of British hearts all around the globe flashed and thundered in his eloquence.

Charles Aycock became the Lord Chatham of a reawakened American State. No guns thundered and flashed in his eloquence, but silver bells of hope rang in the hearts of thousands of his fellow citizens, and weak purposes became strong resolves that all children should be given an opportunity to make the most of themselves in the world in which they lived.

States like individuals have moods of mind. It was Aycock's good fate to find his birthplace in the mood of greatness on the eve



of "burgeoning," to use his own word, into its intensest expression of power, and hospitable to every intimation of liberalism and progress. I venture to assert that the period stretching between 1890 and the present constitutes North Carolina's true golden age, for it has been the age when her old men beaten in war, used patience and magnanimity, when her young sons, disciplined in self-denial and nurtured on lofty pride, developed a passion for constructiveness, a genius for sympathy, and a method of education. It has been the age when all the people, young and old and high and low have discovered in unity and community effort the secret of social growth and by wise and steady use of the new instrument have placed North Carolina in the front rank of American states in industrial vigor, in educational advancement, in idealistic fervor.

In his crusading form, North Carolina beheld herself pleading with herself to lay aside provincialism and narrowness of view, to think continentally, not parochially, and to clothe herself in the beautiful raiment of a modern state. To the people who heard him, he was an incarnation and an allegory of themselves lifted up into great powers by the might of genius and the strength of ten. What Aycock desired and pleaded for, and what others before and after him pleaded for in that great historic moment in North Carolina has now in amazing measure come to pass. The "epic of democracy" which he chanted so eloquently and personified so vividly, seems to be at hand.

The elder ones among us recall how North Carolina once symbolized to her sister states an unhasting and immobile community of gentle manners and quiet, homely ways, not avid of the limelight, much enamoured of contentment and dignity, a patient community suspicious of progress, sensitive to injustice and capable of a terrible, stern sort of courage if, perchance, battle and struggle were the order of the time. I have been away from my birth state for a quarter of a century, and as I believe that some of these qualities are very real virtues, I trust that some of them still reign here. They do not now, however, define North Carolina to the outside world. A correctness of estimate as to social needs, a genius for social coöperation, a resolute way of gaining quick action, an enthusiasm for the future, a far-ranging vision of social achievement and social control, an immeasurable pride and ambition—this is North Carolina to the



Republic today. The most serene and detached of the sisterhood of states has become a gadfly to the states that lag, a beacon light to those that aspire. And this is such a destiny for his beloved State as Charles Aycock dreamed of and fought for. Democracy, like a man's character, is always in danger. New perils will surround, new dangers threaten, new pitfalls lie in wait for this new social structure you are building here, now so assured and jubilant. Let us have faith that we are setting up today in the Capitol Square, which is becoming for me a sort of outdoor Pantheon of old and dear friends, in yonder bronze image, a figure of simple greatness around which men may repair in any hour of wrong direction, of difficulty or disaster, to take counsel how they may tread the path of sympathy and courage and use the method of love and patience to win the heart and gain the support of the intelligent and willful democracy of the future.

I had sight of my old friend, then Governor of North Carolina, for the last time in Athens, Georgia, in the year 1902. He was closing an address to a great educational conference in these words, still speaking in pictures—"God give us patience and strength that we may work to build up schools that shall be as lights shining throughout the land—ten, fifty, a thousand candle-power. Behind this movement for the education of the children of our land there stands the One who said 'Let there be light.'" I still remember the pride I had in the reflection that Charles Brantley Aycock had traveled a long distance from the cotton fields of Wayne to that hour. Authority and high station sat upon him becomingly and in his mien dwelt the repose and dignity of a leader and ruler of men. Instinct with action and passion he was about his old task of moving men to higher horizons of thought and conduct with apt word and persuasive reason. What John Milton once sang of Samson in his great poem, the sweet voices of good fame will forever sing of the great popular advocate of North Carolina who wrought such magic for his people in the day of their proud determination and their new glory.

Nothing is here for tears, nothing to wail  
Or knock the breast; no weakness, no contempt,  
Dispraise, or blame; nothing but well and fair,  
And what may quiet us in a death so noble.

## CHARLES BRANTLEY AYCOCK—HISTORICAL ADDRESS

By the HONORABLE JOSEPHUS DANIELS

For many decades the stately oaks of our beloved Capitol square have given grateful shelter to the men who have made and interpreted and executed the decrees of free men. It was in love of the virgin forest that men with hearts of oak were attracted to this spot and chose it as the seat of government for this Democratic commonwealth. There is nothing so majestic and enduring as the oak, the centre of the coat of arms of this fair city.

If I were asked for a symbol of North Carolina, something that typified the staunchness and simple dignity of its self-contained people, I would not point to the Cornucopia with the half dressed or fully dressed woman on the Coat of Arms of the State. Rather I would bring the inquirer to this City of Oaks, point him to the noblest of them all that has survived the ruthless vandal with his axe, and I would say: "Here is the early and eternal symbol of North Carolina. With no wealth of flowering color as adornment, no fruit that blossoms, ripens and perishes; no delicate perfume that appeals to the aesthetic and loses its sweetness; no refuge for those seeking softness and looking for ease not won by resistance and labor—this oak is North Carolina in its beginning, in its maturity, and its people, in their best expression, possess the soundness of the heart of this king of the forest."

Is it not because at bottom this people have been rooted in the same character of soil as this towering tree, that they have never fully given their continued love and devotion in all the years to any man except one who possessed the heart, the sturdiness, the enduring qualities of the oak? "He has a heart of oak" was what people said of Zebulon Vance and Charles Aycock, the two best beloved commoners who enjoyed in a degree approached by no others the perfect love of the people. We have produced other public men of greater learning, lawyers more deeply versed in the lore of law, and men whose contributions are a rich legacy to the commonwealth they served with distinguished ability. But only to two North Carolinians in all its history have this people given their personal love and deep attachment and recognized them as the commanding figures in the two

most dynamic periods of its history. Both these noble figures came from the farm. Both brought out of homes where they followed the plow that something superior with which Mother Earth endows her own and which she denies to those who come to maturity in the crowded marts.

The constitution of 1836 drawn in the Convention presided over by "the last of the Romans," and the legislation which followed it, broke the bands and gave expansion to Western North Carolina. Lack of early vision in the leaders had failed to recognize that puissant domain. It was not until the hardy people of the mountains thundered at the doors that the prosperous and contented East surrendered its boroughs of special privilege. Later, when all fetters were removed, the construction of the railroad over the French Broad and the Tuckasegee ended the long feud between the East and the West. It was there and then proved that the poet was wrong when he declared "never the twain shall meet." The man who ended sectional division in this commonwealth was the great Commoner, the young Lochinvar who "came out of the West" and led the State through the fires of War and Reconstruction. In devotion to the just rights of a sovereign state, and his refusal to permit the civil to yield to the military even in the throes of a great war, Zebulon Baird Vance became the idol of Currituck as well as of Cherokee.

Slavery was not deeply rooted in the mountain districts where Vance opened his eyes to the supernal beauty of his native heights—a vision that was ever present with him. It was not to perpetuate the institution of slavery that Vance led the men from the hills in the War Between the States. He opposed secession until North Carolina must fight with its neighbors for the Constitutional rights of the State. And then, for love of kin and the opportunity of this commonwealth to determine its own life, Vance became the greatest of War Governors, enlisting more men in the Confederate Army than there were voters in the State and providing for their comfort by the exercise of forward-looking statesmanship. War left no bitterness in his soul, and if it had not been for the excesses of Reconstruction, Vance might have lived in history only as the greatest War Governor of the Confederacy. Like the bell in the night that aroused the patriots in 1776, the cries of the people under the iron heel of alien masters came to Vance in his law office in Charlotte. There was no

other Moses to lead the people out of bondage. With neither purse nor scrip, not even with sufficient money to pay his traveling expenses, Vance heard the call and like a knight of other days rode for their deliverance. Soon Reconstruction was ended. Under his leadership Restoration came and reconstruction seemed an ugly dream.

A quarter of a century passed when a generation grew up in North Carolina that "knew not Joseph." They had forgotten the period of oppression. Memory grew dim of the days when Vance brought them out of bondage. Dire poverty took its grim toll in 1894 and as five cent cotton came in at the door, hope flew out at the window. A people who had endured War and Reconstruction were demoralized and disheartened when toil brought no return and when distress walked abroad on every farm. The years of the 1894-'98 period were days of want. Fathers and mothers looked into the eyes of children ambitious for a chance, and answered their pleadings by pointing to an empty larder.

Let no succeeding generation judge too harshly the farmers who in 1894 were stampeded into revolution. When men must turn deaf ears to the cries of their children through no lack of industry and foresight, they fall an easy prey to those who point a new or easy way to better things. They are in no condition to weigh the merits of proposed remedies. In that period in desperation they flew from the ills they suffered to those they could not envisage or appraise. In vain did the old Commoner lift his voice and call to the demoralized farmers "Abide in the ship." He had grown old in service, and many people preferred leaders with new remedies. No longer was Vance's voice the word of command, though mercifully he passed away before the storm of a second reconstruction era fell as a blight upon the people he had loved and served.

The years of 1890 to 1900 were the darkest that had enveloped this people since Reconstruction. Vance was in his grave. His great voice was silenced. Ransom had been defeated and no more was his eloquent tongue employed to hearten a people who had honored him in war and in peace. Jarvis whose constructive statesmanship had laid sound foundations, had likewise been retired from the Senate where he had taken high position. Other leaders grown gray, were in retirement or their warnings passed unheeded. The sudden political cyclone that swept the State in 1894 left the disheartened people leaderless. The same high carnival of sordidness that made the



Capitol like shambles in Reconstruction days, again made merry while the ship of State foundered upon the rocks.

When the night was the darkest in the nineties, when the second reconstruction threatened the future prosperity and safety of the State, history repeated itself. There has rarely been the need of a man to lead a people to the heights when God did not raise up the very man for the occasion. "Nature pays no tribute to aristocracy, subscribes to no creed or caste, renders fealty to no monarch or master of any name or kind. Genius is no snob. It does not run after titles or seek by preference the high circles of society. It affects humble company as well as great. It pays no special tribute to universities or learned societies or conventional standards of greatness, but serenely chooses its own comrades, its own haunts, its own cradle even, and its own life of adventure and of training." Would you have proof of it? Look into the farm house where young Aycock first opened his eyes and later see him called to the highest station. It was as true of Aycock as was said by Trevelyan of his political hero "all the world in concert could not have kept him in the background for when once in the front he played his part with a prompt intrepidity and a commanding ease that were but the outward symptoms of the immense reserves of energy upon which it was his power to draw."

North Carolina has been exceptionally fortunate in the men who have been called to the chief magistracy in this commonwealth since the first child of white parents was born on its soil. If the roll should be called of all our chief executives, you would recognize illustrious names that were not born to die. But of all these worthy Governors only two have been selected by the body of the people to be given the signal honor by having their lineaments and figures preserved in bronze to stand for all time under the shadow of yonder protecting oaks. May we not believe—(is it not God's way of dealing with His people?)—that when the immortal Vance passed that his mantle of leadership fell upon his beloved disciple, his son in the gospel of equality for all the people who was to lead in the second period of restoration? As we unveil the statue of Charles Brantley Aycock, which is to be the companion of Zebulon Baird Vance, in the Valhalla of Carolina's Patriots, shall we not hail them for all time as our Elijah and our Elisha, worthily wearing the God-given mantle of authority, each in his day and generation?

There are no accidents or miscarriages in God's world. When the first crisis of the half century beginning in 1860 and ending in 1910 called for "sun-crowned" men to lead the people, Vance was raised up. When Vance was translated in 1894 his mantle fell upon the Elisha of the plains. When Vance entered the Promised Land, he would have loved to say to the man who was to receive his mantle even as Elijah said to Elisha: "Ask what I shall do for thee before I be taken away from thee," and we may be sure the young disciple's heart's desire would have expressed itself in the words uttered by Elisha: "I pray thee, let a double portion of thy spirit be upon me." And when the younger man cried out, "My father, my father, the chariot of Israel and the horses thereof," may we not reverently say the mantle of Elijah that fell from him, smote the waters and the son of the prophet said: "The spirit of Elijah doth rest on Elisha." Does the parallel end there? I think not. As our Elijah in the early seventies purified the political waters and came to the official leadership in 1876, so our Elisha in 1894 "went forth into the spring of the waters"—our political waters of life—"and cast the salt in them and \* \* \* the waters were healed unto this day." Aycock received the official gubernatorial mantle in 1901 which had been worn by the Great War Governor in the sixties and again in 1877. The temptation to follow this parallel in the lives of these two executives would carry us too far afield, but may I not suggest the fact that through the speeches of both there ran the thread of Bible imagery and illustration as proof of their spiritual kinship to Elijah and Elisha? \* \* \*

Speaking to a small company in Davie county a score of years ago urging better schools, Aycock was interrupted by an old farmer who cried out:

"What's the use of building good school houses when the roads are so bad that the children cannot get to school?"

Quick as a flash—Aycock needed an interruption to be at his best—he replied:

"Build the school houses now and I know the parents of North Carolina well enough to know they will construct good roads over which their children can travel to attend school."

He knew the true process. Not the material first. Develop the mind and heart and all things material shall be added unto you. He

envisioned and made possible the highways of the State which crown the efforts of this generation.

Others said: "We are for education, but let us first build our industries, that we may have the means to build our school houses."

"No," said he, "build your school houses, secure good government, promote justice. And as surely as night follows day, there will come an era of Good Feeling and there will be an outburst of industry."

Statesmanship looks beyond the thing visible to the spirit. If we had cared more for hard surfaced roads and factories than for the things of the mind, the coming of all would have been delayed.

Shortly before his death, writing from the hospital he said, "A country's progress can be measured by those things once a matter of debate which are now accepted as a matter of course" and he added: "When North Carolina accepts Universal education, Good roads, suppression of injurious child labor 'as a matter of course' what a state we shall have!" \* \* \*

I distinctly remember the first time I ever saw Charles Brantley Aycock, and I distinctly remember I did not like him. The session at the Wilson Collegiate Institute was some weeks old when two new students entered, Charles Aycock and his older brother, Barden. In this day they would be called green country boys. Perhaps they were then. If so, all of us, from village and country were alike in the lack of the fashions which obtain today. These Aycock boys lived over two miles from town, brought their dinner in a bucket and walked to and from school. Barden, the older, was tall and strong, and serious. Charles was younger, smaller, with a brighter and happier face. They were both assigned to classes with younger boys. It was supposed that country boys had not enjoyed as good advantages as town boys and must go in classes of youths not so old as themselves.

They were the good old days of competition. Ambition was whetted by the standing in class and "cutting up" added zest to the lessons. In some way I cannot now understand, I had managed to "cut up" to head in some of the classes and to have remained there until the Aycock boys arrived. But with their advent my undeserved high place in the class came to an end. Within the first week Charles Aycock had cut down every boy and girl in the class and was next to head. He had come to that place by merit. For

a few days by unremitting study, urged thereto by ambition not to let the new boy cut me down, I managed to stay head. But I knew the first time I missed a question, primacy would go to Charles Aycock, who hadn't missed giving a correct answer since his matriculation. The boys he had cut down looked at me as if to say "you will go next." I resolved to hold my own if it killed me. And I did it for two whole weeks—weeks of agony and fight. Then the fatal day came. I was next to head.

"I don't like that new boy, Charlie Aycock, at all," I said to my mother that evening.

"Why not?" she asked.

"He is too smart. He thinks he knows it all."

Then I had to tell her my humiliation at his hands and why I didn't like him.

The truth was not that he thought he knew it all but that he did know the lesson so perfectly, he was entitled to the distinction which came to merit in the days of "cutting up" and "cutting down."

From that day, I knew my place. Ever after I knew that in any contest, Charles Aycock would stand first. And before the school term ended I found myself proud of his supremacy and scholarship.

"He is not smart at all, as I told you," I said to my mother. "He just knows more than the rest of us. He has quicker brains than any boy in the school and is not the least bit stuck up about it. He is as modest as he is smart."

The boy was father to the man. Never did he speak in any assembly, whether winning over Roosevelt when he outspoke the President of the United States, or in the Supreme Court at Washington when his arguments charmed the learned Justices, or in a little school house in the country, when there was not a quality about his utterances that charmed and convinced. The beauty of it was, that those he out-distanced were proud to give the palm to the contestant whose superior gifts were his only weapons.

It is impossible to say when he became the finished orator. If I were to say he was born one, that would be to deny the infinite pains he took with addresses and the re-writing and care to get the right word which shaped them into literary excellence. Still it is true that ability to voice the hopes and purposes of his people was born with him. When other children were thinking only of play, oratory fascinated him and problems of government attracted him. Before



he could write a speech, he made the declamations of the great his very own. When he came to Wilson to school—the same thing in lesser degree had been true in Nahunta—it was the custom for students to declaim, and Friday afternoons were given up to those exercises. Young Aycock not only had learned his piece by heart, but he had mastered the thought and action of the author. He chose poems and addresses by masters, as well for their style as their spirit. If you had dropped in the school-room not knowing it was declamation day, his manner, his emphasis, his perfect rendering of the thought would have caused you to think it was his own oration.

If you will compare the speech Aycock made upon his graduation and his address when he was inaugurated governor, you will understand what is meant by saying he was born full-panoplied in the grace of winning audiences. If you had been at Chapel Hill that day and been permitted to feel the joy of the student body, the enthusiasm of the faculty, the approval of the trustees and the spontaneous applause given, you would understand why he had no days of waiting to be acclaimed the master of assemblies. And you would not have been surprised when the committee gave him the Willie P. Mangum medal for oratory. He had previously won the medal for composition. He was as much the man, head and shoulders above his fellows, in speech as he stood upon the college rostrum as when in the presence of the whole commonwealth he won applause as he solemnly outlined the policies which make his administration live in history.

As to subject matter and style, he had traveled far. But in essence and in spirit, they were the same, and in effectiveness of delivery, the boy and the man were one. The writer is at his best in the printed word; the orator, in the impression of the moment. Often the speech that thrilled is disappointing in cold type. It is true that no published speech of Aycock's can adequately convey the impression of the spoken word. But Aycock wrote almost as well as he spoke. His speeches preserved are masterpieces. Not even Ben Hill, who had no rival in the South, could more fittingly make eulogy of Lee than did Aycock; and the Georgian's defense of the South in the Senate did not surpass Aycock's *ex tempore* tribute to the men of the South at the Charleston Exposition.

Perhaps future generations will better understand his primacy among the most gifted orators of the commonwealth from the signifi-

cant fact that from the first his home people would go further to hear him than those who knew him only by reputation. It is a maxim, proved true because there are some exceptions, that a prophet is not without honor save in his own country. It is even more true that orators are more esteemed where they seldom speak than by those privileged to hear them often. Aycock's audiences increased in number and in enthusiasm as he neared home. Many more people in proportion to population gathered to hear him in Nahunta where he was born and in Goldsboro, where he spent most of his life, than in any other community where he spoke, though nearly always his audiences were limited only by the size of the building. This was almost as true when he addressed a jury as when he spoke in the hustings or on some patriotic occasion. His home people always, in asking for a speaker in any campaign whether public, educational or for any good cause, would invariably say "Send us Aycock for the closing speech. If you cannot send Aycock, send the next best man." This desire to hear him was not merely the result of confidence in and affection for the man. It did not come from pride in his position, though never did home people rejoice more in honors that came to a native son. It was because they had grown up and become accustomed to the rare quality of his convincing eloquence that men of lesser gifts did not attract them. There is such a thing as being so accustomed to the best that the near-best is unpalatable. For forty years the people of Wayne County compared all speakers with their own Aycock and in their estimation gave their approval as others approached him.

In every political campaign, even before he was of age, Aycock always made the closing speech in his home-town of Goldsboro. Old and young looked forward to this as the event and treat of the year, almost as much for comparison as for instruction and enjoyment. He brought home, to lay at the feet of his mother-county, so to speak, his choicest stories and sayings, and somehow or other he did not seem to be speaking to them or at them. When he spoke at home it seemed like an intimate family talk, taking his neighbors into his confidence and testing all he had said elsewhere by whether it would be approved by those who knew him best and whose love was his most priceless possession. And, after they had gone home, the chief topic in the county for the year was whether Aycock's speech in 1898 was quite as good as the one he made in 1894, or even in 1880 when

he came to the bar. There were plenty to take sides in the discussion and sometimes the debaters would decide to go to Goldsboro to submit the question to Aycock's law-partner, Judge Frank A. Daniels, who had heard him as man and boy from the first declamation. What was the decision? After reviewing the best of Aycock's speeches, and recalling some particularly eloquent sentence or illuminating portion of half a dozen of his best, in judicial tones, the partner would always decide that the last speech was the best, though, he would add "I am inclined to think the speech he made at Great Swamp in 1894 had some elements of greatness I have never heard in any other."

The truth is that his law-partner, Judge Daniels, and Judge Allen, Judge Robinson, Colonel Dortch and other associates at the Goldsboro bar were under the permanent fascination of his eloquence. They felt themselves his comrades and equals as they discussed law and politics in the law office or on the court green where they were wont to gather, but when Aycock rose to address a jury or an audience, they instinctively felt that here was a man endowed with a gift beyond compare. This unspoken tribute of his associates may be given as the best evidence that no man of his day approached him in the appeal to men who were themselves learned and eloquent. Every speaker of his day, thought his highest commendation was when an admirer would say, "You made the best speech I have heard, except of course, the one Aycock made when he spoke here."

What is eloquence? Governor Aycock once gave this definition, "Eloquence is simply the response of the common sense to what the speaker is saying. Slumbering in the minds of men there is a sense of right and justice, and the man who can interpret this feeling and give it expression is the eloquent man, and this is why he can so mightily move men. \* \* \*

Every man is at heart a hero worshipper. You can appraise any man accurately if you know at what shrine he worships. He is a kinsman in spirit of the hero he enshrines in his affections. May I not say that Governor Aycock's early and late admiration of Robert E. Lee transmitted many of that great man's qualities and became part of the very blood of his loving disciple? The most eloquent speech Governor Aycock ever made—and I heard him speak a hundred



times and more—was made to a handful of men and women on January 19th, at the Confederate Home in Raleigh. It was Lee-Jackson day. The men in gray, the last of the thinning line of Lee's immortals, were gathered in the Reade chapel to hear their Governor and let their memories revert to the days of bivouac and sacrifice. The Daughters of the Confederacy, the vestal virgins of the South, had served dinner. These sacred celebrations tend to sameness and formality. As the years go by the speeches are often mere eulogies without impressiveness.

That day was not unlike most January nineteenth until Aycock rose to speak. He had been sitting reminiscent, with a far-away look in his eyes after greeting the men in gray. As a small boy he had seen his own brother and kinsmen come back after Appomattox. He had heard of how the bravest had given all they had and hoped to be in the cause. As he sat through the preliminary exercises, his mind going back to the early years of the sixties. Before him were the remnant of that mighty army—men broken on the wheel of life, some wearing the scars of honorable service, the snow that never melts having fallen upon all their heads.

Governor Aycock had not spoken half a dozen sentences before the little chapel was transformed. The simple seats seemed cushioned chairs and the men in gray who sat upon them seemed no longer bruised and bent under the stress of war and the burden of age. They seemed to stand out as they rushed the Bloody Angle at Gettysburg or charged with Jackson up the Valley. His Voices had carried him to heights where mortals do not dwell. He was telling of the deathless deeds of the men of the South. His hearers felt themselves on holy ground and listening to the melody of an eloquence to which hitherto they had been strangers. There was a holy hush, as if an angel wing had fluttered over the place. Almost inspired, Aycock traced the march and counter-march of the men of Lee's and Jackson's armies as they ascended the glory-mountains of sacrifice. He pictured their return, foot-sore and ragged, to poverty and struggle. But they had never bent the knee! Neither want nor hardship broke their spirits. They had in their hearts something glorious and imperishable. It was the spirit that was in Lee. Aycock held that little company in hushed ecstasy as he limned the nobility of Robert E. Lee in words so eloquent as to defy reproduction. "We



can only ourselves catch a few rays of light from the sunshine of his face" was his peroration.

There was no applause. There are times when applause seems out of place, a sort of cheap substitute for deep emotions. This was such a time. His audience feeling as if they had ascended to mountain tops and beheld the light that never was on sea or land, separated with a strange glow in their hearts. It has never faded. Not one who heard that master tribute will ever lose its benediction.

A score and more years have passed, but I never ride by the little chapel that in my memory it is not illumined by the lasting glow and glory with which Aycock's eloquence filled it that January afternoon. I drove back to the Capitol with the Governor. He was silent. My heart had been stirred too deep for words. It seemed that conversation would be a sacrilege and would break a spell I hope will abide with me until I greet him on the other shore.

As I have reflected upon that perfect tribute, it has seemed to me to be paralleled by only one other address. The difference between Aycock's address at the Confederate Home and Lincoln's at Gettysburg, is that Aycock's audience was so thrilled that nobody could put pencil to paper. At Gettysburg, the audience that heard Lincoln was little impressed, and was disappointed with its brevity. It required the lapse of years to bring recognition of its matchless perfection. Fortunately Lincoln's living words had been written. Unfortunately Aycock's were lost. It lives only in the hearts of the few privileged to hear it. But to those few, it is forever an inspiration. If I could but give you the hint of its beauty and majesty, you would feel that you had been admitted to heavenly places.

I see him once again in the only triumph that he won almost at the price of his heart's blood. The day was June 23, 1904. The place was Greensboro. The occasion was the State Convention of his party. When called to leadership in 1900 he had accepted it with the declaration "We hold our title to power by tenure of service to God, and if we fail to administer equal and exact justice to the negro whom we deprive of suffrage, we shall in the fulness of time lose power ourselves, for we must know that the God who is Love trusts no people with authority for the purpose of enabling them to do injustice to the weak." As Governor he lived up to that promise and better facilities and longer terms of school were provided for the

negro children of the State. There grew up a strong element in the State antagonistic to the Governor's policy. It demanded that no money be set apart for the education of the negro children except the tax paid by members of the negro race. That opposition culminated in resolutions condemning the Governor's policy. It was when his county proposed such a resolution that his heart was pierced as by a dagger. About the same time certain journals began a series of criticisms. He had increased expenditures. He was educating the negro. These were the points of attack. It seemed like a concerted movement to drive him from his position. For weeks and months the attacks continued. He was not thick-skinned. He craved love. Inwardly he sometimes raged. Outwardly he was calm. He never returned railing for railing. Just before the Convention at Greensboro the anvil chorus was at its worst. His friends became alarmed. There were suggestions that his administration might not be endorsed. It was even suggested that the opponents of his policy might not give him a courteous hearing. The hour came for him to speak. He received courteous greeting from most of the delegates but those who wished to condemn his policy received him coldly. He felt his way. He first gave a review of what he had promised and what his party had promised. Every pledge had been kept. Graphically he recited the record, and men who had come to carp began to warm up to him.

His answer to the first criticism was: "This administration has spent much money and it is glad of it." No hint of apology, no word of conciliation. How had the money been spent? That story stirred the hearts in the eloquent telling. One critic took out his handkerchief to wipe his eyes when Aycock declared, "There are people on the face of the earth who take no care of the weak and infirm, who care naught for their children and provide only for the gratification of their own desires, but these people wear no clothes nor dwell in houses. They leave God out of consideration in their estimate of life and are known to us as savages." I wish you could have seen him then—no language can describe him or the effect of his words—They were from his heart. His audience was spell-bound. Those who heard him would have trebled their tax rather than their Governor should have done otherwise.

"He is educating the negro," was the main indictment. That was the gravamen of his offending. "Education would ruin them. It is time to quit taxing white people to educate negroes." How did Aycock answer his critics? Hear him: "The danger which I have apprehended is not that we shall do too much for the negro, but that becoming unmindful of our duty to him we shall do too little." And then he quoted his solemn promise: "We hold title to power by tenure of service to God." He recited what had been done. "I believed," he went on, "that the people who had chosen me Governor did so in the hope that I would be brave enough to sacrifice my own popularity—my future if need be—to the speaking of the rightful word and the doing of the generous act. I have therefore maintained the duty of the State to educate the negro."

There is an instinctive admiration of a noble nature in North Carolina people. Aycock was North Carolina at its best. Many who had been hostile had become thoughtful. If there had been a mourners bench it would have been thronged with those he had caused to see the light. "I appeal," he concluded and I can hear that voice of wooing entreaty "to the generous, high minded North Carolinians to realize that we are confronted with a condition which demands statesmanship and not passion and prejudice."

The effect was electrical. The floods so long kept back burst the banks. Giant men in shirt sleeves, youths in the glow of enthusiasm, sturdy men who rarely permitted their emotions to sway them,—what were they doing? All of them were cheering like men who had seen a new light, whose hearts had been swept and garnished, and who wished to give praise for the new miracle wrought in their sight. Hats were in the air, men threw their coats to the ceiling, and the cheering and shouting could be likened to nothing except the scene which greeted Aycock when he had been nominated. He made a great speech when he was inaugurated. Then he was wildly cheered as the hope of a great people. Today he was acclaimed as the statesman of achievement. He had kept the faith. Again he was the idol of his countrymen. They might criticize him again but they would love him and follow him and crown him with glory and honor.

I have been privileged to be present on occasions when noble orators charmed great assemblages. The most notable of all was in the National convention when Bryan made the high record in

1896. It brought him world renown. I have heard the great of the earth in the Plenary Council in Paris. I heard Wilson in his famous war message, when men out of every nation were thrilled by his lofty eloquence. I have been lifted to the heights when a Duncan or a Beecher or a Philip Brooks gave glimpse of a new heaven and a new earth. But none of these measured up to the height of eloquence and mastery of an unfriendly audience as Aycock's speech that day in Greensboro. The spell of it is on me this hour. The dingy old warehouse became the theatre of a mighty conquest. They bore Aycock from the scene on sturdy shoulders, happy and proud that the people he loved had risen to his belief in their nobleness.

Do you ask what became of the resolution that had been drawn condemning the Aycock policies? His hearers forgot it had ever existed. It was torn in shreds by the mighty rushing winds. The vote of approval and confidence was unanimous and hearty.

"You can always trust the North Carolina people to rise to the occasion" was his simple comment when congratulations were showered upon him.

He was not on trial in the Greensboro convention. We—the people—were at the bar. If we had failed to measure up to Aycock's faith in us, that would have been the travail of his soul.

\* \* \* \*

We have come today to contemplate the high lights and only those in the life of the richest man of our commonwealth. When Charles Brantley Aycock died his estate measured by any permanent standard was incomparably the largest any man had amassed in half a century. The best part of it was that he knew it. He himself had appraised his possessions. He walked the streets in the consciousness of a man of affluence. It is true he could not let his eyes rest on the cattle upon a thousand hills and say "these are mine." He could not show title deeds to millions of acres of fertile lands. The mighty towering forests were not recorded in his name in any book of official record. No myriad of smokestacks, sentinels of prosperous industry, giving employment to men and bringing wealth to the State proclaimed him their legal owner. No strong box marked "Aycock" in any financial institution overflowed with gilt-edge stocks and bonds. I dare say that, if on the day of his death any expert ac-



countant had rendered a statement of his ascertainable assets, they would have reported that he had been poorly compensated for the rich life he had poured out. Yet making a schedule of his estate he said, when he accepted the nomination for Governor:

"I have garnered this harvest of hearts. I have a goodly heritage. I possess power."

His appraisement of his estate was summed up in: "I have no other riches than the love of my friends."

What a princely fortune he thus laid claim to as he stood in the presence of his countrymen!

It is seldom that a man when he undertakes to set forth a schedule of his possessions can make so accurate an estimate as Governor Aycock did when he told of his fortune. It is not generally regarded in good taste to boast of your possessions. Indeed, sometimes a man has acquired them in ways that may not always bear the calcium light. More than that: they are most often perishable. He is a foolish man who communes with himself and says fondly, "I have much goods laid up for many years." He only is wise whose heart runs over with its fullness of content because he has garnered the love of his fellows. That was Aycock's golden store.

No man can secure such wealth by anything he can do any more than a man can receive it who tries to purchase it or really seeks it at all. Love comes without the asking or it does not come at all. It will have no fellowship with traffic and must be spontaneous. It must pour itself out unbidden. It must be held without capitulation.

The people never love a man because he holds a great office, or because his word may be like Cæsar's. They never love him for his greatness, for his intellect, for his achievements. He has read history to very little purpose who has not learned that scholarship and statesmanship have warmed no hearts and won no comradeship. If Charles Aycock was the richest man in the State when he lived and when he died, as I am sure we all believe, it was not because he had been ambitious for wealth, even the wealth of love that crowned his life, and made him a friend and brother to the highest and the lowest in the commonwealth. He obtained those great riches because he unselfishly gave himself. It is forever true that he who would save

his life must lose it. He who would win lasting affection must himself be a fountain of love and light.

If Aycock had no title deeds to lands and herds and stocks and bonds he possessed a title deed to the heart of every child in the commonwealth, rich and poor, high and low, white and black, and what was of less importance but what was very dear to him, of their fathers and mothers.

He himself made the best statement of how he had won the love of the people in an address he prepared to be delivered here announcing his candidacy for the Senate. He said: "I have given more than a quarter of a century of the best years of my life and my hardest work to the service of the Democratic party in this State"—he was speaking then to men of his party. He added modestly, "I have not always served her wisely, but I can look the entire body of people in the face and I can declare that I have served her zealously and with no thought of the possible effect of my works upon my own career. I have held her highest office and under God I say tonight that I have never said a word or done a deed during the entire four years of my term of office with any thought to my personal aggrandizement. I never sought to build up a personal or factional machine and I never endeavored to tie men to me with any sense of obligation by reason of favors done by me for them, for I did no man any favor, but I earnestly sought to do every man the right of equal and exact justice."

Every wise man knows himself better than anybody knows him. And when he adds sincerity to wisdom, he writes his best biography. These words I have quoted set apart from all else would tell the simple and splendid story of Aycock's public life.

Every man born into this world is born with a God-given work to do. Happy the man who early envisions his life task and sets himself to its performance. I verily believe that, given health and average ability, success comes to every mortal who finds the duty for which he was created. There is no toil, no drudgery for the man who finds himself and his mission. Work is a delight and service a recreation.

I profoundly believe that every human being, intended by his creator for leadership, hears voices calling him to the heights. The two addresses of Governor Aycock which best reveal the spirit and aspira-

tions of the man, aside from his incomparable educational address and his Greensboro account of his stewardship, were not heard on the hustings or on the forum. Perhaps the first of his addresses to students was on, "the Voices of Joan of Arc" to young women at a college commencement. He had never been to Domremy. He had not seen the quaint old house, still standing where the Maid of Orleans was born. He had not walked over the hills or worshiped in the little church where she heard the rustle of angel wings. He had not drunk at the spring hard-by where the maid heard voices calling her as she bent to quench her thirst. But he had himself heard voices summoning him to commanding place and there was comprehension of what these voices said to the Maid as he challenged the young women of his generation to have their ears attuned to catch the melody of angelic songs.

As Charles Aycock, a barefooted boy on Nahunta Creek, followed the plow and heard the birds sing their matin hymns, he pondered in his heart upon the things his father and neighbors talked about. Those were days of Reconstruction in North Carolina. Patriotic men of his community were not too much immersed in their private concerns to give thought to their government. They were the days when men felt government was not something far removed from them. They did not ask: "Why does not the Government do this or that for us?" They understood, as Aycock later was fond of saying, that governments are as good as the average virtue and intelligence of the men and women who make up the citizenship. They felt the compulsion of doing their part. If things went wrong, they did not hope some veiled somebody would improve it. They undertook the task themselves. They had no kinship with the shirker or the more-holy-than-thou men who excuse their refusal to improve government by saying "there is no place in politics for a good man."

When the boy Aycock quietly slipped out of his bedroom at night and listened while his elders debated the deliverance of their State, his heart stirred within him. Returning to his trundle bed, he went to sleep with the thought in his mind that if he were a man he would do a man's part. Was it in his sleep, or was it in his waking hours, that his Voices came to him, foreshadowing the path upward, he was to climb and bidding him make ready for the time when he should be the prophet of his people in a great crisis, leading them from Bitter-

ness into a New Era of Good Feeling? He pondered in his childish heart the things he understood but dimly.

The first battle since the War Between the States for the rule of right was to be waged and won before he was old enough to enlist. But if his years excluded participation, he was old enough to sense the greatness of the revolution which had the immortal Vance for its Moses.

Charles Brantley Aycock was born near Nahunta (now Fremont), Wayne County, November 1, 1859, the son of Benjamin Aycock and Serena Hooks Aycock. His father was a farmer, who applied brains to tilling the soil, and was leader in church and public affairs, serving eight years as clerk of the Superior Court of Wayne County, and representing his people in the State Senate in the critical years 1864-65. In the Senate, he was a strong right arm to Governor Vance in the prosecution of the war. He was "an excellent member and deacon of the Primitive Baptist Church; and while opening a conference at Aycock's Church in Wilson County (1875) he dropped dead, thus falling at his post of duty as did his distinguished son." His mother (born Serena Hooks), measured up to the Bible standard of wife and mother:

"She' looketh well to the ways of her household, and eateth not the bread of idleness.

"Her children arise up and call her blessed; her husband also, and he praiseth her."

When she was a girl, it was rare for her sex to be sent off to school and she was uneducated in books. But in wisdom, in sound judgment, in poise and the Christian graces of noble womanhood she was remarkable. Aycock's biographer says, "Charles Aycock once saw his mother make her mark when signing a deed; and this incident, as he often declared to his intimate friends impressed him so forcibly with the failure of the State to do its duty in establishing and maintaining a public school system that he resolved to devote whatever talents he might possess to procuring for every child born in North Carolina an open school-house, and an opportunity for obtaining a public school education." He attributed largely to her influence and training the success he attained. His parents were patrons and friends of education, helping to establish good schools and sending all their children to them. All became useful and influential citizens, deeply interested in public concerns. Two of his brothers served in



the General Assembly and Senator Benjamin F. Aycock served also as Railroad Commissioner and was nominated as State Treasurer in 1896.

After preparation in the schools of Nahunta, Wilson and Kinston, Aycock entered the University of North Carolina, graduating in 1880, winning the Bingham Essayist medal and the Willie P. Mangum medal for oratory. In 1881, in partnership with Judge Frank A. Daniels, a schoolmate at Wilson and Chapel Hill, (they were ever friends after the order of David and Jonathan) he began the practice of law in Goldsboro. That partnership continued until Aycock was elected Governor, was resumed upon the expiration of his term and continued until Governor Aycock moved to Raleigh in 1909 and formed a partnership for the practice of law with Judge Robert W. Winston. This partnership continued until his death. On May 25, 1881, he was married to Miss Varina Davis Woodard, daughter of Elder William Woodard, of Wilson County, the acquaintance ripening into affection, having begun when both attended school at Wilson Collegiate Institute under the learned Elder Sylvester Hassell. Three children blessed this union, of whom one son died in infancy and another, Charles B. Aycock, Jr., died in 1901, while a student at the University of North Carolina. The daughter, Alice Varina, married Clarence Poe in 1912.

In 1891, Governor Aycock was married the second time, his wife being Miss Cora L. Woodard, younger sister of his first wife. Seven children were born to this union, all of whom are living—Wm. B., now of Goldsboro; May Lilly, now Mrs. L. P. McLendon of Durham; Connor W. and Frank Daniels, of Raleigh; John Lee, now of Chicago; Louise Rountree, of Raleigh; and Brantley, now in Randolph-Macon Academy. The home life was crowned by sweetness and simplicity and happiness. I emphasize simplicity. It is "uprightness of the soul that has no reference to self; it is different from sincerity and it is a still higher virtue."

Governor Aycock was reared in the atmosphere of interest in public service. He was ambitious, very, to serve his country, but not ambitious for place. The only office he ever sought, nomination for Congress in 1890, he did not obtain. All other honors that came to him were unsought, and most of them were without compensation. In 1881 he was chosen Superintendent of Schools in Wayne County.

He served a score and more years as member of the Goldsboro Public School Committee, part of the time as Chairman. He was district presidential elector in 1888; elector at large in 1892; United States District Attorney under Cleveland in 1893-97; and in 1900 was unanimously nominated for Governor by the Democratic Party and elected by a majority of 60,354, the largest ever given to a chief executive of the Commonwealth. The record of his administration is too fresh to require a statement of its deeds. As a matter of fact it lives in its vision and the lasting influence it set in motion more than in important statutes. The impulse it gave to education of all the people is seen in the fruitions of today and will be felt in the larger expansion of tomorrow. The keynote of his administration was in this classic preserved in bronze on his monument unveiled today: "The equal right of every child born on earth to have the opportunity to burgeon out all there is within him." In 1911 he announced himself as candidate for the United States Senate and was assured of election if he had lived. "His record," said a discriminating North Carolinian, "is worth more than a campaign fund or a political machine. He died in his heart feeling that the task was to fall on his shoulders." "I haven't a particle of doubt of my election. I do not intend to be beaten." Answering the statement that he would not win because he had no machine, no money, no organization, he said: "This does not intimidate me in the least. On the contrary, I am going to win for the very reason that I have not these things behind me. If I should rise to the Senate by wealth, by organization, by machinery I should be compelled to praise the rounds of my ascent." He died suddenly in Birmingham, Alabama, April 4, 1912, while mightily moving with his eloquence the Alabama teachers in their annual assembly, and is buried in Oakwood Cemetery in Raleigh. Such is the brief summary of the life we are gathered today to commemorate.

I would, however, be lacking even in outlines if the background of his life were omitted and a picture of his forbears and environment were not given. William Aycock, the first of the name in the colony in North Carolina, entered upon a grant of 500 acres of land in Northampton County in 1744. Two of this family of Aycocks were known to have been soldiers in the Revolutionary Army. His great grandfather, Jesse Aycock, was the first of the name to settle

in Wayne County. It is recorded that in 1790 he was the head of a family of "two white males under sixteen years and upward," "four free white males under sixteen years," and "two white females," and three slaves. The grandfather, also named Jesse, married Miss Wilkinson, and was the father of Benjamin, father of the Governor. On his mother's side, the Hooks family, had been residents of Wayne County before 1800.

Charles Brantley Aycock, was the youngest of a family of ten children. The home, in which he was reared "was a quiet one in which affection, order, industry, and frugality were linked with clear thinking, directness of speech, devotion to duty, and deep religious convictions." Here is the life-like picture of the home, the environment and the atmosphere in which Governor Aycock grew to manhood, written by his partner and most intimate friend, Judge Frank A. Daniels, whose portrayal gives the setting for the simplicity of greatness:

"The community was wholly agricultural. The owners or their fathers or grandfathers had cleared the lands and brought them in a fine state of cultivation. The crops were unusually good because cultivated intelligently and industriously. The largest land-owner was capable of doing as much work as his best hired laborer and took pride in doing it. The farm hand who could keep place with his employer in cotton chopping time was the recipient of warm congratulations. Work was looked upon as the first duty of man, and woe betide the luckless farmer who, forgetting the primal law of life, permitted his cotton to become grassy. If he escaped having it auctioned off to the highest bidder at the depot some Saturday evening, in the presence of his neighbors, it was only because he bound himself in the most solemn terms that the next Saturday should find it clean.

"Prosperity smiled upon the community and as wealth accumulated, more land was bought and larger crops were raised. The only investment regarded as wise was the purchase or improvement of land.

"The population was homogeneous. The original settlers were of English stock. The scanty immigration came from the same source, and was confined to the occasional arrival of an individual or family from a neighboring county. They were a strong and vigorous people, independent, industrious and religious. They had not much of the culture derived from books, but they had a culture which cannot always be obtained from books. They were well informed on political questions, kept in touch with the great movements of the day, advocated and practiced, as opportunity permitted, the education of their children, exhibited a patriotic interest in the welfare of the country, and when soldiers were needed gave their best and bravest to die for their principles.



"They were an undemonstrative people. Simplicity of life characterized them. 'Deeds, not words,' might have been written as their motto. They strove to be accurate and literal in their statements. Exaggeration or hyperbole was foreign to them. A flood was to them a tolerably heavy rain; an enormous crop, a fair yield; a great speech, a good talk. If one was ill, he was 'not very well,' and if he was well, he frequently described himself as 'just up' or 'so as to be about.'

"They had a courage of a high order, but never vaunted it. It was of the quiet sort, that makes itself felt when occasion demands. A typical Nahunta man, whose company was charging the enemy in one of the battles of the War Between the States, engrossed in the business in hand, with his steady gain in the direction of the foe, under a storm of shot, when not hearing his comrades, he turned and looked to see what had become of them, and found they had stopped a hundred yards or more behind him. He yelled to them at the top of his voice, 'Fellows why don't you come on?' and stood his ground until they came. He was never able to see the point of the compliment his Captain paid him in camp that night; his only feeling seemed to be one of good-humored contempt for the 'fellows' who wouldn't 'come on.'

"The hospitality of the community was proverbial. It was kind and unostentatious, but open-handed. It was impossible to escape the kindly, cordial importunity extended on all sides, and it was no infrequent thing for twenty-five guests to sit down to dinner in one of the modest homes of that community.

"It was expected, of course, that every man should take care of himself and his family, and in the rare instances in which this expectation was disappointed, the thriftless or lazy wight soon had it borne in upon him in some indefinable way, that his further stay was not desirable, and ere long took his departure. The tricky and dishonest felt the frown of public condemnation, and could not thrive in that pure atmosphere.

"The hand of charity was always extended to the unfortunate, but only to the deserving. Indiscriminate giving was felt to be a wrong to the recipient as well as to the community.

"When sickness or misfortune came the spirit of mutual helpfulness was a guarantee that no harm should come to the afflicted one, and the neighbors volunteered to do the plowing, chop the cotton, or gather the crop as required.

"There was in all classes a deep-seated regard for law and order and a strong attachment to democratic government. No more democratic community, both in principle and in practice, could be found among civilized men, and coupled with this was the spirit of instant and determined opposition to misrule or oppression, which is always found where democratic principles dominate.

"The virtues of this community are traceable in great part to the strong hold of religion upon the people. The Primitive Baptist faith, strongly Calvinistic, had many adherents, and was the controlling factor. Under its influence men and women, strong in faith and character, grew up, led public sentiment, and gave tone to moral and social life."



He grew in youth with full appreciation of the issues his father and elder brothers faced in 1868-1876. He felt with them the fresh air of freedom when the hand of Reconstruction was lifted, and North Carolinians had come into their own. He never forgot the spirit of the men of those days—men who had returned from Lee's army to make bricks without straw. These youthful recollections with the inspiration and beckoning hands of his Voices, never left him. They girded him with courage and faith for his hour of endurance, when, receiving the mantle of Vance, he was in another crusade, to be the Voice and Evangel of the new day—the day of great things which crown this commonwealth today. He prophesied "the great outburst of industry" which blesses this generation. He saw the vision in his day and was glad. He blazed the way, and more than any other man pioneered the larger prosperity and development which gives North Carolina its high place in the sisterhood of commonwealths.

\* \* \*

Governor Aycock had no divided affections. He gave himself unreservedly to the State of his birth. Since Vance no man among us has been so sound or so well versed in the philosophy of tariff taxation. He kept himself informed and posted upon national questions and was fitted for service in the large field where such ability as he possessed is needed. It was the duty near—the education and liberation of his own people—that gripped him and commanded all his powers. In 1910 he stated clearly why he elected to confine his labors to North Carolina. Writing to a younger man he said: "My own conviction is, that the generation to which I belong, those in and around fifty years, will never furnish to the South the leadership which it must have. We came on during, or at the end of the war, and our environment has been such that we were compelled to devote ourselves to local issues. These issues were important; indeed, they were vital. The future of our State and section depend upon their right solution. But, vital as they were, we imbibed passions and prejudices that unfitted us for working them out, that unfitted us for great work on the stage of the nation. It was my hope, and still is, that our labors would not be in vain, but would produce a strong and broader leadership out of the generation to

which you belong. That is my firm belief now. At present, I do not think it makes the slightest difference whom we have in the United States Senate, but in the course of fifteen or twenty years, a new day will dawn for us, the Southern statesmanship, well trained, well equipped, broadminded, honest, will again be in demand."

Believing his first duty was to his own people he gave them all of himself. If the Republic lost his leadership, how much the more we regarded ourselves favored that he belonged wholly to North Carolina. His rich life, his wide vision, his faith in all things high he gave to us, freely and fully in blessing and benediction. Richard Grant White said of Palmerston that he was "the typical John Bull, with all his strength, his virtues and his prejudices." Aycock was North Carolina incarnate minus prejudices. Prejudice, envy, jealousy, hate were impossible to his noble nature.

\* \* \*

It is the man who says "this one thing I do" who achieves most. Aycock would have shone on any stage. He knew he could command "listening Senates." In 1900 he was urged by his closest friends not to accept the nomination for Governor but to wait until 1902 and accept the Senatorship which would have come to him. But he would not listen. "The people are wiser than my partial friends. They have named the place in which they think I can serve them best. Everywhere I go they say 'You must be Governor.' Who am I to select the post of duty? It is for the servants of the people to obey their command. They think the job of Governor of this commonwealth higher than the United States Senatorship. In this period of crisis, with the conditions following revolutionary and constitutional change, the Governor of North Carolina has a larger opportunity to serve the people of the State than the President of the United States. The people sense the truth better than any few men. They made possible the setting up of better methods here. They think I can do it. Please God, if that is their desire, I will not fail them."

And he heard the call and led them to the larger day.

\* \* \*

This is a day of dedication. Charles Brantley Aycock is beyond our praise or blame. His name and fame are graven on the hearts

of the people of North Carolina. We have come, therefore, today not to eulogize him. Let eulogies remain for those who need them. We have come rather yearning that we may catch somewhat of his spirit. I trust the prayer in every heart, not only in this assemblage, but in this commonwealth at this hour, is that the light that was in his life may brighten the pathway of those who come after him, that we may today, as we contemplate the lasting influence of his noble career, see the vision that beckoned him, and like him we may be not disobedient unto the Heavenly vision.

It is for us to take up the torch, the torch that he held aloft in a day of indifference and illiteracy. Let us swear upon the altars of our country that what he undertook shall be carried on until, in all the length and breadth of this commonwealth, knowledge and equality and love shall cover it as the waters cover the sea.

## TRACES OF THE INDIAN IN PIEDMONT NORTH CAROLINA

By REVEREND DOUGLAS L. RIGHTS

The bold pioneers who colonized the Carolinas, truly makers of history, were not, with few exceptions, especially interested in writing history. Not only did most of them neglect to record scrupulously their own achievements, but they failed also to reveal to future generations much that they learned of their aboriginal predecessors, the red men.

We have, in a general way, learned of the traits of the Indian in the Carolinas. There are a few detailed accounts on record. The natives of Eastern Carolina early came in contact with the whites, and the history of the two races was interwoven from the beginning of the settlement.

It was not thus with Piedmont and Western Carolina. We learn about the Indian wars, but there is little to study which will throw an intimate light upon these men, their habits, customs, and manner of living, except the scattered traces which they have left behind.

### *Territory*

The territory considered in this paper is the Piedmont section. The study includes the counties from Orange and Chatham in the east to Wilkes in the west; from Cabarrus in the south to the Virginia line in the north. The level country of the east passes gradually into the hill country of the west. Before the Indians were driven across the mountains or departed, as some did, to the north, this section was mainly forest land with pleasant valleys, well watered and suitable for hunting and fishing. The fertility of the meadow land adjacent to streams afforded advantages for the crude attempts at primeval agriculture.

### *Tribes*

An estimate of the number of aboriginal inhabitants east of the Mississippi at the beginning of colonization by the whites is placed at about 280,000. Many tribes, speaking different languages and



dialects, occupied this territory. They were engaged in continual warfare.

The Algonquin and Iroquois groups, each composed of various tribes speaking similar dialects though each differed from the others, were the most numerous.

The Indians encountered by the members of Sir Walter Raleigh's expeditions to our coastland were of the Algonquin group. The Tuscarora and Cherokee were tribes belonging to the Iroquois linguistic group. Bishop Spangenberg in 1752 passed through a Tuscarora town on the Roanoke River. Indians of this tribe may have roamed the piedmont country, but doubtless did not have permanent settlements there, as they were at war with and feared the Indians of that region. The Cherokees held to the mountains of Western Carolina. Early reports give account of great numbers passing through Piedmont Carolina, but their stronghold was in the mountain country. The Senecas, also of the Iroquois, came this far south on hunting expeditions.

The Siouan tribes, we know, had strongholds in the piedmont section. These included the Catawba, Cheraw, Saponi, Tutelo and Manocan. Of these, the Catawba is considered the most important. The Saponi and Tutelo ranged from Piedmont Virginia into Carolina, but the Catawba was a strong tribe of the piedmont region.

Some small tribes had disappeared before the coming of the whites, as is reported of the Sawra Indians.

Bishop Spangenberg's diary, written at Edenton in 1752, records the following:

The Indians in North Carolina are in a bad way. The Chowan Indians are reduced to a few families. The Tuscaroras live 35 miles from here, and are still in possession of a pretty piece of land. They are the remnant of that tribe with which Carolina was formerly at war, and part of them went to the Five Nations, and united with them. The Meherrin Indians, living further west, are also reduced to a mere handful. Still further west live the Catawbas, who will probably be our neighbors. They are still at war with the Six Nations (Iroquois). Southwest from here, behind South Carolina, are the Cherokees, a great Nation.

In a study of the aboriginal traces left by this vanishing people, it is difficult to assign to what tribe the relics and remains belong. Some may have been left by hunting parties and temporary sojourners. However, the Siouan group should claim the majority. This was their home.

*The Survey*

The trail of the Indian is easy to discover; namely, follow the watercourses. The Yadkin and Catawba rivers, largest streams of the section, reveal most clearly traces of the Indian. Though the land adjoining the streams has been tilled for years, the mark of the red man is still there. Camp and village sites are difficult to obliterate. Occasionally an overflow from the river performs the work of archæologist and excavates with a nicety that reveals the secrets of the hidden burial grounds.

However, the smaller streams bear witness also. Choose almost any creek of considerable size, and ere long you will find the evidence of former habitation by the red man. A stream only ten miles in length, known as South Fork Creek, is situated five miles directly south of Winston-Salem and flows west. At no point is the creek more than knee deep. A careful survey reveals nineteen camp or village sites. A thousand artifacts of flint have been gathered in the survey. These fields have been cultivated for over a century.

Following the watercourses up into branches and even to large springs reveals traces of the Indian.

If calculations from these surveys are correct, the Indians in choosing camp sites preferred the north bank of a stream flowing west, the west bank of a stream flowing south, thus securing advantages of weather.

A partiality for sandy loam soil is noted, evidencing no aboriginal desire to become a "stick in the mud."

Scenes of natural beauty and grandeur are often marked as haunts of the Indian. Peculiar rock formations, cliffs, river bends, escarpments and other more or less spectacular natural scenes made their appeal.

It is disappointing, therefore, to record only faint traces of the Indian in the immediate vicinity of picturesque Pilot Mountain. However, there were large camps at no great distance. The same may be said of the Sawratown Mountains, reputed to be named after a native tribe. But although traces in the mountains themselves are not so numerous, or are more difficult to disclose, yet the longest and most beautifully fashioned spear head yet exhibited from the Piedmont section comes from the slopes of the Sawratown range.

It may be noted that traces reveal that the Indian did not camp directly on the brink of streams unless on a high bank. The usual camp or village site was located on the second bottom or rise from the valley.

### *Antiquities*

About 7,000 specimens of stone implements gathered in the Piedmont section have been examined during the preparation of this paper. In addition, pottery formed from baked mud, nearly all now found only in fragments, has been discovered in abundance throughout the region. Ornaments of shell, stone, baked mud and bone have been observed. A few ornaments of metal have been reported.

### *Age*

These various relics may be classed in general with the type found along the Atlantic seaboard east of the Alleghénies extending from Maine to Georgia.

The search reveals no sign of great age. Traces of a so-called "primitive man" do not appear. Except in graves or caches, where artificial deposit is apparent, no sign of very ancient human life is in evidence. One report showed that an arrowhead was found seven feet below the surface, but further investigation revealed that it lay in the bed of a running stream, where it had undoubtedly been carried by the water. Paleolithic traces are not expected.

However, quantities of these specimens of the neolithic age may rightly be called pre-historic. Many of the artifacts have been shaped long before the advent of the historians. For instance, the lonely white hunter's cabin, which served as the first abode of the pioneers who began the Wachovia settlement, has entirely disappeared. Not a trace of the colonists' work remains today on the spot marked by a plain granite monument. But the plow has revealed within a few yards of this granite block distinct traces of a former Indian camp. Several arrowheads, arrowheads broken in the making, a crude tomahawk, and fragments of pottery reveal an ancient camp site occupied before the coming of the whites. Thus some remains may be called pre-historic, though none of great age.

### *Handicaps*

The deplorable lack of public museums or depositories involves serious handicaps for the student of Indian life in this region. There are a number of private collections hardly accessible, and no large, adequate display for the public. Thousands and thousands of specimens have been gathered and lost. Many of the most interesting have passed out of the state. Such collections as we find are generally poorly classified, described or displayed.

Within a radius of 25 miles of Winston-Salem there were thousands of whole specimens of mud-baked pottery left by the Indians. Today there is only one complete specimen on exhibit to show the ceramic art. This is in the Wachovia Historical Society, and though cracked, is otherwise well preserved, and happily possesses a record of the camp site where found.

Many farmers, whose fields were examined during the past few years, had been plowing amid Indian relics for years, and knew not what these odd bits of stone might be.

It is interesting to note that this lack of acquaintance with Indian relics leads some minds to exaggeration of their value. It is reported that a soapstone pot, which the large museums of the country exhibit in abundance, is being held by a certain man for \$100. At this rate for relics our National Museum will soon rival the United States Treasury. The South Carolina collector, who is reputed to have gathered twenty bushels of arrowheads in a single county, is certainly a well-to-do person.

The writer of this paper has several hundred very good specimens of arrowheads, spear points, drills and knives from the Chapel Hill neighborhood, which were fashioned long before the savage sophomoric yell brought terror to the campus. He is ready to present these to the University whenever that institution provides adequate museum facilities. At present, the only exhibition of aboriginal remains at the University is confined to the new dormitories recently erected, the mortar of which was mixed with sand from an Indian burying ground.

### *Relics*

Of what do these relics consist? By far the most numerous are the flint chipped implements. Among these, arrow points, knives, and



spear heads rank first in number. Then come scrapers, drills or punches, oddly shaped stones, roughly formed axes, celts, gouges and other rude tools.

Less plentiful are the pecked and polished smooth implements, axes, gouges, celts, etc. The axe, or tomahawk, is usually grooved, sometimes in the center, sometimes toward one end, thus making a snug fit for the handle, which embraced the body of the weapon. These vary in length from four to eight inches, in weight from one to three pounds. The heavier ones require a strong arm for manipulation. Production of these artifacts demanded much time and labor.

Hammer stones abound. These were of a size to fit into the hand, some larger for the heavier work, nearly all having two small pits, one in the center of each flat side. They are made of quartzite, "niggerhead rock" or flint, with preference for river washed stones.

Fragments of pottery are found widespread throughout the section. There are two classes; baked mud and steatite or soapstone. The first appears to have been moulded in baskets of woven grass or reeds, usually conical in shape, then burned. Most of it shows gravel and even small pebbles intermingled with the clay. It is quite enduring and stands weathering as well as the average brick. Decorations sometimes appear, mostly near the rim, in the form of incised lines, small pits apparently impressed with bone or twig, impressions of thumb nail at regular intervals, and some scrolls or tracings well rounded. These mud pots are ordinarily one-fourth to one-half inch thick. The color ranges from brick red to dark brown and even black. Often holes were punched near the rim for fitting handle. A gallon or less was the capacity of the majority of these pots.

Soapstone vessels, of which numbers have been preserved entire, were made from material found abundantly in the piedmont area. Some are blocks of stone with shallow basin scooped out. Others are as large as half-bushel measures with walls more than an inch thick. Some have two knobs to serve as handles. More delicate specimens resemble the modern deep dish, and one specimen, probably a burial urn, is beautifully cut down to the size of a pint cup, with walls about one-fourth inch thick, having small holes pierced near the rim for insertion of handle the size of a cord.

There are several soapstone pestles and mortars for pounding grain.

### *Pipes and Ornaments*

Traces show plainly that the Piedmont Indian was addicted to the use of tobacco. Pipes were made of baked mud, but more often of stone, principally soapstone. A few small metal pipes are in existence. Mud pipes range in shape from the straight tubular to the "L" shaped. The stone pipes are smoothly finished. At least four different styles have been discovered in this region; tubular, Southern mound type, monitor and bowl or vase shaped.

The ornaments are usually of shell or stone, some of baked mud and bone. Bits of mica have been discovered and a few metal ornaments.

Many shells have been found on camp sites along rivers, mostly in kitchen middens, where sometimes a bed two feet thick, mingled with animal bones, charcoal and broken implements, mark a former feasting place. Some of the larger muscle shells, still lustrous and colorful were found. They may have served as spoons or as ornaments. Some elongated shells resembling the conch were brought to light. These were pierced at the end to be strung for necklaces. Some shells are cut round like a coin with a small hole drilled near the edge. Shells resembling snail shells, only much smaller, are found in quantities, some pierced for stringing. Wampum, or Indian money, has been found, shell beads about one-half inch long, half the thickness of a lead pencil, all pierced.

Perforated mud beads the size of a marble have been found, also a few bone beads.

Ornamental stones vary in shape and size. Some are crescent shaped with hole drilled through center. Others are square, oval, elliptical and circular. On some there are scratches or markings, most of them with one or two perforations. A few objects resemble tiny saucers or bowls.

Some few copper beads and discs have been found.

### *Indian Warfare*

Graphic accounts of warfare between Indians and white settlers have been preserved. The following extracts from "*The Records of*

*the Moravians in North Carolina*," edited by Miss Alelaide Fries, gives a vivid picture of the stirring times in the piedmont section in 1760, when the Indians were on the warpath:

This was a year of fierce Indian war, and on the 10th of February the first whites were killed by the Cherokees in North Carolina. On the 12th of March many Indians were in our neighborhood; eight miles away on the Yadkin, houses were burned; two men were killed at the bridge over the Wach (Salem Creek); two persons were killed on the Town Fork. They had one large camp six miles from Bethania, and a smaller one less than three miles. Here at the mill, and at Bethania, there were Indian spies every night. March 16th, a beautiful snow fell, lying for several days, and then we could see the smoke from their camps. Among our neighbors more than fifteen people were slain. The Indians said later that they had tried to make prisoners here, but failed; that several times they had been stopped by the sound of the watchman's horn and the ringing of the bell for morning and evening services.

On the 9th a man came, pierced through and through with an arrow. He related that 24 hours before William Fish and his son had asked him to go with them to their farm to get provisions for the families gathered at a certain place on the Yadkin. Some miles up the river they happened upon a party of Indians, who fired at them and shot many arrows. Fish and his son fell, but this man, longing to reach Bethabara, for his soul's sake rode into the river to escape them. On the further side he found more Indians, but they paid no attention to him and he re-crossed the river, plunged into the woods, where in the darkness and rain he soon lost his way, and wounded by two arrows, wandered for many hours, but finally reached the Moravian town where Dr. Bonn took out the arrow and saved his life.

### *Arrows*

The arrows, such as this account mentions, were an important factor both in hunting and in warfare. They are the most numerous of all the implements still preserved and afford an interesting study. The site of a camp or lodge may be discovered by the scattered flint chips, broken from these implements in manufacture.

Whether a flint weapon was an arrow, spear or knife, we can only conjecture from its size. Sometimes the shape shows distinctly that the implement in question is a knife and has been made for hafting. A large arrow or spear could serve also as knife.

All grades of workmanship are found. Some of the arrow points are so crudely fashioned that we wonder if they were not so made to provoke a smile from some stolid savage. Others so delicately wrought, with long thin blade symmetrical barbs, or so finely notched, that we marvel how aboriginal tools could accomplish the feat.

The flint projectiles examined vary in length from one-half inch to seven inches.

### *Material*

The material from which they are made is largely flint of the varying grades. Some pure quartz arrows, which are transparent, are preserved. Beautiful white quartz arrowheads have been found throughout this section. This is a native stone easily procured. Many tinted flints, gray, brown, blue, black, with streaked and spotted hues, form multicolored variety pleasing to the eye. Practically all are made of flint material, which represents quartz in different degrees of purity. Throughout the world this has been discovered by savages as a tractable stone, readily shaped by chipping. It breaks with a conchoidal fracture, that is, when struck a sharp blow with another hard stone, fragments break off leaving shallow, shell-shaped cavities. Attempts to use other grades of stone met with little success.

Most of the flint was quarried at considerable distance from camp sites and was carried by the Indians in pieces as large as the hand and of the same shape. These were kept in supply for future use in arrow making. Piles of these have been unearthed.

Some of the arrowheads studied were apparently made of material brought many miles from the quarry. Some of the piedmont flint chips and implements of the finer grade, it is quite probable were brought from across the mountains, possibly some from the famous Flint Ridge quarries of Ohio, from which material has been traced six hundred miles.

### *Classification*

A report issued a number of years ago by the National Museum included a careful classification of the different shapes of Indian arrowheads as follows:

**DIVISION I**—Leaf-shaped. In this classification the leaf-shaped is placed at the head as being the oldest implement of its kind. This division includes all kinds, elliptical, oval, oblong, or lanceolate forms, bearing any relation to the shape of the leaf, and without stem, shoulder or barb.

**DIVISION II**—Triangular. All specimens in the form of a triangle, whether base or edges be convex, concave or straight.

**DIVISION III**—Stemmed. All varieties of stems, whether straight, pointed, expanding, round, or flat, and whether bases or edges are convex, straight or concave.

**DIVISION IV**—Peculiar Forms, such as have beveled edges, serrated edges, bifurcated stems, perforators, etc.



Following this classification, the Piedmont Indian made a good showing. From a single camp site in Forsyth County, 400 arrowheads were gathered. Of the many possible shapes enumerated in this classification, every shape mentioned in the list was found included in the 400, except the long thin arrow ascribed to the California Indians, and some peculiar forms found only in distant portions of our country.

### *Arrow Making*

The making of an Indian arrowhead with primitive tools is, to many people, a mystery. It has been called a lost art. However, traces in Piedmont Carolina reveal nearly every stage in the process of manufacture. While there were numerous methods employed, in a general way we may trace the implement from quarry to quiver.

First, large chunks of flint were broken off at the quarry by means of striking with weighty boulders. These were reduced by blows to large, leaf-shaped pieces. These could be transported and finished elsewhere at leisure. Hidden stores of these have been uncovered in the piedmont region.

When ready for fashioning, the flint was laid on a flat stone which served as anvil. We are told that strips of buckskin or other soft material were placed between flint and anvil to reserve force of blows for the desired portion of the flint.

The work of striking was done with a hammer stone, shaped like a large biscuit, which fitted well into the hand. Nearly every hammer stone found has two small pits, one worn in the center of each side. When the flint is worked down to a size easily managed, it can be held in the hand. Buckskin strips were doubtless used also to protect the hand. The leaf-shaped implement is now ready to receive the finishing touches, to be pointed, trimmed down, stemmed and barbed. The many specimens broken in the making and discarded show that the Indian was not always successful in his efforts.

The renowned Captain John Smith left a valuable light upon the subject of arrowmaking when he wrote about the Indians of Virginia, "His arrowhead he quickly maketh with a little bone, which he ever weareth at his bracer, of any splint of a stone, or glasse in the forme of a heart, and these they glew to the end of their Arrowes."

These smaller tools for the finishing touches have come to light in our section. One of these little deer horn tools was cut down for hafting, and showed signs of use.

Holding the flint in one hand, the Indian, with pressure and dexterous turn of the hard bone or horn tool, soon had the small chips flying and presented a deftly formed weapon ready for attaching to arrow shaft.

Different methods were resorted to, but this may be considered the general process.

On village and camp sites the location of the arrowmaker's lodge may be discovered. Hammer stones, anvils, partly finished implements, arrowheads broken in process and thickly scattered flint chips reveal an ancient workshop.

#### *An Indian Grave*

Although traces of the Indian are abundant, after the lapse of one or two centuries, it is difficult to restore in imagination a camp or village as it actually appeared, peopled with its inhabitants. However, the overflow of the rivers during seasons of high water has revealed quite clearly methods of Indian burial. Such articles as deerskin and feathered ornaments have long since disappeared, but the remains left by the receding waters present an interesting assembly of articles.

Modes of burial differed among the various tribes, and in the same tribe more elaborate ceremonials were observed, for more distinguished personages. Practically all, however, instead of following our custom in which personal effects of the deceased are bequeathed to descendants, sought rather to entomb such possessions and in addition to add gifts from kinsmen and friends of the departed. Perhaps a typical grave of an important member of the tribe may be noted in the following disclosure:

The water of the streams had carried away the soil to a depth of four feet. Here a layer of stones was loosened. Directly underneath were numerous implements and ornamental articles. The disintegrated bones showed that the remains had been deposited lying horizontally with head to the east, the body flexed in a sitting posture. The following articles were scattered in the enclosure which was nine by twelve feet square:

- Six conch shells, size of thumb, pierced to form a necklace.
  - One large, lustrous muscle shell.
  - One shell cut to size of five cent piece, pierced with smooth hole.
  - Five wampum beads of shell.
  - A handful of small shells, some pierced.
  - One mud-baked bead, pierced.
  - One bone bead, pierced.
  - One smooth, thin stone ornament, pierced at top.
  - A dozen or more small colored pebbles of attractive shape.
  - One tomahawk and another fragment.
  - One fragment of smooth celt.
  - Three portions of soapstone pipes and one portion of a mud pipe.
  - Four bone needles, broken from leg bone of some animal and smoothed down to a point, in length from one to four inches.
  - Six hammer stones, all bearing marks of usage.
  - One deer or goat horn, cut for hafting, an arrowmaker's tool.
  - Quantities of muscle shells.
  - Bones of deer, opossum, dog and other animals and a tortoise shell.
  - Large fragments of mud-baked pottery lining the grave.
  - Two hundred twenty-five arrowheads, rather small, and as many more fragments.
- From this we judge that the departed member of the tribe was plentifully supplied for his journey to the spirit land.

### *Conclusion*

Today the Indian has disappeared from Piedmont Carolina. The old folks remember when roving bands passed through and would skilfully shoot their arrows with sure aim to strike down coins placed many feet away by the wondering white men. Today the Indian here is but a memory. Only the traces remain to tell of his departed glory.

## BOOK REVIEWS

MEMOIRS AND SPEECHES OF LOCKE CRAIG, Governor of North Carolina, 1913-1917.  
A History—Political and Otherwise. Cloth. Pages, 283.

This book from the press of Hackney and Moale of Asheville, N. C., edited by Miss May F. Jones, Private Secretary to Governor Craig, is a well-selected compilation of some of his best political and literary addresses. It contains also a brief sketch of his life and a brief account of the notable events of his administration as Governor of North Carolina.

The book contains much interesting and valuable material for the student of one of the most heroic, dramatic, and constructive periods of the State's history—a period of political revolution and adjustment, of social, educational, and industrial reconstruction and progress, in all of which Locke Craig is seen from his addresses and the story of his activities to have been one of the chief actors and one of the most unselfish and courageous leaders.

The times in which he and his generation have lived and wrought, beginning just after the war between the states, in poverty and privation, in political, governmental, social, and industrial wreck, called for and helped to develop leaders of heroic mould, of unflinching courage, of patience and persistence, of unselfish consecration to public service—willing to spend and be spent for their people's sake, without reward or the hope of reward save in the garnered honor and affection of their fellow citizens and in the sweet everlasting consciousness of having served them in their hour of need to the best of their ability of mind and body and soul.

Among that honored group of this type of public servant and public leader of those stirring times, most of whom have already laid down their burdens and their honors at their great Exemplar's feet, Locke Craig, 1860-1924<sup>1</sup>—will ever hold a deserved and honored place.

One reading the addresses contained in this volume can but admire the versatility of his talent.

His political addresses and debates are fine specimens—almost models—of forensic eloquence and convincing argument.

---

<sup>1</sup>This sketch was prepared before the death of Governor Craig on June 9.—EDITOR'S NOTE.  
[289]



His literary addresses reveal a rare literary taste and touch, polished and classic in style, exquisite in diction, sentiment and imagination.

In his political addresses one finds forceful and eloquent expressions of the highest political ideals and clear and convincing discussion of the chief political issues of his time. From them one could almost reproduce the political history of those stirring times.

The finest, the most inspiring thing about the book, however, is the revelation of the character and ideals of the man in his utterances and in the simple story of his service as Governor and citizen.

To the youth of this and succeeding generations, I would commend the reading of this and other books like this, lest they forget the price their fathers paid for the privilege and the prosperity that they enjoy, lest they lose the memory and the inspiration of their fathers' high ideals and example of public service and public duty.

As illustrative of the tenderness of his sentiment, the delicacy of his touch, and the beauty of his style, I quote below Governor Craig's dedication to his little son. It is an almost flawless literary gem.

"To:

My son, Locke Craig, Jr., who has been the redeeming grace of my years of affliction. At all times and in all ways he has ministered to me, not as a duty, but as a peculiar pleasure. Whether at boyish play, or waking from the sweet sleep of childhood, he has ever heard my call swiftly and with gladness. By this devotion he will be blessed in the growth and beauty of an unselfish character.

As an alabaster box of precious ointment he has been to my life, and I hope that it will be told as a memorial of him too.

LOCKE CRAIG."

RALEIGH, N. C.

J. Y. JOYNER.

---

OIL TRUSTS AND ANGLO-AMERICAN RELATIONS. By E. H. Davenport and Sidney Russell Cooke. New York. The Macmillan Company. 1924. Pages, 272. \$2.50.

The American people have recently been duly shocked by the oil scandals. Honored names have been ineradicably spotted by oil. Promoting politicians of both parties have been found to be too intimate with the oil interests. Cabinet members have been forced from office because of their oil policies, and a member of a recent cabinet seems destined to go down in history with Benedict Arnold because he sacrificed the public interest for private advantage.

We have rather self-righteously assumed, however, that it was only the other fellow who was lubricated with the scandalous oil.

In *Oil Trusts and Anglo-American Relations*, by Davenport and Cooke, however, we have a work calculated to shake our complacency. The book contains a good deal of damning evidence. Acting on the rather shallow principle that oil is power we seem to have sold our ideals for a share of the world's oil. The agents of the American government from the president and secretary of state down to the most detached unofficial observer, have made oil one of their chief concerns.

In fact, the whole matter of the relations of the American government and the oil interests since the war needs a thorough investigation. Acting on the principle that the United States was rapidly exhausting its domestic supplies of oil the American government has undertaken to fight the battles of American oil companies with all the diplomatic and political weapons at its command. This has meant particularly fighting the battles of our old friend the Standard Oil Company. The government has recently intervened on behalf of this company in the Dutch East Indies. For years we refused to make just reparation to Colombia for "taking" the Panama Canal, but a little oil skilfully applied by Mr. Fall caused the Colombia treaty to slip through the senate as slick as a whistle. And in regard to the oil lands of the former Turkish Empire, the government that, imbued with the lofty idealism of Woodrow Wilson refused to take a penny of indemnity or to annex a foot of land, has recently reminded England that it should not be "dis-associated in the rights of peace from the usual consequences of association in war." In other words we now demand our share of the Turkish "swag." In fact it now appears that the main business of those seemingly harmless individuals designated as unofficial observers has been to see to it that the Standard Oil Company got its share of the oil.

England, however, has been following a similar policy. The English oil policy goes back to the revolutionary ideas of Lord Fisher. He taught England the superiority of oil over coal as fuel for the fleet. With the adoption of oil as fuel, however, it became imperative that England should have an unimpeded supply of oil. Under the administration of Winston Churchill the English

government became a partner of the Anglo-Persian Oil Company. This, however, was only a beginning. The war demonstrated the dependence of the navy, the army, and the air forces on oil. Oil became the fuel of the ships and gasoline the motor power for the aeroplane, the submarine and the motor truck. After the war, consequently, the formerly neutral Royal Dutch Petroleum Company was Anglicized and the field of activity of the Anglo-Persian Oil Company was tremendously widened.

Thus England and the United States have been letting oil spoil the pleasant relations that have existed between them since our entry into the war. England has been making the quarrels of the Royal Dutch Shell and the Anglo-Persian oil companies its own. The United States has been doing the same for the Standard Oil Company. The two great Anglo-Saxon powers have been fighting the battles of powerful commercial companies perfectly capable of fighting their own battles.

This is, at least, a thought-provoking book. The authors seem to be well informed, particularly concerning English affairs. In small compass they have given a valuable discussion of the part played by oil in recent diplomacy. The work is a valuable addition to the literature dealing with recent history.

C. P. HIGBY.

UNIVERSITY OF NORTH CAROLINA.

---

THE PIONEER WEST. Narratives of the Westward March of Empire. Selected and edited by Joseph Lewis French, with a foreword by Hamlin Garland. Illustrations in color by Remington Schuyler. Boston, Little, Brown and Co. Pages xiv, 386. \$2.50.

The title of this volume is not definitive. Each area of the United States in its turn has been the pioneer west in the movement of civilization from the Atlantic to the Pacific: one would not know that *The Pioneer West* deals exclusively with the area west of the Mississippi.

The volume is a collection of twenty-three selected chronicles of the trans-Mississippi West by contemporaries who, in most cases, possessed the supreme historical qualification of being participants in or shrewd observers of the events and conditions of which they wrote. Francis Parkman, Emerson Hough, Bayard Taylor, Theodore

Roosevelt, Hamlin Garland, Mark Twain, John C. Fremont and General George A. Custer are the best known of the writers on whose works the editor has drawn for his material. To perfect the stage-setting for an excellent production, the editor brought to his task of discriminate selection a wide acquaintance with Western literature and an appreciative understanding of the frontier régime, engendered by personal experience in the pioneer west while it was yet the frontier of the miner, the cattleman, and the buffalo. The stories, covering in broadly chronological arrangement the period from Lewis and Clark's Expedition in 1804 to the passing of the last frontier about 1890, present a panorama of the picturesque hunter, explorer, miner, pony express rider, bad man, and homesteading small farmer. A conspicuous gap is created by the omission of chronicles of the cattle king and the cowboy, leading Western characters from 1869 to 1885.

The reader will find in some of these narratives, with their vivid portrayal of the daring, colorful, and dramatic events and characters, a charming and true revelation of a segment of Western life; but, withal, only a segment. On the frontier there was more of boredom than adventure, more of prose than romance, more of longing than laughter, more of virtue than vice, more of drudge than dancing. The motion picture and the story writer, capitalizing the public interest in the spectacular, have typified too often the great bulk of peaceful, serious, resolute, oftentimes illiterate and uncultured conquerors of the wilderness by the bad man and the light-hearted adventurer who were but by-products of the régime. The lawlessness and rowdiness of the mining camp and the frontier town was but the transient froth and foam of the deep, clear stream of civilization that inundated the West. The cowboy was not a gaudy curiosity; he was a natural and serviceable product of the cattle industry and an indispensable agent in the building of the present civilization beyond the Mississippi.

Some of the stories are classics in historical romance, reflecting with more or less faithfulness the spirit of the West; others are largely descriptive of the scenery, the buffalo, the grizzly bear, the Indian—subjects of interest but of slight historical importance.

The sincere student of the West values a chronicle in proportion as it reveals the true social, economic, and institutional condition



and evolution of the West. A line setting forth the price of flour or a paragraph describing an amateurish trial in an isolated Western community is vastly more significant than a volume describing scenery, a frontier duel, or a fight with a grizzly. The historian, then, will find less of interest and value in much of *The Pioneer West* than the general reader. In a number of the selections, however, the student of Western life and institutions will find a mine of significant information. The editor's historical judgment is seen at its best in the selections from the works of James P. Beckworth, Charles Pettigrew, Sir Richard Burton, J. Ross Browne, Nathaniel P. Langford and Hamlin Garland. These accounts are radiant with freshness and replete with significant details of the social, economic, and institutional life of the mining frontiers of California, Nevada and Montana, of the Western trapper, of the Mormon settlement at Salt Lake City, and of the settlement of Dakota by the homesteaders.

The most significant feature of American history has been the ever-present but ever-receding frontier. The frontier and the vast area of unoccupied land that lay beyond, developed the really American part of our civilization and national character. But the free land is gone, the frontier is gone; and gone with it is America, the land of boundless opportunity. Our national youth is departing. We are entering a new era in which our development will resemble more closely that of the older, settled European countries. Now that the frontier has gone, it is becoming a topic of increasing interest and study. Many of its most valuable chronicles are out of print and inaccessible even to the student. Mr. French has done a real service in bringing together in convenient and accessible form these accounts, some of them almost forgotten, of the westward march of empire. In them the general reader and the student may find something of interest and value.

A. R. NEWSOME,

*Assistant Professor of History.*

UNIVERSITY OF NORTH CAROLINA.

---

BOSS PLATT AND HIS NEW YORK MACHINE. By Harold F. Gosnell, with an introduction by Charles E. Merriam. Chicago. The University of Chicago Press. 1924. Pages xxiv, 370. \$3.00.

Soon after the outbreak of the late titanic struggle in Europe, and before everything connected with war had become sacred, there

was produced in New York by the Washington Square Players a one-act comedy entitled "Helena's Husband." War-lords, pacifists, love, marriage and a surprisingly large number of other things were satirized by the author. Among the others, quite properly, was history. An ancient philosopher attempts to beguile the bored king by interesting him in reading poetry, but the monarch does not respond to the treatment, whereupon the philosopher suggests that he try the historians. To this, His Majesty replies, "No, not the historians! I want the *truth* for a change."

Most assuredly the thrust was deserved, for poor Clio was indeed being most shamefully seduced in the very house of her supposed worshippers. And now we are being treated to the merry spectacle of a quarrel between those who claim they are trying to restore to her at least the appearance of chastity and those who maintain that she never was seduced by anybody save a horde of vandalistic Germans. In the midst of the wrangle, it is refreshing to find one who courts the unhappy maiden with an ardor that suggests that she has never been anything but chaste. The sole aim of the author of this book is to tell nothing but the plain unvarnished truth, and just as much of it as he can find that is pertinent to his subject. He has been remarkably industrious in his quest and his industry has been amply rewarded. The results of his labors he lays before his readers in a style that is straightforward, simple, neither high-brow nor low-brow, but altogether delightful.

The following quotation from the excellent introduction by Prof. Merriam will suggest what has been the aim, the purposes and the method of the author in making this study of Boss Platt: "Modern democracy has produced novel situations under which leaders may develop, and modern political science and psychology are developing new modes of more critical and accurate analysis of the traits of the leaders and the habits of those who are led. In every part of the field of social science, there is beginning a wide movement toward the more intimate understanding of those qualities of human nature that underlie social and political control. The economic man, the social man, the political man cannot continue to be the product of arm-chair speculation or a type of general reasoning with chief regard to logical consistency in the line of arguments, but in increasing degree the political man submits to the more objective

tests of actual observation of behaviour and to specific measurement and analysis. \* \* \* We no longer look upon human beings who may be our masters with superstitious awe, but rather with scientific curiosity as to how they are constructed and how they operate, and with determination to reduce the mysterious to the very lowest terms. The "great man" is not merely a hero to be worshipped, as if in some occult way endowed with semi-divine attributes, but he (or she) presents a problem, a situation to be analyzed and explained. His biological inheritances, his social environment, his social training, his life experience, his developed traits and characteristics, measured as closely as may be and with increasing precision;—these are the factors from which the great man may be understood (pp. xiii-xv)."

Dr. Gosnell devotes the first chapters of his study to a consideration of the social, economic and political situation in which Platt found himself at the outset of his political career in the decade following the Civil War. New York State was becoming rapidly industrialized. The corporate form of organization was beginning to take the place of individual or partnership enterprises. Millions of dollars were being invested in railroads, manufacturing plants, municipal public utilities such as street railways, gas and water works, and a little later electric and telephone companies, life insurance companies and a host of others large and small. Great financial interests, as represented by banks, trust companies and the like were reaching out in every direction. All these enterprises were interested in securing legislation that would give them some sort of privilege, or frequently, more important, were desirous of preventing legislation, called "strike" bills, that in their opinion would prove injurious. Either for positive legislation or mere negative action, they were willing to pay. Whenever an undesirable bill was introduced into the legislature, powerful lobbies were on the spot to kill it by fair means or foul. To influence a majority of the legislators individually was an expensive and difficult business. From their point of view it was much more desirable to be able to go to one man and for some consideration or other, obtain from him assurance that their interests would be protected. Hence it came about that the most articulate interests in the State were demanding the boss system. Not that they deliberately set up the boss system,

but the system was one that they could employ readily, and hence when it was once set up, their influence would be on the side of its maintenance.

To explain how the boss system came to be initiated, it is necessary to survey the political situation in the State. Generally speaking everybody was either a Republican or a Democrat, with just enough independents to hold the balance of power on occasion. It is a paradox, but nevertheless true that the Republican party was the party of the great business interests, but its rank and file was mainly agrarian. The great voting strength of the party was "above the Bronx." The up-state farmer and small townsman voted the ticket of that party, not because the Republicans were committed to any agrarian policy of any sort, although it frequently happened that sops of one sort or another were thrown to the agricultural interests. In the main they voted the Republican ticket for purely emotional and traditional reasons. In the first place they thought of their party as the party of native Americanism as against the horde of foreigners who were crowding into the cities, especially New York City, and who habitually voted the Democratic ticket. Theirs was the party that had saved the Union and transformed three million chattels into free American citizens (although black withal) with all the rights and privileges pertaining thereto. Their prejudice against foreigners did not carry over to the negroes, mainly because the negro was a long way off and the foreigner was near at hand, but also because the negro somehow or other symbolized the righteous cause for which their party had been founded in the first place. They loved him for the very sombreness of his black skin. Had he been yellow or red or green, these stolid farmers no doubt would have been alienated from him for being so unseemly in the gaudiness of his pigment. Unthinkingly and irrationally they continued to vote as they and their fathers had shot—against the South. With so firm a foundation of fools, it was relatively an easy task for any group of individuals to build up a political machine. Grease the machine with patriotism, one hundred per cent Americanism, bloody shirts, prejudice, buncombe and the like, and then use it for the manufacture of power, place and wealth for its operators. We must be careful to distinguish two things. We must not suppose the machine was the creation of the business interests because it served



them well and on the whole continuously. It was created and operated by politicians for their own group interest. They used it for business interests because business could and would pay for the service.

Platt did not create the machine, but inherited, or we should say, captured it. Its history would take us back to the days of Weed and Seward when its label was "Whig." Some five or six years before the Civil War the label was changed to "Republican," but except for the mending of some minor parts it was the same machine. For a while Reuben Fenton and then Roscoe Conkling operated it and then came Platt. Why Platt and not some other leader captured it, Dr. Gosnell attempts to explain, but even he does not seem to be wholly satisfied with his explanation. On the whole it may be said that Platt "willed" to control the machine with greater singleness of purpose than any of the other leaders. Once he was in control, his maintenance in power was relatively easy. His organization resembled that of an army. Platt was chief of staff and in every part of the State he had his lieutenants, or as Dr. Gosnell calls them, field marshalls. To 49 Broadway, Platt's headquarters, they all came more or less regularly, being generally supplied with free transportation by the railway corporations whose interests they served. Sunday was the usual meeting day, and Senator Platt's "Sunday School" was for years and years a famous institution. The subject for discussion in the "Sunday School" was not the science of good government, one may be sure, but how the machine could be kept working smoothly and how best it could serve its crew individually and collectively—a crew whose bond of union was "the cohesive power of public plunder." By this phrase it is not meant to insinuate that they were all grafters in the ordinary sense of the word. Some grafters there undoubtedly were, as was later proved in various legislative investigations, and no doubt there were others against whom no overt illegal act was ever proved. In the main, however, their graft was "honest." Did the Equitable Life Assurance Society desire some positive legislation or to prevent some "strike" law or other? Then it contributed heavily to the Republican campaign fund and besides employed Chauncey M. Depew, one of the more respectable members of the crew, at a salary of \$20,000 per year for services which he himself could not name when called upon to do so.

This is a typical incident in the history of the machine. By such methods it kept itself going. For fuller details the reader is earnestly besought to peruse at length this excellent book. When we have more like it, someone like Prof. Merriam will be able to make "a more intensive comparative study of the qualities or traits of leaders" much to the enrichment of our knowledge of the science of government. Is it too much to hope that the next study published by the University of Chicago Press will be a little more carefully proof-read?

B. B. KENDRICK.

NORTH CAROLINA COLLEGE FOR WOMEN.

---

GROVER CLEVELAND; THE MAN AND THE STATESMAN: An authorized Biography.

By Robert McElroy, with an introduction by Elihu Root. (New York and London: Harper and Brothers. 1923. Vol. I, pages ix, 359; Vol. II, pages 427. \$10.00).

The historians have dealt more kindly with Grover Cleveland than his contemporaries did. Each successive text-book of American history that has appeared during the years that have elapsed since he laid down the duties of his high office amidst the storm and stress of the "heart-breaking nineties," has placed him on a little higher pedestal than its predecessor. The reason for this is not difficult to see. Cleveland is remembered mainly for the stout opposition he gave to the forces that were endeavoring to foist upon the country a debased coinage system. The idea for which he stood prevailed. Either as a result of the firm establishment of the gold standard for which he fought, bled and died (politically), or as a *post hoc sed non propter hoc proposition*, no one knows which and it makes no difference, the country has prospered greatly during the two decades and more that have followed his second administration. But most of us, even the historians, reason according to the Latin phrase quoted. Q. E. D. Grover Cleveland was a great man.

The words uttered by Mark Antony over the dead body of the great Julius to the effect that the evil that men do lives after them while the good is interred with their bones, may in some instances be true, but they are usually not true. Had they been true then, Antony and the young Octavius would not have come so easily to

power in the declining Roman republic. The capitalization of the good or the supposed good in the great dead by his followers, is an ancient political expedient, that still survives with us. Even those who were not always followers during the life-time of the honored one, frequently place themselves on the band-wagon with almost indecent haste. A little reflection will serve to furnish anyone with numerous examples of this very human tendency among his contemporaries in the politician brotherhood. Not only that but we are all prone to bolster up the principles for which we stand—principles that are designed to uphold our private interests or group or class interests—by identifying them with the principles for which the honored dead gave his very soul. Antony's dictum is reversed. The good survives, the bad is interred. To disinter the bad becomes sacrilege, and the one who undertakes the task is at best a muckraker, at worst, a traitor. If the writer of a text-book puts in just a little of the bad, his book is prescribed and the author is banished into utter darkness. And Mr. Ford's definition of history is at least partially justified.

Now Mr. Elihu Root has ever been the champion of vested interests. He is able, so every one says. He is well versed in the law. He has served his clients well. His fees are large and it is generally understood that he earns them. In character he is far and away above the ordinary politician. There is nothing of pettifogging about him. He despises "machine" politics, and he has never been a favorite with the machine politician. He has much in common with Grover Cleveland even though they belonged to opposite parties. In his introduction to Dr. McElroy's book, he writes of Cleveland: "There was nothing visionary or fanatical about him, but he had a natural hatred for fraud and false pretense, and a strong instinct for detecting the essential quality of conduct by the application of old and simple tests of morality. \* \* \* No thoughtful and patriotic American \* \* \* can read the story of those administrations without admiration and sympathy, or without a sense of satisfaction that his country can on occasion produce and honor such a man as Grover Cleveland (p. xi)."

At this point Dr. McElroy takes up the theme and proceeds in some seven hundred odd pages, to prove seriatim and in detail that in all the questions of moment that came before him, Mr. Cleveland

was right and his opponents wrong. Now let the reviewer hasten to state that Dr. McElroy may be eminently correct in his contention. But he submits with due deference to the learned doctor, that this is the very essence of the "drool" method in history. If the historian is to be a scientist, he has no more business to deal with morals than has a biologist. If there is presented to the biologist a strange new creature that apparently belongs to the *genus Brachyura*, it is his duty to classify him without attempting to make out a case for him and to prove that he is either better or worse than other crabs. If he is predatory in his habits, in all fairness that must be set down, and if he is content with a vegetable diet, that should also be set down. Whether predatory or vegetarian, like other Crustacea, he doubtless serves his purpose as a scavenger of the sea. The question of his morals may safely be left to the wisdom of the omniscient theologians.

Now we are told that Grover Cleveland had "dogged determination," possessed "rugged honesty," "immovable integrity," and a host of other virtues that are expressed in the most general terms and that might be applied to a great many people. Such phrases do not classify a man; they obscure him and only generalize about him. We are told that Mr. Cleveland believed in the principle of equal rights for all and special privileges for none. Therefore he was an opponent of the protective tariff. But why was he so solicitous to pull the chestnuts out of the fire for the brethren of Wall Street by his unseemly anxiety to have the Sherman Silver-purchase act repealed? Why the bond dealings with the Belmont-Ryan-Morgan syndicate when the maintenance of the gold standard was primarily of benefit to that very group and of precious little moment to the great body of farmers and laborers who had elected him? Why was he so cock-sure that "Bryanism" was foreign to the traditions of the Democratic party and that the "honest gold dollar," that had almost doubled in purchasing power in a quarter century, was of the very essence of true Jeffersonianism or of Jacksonianism, that was identified in the popular mind with the struggle against the forces of money monopoly and concentrated control of credit and currency? How could he at once believe in the equality of opportunity for all men and yet use the whole power of the Federal government to crush a strike and destroy a labor union, which was the only possible method



left open to laborers to acquire an equality of bargaining power with their employers? Why did he give the remaining strength he had in his "sunset days" to Thomas Fortune Ryan in reestablishing the respectability of the great life insurance companies that had most flagrantly betrayed the trust reposed in them by their policy-holders?

Had Dr. McElroy undertaken to answer questions like these in some other way than by saying Cleveland possessed rugged honesty, he might have helped us in determining what particular sort of Crustacean he really was. In his own day the western and southern farmers did not think of Mr. Cleveland as belonging to the *genus Brachyura* at all but to the family of the *Cimicidae*, i. e. bug. He was of the same sort as gave its name to one of Poe's tales. Their honesty was probably quite as "rugged" as that of Messrs. McElroy, Root, or even Cleveland, Mr. H. L. Mencken to the contrary notwithstanding.

BENJ. B. KENDRICK.

NORTH CAROLINA COLLEGE FOR WOMEN.

---

SOME MEMORIES OF THE CIVIL WAR, TOGETHER WITH AN APPRECIATION OF THE CAREER AND CHARACTER OF MAJOR GENERAL ISRAEL PUTNAM, LEADER IN THE COLONIAL WARS AND IN THE REVOLUTION. By George Haven Putnam. (New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons. 1924. Pages 301, \$2.00).

"Memories" are proverbially doubtful as historical material. Occasionally they are most valuable for the light they throw upon affairs with which the writer was intimately concerned, but even here they are apt to contain serious lapses. The major part of the so-called "Memories," however, may be regarded as worthless to the historical investigator or student. For the general reader they serve admirably to add to the general confusion prevalent concerning the past. And this is particularly true when the narrative lacks almost entirely any autobiographical character as is the case with the present volume.

The book is made up of lectures delivered by the author over an extended period of years. Its content is indicated by the titles:

Forward; Causes of the Civil War; Abraham Lincoln and the Fight for the Maintenance of the Republic; Jefferson Davis, in the Light of History; The Men Behind the Guns; The London *Times*

and The American Civil War; The Battle of Cedar Creek; An Incident of the Civil War; General Grant; Letters from a Virginia Prison, 1864-1865; Israel Putnam.

In character the book is inaccurate, absurdly so—unscholarly, and in general intemperate in spirit. For these reasons it is scarcely entitled to any very serious consideration. It throws no new light upon any of its subjects and lacks any trace of freshness of interpretation.

Its temper is apparent throughout. The Civil War was a vile conspiracy, fostered and accomplished by a group of very evil men in the interest of the horrible institution of slavery as well as their selfish ambitions, and with no possible constitutional justification whatever. They made of the War a horror and their memory must always be execrated. To attribute to them honesty, sincerity, or in fact any good qualities is either sickly sentimentality or improper condoning of crime. On the other hand all those who fought for the Union or supported it were heroes and statesmen who, monopolizing ability and virtue, were unspotted by the world. These are, of course, not quotations; they sketch merely the impression made on the reviewer's mind by reading the book. Sixty years should have mellowed the author a little, given him some of the sweetness of spirit—"sentimentality"—of the gallant and generous Morris Schaff, whom he so cuttingly reproves.

Bad as is the temper of the book, the ignorance displayed in it is worse. It is a new repository for a larger number of stories long-exploded, many of which were shamelessly manufactured in the sixties for war propaganda. Here appears again the statement that John B. Floyd, Secretary of War in Buchanan's Cabinet, had sent all the arms and ammunition South for the use of the Confederacy. Never possessing any justification, a hostile investigating committee long ago pronounced it false. Not content with reaffirming the charge, the author describes Isaac Toucey, of Connecticut, as a Southerner and accuses him of having "seen to it that the naval force of the United States, at best but a handful of vessels, had been sent to the Northern Pacific."

One of the first acts of the Confederate Congress at Montgomery, we are gravely told, was the passage of the sequestration act providing for the confiscation of all debts due from Confederate citizens,

to Union citizens. The act was scarcely sound in morals or in the practice of nations, but it might be well to recall to the author and his readers that it was passed in Richmond August 6, 1861, and that the occasion of its passage was the passage by Congress of a Confiscation Act which was to receive the approval of the President on that very day. It may be added that in 1862 the Congress of the United States passed another Confiscation act quite as unjustified in morals or practice as the Sequestration Act.

As might be expected the essay on Jefferson Davis is the most partisan of the group. Davis in the author's mind was a bad man; a conspirator and a criminal. The slightest investigation of the subject would have disproved Robert J. Walker's charge in Europe that Davis favored the repudiation in Mississippi which Walker championed, but it does not seem to have occurred to the author to investigate this or anything else. He has simply accepted what somebody else said without reference to truth or falsity.

Upon Mr. Davis, too, is placed the responsibility for the sufferings of prisoners of war. Is the author not aware of the Union policy in respect to exchange of prisoners? Is he unaware of the refusal of the Union commanders to allow food, clothing, and medicines for the prisoners to come through the lines? Is he unaware that the United States made medicines contraband of war? Further, does the author know anything of the conditions at Johnson's Island, Point Lookout, and Fort Delaware? Has he ever looked into the relative mortality in Union and Confederate prisons? Has he ever heard of Morris Island? And would he be willing for the responsibility for the horrors referred to, to be placed on Abraham Lincoln? He is fully as responsible for them as Davis was for Libby, Salisbury, and Andersonville and without the excuse of lack of food, clothing, medicine, and money.

The author's notions of the creation of the Union and the adoption of the constitution, are positively weird. He says that the states had nothing to do with either. The people of the United States did it all. In spite of this notion he apparently thinks the Constitution was written, adopted, and ratified by Alexander Hamilton all by himself.

No one who knows anything of the author can fail to regret this book. It is not worthy of him and will not enhance his reputation.

It is one of the books that should not have ever come to the press.

J. G. DEROULHAC HAMILTON.

UNIVERSITY OF NORTH CAROLINA.

---

WITH CONGRESS AND CABINET. By William C. Redfield. (Garden City: Doubleday, Page & Company. 1924. Pages 307, \$3.00).

The tendency on the part of public men in the United States to publish their experiences and impressions is one that should be encouraged. It is of course true that many of the resulting volumes have little individual value. It is true, as well, that many of them are written with too full a consciousness of the fact that they will be later used by historical investigators to be entirely unbiased. But many are frank unvarnished records and as such are tremendously valuable, and all contribute at least a mite to the discovery of the truth.

Mr. Redfield's book, I think, may be regarded as one of the valuable contributions. It is rather sketchy—in fact was written as a series of sketches—but the author is a close and accurate observer, and is very successful in transmitting to his readers the impressions he has received.

One value of the work lies in the fact that Mr. Redfield is, by no means, a politician in the accepted sense of the term. A very small part of his life has been spent in office or in political activity. A successful manufacturer of Republican antecedents, he became a Democrat because of his economic convictions. Public-spirited and civic-minded, he was interested in public affairs, and in 1901 was made Commissioner of Public Works for the Borough of Brooklyn. He proved himself quietly but highly effective in carrying out the duties of the office, and in 1910, without any effort on his part, he was nominated for the House of Representatives. In the one term he served, he demonstrated so clearly his grasp of commercial questions and his tendency to master the details of any question to which he turned his attention, that President Wilson placed him at the head of the Department of Commerce. In this position he served until November 1, 1919.

The book is valuable for the light it throws on the Wilson administration. What it tells of that, however, is largely accidental or at



least incidental. Mr. Redfield was throughout the faithful friend and ardent admirer of his chief, and the fact is made clear in these pages. But the book is not a history of the Wilson administration. It is rather a discussion of problems of administration with particular reference to the Department of Commerce, and of the relation of Congress to administration in our governmental system. For this reason, the chief value of the book is the light it throws on the workings of the governmental machine.

One does not gather that Mr. Redfield consciously set out to draft an indictment of Congress, but the fact remains that the book is a bitter indictment in spite of its philosophical restraint. His criticism of House and Senate is sound and convincing, and is based on personal experience. He finds the two major faults of Congress are ignorance and suspicion; ignorance of the "Government of the United States as a whole in its actual daily work in the field where that work is chiefly done—that is, outside of Washington"; and a prevailing spirit of suspicion and distrust of the administrative departments. The result is thus described:

"A government department is also a great business which cannot be run all the time or in all its parts on a business basis, because it is under the control of a Board of Directors who do not understand the details of the business and who lack confidence in the management. Therefore this business—it is, by the way, your business, who read this—has about it curious paradoxes. Its directors do not look at it as a whole and provide for its efficient working as one great organization. On the contrary, they look at it in small details and arrange for these frequently in ways opposed to the welfare of the whole and to the judgment and request of the managers."

Mr. Redfield's accounts of various activities of the Department of Commerce are interesting as is his discussion of its work during the war.

The book, as has been indicated, is temperate in spirit. But it is decidedly snappy in places. As examples of this: "But it is often difficult to visualize the Senate because of the Senators." "They are very human in their assumptions and conceits. Their prejudices, their ignorances, are so obvious. They are never more

delightful to the sense of humor than when they take themselves most seriously. The Senate lives at times in a world apart from life."

The book is pleasant reading and is stamped with the same quiet sincerity which characterizes its author.

J. G. DEROU LHAC HAMILTON.

UNIVERSITY OF NORTH CAROLINA.

---

ONE HUNDRED YEARS OF THE MONROE DOCTRINE. By David Y. Thomas, New York. The Macmillan Co. 1923. Pages xii, 580.

This timely book in twenty-two chapters discusses the evolution, essential facts and various bearings of the doctrine which has been such a prominent influence in American foreign policy—emphasizing its connection with events since 1880, and especially since 1900, with special attention to its relation to "economic imperialism." For the period since 1914 it presents an excellent historical survey of foreign policy—through its narrative of the chief recent international events: Pan-American Conferences, the Paris Conference (and the Senate debate), the Washington Conference (and the Senate debate), the Lausanne Conference, and the International Court of Justice.

Only four chapters (pp. 1-50) treat exclusively the earlier period. The first two present the background, (historic and immediate) and the third and fourth are confined to the announcement of 1823 and contemporary opinion to 1826. The fifth chapter, on "Non colonization in principle and practice" (pp. 51-84), the sixth, on "The struggle for a canal route" (pp. 85-117), and the ninth, on "Non interference in America by European powers" (pp. 184-202), are chiefly confined to the period before 1880. The seventh, on "Non-interference in European practice" (pp. 118-64), and the eighth, on "Interference in Africa, the Pacific and Asia" (175-83), and also the tenth, on "The relation of European claims" (pp. 203-14), are largely devoted to the period after 1880. Subsequent chapters are confined to the last twenty-five years and most of them to the last ten years. The doctrine as related to economic imperialism receives special attention. Five chapters (Chapters XI-XV) treat "dollar diplomacy"—in Santo Domingo, Hayti, Central America

and Mexico and in the struggle for oil. Two others, on recent European and Latin American views are closely related to this subject.

Almost every chapter is introduced by an appropriate quotation from Monroe or from later American presidents or statesmen. One may be surprised to find that the chapter on "The Paris Conference and the Senate Debate" on the peace treaty is introduced by an earlier declaration (of 1915 and 1916) of Senator Lodge urging that the establishment of force behind international peace by united nations is the only method by which the peace of the world can be maintained.

The book is equipped with a good general subject index. The footnote references, largely to newspapers and other periodical publications, are less satisfactory and do not adequately represent the useful body of facts presented in the book. Evidently the author's investigations have not been extended to all published materials nor manuscript materials such as the large mass of unpublished archives in the Department of State at Washington.

The volume sustains the excellent reputation of the publishers, but several typographical errors in spelling appear in the first edition, (on pp. 2, 109, 119, 199 and 200, 324, 375, 457 and 538); "l'Hays" for "l'Huys" or "Shuys" on pages 199 and 200 is probably a mistake of the author. One mistake of fact appears on page 119 (The proposed triple alliance was submitted to the Senate in 1919).

The book is readable. Usually the matter is well organized. The author cuts a clear path through the jungle of details, explaining prominent situations by brief historical excursions into the past and keeping chief circumstances and sequences well related. While broader in scope than other books on this subject, it is less interpretative. Though the author usually shows excellent judgment, he exhibits a few injudicial deviations or lapses, especially in referring to the "rape" of Panama and to recent American policy in Hayti and Santo Domingo. In maintaining that the Monroe doctrine has necessarily implied non-interference in Europe, he appears to have confused the declaration of Monroe with certain earlier statements of Washington and Jefferson.

The author apparently disapproves of the American participation in the Algeiras Congress (which, after forcing an agreement between France and Germany, supported the French claim to the right to perform an operation of the weak sultan of Morocco), because "success in averting a destructive war between the powers was achieved at the price of sacrificing a weak backward nation." The Samoan intervention under the "remarkable treaty ratified by the Senate without any reservations" he characterizes as the most serious entanglement to that time, but elsewhere states that excepting the French alliance of 1778 "we have never made any alliance of any kind, unless the Four Power Treaty of 1922 be so called." American aid to Liberia in 1921 is mentioned as the "beginning of American intervention in African affairs" and as "a new and unexpected development of the Monroe doctrine."

Perhaps the most striking of the developments having their origin in Monroe's declaration is that by which the doctrine of non-interference by Europe in the affairs of the new world has become a doctrine of interference by the United States in assuming the responsibilities of preventing smaller states from furnishing an excuse for European interference. The chapters which outline and describe the process of this intervention on the part of the United States—in Hayti, Santo Domingo and Central America and to a less extent in Mexico—are full of facts collected nowhere else in such convenient form.

Referring to the conditions of international anarchy which accompany the theoretically ideal policy of the open door, which practically may be closed by the entering body of one big man—he urges that the day of international regulation must come just as surely as national regulation came in domestic affairs, and that the longer we put it off the nearer we approach another war.

After summarizing Secretary Hughes's recent attempt to define, explain and defend the doctrine as a doctrine of self defense, the author takes issue—especially with the statement that "Our attitude is one of independence, not of isolation," which he says beclouds the issue. "The changes of recent years," he declares, "have made isolation impossible, and absolute independence of action is unthinkable for any nation not a friend of international anarchy." His



statement that "whatever promotes peace and justice can hardly be out of harmony with the Monroe doctrine" is more persuasive than judicial.

The chapter on the Paris Conference and the Senate Debate, in which he gives a lively description of the battle between President Wilson and the Senate, is probably the most interesting and the most carefully written chapter in the book. In it he explains the wave of idealism which carried Wilson to Paris and the subsequent subsidence which defeated the treaty. In attempting to place responsibility for the defeat of the treaty he says "the real blame must be shared, perhaps about equally, by President Wilson and Senator Lodge—by Wilson for going to Paris instead of sending a commission with a representative Republican (such as Taft or Root) and senators (including Lodge) and for seeking to force the Covenant on the Senate unchanged, and by Lodge (and his coadjutors) for seeking partisan advantage, placing politics above patriotism and inconsistently reversing his attitude of 1915-16. But he adds that in Wilson's responsibility the Democrat minority must share. He admits that enemies of ratification of the League were not without grounds for their suspicions of the honest intentions of some of the great powers when playing the game of world politics. Although he doubts whether American leadership in the League would have saved Europe from moral and economic bankruptcy, he confidently asserts that American advice from Genoa to Lausanne would have been far more effective through a real representative than through an "observer" whose nation was shunning responsibility.

Entrance into the World Court is regarded as quite compatible with our traditional policy.

In reviewing the history of the doctrine Dr. Thomas asserts that the non-colonization feature has been fairly well enforced, though not always, and that even voluntary transfers or cessions have been successfully opposed; that the corollary promise never to interfere with existing European colonies was not seriously broken before the ejection of Spain from Cuba and Porto Rico in 1898; that the pledge of non-participation in European political conferences was consistently kept until 1880, but this policy of abstention from European affairs was put to several severe tests thereafter—the latest being the Paris peace conference of 1919, the Washington conference of

1922, relations in connection with the Turkish problem and the Lausanne conference in 1920-22, in which the United States sought to participate in shaping international policies while refusing to assume a corresponding responsibility, and the pressure on the Bolshevik Government of Russia; that the allied debts to the United States (a heritage of the World War) have furnished another lever for interference in European affairs: That the promise to recognize *de facto* governments has not been fully or consistently kept (as seen in the recent refusal to recognize the government of Huerta and Obregon in Mexico) and the author injudiciously asserts that "the policy of recognizing whatever government suited our policy and sometimes interfering to set up such a government may be said to have been started by President Roosevelt when he recognized the revolutionary government of Panama" (!); that the policy against European interference in America has been steady and has even extended to cases of threatened pressure; that the only serious attempt at political interference by Europe in America was the adventure of France attempting to establish the empire of Maximilian in Mexico and that European arbitration of American disputes cannot be properly regarded as interference; that on the matter of collecting claims there has been considerable change of attitude, the earlier policy of indifference giving way to a more vigorous policy beginning with restrictions on Cuba after 1900 and illustrated in the enforcement of arbitration of German claims against Venezuela in 1902 (when Germany sought to put the Monroe doctrine to the test), and in the later arrangements to administer the customs of Santo Domingo (1905-07), Nicaragua (1911-16) and Hayti (1915)—partly to prevent European intervention and "partly to satisfy American creditors and adventurers"; that our policy regarding participation in intervention in American affairs by joint action, although usually opposed to such action, has sometimes been inconsistent—the widest departure being Secretary Fish's remarkable proposal of 1875 in the Spanish-Cuban war; that the pledge to leave the Latin American countries to themselves has recently been severely strained especially in San Domingo and Hayti where arrangements for accepting a receivership of customs was followed by "taking over all the revenues and the establishment of military government when resisted" and by "forcing loans, some of them at high rates although

guaranteed by the United States"—an interference in which the author seems to see the "sinister shadow of economic imperialism" forecasting political imperialism.

Dr. Thomas does not agree with those who, holding that the Monroe doctrine is the same today that it was in 1823 when proclaimed out of self interest, assume that we must "either wield the big stick, or else give up the doctrine and let Europeans wield the stick." To force Caribbean states to pay their debts while commonwealths of the United States are not compelled to pay he regards as "a strange spectacle of inconsistency." Doubting whether (since the disappearance of the old political system of Europe) American safety needs as much attention as formerly, and especially whether that safety can still be best promoted by a policy of isolation when changed conditions have brought power and new responsibility and compel close association with nations which were remote in 1823, he asks "whether we are not now strong enough, and under moral obligation, to take more thought of others, not quite so much for ourselves." He does not favor the abandonment of the doctrine—especially not "if the world is to go in the old way, each nation for itself . . . and letting the devil take the hindmost"—but he predicts that when no one nation shall dominate and give law for half of the earth, but when all shall coöperate in counsel for the common good—the "advanced" nations instead of mutually guaranteeing each to the other their island possessions in the Pacific cease to advance" at the expense of weaker nations and mutually pledging themselves to restrain anyone who does—the doctrine "will have become what Woodrow Wilson sought to make it, the guiding principle of action for the nations of the earth."

JAMES MORTON CALLAHAN.

WEST VIRGINIA UNIVERSITY.

---

SOCIOLOGY AND POLITICAL THEORY: A CONSIDERATION OF THE SOCIOLOGICAL BASIS OF POLITICS. By Harry Elmer Barnes, Ph.D., New York, Alfred A. Knopf, 1924. Pages xiii, 260.

This book was not written for "the tired business man," and hence is not a fit substitute for the "movies." But for those having either a theoretical or a practical interest in social or political matters it is

more than stimulating. It was begun as a doctor's dissertation and still bears many of the ear-marks of the tribe into which it barely escaped being born. But had it suffered such a birth it would certainly have been a chief of its clan. Begun in 1915, before the Wellsian movement toward synthesis had gotten under way and before such courses as that of "Contemporary Civilization" at Columbia had emphasized the need of correlating for the student the data of the various social sciences, it is in keeping with both these tendencies.

The writer, formerly an instructor in history at Columbia University and now professor of historical sociology at Smith College, is one of the most able of the younger generation in his field—and his field seems to be limited only by the bounds of the social sciences. Reacting from the pre-war tendency toward narrow specialization with its inevitable nearsightedness and pedantry, Professor Barnes represents the newer movement toward constructive synthesis. Though the latter may present the contrary danger of superficiality one would scarcely bring such a charge against the present work.

The main theme of the book is indicated in the sub-title. At the outset it shows by numerous references to the works of leading sociologists and political scientists how the earlier concepts of the state as "a single unique entity," "an end in itself," existing from the beginning of things, and its own excuse for being have given place to the idea that the only justification for political government is social utility. If this be true then sociology, combining its own findings with those of its sister sciences and seeking to throw light upon social needs, tendencies and problems, must bear a basic relation to the science of politics. What is the best form of government? "There is no absolutely 'best' . . . The desirable type of government is that which is best suited to the needs of the existing society at a particular time." Thus elasticity is necessary to meet changing conditions. The old legalistic method of forcing the application of ancient shibboleths and "sacred principles" to new situations often with the most obvious irrationality is going by the boards. We are coming to realize that the student of society has much more that is vital to offer the political theorist and the practical statesman than the mustiest constitutional lawyer.

Not that the sociologists have discovered panaceas for the numerous ills of the body politic; they are not as a rule utopians, either social-



istic or anarchistic. Their science is young and many of the problems with which they deal do not admit of final "solutions." But they have amassed considerable data which the political scientist cannot ignore and are roughly charting a course which must command the attention of the statesman if civilization is to be saved from the rocks.

The contributions of sociology to political theory are discussed in relation to such subjects as the origin and nature of the state, the process of government, the scope of state activity, international relations, and theories of sovereignty, liberty, rights, and progress. The attitudes of the leading sociologists toward such specific questions as representation of vocations and special interests, social legislation, blue-law restrictions, nationalism, imperialism and the League of Nations are also discussed.

For the benefit of those who wish to carry the study further the book is well annotated and has an excellent bibliography.

A. M. ARNETT.

NORTH CAROLINA COLLEGE FOR WOMEN.

---

DARKER PHASES OF THE SOUTH. By Frank Tannenbaum. New York, G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1924. Pages 203.

We Southerners have always been more or less sensitive to "yankee" criticism, a reaction explained in large measure no doubt by the fact that such criticism has often been pharisaical. It might be said moreover that we are inclined to be over-sensitive to criticism in general, regardless of its source, method or spirit. Perhaps our long defense of an unfortunate institution in the face of galling attacks developed a sort of complex. However along with the spirit of the age we seem to be growing more tolerant of the outside critic and more inclined to turn the searchlight upon our own institutions, traditions and tendencies.

Here is a critic who is not a yankee—nor a Pharisee. Frank Tannenbaum was born an Austrian Jew. He was brought by his parents to this country when still a child and kept for several years on a farm in Massachusetts. Too restless to endure the "boredom" of rural life, he ran away from home as a lad and became a casual laborer in New York City where he soon fell in with the "wobblies."

It was in this connection that he first broke into the headlines and got the name of being a radical. During the unusually hard winter of 1914-15 he sought in vain to obtain permission to house a shivering group of unemployed in one of the churches. Indignant that an institution supposed to minister to the needs of humanity should close its doors to these unfortunates, and doubtless wishing to stir the public conscience by a spectacular stroke, he returned to the men and led them into the sanctuary by force. For this he spent a year in prison on Blackwell's Island. He has since graduated at Columbia, traveled rather extensively in this country and Mexico, written three books and a number of magazine articles though he is still barely thirty. He spent a season at Camp Sevier near Greenville, S. C., where he first developed his interest in Southern problems, and has since made several tours of the South visiting with friends in the Carolinas, Georgia, Florida, and Texas.

Mindful of his youthful escapade one might expect to find Tannenbaum volcanic. But this he certainly is not. One may disagree with him in certain of his ideas but one must admit that he is dispassionate and is earnestly striving to be fair. In speaking of the Ku Klux Klan, which he regards as a very unwholesome and dangerous force, he indulges no tirade of abuse against its membership. It is worse than futile, he thinks, to attempt an explanation of a mass movement by abusing its participants. "There is little use in implying evil motives to people dedicated to a cause we condemn. This is too easy an explanation. As such it is subject to the suspicion of being untrue. Sincerity is a common virtue, and must not be denied in an analysis of group behavior." Thus without abusing either individuals or groups he tries from the standpoint of the social psychologist to explain the causes and consequences of the Ku Klux Klan, paternalism in the mill village, prison conditions, and the agrarian situation.

The chapter on the Ku Klux is at once the most original and the most vulnerable. There is little new of course in the idea that the Klan is "a thing of passion" rather than reason; that it sprang from tradition and prejudice; that it feeds upon the common love of mystery, excitement, and gregarious combativeness; and that, since these forces are among the greatest obstacles in the way of social progress, the thing is a great misfortune to the country. Let us note some of

his more original contributions to the subject (not meaning to imply that they are altogether new). The Klan, he says, furnishes an "emotional outlet" amid the oppressive monotony of the rural South. True, no doubt, but the point loses some of its force when we recall the tremendous strength of the order in many of the large cities of the North. We cannot have our attention called too often, however, to the need for more wholesome means of expression for those irrepressible emotional tendencies which otherwise crop out in unfortunate ways. Much emphasis is placed also upon the after-war psychology. The war greatly "intensified the habit of violence" and left an unspent hate to seek another object upon which to vent itself. This would certainly seem to go far toward explaining the immense growth of the Klan in the country as a whole since the armistice, and perhaps if we use the word "origin" in a sufficiently broad sense it is not out of place in a discussion of "its social origin in the South." Other effects of the war which he thinks stimulated the Ku Klux in this section were that it expanded the negro's horizon, increased for a time his economic power, and tolled him northward; so that the determination to "keep him in his place" was intensified. The general progress of the negro race since freedom, with its implied threat of upsetting the social status, is offered as one of the factors which tended to call for the K. K. K. Finally comes the question of sex—dangerous ground but of compelling interest to the psychoanalyst. Mr. Tannenbaum thinks that the over-sensitiveness of white men in some parts of the South in reference to the sanctity of the women of their race is "the compensation for the lack of protection which the colored women have to endure," a sort of "defense mechanism," or complex.

It is always difficult to maintain one's perspective and keep a due sense of proportion in discussing a nation-wide movement from the viewpoint of a particular section. The K. K. K. represents a convergence of a multiplicity of forces extremely difficult to analyze. The animus of the thing as a whole, for example, is directed against negroes, Catholics, Jews, foreigners, "radicals" (often meaning mere liberals), "modernists" (including scientists and those advocating or practicing unconventional ethical standards), and sometimes organized labor, the distribution of emphasis in any given locality depending upon the strength of the groups which the righteous feel that

God has called them to fight. In fairness to Mr. Tannenbaum be it said that he has no illusions of having said the last word on his subject.

Under the heading "The South Buries Its Anglo-Saxons," a chapter is devoted to the mill village, paternalism being the central theme. "I am not talking," he says, "about wages, hours of labor, child labor, or conditions of labor. I am talking about the stripping of a large section of the Southern community of its contacts with the world." Life in the mill village is extremely deadening, he holds, because the community, altogether too homogeneous to begin with, is socially and spiritually isolated, and is dominated in almost every phase of its being by the management of the mill. Not that the latter is harshly tyrannical; on the contrary, it is often very kindly, almost fatherly; but it allows no opportunity for the development of personality and initiative. The system doubtless makes for economy and for harmony between employers and workers. It is evidently good business for the owner, and it probably affords a higher standard of living after a fashion for the worker; but it tends to rob the latter of a chance to outgrow his mental childhood, to rise above his situation if he has the ability to do so, and on the other hand to rob the world of possible leadership and creative genius. The author is here dealing with an extremely vital problem. Though by no means the first to appreciate it, he has presented it with much force and some originality. "The way out," he says, "is apparently to compel the mill to secure its labor as other industries do" and to surrender its power over the domestic and social life of the community. (He does not say how this is to be accomplished.) He believes, furthermore, that new blood should be brought in by immigration.

The chapter on prisons should be read only by those who have a heart, and will have a meaning only for those who have risen above the barbarous conceptions of society's duty toward its unsocial members.

His discussion of "The Single Crop: Its Social Consequences in the South" is quite worth while but seems the least original. He apparently fails to appreciate the strength and possibilities of the coöperative movement in this section.



One of the most interesting points in the book is the idea that the South is suffering from a "fixation" upon the negro problem which needs to be broken up by the development of greater interest in other problems. This would not only help toward the solution of the latter but, by relieving the tension upon it, would make for a more dispassionate and hence a more rational attitude on all sides toward our "darkest phase" in the South.

A. M. ARNETT.

NORTH CAROLINA COLLEGE FOR WOMEN.

---

A LIFE OF WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE. Joseph Quincy Adams. Pages 561; Illustrations. Boston and New York, Houghton Mifflin Company, 1923.

With the vast quantity of Shakespeariana already on the shelves of the libraries, it would appear that any real contribution to the subject would be impossible. As Dr. Furness used to say of Hamlet, so it might with truth be said of Hamlet's creator: "No word that he spoke but has been scanned as no other words have been save those of Holy Writ." In spite of what we might have expected, Professor Adams has made a very substantial contribution to Shakespearean scholarship, so substantial, in fact, that no student of this greatest of all writers can afford not to have thorough knowledge of it. Let me warn such a reader that he should, before beginning to read Professor Adams's book, be well up on sleep and ahead with other work: it is not a book easy to lay down.

Joseph Quincy Adams, Professor of English in Cornell University, was born in 1881 in Greenville, South Carolina, the son of the Reverend Joseph Quincy Adams, D.D., who now lives in Charlotte, North Carolina, having held important pastorates in both the Carolinas. Professor Adams received both his Bachelor's and his Master's degree from Wake Forest College, and his Doctorate from Cornell. He has had extensive experience in study and travel abroad. Professor Benjamin Sledd at Wake Forest and Professor James Morgan Hart at Cornell are his fathers in English faith and doctrine. Professor Adams is now abroad on leave of absence continuing his studies.

"To portray the dramatist in the atmosphere in which he lived and worked" is the purpose of this *Life*. Except, therefore, as they

throw light on the poet's education, on his reading, and on his methods of work, aesthetic criticism, questions of dates and sources of plays—so abundantly treated elsewhere—are not discussed. However, the openness, the freshness, and the vigor of mind which Professor Adams has brought to bear on the relatively meager facts have resulted in a marvelously clear and convincing picture of the dramatist. The arduous and painstaking labors of Professor and Mrs. Wallace, of the University of Nebraska have brought to light discouragingly little that is new. But the old evidence has been reweighed, and many of the inferences formerly made therefrom are shown to be unwarranted. The reader is led to surmise, indeed, whether or not enthusiastic admiration has induced Professor Adams to make out too good a case for his client. However this may be, the picture which results is not only clear and attractive; it is also far beyond any other in its consistency.

Three episodes in the early life of the poet are presented differently from the presentation in the earlier biographies. These are the marriage, the deer stealing, and the poet's occupation before leaving Stratford. From the facts that Shakespeare and Anne Hathaway were married, not after the "thrice-asking of the banns," but by special license after only one asking, and that a child was born to them six months later, inferences were made most unfavorable to the poet and to Anne. Through the research, first, of Mr. J. W. Gray, published in his book, *Shakespeare's Marriage*, and continued by Professor Adams, it is shown by numerous instances that by a prior betrothal, or troth-plight, the proceeding was entirely regular, and "no question of morals would in those days have arisen."

The story of poaching on Sir Thomas Lucy's deer, supposed to be supported by the punning in the first scene of "The Merry Wives," is likewise rejected, not "through any sentimental desire to protect the reputation of the poet," but as resting on evidence entirely insufficient.

Most interesting of the changes of view concerning these three episodes is that with regard to Shakespeare's occupation before leaving Stratford. The tradition of his having spent all the years between leaving school and going to London as apprentice to his father or to a butcher has always seemed out of harmony with his training, with his intellect, and with the fact that upon his arrival in London

he appears as a man of letters, "giving every indication of book-culture, and exhibiting a sure literary sense." The argument that Shakespeare, while it is granted that probably until twenty-one he was "apprenticed to a butcher," had from twenty-one to about twenty-eight a different occupation in preparation for his later work, is based upon a statement of William Beeston, son of Christopher Beeston, this latter a member of the London troupe which Shakespeare joined, made to John Aubrey, and recorded by Aubrey among the notes for his *Lives of Eminent Men*. Aubrey "took" from Beeston the following: "Though as Ben Jonson says of him, that he had but little Latin and less Greek, he understood Latin pretty well, for he had been in his younger years a schoolmaster in the country."

A wonderfully interesting and convincing argument Professor Adams builds with this bit of very important evidence as a beginning.

The larger part of the *Life* has of course to do with the Lord Chamberlain's Company, to which Shakespeare became attached and for which he wrote his plays. Professor Adams has prepared himself for writing this, so far, his most important book by having devoted himself to the study of the Elizabethan period, a previous result of which study has appeared in his *Shakespearean Playhouses*. The present work is therefore the product of ripe scholarship. His interest centers in the setting, the externals, of the plays. The history and relation of the great theatrical companies, their personnel, and the houses in which they gave their performances are intimately told. The story of the building of "The Theatre" by James Burbage, the first in England, in fact the first in Europe, is given in much detail. It is, however, strange to note that Professor Adams says that in planning this building Burbage "had no model to follow." He fails to mention what he must have recognized, that Burbage got the main idea of his building from the inn-yards in which performances had previously been given. The hollow square of the inn-yard was only slightly modified into the octagon of "The Theatre," even to the "pit," which the "groundlings" occupied, being left open to the sky. It was, moreover, years before the platform stage of the old inn-yards was changed into the modern picture stage; and the "pit," which in the American theatres contains the choice, high-priced seats, in England continued to be the place of cheap seats for the rabble.

A summary of Shakespeare's achievements by the time of the opening of the Globe Theatre, in 1599, gives an idea of his rapid advance: "Coming to London unknown and in poverty, he had earned recognition as one of England's greatest poets; he had made himself the most successful playwright of his age; he had acquired wealth, heraldic honors, and a splendid country home in Stratford; and by sheer force of genius he had placed his company in a position of undisputed supremacy in the dramatic world. And he was now just thirty-five years of age." No comment on this accomplishment is in order; the facts speak too eloquently.

Professor Adams takes the rational position on Shakespeare's objectivity in his writing. The discussion of *Troilus and Cressida* offers occasion for pronouncement on this much-mooted question. Is the bitter pessimism of the play to be accounted for by disillusionment in the poet's personal life? Is the "Dark Lady" responsible? "No doubt he put much of himself into his work, as every artist must do, and especially the dramatist; but he drew from his great store of wisdom and sympathy, not from his temporary moods and petty troubles." As usual, the golden mean is wisdom's choice.

One closes the book with the wish that the great poet, so gentle in his life, so beloved by his fellow members of the Chamberlain's Company, might, after these three hundred years, know how admirably, how sympathetically, he is being interpreted. Truly, I believe, he would highly approve this most recent attempt to put him before the world "in his manner as he lived."

By this work Professor Adams places himself with Horace Howard Furness, and Francis J. Child, and Thomas R. Lounsbury, and James Douglas Bruce, in the small group of really great scholars in the field of English in America.

THOMAS P. HARRISON.

NORTH CAROLINA STATE COLLEGE.

---

#### BRIEFER MENTION. BY D. L. CORBITT

THE SPIRIT OF AMERICA. By Angelo Patri. Illustrated by Hanson Booth. The American Viewpoint Society, Inc., New York, 1924. 118 pages.

This little book written from an historical standpoint has for its purpose the Amercanization of the school children of the United States. It is adorned with decorative illustrations, portraits and



photographs so as to impress upon the child's mind the idea and ideal upon which America was founded and has developed. The book is well adapted to classroom uses as it possesses unity and permanence.

The underlying patriotic idea of each national holiday; the flag; great characters, from the beginning of the United States to the present day; events in our national life; the virtues of thrift, simplicity and courage are features of its lessons. These fundamental principles in American life and success are well impressed on the child's mind in simple and unified style, but with lofty emotion.

In one chapter of the book an appeal is made to "Preserve the Language" of America, which is interspersed with citations of some of the most gifted men whose works will live. They did not abuse the language. But the illustration of the correct use of "Hell" could very easily have been omitted, and a word substituted to show the proper use of some word which school children would have more need to employ. School children will not go through such an experience as Mr. Patri narrates.

This book is good for the purpose for which it was written—the Americanization of the United States. It is patriotic to the core, but has a tendency to create within the child's mind the idea that there is only one nation, and that is America.

---

WE AND OUR HISTORY. By Dr. Albert Bushnell Hart. Illustrated by Hanson Booth and Francis J. Rigney. The American Viewpoint Society, Inc., New York, 1924. Pages 320.

The book which is written to meet a new need in the teaching of History in the United States, is divided into five major parts. "Foundations of the Republic," "The Young United States," "Welding the Nation," "Twentieth Century Americans," and "Appendix" are the divisions which are made according to the development of the United States. Of course at the beginning there is a retrospection to the day of Columbus, and from that point the threads of the story of America are picked up and woven into a narrative that is backed up with full page drawings, pictorial charts, maps, half-tone and line illustrations.

At the end of each chapter of the book there is a brief account of a great man who best illustrates the epoch which it treats. A photograph of each of these men is also included.

The appendix is well worth while. It includes The "Mayflower" Compact; the Declaration of Independence; Articles of Confederation; Federal Constitution, analyzed text and meaning; and the Monroe Doctrine besides questions and problems. Such an appendix is an asset to the comprehension and understanding of the school child. It gives him something to think about, and in that way not only teaches him the facts of our History, but stimulates him to analyze and form opinions of his own.

---

WE AND OUR GOVERNMENT. By Jeremiah Whipple Jenks and Rufus Daniel Smith, with Drawings by Hanson Booth. The American Viewpoint Society, Inc., New York, 1922. Pages 221.

"We and Our Government" is a book written for classroom work. It is illustrated with photographs, drawings, maps, half-tone and line illustrations. This book is written on the order of "We and Our History."

The book explains the mechanics of government, law and government, the Constitution of the United States, American citizenship, and various other things. It gives a good discussion of local, state and national governments. Taxation which is important and interesting to all citizens 21 years of age is discussed as well as other important phases of government such as electing the various officers throughout the country.

Such things as the distinction between fundamental and statutory law are explained in terms which are easily comprehensible to school children. The use of photographs of the Presidents of the United States with the term of office beneath each picture is a commendable way to impress upon the child's mind the succession to the highest office in the United States.

The chapter on the Constitution of the United States is very good. All the necessary explanation for the child's complete understanding of that document is given in notes and illustrations of drawings, photographs, etc.

There are quotations of some of the most eminent men of the country given at the end of most of the chapters.

The book is written in simple, yet uniform language and is easily understandable by students of high schools. It contains material not usually taught to such children, but it fills a direct need in order to make the future citizens understand the government under which they will live.

---

WE AND OUR WORK. By Dr. Joseph French Johnson, with Drawings by Hanson Booth and Pictorial Charts by Francis J. Rigney. The American Viewpoint Society, Inc. New York, 1924. Pages 298.

This book is the third of the series published by the American Viewpoint Society, Inc. It is published for use in secondary education, and has for its purpose the facilitation of the problem of teaching and at the same time endeavors to make the subject matter less difficult for the students to understand.

The first part of the book is in the nature of a History, but it tends to lay the foundation for the principles of economics which are discussed in the latter part. Throughout the book the simplicity of the American people is demonstrated with pictures and illustrations backing up the text.

After having created the child's interest in things industrial an introduction into pure economics is made. Such topics as "Classes of Workers," "Income and Wealth," "Marketing and Produce," "Foreign Trade and the Tariff," "Large Scale Production," "Rent and Interest," and "Wages and Profits" are discussed in a very effective manner.

Such chapters as "How Wealth is Produced" and "Money, Prices and Banking" are timely and in the present industrialization of the United States serve an important need in teaching the school children the theories and practices in our modern American system.

This little book was written to aid both pupil and teacher to understand this important science, and it has met this purpose with a new approach to the subject. This book incorporates the same editorial and pictorial features as are used in "We and Our Government" and "We and Our History."

These four books, "The Spirit of America," "We and Our History," "We and Our Government," and "We and Our Work" meet a direct need in secondary education. The illustrations are good and

efficient, and no doubt will create a greater interest in the child and give him a better comprehension of the the subject matter. All four books are written with the idea of Americanizing the school children in the hope that they get a greater realization of America. The method of presentation and development of subject matter is new, but nevertheless is effective and interesting.



## RECENT PUBLICATIONS ON NORTH CAROLINA

*Then and Now.* By Professor William R. Boyd. The Tarheel Banker, March, 1924.

*Burke Pageant.* By Virginia Terrell. News and Observer, Raleigh, N. C., May 21, 1924.

*Black Teacher of Southern Whites.* By Joseph Lacy Seawell. The New York Times Magazine, May 18, 1924.

*Walter Clark, Chief Justice of North Carolina.* Biography, editorial, Raleigh Times, May 19, 1924; Raleigh News and Observer, May 20, 1924.

*Ramsgate Marker at Raleigh.* History and addresses, Raleigh News and Observer, May 18, 1924.

*The Confederate Flag.* Letter of Captain S. A. Ashe in the Raleigh Times, May 8, 1924.

*Goldsboro—The Gate City of Eastern North Carolina.* Chamber of Commerce, Goldsboro, N. C. Pamphlet, 40 pp. illustrated.

*Old Days of Turpentine Industry.* O. J. Peterson, Raleigh News and Observer, April 20, 1924.

*An Anthology of Verse by American Negroes.* By Newman I. White and Walter Clinton Jackson, Trinity College Press, Durham, N. C., 1924.

*True Tales of Old Times.* By Joseph Lacy Seawell, Greensboro Daily News, April 27, 1924.

*The South Takes The Offensive.* By Gerald W. Johnson, The American Mercury, May, 1924.

*Skylines and Horizons.* By Dubose Heyward, New York. The Macmillan Company, 1924, Cloth, 74 pp.

*Pearson's Poems.* By James Larkin Pearson, Boomer, N. C. James Larkin Pearson, Cloth, 374 pp. Price, \$2.00.

*Fort Macon Established Just Hundred Years Ago.* By Edward Elms Britton, Raleigh News and Observer, April 13, 1924.

*Gives History Medical Society.* By G. M. Cowper, Raleigh News and Observer, April 13, 1924.

*Early History of Raleigh Papers.* By Inez Brigman, News and Observer, Raleigh, May 4, 1924.

*Christianity In Business: A. E. Staley.* By W. A. Harper, Raleigh News and Observer, May 4, 1924.

*Clarence Poe* (under caption *Plea for Schools*, etc.) By W. O. Saunders, reprinted from Success, May, 1924; Raleigh News and Observer, May 4, 1924.

*Fred A. Olds—An Appreciation.* By James Sprunt, Raleigh News and Observer, May 4, 1924.

*The Old Plank Road.* By William A. Blair, Greensboro Daily News (serially in Sunday issues), April and May.

*Eastern North Carolina.* Pamphlet, 49 pp. illustrated. Issued by Eastern Carolina Chamber of Commerce, Kinston, N. C., 1924.

*North Carolina.* By I. S. Cobb, New York; Doran, 1924. Price 50c.

*Blue Book of Southern Progress,* 1924. By Manufacturers Record, Baltimore, Md. Paper, 221 pp. Contains numerous references to North Carolina throughout the work and a special statistical table on page 155. Price 50c.

*Hell-Bent Fer Heaven.* By Hatcher Hughes, Harper & Bros., New York, 1924.

*James Hall, A Memorial.* By Archibald Henderson, Greensboro Daily News, May 25, 1924.

## HISTORICAL NEWS

Mr. W. S. Jenkins of Lincolnton, N. C., and Mr. Walker Barnette of Huntersville, N. C., both recent graduates of the University of North Carolina, and Mr. W. P. Brandon of Emory University, have been appointed teaching fellows in history at the University of North Carolina for the year 1924-1925.

Mr. K. C. Frazer, M.A., of the University of North Carolina, has been appointed instructor in government at the University of North Carolina. Mr. Frazer has just completed his resident work for his doctorate at Johns Hopkins University.

Mr. C. C. Norton, M.A., of Emory University, who has been pursuing work for his doctorate at the University of North Carolina, has been appointed instructor in history at the University for 1924-1925.

Mr. F. C. Anscombe, M.A., of the University of North Carolina, until recently professor of history at Guilford College, has obtained a leave of absence from the latter institution to become assistant in history at the University of North Carolina for 1924-1925. Mr. Anscombe has just submitted to the history faculty at the University a master's thesis entitled "Work of the Baltimore Association: The Quakers and Reconstruction in North Carolina," which has been accepted by the department.

The following announcements for work in summer schools have been made: Prof. J. F. Rippy, of the University of Chicago, will teach Hispanic-American history in the summer school at the University of North Carolina.

Prof. W. W. Pierson, Jr., of the University of North Carolina, will give courses in Hispanic-American history and Inter-American Relations with a special reference to problems in Caribbean area, at the summer session of the University of Chicago.

Prof. W. E. Caldwell, of the University of North Carolina, will give courses in Greek and Roman history at the summer school of Cornell University.

Prof. W. W. Pierson, Jr., of the University of North Carolina, has been granted a year's leave of absence, as a Kenan Research

Professor, for the year 1924-1925. Professor Pierson will spend the first six months of his leave in South America, going first to Lima as a delegate of the State Literary and Historical Association of North Carolina to the Pan-American Scientific Congress, after which he will visit Chili, Uruguay, Brazil, and the Argentine Republic. He will take a course of work at the University of Buenos Ayres in Argentine History and Constitutional Law. The latter half of his leave will be spent in Spain, where he will attend lectures at the University of Madrid and pursue work in the Spanish archives at Seville, Simancas, and other points in Spain. The archives at Seville contain numerous documents bearing on the history of North Carolina, which Professor Pierson will examine and arrange to have copied for the North Carolina Historical Commission.

Dr. and Mrs. E. C. Branson and their daughter, Elizabeth, have returned to Chapel Hill from Europe, which they have been touring for the past year. During his travels Dr. Branson contributed to the state papers a series of interesting newspaper articles on conditions abroad as a result of his studies. The Bransons had a difficult time when they came out of Denmark in the fall and set out to go through Germany to France. In Stuttgart a bank's board of directors had a special meeting to decide whether or not they would let Professor Branson have thirty American dollars. They called him into the meeting, discussed the matter gravely with him, explained the great need of German banks for American money, and ended by declining to give cash in exchange for his American Express Company checks. Whereupon he went around the corner to a tailor who gave him not only 30 but 50 dollars for his checks.

On May 7, Dr. Henry Louis Smith, President of Washington and Lee University spoke before the Raleigh Lions Club on the career of Lee as an educator. His address appears in the *Raleigh News and Observer* for May 8, 1924. Dr. Smith also spoke in Raleigh on Lee, May 10.

In the *Raleigh News and Observer*, May 8, 1924, is an article by Mrs. W. T. Bost on the club house of the Raleigh Woman's Club. It traces the beginnings of the first building of this kind erected in North Carolina.



Miss Jean Coltrane of North Carolina, was elected one of the eight Vice-Presidents General of the Daughters of the American Revolution at the 33d Congress of the D. A. R. in April.

In *War Documents and Addresses* (volume VI of the general series *Illinois In The World War*) the Illinois State Historical Library brings to a conclusion its present program of war publications. Among the addresses printed are two by Hon. Josephus Daniels, one before The American Bankers Association, Chicago, September 27, 1918, and one at Springfield, October 6, 1918, at the Centennial Celebration.

In *Harpers* for May appears as the leading article a conversation between Archibald Henderson and George Bernard Shaw. Dr. Henderson returned to Chapel Hill in April from an extended European tour.

On April 26, R. B. House, Archivist of the North Carolina Historical Commission, spoke before the Woman's Club in Greensboro on "History as Literature."

Wilson High School won the debating championship of North Carolina schools by winning the final contest over Durham at Chapel Hill April 10. Wilson was represented by Katharine Ware and Fred Carr. They upheld the affirmative of the query: "Resolved, That the Inter-allied War Debts Should be Canceled." Durham was represented by Lucille Mulholland and Everett Weatherspoon.

Dr. David G. Lyon of Harvard University gave three lectures at the University of North Carolina beginning April 6. His lectures were on Palestine as revealed by modern excavations.

State College has received as a gift from Mrs. Walter Hines Page a copy of the London, de Laszlo portrait of Walter Hines Page. The picture was accepted for the college by President E. C. Brooks.

During July and August Prof. William K. Boyd of Trinity College will offer courses in American History in the summer school of Harvard University. Assistant Professor Carroll, also of Trinity, will be lecturer in the summer quarter of the University of Nebraska. Announcement has likewise been made that Dr. Paul N. Garber, now of Brown University, has been appointed Assistant Professor of History at Trinity, tenure to take effect in September. At the same institution Miss Alice May Baldwin, recently Associate in

History at the University of Chicago, has been appointed Dean of Women with the rank of Assistant Professor of History.

On April 8, Greensboro College celebrated Founders' Day by appropriate exercises and an address by Judge W. P. Bynum.

During the week of April 7, the citizens of Wendell celebrated by parades, pageants, oratory, and other means one of the largest festivals in the history of Wake County. Professor M. C. S. Noble was the chief speaker.

The Trinity College Library, widely known for its *Southern Americana*, has recently placed at the disposal of readers a most valuable collection of newspapers numbering 188 volumes, and published at such centers as Washington, D. C., Richmond and Norfolk, Va., Charleston and Camden, S. C., and Raleigh, N. C.

The largest file is the *National Intelligencer* of Washington, complete from 1811 to 1870. Richmond is represented by twenty-six volumes of the *Enquirer*, ranging from 1804 to 1840, and the *Dispatch*. Also belonging to the Virginia group are seven volumes of the *Norfolk and Portsmouth Herald* covering the years 1817 to 1824; the *Chronicle and Old Dominion* for 1844-45; and the *New Era* of 1845-46.

From South Carolina after many wanderings have come the *Charleston Courier* and the *News and Courier*, ranging from 1845 to 1878; the *Charleston Mercury* of the Civil War period with its famous broadside of December 20, 1860, headed "The Union Is Dissolved"; and a most rare volume containing the *Camden Journal* and *Camden Confederate* of 1864.

Among the North Carolina treasures are the *Wilmington Journal* from 1853 to 1862; the *Raleigh Standard* in the forties and fifties; the *Sentinel* for 1870-71; the *Observer* of 1877 and 1878; and the *News and Observer* of 1897-98.

There are also several volumes of rare northern newspapers, especially the *National Gazette* for 1801 and the *New York Advertiser* 1817-1820. In addition to these bound volumes a series of portfolios contain odd numbers of such scarce prints as the *Raleigh Minerva*, the *Federal Republican* of New Bern, the *Carolina Journal* of Fayetteville, the *North Carolina Journal* of Halifax, the *Republican* and the *Intelligencer* of Petersburg, the *Patriot* of Richmond,

and the *Nashville Whig*—all issues of the period prior to 1820. Rarest of all are sixteen numbers of the *Southern Republic* of Camden, published in 1851 as propaganda for the immediate secession of South Carolina, a paper unused by any historian and unknown to the great libraries of the country.

These additions give Trinity a newspaper collection of over 1,200 bound volumes, which makes a unique exhibit and which form one of the priceless treasures of the College.

The University of North Carolina Press announces the following important publications: *Robert E. Lee: An Interpretation*, by Woodrow Wilson; *Law and Morals*, by Roscoe Pound; *Religious Certitude in an Age of Science*, by Charles Allen Dinsmore; *Analytical Index to the Ballad Entries in the Stationers' Registers*, by Hyder E. Rollins; *Argentine Literature—A Bibliography of Literary Criticism, Biography and Literary Controversy*, by Sturgis F. Leavitt; *The Saprolegniaceae*, by W. C. Coker; *The Clavarias of the United States and Canada*, by W. C. Coker.

President William Louis Poteat of Wake Forest College delivered the first annual address before the honor society, Pi Kappa Phi, of State College in Raleigh, May 8, 1924. He scored the infidelity of those who fear lest the truth be bad. His address is printed in full in the *Raleigh News and Observer*, May 9, 1924.

Governor Cameron Morrison spoke in Winston-Salem, May 8, at the dedication of the Reynolds Auditorium in that city. The *News and Observer* for May 9 carries a full story of the exercises.

May 10 is a legal holiday in North Carolina. It is Memorial Day and commemorates the Civil War dead. The press of May 11 carried reports of numerous exercises held throughout North Carolina. In addition to the usual exercises of oratory and decorating Confederate graves with flowers, and entertainment of surviving veterans, the citizens of Lenoir and Durham counties unveiled on this date handsome Confederate monuments.

Sunday, May 18, was observed as a memorial day at Fort Fisher. This annual celebration looks toward making Fort Fisher a national park. General A. J. Bowley was the chief orator of the occasion, the Confederate veterans of the community were entertained, and there was music by the American Legion band.

Hon. William Nash Everett, Secretary of State, member of the North Carolina Historical Commission, and a charter member of the State Literary and Historical Association, is gradually recovering from three major operations he underwent recently in a Charlotte hospital.

President H. W. Chase of the State University, is reported as normally recovering from an operation for appendicitis recently undergone by him at Watts Hospital in Durham.

Edwin Allsworth Ross of the University of Wisconsin delivered the Weil lectures in citizenship at the University of North Carolina in the spring quarter.

DIED, on May 19, at his home in Raleigh, from a stroke of apoplexy, Walter Clark, Chief Justice of North Carolina since 1903. Justice Clark was in his seventy-seventh year. He was distinguished in his chosen field of law not only as a learned judge but as a writer and editor of legal works. He was likewise distinguished in the fields of history and literature, both as a writer and a collector. The collections of the Historical Commission have been enormously enriched by his gifts, and the periodical and pamphlet literature of the State and nation has been notably enlarged by his writings. His most notable works form a permanent memorial to his learning and industry. They are: *Annotated Code of Civil Procedure*; *Translation of Constant's Memoirs of Napoleon*, 3 vols.; *North Carolina State Records*, 16 vols.; *Histories of North Carolina Regiments, 1861-1865*, 5 vols.; *North Carolina Supreme Court Reprints and Annotations of Reports*, 164 vols. He was a Lieutenant-Colonel C. S. A. at the age of 17, and all his life an ardent friend of the Confederate Veterans.

Dr. James Sprunt is reported as recovering from an operation undergone in a Wilmington hospital.

Lionel Weil, of Goldsboro, is the author of a twenty-page booklet entitled "Our Native Trees," which, for attractiveness of illustration and value as a practical guide to the planting and cultivation of trees, is unusually distinctive.

Noteworthy foreign recognition has come to *Studies in Philology* a journal devoted to literature in all languages and published by the University of North Carolina Press.



Dr. Edwin Greenlaw, its editor, recently received from Czecho-Slovakia a letter from Dr. V. Mathesius, who holds the chair of English Language and Literature in Charles University, Prague, to the effect that *Studies in Philology* is being used by students of his seminar. Dr. Mathesius has long taken a foremost part in propagating the study of English in Czecho-Slovakia.

Such recognition in foreign quarters is distinctly gratifying to Dr. Greenlaw and those associated with him in editing the journal, which already was being used in China, Japan, Australia and other foreign countries.

*Studies in Philology* has been published for more than ten years, Dr. Greenlaw being appointed editor soon after it was established. Its growth and success is well attested by the fact that constantly orders for back numbers are being received. It is subscribed to by all the larger American libraries.

The Extension Division of the University of North Carolina has announced the inauguration of annual contests in journalism for North Carolina high schools. There will be a newspaper contest and a magazine contest, and trophy cups will be awarded the winner of each. Rules governing the contests and other information desired may be obtained upon request from E. R. Rankin, Secretary of the Committee, at Chapel Hill.

Wilfred T. Grenfell, the celebrated English physician, who has spent the best part of his life in the bleak land of Labrador, lectured in Chapel Hill on March 10. His talk was illustrated with 2,500 feet of motion picture films.

Dr. Howard W. Odum, director of the University of North Carolina School of Public Welfare and editor of the *Journal of Social Forces*, addressed the students and faculty of Emory University, Georgia, on March 7.

Dr. E. A. Alderman, whose address on Aycock appears in this issue, has been chosen to deliver the address on Woodrow Wilson before both houses of Congress sometime in December.

Saturday, May 17, there was unveiled near Raleigh a marker commemorating the old Ramsgate Road. The marker was erected by

the Bloomsbury Chapter, Daughters of the Revolution, and the North Carolina Historical Commission. Prof. Collier Cobb delivered an address.

Justice W. J. Adams addressed the Law School Association at the University of North Carolina May 16. He discussed the Evolution of Law.

Historical Commission activities:

Since February 1st, a number of counties have been visited and the wills up to 1800 abstracted and the originals in several cases brought to the Archives Department, these counties being Granville, Franklin, Warren, Nash, Johnston, New Hanover, Brunswick, and Orange.

From the State Department of Public Instruction the letter-books of the State Literary Board, 1827-1868, and those of the State Superintendents, 1868-1906, have been secured.

Two additional record books of the Nash County Court, 1779-1785, and 1807-15, have been secured, making the set complete to 1868 from the beginning of the county.

A book of State grants to lands, in Orange, 1784-1795, and the register of negro cohabitations in that county, 1866-68, have been brought in.

The reports of the commission, 1805-15 and 1824, on the survey of the boundary between North Carolina and the Cherokee Nation, and a book containing the record of military land warrants to North Carolina soldiers of the Continental Line in the War of the Revolution have also been added to our Archives Department, from the office of the Secretary of State.

Other additions are the inventories of estates, etc., of Perquimans County, from the clerk's office; the original record of entry and departure of vessels, Port Brunswick, 1765-1774, a gift from Dr. James Sprunt of Wilmington; a picture of Mrs. John Baptista Ashe of Halifax, from A. B. Andrews, Esq.; the sword of Col. Paul F. Faison, 56th Regiment, N. C. State Troops, C. S. A., from his family; an engraving of the battle of Southwest Creek near Kinston, March 8, 1865, from Rev. B. W. Spilman.

Justice Heriot Clarkson spoke in Chapel Hill, May 19, before the Law School Association.

On March 20, 1924, Dr. Gaillard Hunt died suddenly in Washington. He was at the age of sixty-one and at the time of his death was chief of the division of publications of the Department of State. This department he had served almost continuously in some capacity since 1893. He was Chief, Bureau of Citizenship, Department of State, 1900-1909; Chief, Division of Manuscripts, Library of Congress, 1909-1917; special historian Department of State, 1917-1921. He was prominent in the councils and activities of the American Historical Association, the American Catholic Historical Association, the Knights of Columbus Historical Association, and the Sons of the Revolution, having held official positions in all of them. He was constantly engaged in lecturing and writing. Among his works are biographies of Madison and Calhoun; *The Department of State, Its History and Functions* (1914); *The First Forty Years of Washington Society* (1906); *The Writings of James Madison*; *Life in America One Hundred Years Ago* (1914); *Madison's Debates*; *Journals of the Continental Congress*. To his distinguished qualities as author, editor, and speaker he added graces of person and manner that endeared him to numerous friends.

Carl P. Greaves of Bethel College, Kentucky, will succeed F. W. Clonts as Associate Professor of History in Wake Forest College. Mr. Clonts will return to Yale University for study. He is working on the economic history of Albemarle. C. C. Crittenden, a Wake Forest man, now of the Carnegie Institute of Technology, is at work on the history of the Cape Fear settlement. Wallace R. Rodgers, of the University of Tennessee, has been elected teaching fellow in history for the coming year. Session papers for the year at Wake Forest deal with Agriculture, Business, Manufactures, Welfare and Charity, Church and State Schools since 1865. The college library is devoting special attention to materials for Baptist history through the organization of the Baptist Historical Commission. Debates have been held with William and Mary College, College of Charleston, University of Oklahoma, and Mercer. H. T. Wright won the Peace Oratorical Prize.

Mrs. C. W. Tillett, State Regent of the Daughters of the American Revolution, in her annual report states that for the year ending March 1, 1924, forty-six graves of Revolutionary soldiers have been located, six markers erected, four cemeteries restored, and a list made of Revolutionary soldiers buried in North Carolina.

Miss Sallie Joyner Davis, of the Department of History, East Carolina Teachers College, will conduct a summer camp at Lake Toxaway. Mr. E. L. Henderson will teach history in the Teachers College summer school. Miss Nell Maupin of the department will return to the University of Iowa to complete her Doctor's thesis.

On May 31st it was reported that Gerald W. Johnson, Associate Editor of the *Greensboro Daily News*, would become Professor of Journalism in the University of North Carolina.

Admiral Edwin A. Anderson, U. S. N., retired, spoke at Wilmington on May 30th. Admiral Anderson is a native North Carolinian.

May 10, Memorial Day, is a legal holiday in North Carolina and in the majority of the States of the South. This day has customarily been devoted to the Confederacy, and May 30, the national holiday, has been heretofore scantily observed in the South. But since the World War, in all the States of the Union May 30 has been the date of memorial services in honor of the World War dead, the wearing of poppies, and general holiday observance. The tendency is to make May 30 a legal holiday in the South also. President Coolidge in Arlington Amphitheatre on this day paid tribute to both Union and Confederate dead, and spoke honorably and with feeling of the late General Julian S. Carr as a representative of the finest Confederate traditions.

Mrs. Octavia Winder Boylan, formerly of Raleigh, is author of a booklet on "The Sage of Concord."

The press of May 25th carried news of a prospective Walter Hines Page School of International Relations to be established at Johns Hopkins University.

Student Speakers for the Ward Medal at Wake Forest College commencement were L. E. Andrews, S. N. Lamb, H. T. Wright, B. T. Jones.

Memorial services to Dr. Franklin P. Hobgood, late President of the Oxford College for Women, were held in Oxford, Sunday, May 25. Speakers were Mayor T. G. Stem, of Oxford; D. G. Brummitt, Oxford; Charles E. Brewer, President of Meredith College; Dr. W. R. Cullom, Wake Forest; Dr. James F. Royster, University of North Carolina; M. L. Kesler, Thomasville; Mrs. Rosa Jones, Oxford College.

Dr. Eugene Clyde Brooks was inaugurated fifth President of North Carolina State College, Monday, May 26, 1924. More than



thirty educational institutions sent representatives to the ceremony. Governor Cameron Morrison presided. Honorable O. Max Gardner for the Alumni, Dr. Carl C. Taylor for the College, President W. P. Few of Trinity College for the endowed institutions, Superintendent A. T. Allen for the Department of Education, delivered formal greetings. President Chase of the University of North Carolina, unable to be present because of sickness, wrote a letter of greetings from the University. Dr. Brooks read his address on "The Relation of Education to Public Welfare." His address is printed in the *Raleigh News and Observer* for May 27th.

At practically all high school and college commencements in North Carolina it is customary to have some scholar or man of affairs to deliver an address. Below is a partial list of such speakers for the commencements of 1924:

Hon. Huston Thompson, Chairman of the Federal Trade Commission, at Buie's Creek Academy, May 15.

W. D. Hudson, Dean of the University of Michigan, at North Carolina College for Women, June 3.

D. D. Carroll, Dean of the School of Commerce, University of North Carolina, at Chapel Hill High School, May 29.

Dr. Zeno Wall of Goldsboro, at Pineland, May 23.

Prof. R. C. Journey, of State College, at Whiteville, May 23.

Dr. George B. Cromer, former president of Newberry College, at Greensboro College, May 27.

Dr. Carl C. Taylor, Dean of the Graduate School, State College, at Fayetteville, May 30.

Associate Justice W. P. Stacy, Supreme Court of North Carolina, at St. Mary's School, May 27.

Miss Mary Anderson, United States Department of Labor, at Peace Institute, May 27.

Dr. H. Shelton Smith of the International Council of Religious Education, at Elon College, May 26.

Senator Woodbridge N. Ferris of Michigan, at State College, May 27.

Mrs. T. E. Johnson, State Supervisor of Teacher Training, at Iredell Training School, May 30.

Gilbert T. Stephenson of Raleigh, at Oxford High School, May 27.

Dr. Charles Alexander Richmond, President of Union College, Schenectady, at Trinity College, June 4.

Hon. Charles S. Hamlin, Federal Reserve Board, at University of North Carolina, June 11.

Dr. Howard Rondthaler, President of Salem College, at Raleigh High School, May 30.

President W. D. Melton, University of South Carolina, at Davidson College, June 3.

Dr. Hubert A. Royster of Raleigh, at St. Nicholas School, Raleigh June 4.

Dr. W. S. Abernethy, Calvary Baptist Church, Washington, D. C., at Meredith College, June 2.

Dr. Edwin Mims, Vanderbilt University, Baccalaureate Address at Trinity College, June 1.

Dr. Rufus M. Jones, of Haverford College, at Guilford College, June 4.

Hon. W. N. Everett, at East Carolina Teachers College, June 3.

Dr. J. Y. Joyner, at Chapel Hill, June 3.

Dr. Charles E. Jefferson, Broadway Tabernacle, New York, at Wake Forest, June 5.

D. B. Bryan, of Wake Forest College, at School for Blind, June 6.

Trinity College held intercollegiate contests the spring of 1924 with Swarthmore College, Pennsylvania, Davidson College, N. C., and Emory University, Atlanta, Ga. The first debates were held at Durham and the last in Atlanta. The first debate was with Swarthmore College and was the fourteenth annual debate between the institutions. It was especially noteworthy as being the first open-forum intercollegiate contest held in the South. According to the plan, each institution had a representative on each side of the question, and after the preliminary speeches had been made by the debaters, the audience was invited to participate. Ten or fifteen two-minute inquiries were fired at the debaters from the floor, and the contest was the most interesting and enjoyable debate Trinity has held in a long time. The query was: Resolved, "That the power of the U. S. Supreme Court should be limited." Mr. W. Freeman Twaddell, of Durham, represented Trinity on the affirmative, and Mr. W. L. Clegg, of Lake Junaluska, represented Trinity on the negative. The decision of the audience was in favor of the negative.

In the Davidson debate, Trinity was represented by Mr. W. S. Blakney, Jr., of Monroe, Mr. W. F. Craven, Jr., of Durham, and Mr. John T. Lanning of Linwood. The query was, Resolved, "That France was justified in her occupation of the Ruhr." The Trinity team received four votes out of five in favor of the negative side.

The question for the Emory debate was practically the same as Davidson question, and Trinity again appeared on the negative side of the question, losing the decision by a two to one vote. The debaters for Trinity were Mr. Edgar B. Fisher of Elm City, Mr. Linwood B. Hollowell of Durham, and Mr. William Rolfe Brown of Memphis, Tenn.

## CORRESPONDENCE ON ANDREWS' RICHARD DOBBS SPAIGHT<sup>1</sup>

Colonel Charles S. Bryan, 76 E. 54th Street, New York, to A. B. Andrews, Raleigh, May 10, 1924:

.....

Richard Spaight, so far as any one of us knows, was no relation to Governor Arthur Dobbs, but married the Governor's sister, Margaret. She, and not Elizabeth Wilson, was the mother of Richard Dobbs Spaight. Margaret died shortly after the birth of this son, and then Richard Spaight married Elizabeth Wilson, who was the daughter of the famous Madame Moore, so my aunt, Mrs. Margaret D. Nelson informs me. Madame Moore was married three times: to Moore, to Wilson, and then to Spaight, and I have always understood that the second wife of Richard Spaight was as I have stated above. I was in New Bern about two weeks ago, and Mrs. Nelson, Mr. R. A. Nunn and I were discussing your article, and Mrs. Nelson made the statements as above.

.....

There is, however, no doubt as to the identity of the mother of Governor Spaight; my grandmother, Mary Shepard, who was the daughter of Judge J. R. Donnell and Margaret Spaight, has often told me that her mother was named for her grandmother, Margaret Dobbs.

I think you are probably correct in saying that Governor Spaight was educated at Dublin University, as I have an indistinct recollection that the Dobbsses had some connection with that institution, and consequently young Spaight, who went to Ireland, when a small boy, after the death of his parents, was installed at Dublin, rather than Glasgow.

.....

The following note on Richard Dobbs Spaight was sent us through Dr. S. C. Mitchell of the University of Richmond:

In a late issue of the NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL REVIEW was published a most instructive biography of Richard Dobbs Spaight,

<sup>1</sup>See April 1924 issue of the NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL REVIEW.

former Governor of North Carolina. From this interesting resumé of the life of Spaight was omitted, however, a most significant incident, a pivotal act of his life which will linger about his memory when the other facts which made up his sum of living grow misty with the years.

On one propitious day he held the destiny of a nation in his hands. Because of the way he met the issues of life that day the bloody story with Appomattox as "Finis" was written. To understand the most crucial act of Spaight's life, it is necessary to recall two important enactments of Congress.

The Ordinance of 1787 is generally recognized as one of the most important laws ever approved by the American Government. This one Act gave America and the world a model colonial policy. In noble words it also gave America the draft for Amendment Thirteen of her Constitution. It provided that there should never more be slavery or involuntary servitude, except as punishment for crime, in that part of the Union known as the Northwest Territory. The Northwest would have become a slave territory had it not been for this Ordinance, for already there were many slaves in that section. It was this freedom from slavery that brought the family of Abraham Lincoln across the Ohio River from their native State of Kentucky. Edward Fueter spoke of this law as "perhaps the most important law of the United States" from the point of view of World History.

The background for the Ordinance of 1787 was made by an earlier document prepared by Thomas Jefferson. This is known as the Ordinance of 1784. It provided for the government of all the territory west of the Alleghany Mountains.

If Jefferson had been permitted to incorporate in this Ordinance an anti-slavery clause, it is easy to see that the institution of slavery would have been confined to Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina and Georgia; and thus in the natural course of events the traffic in human beings would have gradually ceased in America. Jefferson with his rare power of vision foresaw this, and consequently attempted to have an anti-slavery clause incorporated in the Bill, but his plans were thwarted.



This clause was later adopted in the Northwest Ordinance as stated above, but in this case the nation became divided into North and South. If the clause had been adopted when Jefferson first offered it in 1784, there would have been no division. He had already written in his "Notes on Virginia": "Can the liberties of a nation be thought secure when we have removed their only firm basis, a consciousness in the minds of the people that these liberties are the gift of God, that they are not to be violated but with his wrath? Indeed, I tremble for my country when I reflect that God is just, that His justice cannot sleep forever." He hoped "that a way was preparing, under Heaven, for a total emancipation." But his homeland was ravaged by war before his hope was realized.

The Journal of the Continental Congress for Monday, April 19, 1784 (page 372, volume 6, Wayne and Gedion Edition, 1823), tells a story of the Ordinance of 1784 and of the beginning of the Civil War:

"Congress took into consideration the report of a committee consisting of Mr. Jefferson, Mr. Chase and Mr. Howell, to whom was re-committed their report of a plan for a temporary government for the Western Territory. *A motion was made by Mr. Spaight, seconded by Mr. Read, to strike out the following paragraph:*

That after the year 1800 of the Christian Era, there shall be neither slavery nor involuntary servitude in any of the said states, otherwise than in the punishment of crimes where the party shall have been convicted to have been personally guilty."

On the question, "Shall the words moved to be struck out stand?" Mr. Howell requested that the yeas and nays be given. The vote on the question was as follows:

New Hampshire,	Mr. Foster,	aye	
	Blanchard,	aye	aye
Massachusetts,	Mr. Gerry,	aye	
	Partridge,	aye	aye
Rhode Island,	Mr. Ellery,	aye	
	Howell,	aye	aye
Connecticut,	Mr. Sherman,	aye	
	Wadsworth,	aye	aye
New York,	Mr. DeWitt,	aye	
	Paine,	aye	aye
New Jersey	Mr. Dick,	aye	—
Pennsylvania,	Mr. Mifflin,	aye	
	Montgomery,	aye	
	Hand,	aye	aye

Maryland,	Mr. M'Henry,	no	
	Stone,	no	no
Virginia,	Mr. Jefferson,	aye	
	Hardy,	no	
	Mercer,	no	no
North Carolina,	Mr. Williamson,	aye	
	Spaight,	no	div.
South Carolina,	Mr. Read,	no	
	Beresford,	no	no

So the question was lost and the die was cast.

In 1786 Jefferson wrote of this memorable clause: "There were ten states present, six voted unanimously for it, three against it, and one was divided; and seven votes being required to decide the question affirmatively, it was lost. The voice of a single individual of the State which was divided, or of one of those which were of the negative would have prevented this abominable crime from spreading itself over the new country. Thus we see the fate of millions unborn hanging on the tongue of one man,—and Heaven was silent in that awful moment! But it is to be hoped it will not always be silent and that the friends of the rights of human nature will in the end prevail!"

The part of Richard Dobbs Spaight in this drama is so significant that this leaf of fame must be sorrowfully added to his wreath of immortelles.

ROBERT SCHNEIDER.

UNIVERSITY OF RICHMOND,  
May 10, 1924.

## DIARY OF COLONEL JOSEPH HYDE PRATT, COMMAND- ING 105TH ENGINEERS, A. E. F.

(Continued from Volume I, Number 2, April, 1924.)

*July 31, '18, Wednesday.* A rather lively night, but nothing serious near us. Today has been a very strenuous one, busy from 8 a.m. to 11 p.m. and almost continuously. The Colonel met me at 9:20 a.m. and we started out to inspect our camps and some of the work we are doing. We got balled up a little bit at the 1st Battalion at Furze camp, as none of the orderlies seemed to know where the camp of D. Company was located. The Colonel turned out all the Battalion Headquarters and had them take us over to the camp, which we found in very good condition and 1st Sergeant Jenkins right on the job. We wanted to see Major Cothran and rode around to our Division (30th) Engineer dump on the Proven-Poperinghe road. We had been there only a few minutes when the Major came up. Found that the reason no men were working at the time of our visit to the West Poperinghe line was that they had completed their task assigned to them and gone back to their camp. As far as possible we try to divide the work up into tasks, and when a platoon or squad has finished its task its work for the day is over. We find the plan works very well. The men do more work in less time and usually better work. When through talking with the Major we drove back to camp for dinner.

We started out again right after dinner to visit three of our camps east of the East Poperinghe line. On this visit after leaving the car on the Poperinghe-Ypres road we wore the steel helmets for fear of shrapnel from bursting shells over our heads.

We found Captain Seelye and Lieutenant Murphy at the first camp 28/G10 Central with F2. This camp is right in the V of the railroad but up to last night had never been shelled to amount to anything. Last night between 50 and 70 shells (5.9) were fired at the railroad. I do not think they were firing at the camp, but at the track and trains that move over it at night in considerable numbers. The shells struck all around their shelters and did some material damage. There was one casualty, a corporal of the Royal Engineers was killed. He had been in the company, 11 Royal Engi-

neers, eight years, the past four in the present war. They had a splendid bathing arrangement with boiler, tubs, etc., but it no longer exists. A shell made a direct hit on the boiler and no recognizable pieces could be found in the morning. The men's and officer's huts are not shell proof, so when shelling of this sort begins, you move out if they come *too* close. The Germans as a rule have obtained a pretty accurate range and land their shells very close to the spot they are trying to hit, therefore if you are not in the very immediate vicinity of what they are shooting at, you are as safe where you are as any place you could go to. Then again it must be a direct hit to get you.

The other platoons F3 and F4 were camped about 400 yards further east on the Busseboom Road. The men and officers were all in good spirits and seemed to like their work even better than being back at our Central Camp. From these camps we walked back to our car and drove up to see Captain George and his men at Guant Farm Camp 28/A28a69. We called up the platoon leaders and questioned them about their work and made suggestions to them. Captain George treated us to some limeade which was very good. There were two observation balloons flying very close to the camp, one of them being almost directly over the camp. I wore my steel helmet. From the Poperinghe-Ypres road I saw the observer jump from his balloon with his parachute. I thought at first the balloon had broken loose, but it had not. I do not know why he jumped. There was no shelling at that time. From this camp we went to see a Battalion Aid Post and Relay Post, and there we found things not to our taste. The Battalion Aid Post was bad and the Relay Post had a poor entrance. As a result I had to get busy and make plans to remedy same, and it took me until 11 p.m. to finish. I came home first and got supper, then went over to 1st Battalion to interview one of the Lieutenants and to find out upon whom to lay the blame and to arrange with Major Cothran about doing the work over again. From there I went to Watou taking the Major with me. Went over plans with Colonel Ferguson which were approved. Cleaned up the atmosphere a little and saved some officers a mean time.

A German flying machine had been flying over Watou during the late evening and had dropped a bomb or two near by. We came



home in an auto and we could see the aeroplane overhead and it seemed as though it was following us. Several searchlights from different points were flashing their rays in the sky and they all seemed to be converging right over us. Of course they were not but it seemed as though they were. I knew the machine was not watching our road because we passed eight lorries hauling big guns, which the aeroplane would like to have bombed. I reached my hut about 11:20 and was soon in bed and ready to go to sleep, regardless of the heavy bombardment at the front. The flashes of the guns could be seen all across our front.

(Enclosure in diary.)

#### PRIDE AND THE PETTICOAT.

BY A GUNNER

Although he was a Hun, we admired his audacity. He came humming out of the summer blue on a sultry afternoon, swooping from nowhere right in the inner guard of half a dozen of our unsuspecting kite balloons. Swift and straight as a falcon he dived, and at the rattle of his machine gun and the flash of his tracer bullets pigmy figures strangely agitated came bobbing and gyrating earthwards under their spreading parachutes.

Whirr! went his gun, and Biff! went the first balloon, a thin trace of fire leading to a scarlet blaze and a gossamer wreckage. Before one could count twelve a second sausage had shriveled into skin and the Hun plane was making tracks for home.

The "Archies" had been taken by surprise. For a moment it looked as if the unwelcome visitor would reach his lines. But suddenly the "Archies" ceased firing, and it was then we saw a British plane pursuing at a pace that could have only one result. The German "sidestepped" twice by intention and once involuntarily. He was neatly winged and he came down in a hurry and stood not on the order of his coming.

He smashed into a cottage like a goat butting through a fence, his propeller going through the thatched roof and his rudder cocking up in the air. The solitary pilot was pitched into a corner of the long orchard little the worse for his fall. He is a small, thin, rather mean-looking young man, and he blinked stupidly at the remains of what had once been an aeroplane. A little dog barked at him, half a dozen fussy hens scolded him, and a very angry and very determined old lady came out of the cottage to investigate him.

She was a typical Flemish dame, massive of build, tenacious in character, and practical in all things. Deliberately and of set purpose she advanced on the dazed airman. She caught him by the collar of his tunic. She shook her fist in his face, and she asked him in the incisive vernacular of the Flemish peasant what he meant by smashing up her house. She ordered him to look at the mess he had made, calculated the cost, and demanded payment, all in a breath. She heaped insults on him, his parents, and his aeroplane.

As she talked all the glory of war and the spirit of conquest evaporated from the flying Hun. He shrank till he looked like a small boy caught in a mean theft; his aeroplane, with its gaudy splashes, resembled a broken toy, and he tugged ruefully at his hair, and flushed and stammered and edged cautiously away.

As he retired the old woman advanced, and I am convinced that but for the prompt arrival of a guard of grinning Tommies she would have spanked that unhappy Teuton youth. Never did a man surrender so eagerly.

When he and his escort had departed, the dame "shooed" away the hens and then industriously picked up the assorted fragments of the aeroplane for firewood.

Daily Mail, July 31, 1918.

The above incident happened east of Poperinghe and part of it was observed by some of our men.

The clipping below shows that the work of our aeroplanes is beginning to effect the nerves of the German people. As soon as we have over here sufficient of the large planes with the Liberty motor, so that we can carry out a continuous schedule of bombing parties over into Germany, we will be able to break down their nerves.

(Enclosure in diary.)

#### DEPRESSED GERMANS

No Paris, Little Food, and Too Many Raids.

FROM CHARLES TOWER.

The Hague, Tuesday.

The following information reaches me from a correspondent:

The Spanish sickness in Berlin, chiefly among the troops, has been of a very fatal character. In a Reserve Division of the Guard, the deaths during the week before last amount to 10 in one company, 12 in another, and 5 or 6 in several others. Underfeeding has made fatal an epidemic which otherwise might have had no very serious effect. As far as can be ascertained, every man who can be spared has now been summoned to the colors. Of Krupp's 200,000 workers, between 30,000 and 40,000 have been called up, and the comb-out elsewhere has been even more rigorous.

Food conditions, instead of getting better, are in many places worse. Even quite well-to-do families in some places have swede soup three times a day. The conditions of the clothing market is best illustrated by the fact that the people have been glad to pay £50 for a new suit recently, when a rare opportunity has offered. Speaking generally, the crops are pretty fair for present conditions. In many districts, however, potatoes have suffered, first from drought, and then from excessive damp, and now their haulms are curled up.

In Berlin today, in some circles, you hear appalling stories of the havoc wrought by the Allied airmen along the Rhine. Mannheim people, in particular, are in an overwrought state, which has resulted, to my knowledge,

in several suicides. In a raid about a fortnight ago several sheds at the station were destroyed, and the station itself badly damaged, but alarms are frequent and often needless. Often in the middle of the night everyone has to scuttle for the cellars, there wait for some time, and then find it is a false alarm.

Daily mail, 8/1/18.

The crops should be pretty good. It is a question of quantity of crops. They are getting a dose of the same medicine they have been giving the Allies for the past year.

(Enclosure in diary.)

#### FOREST FIRE CHECKED.

6,000 Acres of Trees Useless.

Telegrams from Toulon state that the fire in the Esteral Forest is now practically mastered, after destroying about 6,000 acres of pines, oaks, and chestnut trees. What is left of all these trees will be of no use except for firewood, and it will take thirty years at least to make good the damage, the money value of which it is impossible to estimate. The forest belongs to the State. Over 2,500 soldiers, drawn from various parts of the south of France, were employed in endeavoring to stop the progress of the flames, which were fanned by a very strong wind. Three Annamites were suffocated and burnt to death while fighting the fire, and about thirty other men were injured, eight of them seriously. All the telegraph and telephone lines through the forest were destroyed. The origin of the outbreak is unknown.

Daily Mail, July 30, 1918.

This destruction of a forest hurts the Frenchman. He is very proud of his National Forests and realizes their economic value. This is particularly true at this time when every stick of timber, piece of wood and twig has a real value. A great deal of the fuel burned is just bundles of twigs. I have seen several of the smaller National Forests, and they all look like parks with their roads and paths, even now kept in very good condition.

This same economy is shown when a tree is cut down alongside the road or in a yard. The saw logs are cut and saved, also the cord wood, and finally the twigs are bundled up and hauled away.

At Engleheim I saw one of the old-fashioned bake ovens, in which the fire is made in the oven and kept going until the oven has been sufficiently heated, when the fire is put out and the dough put in and baked.

Last night a shell entered a trench hitting a man in the leg, almost severing it. There were several other men in the trench, but they were not injured. The shell did not explode, turning out to be a "dud."

(Enclosure in diary.)

U. S. ARMY FIELD MESSAGE.

From Lt. Marrian.

At 28/A 28G 1.9.

Date, July 31. Hour, 12:30 P.M. How sent—Runner.

Have reported to Capt. George.

Marrian.

R/R to C. O. 105 Engr.

31/7/18—3 P.M.

Cothran.

Sample of message. Lieutenant Marrian was sent to report to Captain George to see how long it would take him to locate the Captain and get message back to Headquarters.

(Enclosure in diary.)

U. S. ARMY FIELD MESSAGE.

From Act. Adj.

At Hdqts.

Date, 31/July 18. Hour, 10:30. How sent, Runner.

To C. O. 1st Bn.

Col. Ferguson desires the following information:

Your location (coördinates)

Time runner arrives.

Sheet 27/L4A4.3—11:15 A.M.

f.b.b.

Recd. Bn. Hq. 1st Bn., H. B. Robinson.

12 Noon.

G. P. C.

Battalion Headquarters did not know where Battalion C. was, and the Battalion Commander had not notified his Headquarters where he would be. Hence the attached order.

*August 1, 1918, Thursday.* Many planes around last night. Spent nearly all the morning in camp. Inspecting and studying.

In the p.m. went over to 1st Battalion camp. In the evening Major Lyerly and I had a dinner invitation at Major Reynolds. We went over about 7:50 p.m. but the Major was not at home. Two other Area Commandants were there and we waited for Major Reynolds until 8:30 and then the Lieutenant-Colonel suggested that we go ahead and have dinner and not wait any longer for our host.



This we did and had a very enjoyable dinner.

Soup

Salmon with lettuce and a delicious sauce

Roast Beef (cooked just right)

Mashed potatoes

Cauliflower (fine)

Pudding

Coffee

Crackers and cheese

Candies

Two wines were served. The things to eat sure did taste good and I was almost ashamed of my appetite. The other two officers were Canadian and the four of us had a delightful time talking and discussing various questions, some of which related to the war. Major Reynolds lives in one of the best houses in Proven. Some months ago Proven was shelled to a slight extent and many of the inhabitants left and went over into France. They became refugees (no matter how rich they are) and cannot return until the war is over or the British and other troops move forward away from the town. In the meantime the British take over all the vacant places and have the full use of them. This family, which was quite wealthy, left all their furniture and this is being used by the Area Commandant, Major Reynolds. The house is right on the street and on each side the houses meet it like our block houses in New York. From the outside it does not look any more pretentious than the neighbors but on the inside there is the big change. House is well decorated and furnished. There is a conservatory off the dining room that is used as a sun parlor or sitting room. Neatly furnished and some plants. The most noticeable thing in the conservatory is a large grape vine which has been trained up the sides and across the glass roof and is right now just full of clusters of grapes. At first you almost think it is an artificial decoration. Leading from the conservatory is a walk to the garden. The Major is well fixed, but he deserves all he gets for his job is not an easy one.

The Major did not return and at 10 p.m. we started back for camp. I learned later that Major Reynolds was out at one of the Foreway Camps (Canadian) and they absolutely refused to let him come home. Made him stay for their dinner.

Today was evacuation day for our platoons and all but D2 changed their camps. Seven platoons went up to the front line.

This p.m. Colonel Hedrick of the Corps staff came out with Colonel Ferguson to inspect the Regiment. I answered all questions, showed all he wanted to see and hope the Regiment received a good mark.

*August 2, 1918, Friday.* Today I have had one of the pleasantest trips I have had since I reached France. Lieutenant-Colonel Evans, Commander Royal Engineers of the 33rd British Division, asked me to go with him to visit the Army Dump, Corps Workshop and Corps Dumps. I was very glad of the opportunity to visit these places and to get some idea of how he handled his stores. Also I wanted to see what the British Engineer Department carried in an Army Dump, etc. He called for me about 9:30 (in an automobile) and we drove altogether about 30 miles. We went through Proven to Rousbrugge where we crossed the Yser river, which was frequently mentioned in the early days of the war. This river has been canalized so it is navigable to this city. A little further west we came to Vost Cappel, which is on the border of Belgium and France. There is not much difference between the people along the border. It seemed a little different to be back in *France* again. I have been in Belgium since July 10. Our first stop was at Bambocque or just southwest of the city at the Army Dump. See typewritten statement. There are a good many soldiers around Bambocque, but you had the feeling you were back of the actual fighting and shelling line. The cities are all similar with their narrow streets and very narrow sidewalks and houses opening directly on the sidewalk. In nearly all of these cities the church is the largest and most conspicuous building. They all have a square or center space of some size. From Bambocque we drove to West Cappel near which is the Corps Work shop. As I drove into this little village it seemed to me to be the quietest and most restful place I had seen in a long time. On our right were the grounds of the chateau, and as we followed the road just on the outside of the grounds it led us into the main street of the village. I still had the same feeling of peace and quietness. No sign of soldiers but ourselves. Leaving the main street we turned down the road on the other side of the chateau, and the scene quickly shifted, for there lined up alongside of the road were a long string of lorries. And they meant soldiers, and noise. The British had begun to use this particular road as a stand for lorries. From West Cappel we started for

Woesten near which is the Corps Dump (at Andank). We passed through Rousbrugge again and then Crombeke, West and Oostvleteren to Woesten. All these places are occupied by the Belgian Army and they hold the front line from a few miles north of Ypres to the sea. They have six divisions, four in the front lines and two in reserve. Each division of about 18,000 men. I understand they are doing very good work. Part of their equipment I saw today was a number of "Kelly motor trucks," driven by Belgians and painted with the Belgian colors. All the soldiers seen traveling this section were Belgians. At Crombeke we began to get into the war area again and into the section where the civilian population had for the most part retired. At Woesten we were again in the shelled area and within four miles of the German's front line. This town has been shelled a good deal, particularly when it was occupied by the British. It is now occupied by the Belgians. I was very glad to see the section occupied wholly by Belgians and to see how well they conducted themselves. They are doing a little work on their rear lines, but not much.

(Enclosure in diary.)

HEADQUARTERS

105TH ENGINEER REGIMENT

AMERICAN EXPEDITIONARY FORCES

August 2, 1918.

(Trip made with Lt. Col. Evans of Royal Engineers, 33 British Div.)

1. Army Dump is near Bambocque, France. This dump carries practically everything that is needed by Engineer troops, including the Sapper Regiments, tunneling, mining and water supply companies. Of some of the smaller tools, and hardware supplies, they keep a considerable quantity on hand. Of the more bulky supplies and equipment, not as large a quantity is kept on hand as the plan is to move it out as rapidly as possible to the several corps dumps at this dump. There seems to be plenty of sheets of corrugated iron, light and heavy weight, screw posts (long and short), iron posts (long and short), pit props, mine timbers, lumber and I beams, wheelbarrows, barbed wire, etc. They also have a fairly good supply of paint on hand. They have on hand heating apparatus for heating water for use in bathing. These outfits consist of boiler tank and necessary fittings. If we are to remain with headquarters at present camp, we can undoubtedly get one of these outfits up here.

2. Adjoining the Army Dump was the workshop of No. 2 Foreways Company. This is really more a light railway company as its work is in the back area. They are converting some of the Ford automobiles and putting on to them flange wheels, so that they can be used on the light railways for transportation.

3. Corps Dump—The principal corps dump for the Second Corps is at Ondank. Supplies are brought to this dump from Army dump on broad gauge railway. At the present time the dump is very well supplied with material, considerable cement on hand, wire, wooden pickets (long and short), corrugated iron. This dump is in charge of a Captain.

4. In connection with the main dump is a salvage dump, and if this material can be used, it is more readily obtainable on short notice than the regular supply. They had on hand about 300,000 sandbags and they distributed during the past three days 750,000.

5. It is very essential that the officer in charge of the dump know definitely what he has in his dump and can keep the C. E.'s Office posted.

6. The Division dump for the Thirty-third Division is about two miles east of Poperinghe.

7. The Corps workshop is at West Cappel, and is being made very complete. Both broad and narrow gauge tracks enter the workshop yard. A great deal of the labor is performed by Belgian women. Compensation is paid largely in small blocks of wood for fuel, and rations. They care very little for the money. At this workshop duck boards, trench bridges (Infantry and Artillery), A frames, hurdles, and screens are being made in large quantities. They try to make a thousand A frames a day. There is also an extensive paint shop connected with this workshop. The boards for signs are constructed in the workshop and then painted by men and women in the paint shop. Signs for all purposes are made here. This shop has a certain amount of vermillion paint on hand, but none is issued by the Government. The only way to obtain it is by purchase. The only red issued by the Government is red ochre. Any signs that we wished painted, we can probably indent for and have made at this workshop.

JOSEPH HYDE PRATT.

I got back to camp just in time for dinner. The Colonel was out for a little while this p.m. and took supper with us. He said Colonel Hedrick gave us a *good report*, and seemed very pleased about it.

(Enclosure in diary.)

AMP:KJH

#### HEADQUARTERS 30TH DIVISION

American Expeditionary Forces

August 2, 1918.

From: Assistant Chief of Staff, G-1,  
To: Commanding Officer, 105 Engineer Train.  
Subject: Transportation.

1. The Commanding General wishes to compliment the Transport Officer, 105th Engineer Train, on the condition of his animals and equipment. These inspections were made by both American and British officers at different times within the last week.

ALLAN M. POPE,  
Major, F. A., N. A.,  
Asst. Chief of Staff, G-1.



*August 3, '18, Saturday.* We are all feeling pretty good today on account of the splendid news that has reached us of the advance made by the Allies on the Marne front.

Was at work in Camp all the morning. In the p.m. the Colonel and I went over to the 1st Battalion camp, stopping en route at the "Lovie Aerodome." We expected to see some of the 117th on some practice liaison work, but they were not there. We walked across to the 1st Battalion Headquarters. Major Cothran had gone up the line so we could not see him. We then decided to go to Abeele and see some of the 102d Engineers (New York). They are in the same Army Corps as we are. He was investigating suitable material for colonelcy of the regiment to succeed Colonel Vanderbilt who had been promoted to Brigadier-General. It had been raining a good deal during the day but as we started from 1st Battalion Headquarters the sun came out and the atmosphere was the clearest I have seen it in years. The hill of Kemmel, Mount de Cats, etc., stood out as distinctly as if they were only  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile away. I could almost see men on top of Kemmel. We drove through Poperinghe again and as usual I had the same feeling of depression as at other times. The road is in view of Kemmel all the way and therefore a screen has been built on that side of the road to screen the traffic. Practically no civilian population in Abeele as it is shelled more or less every night. It is depressing to see all these towns deserted and many of the buildings badly damaged.

While I was visiting the Major of the 1st Battalion a new battery of nine guns began firing. The gun was within 75 yards of us, and every time it went off the windows would rattle as if they would all fall out.

After finding out what the 102nd Regiment has done since reaching France, I feel very much more pleased and satisfied with what the 105th has done. Stopped in Watou for an hour on our way back. Just after I left the Germans dropped four shells into the town. No casualties, and but little material damage.

*August 4, 1918, Sunday.* In camp all day working for the most part on problem. Had meeting of officers in the morning and went over with them what I wanted done and explained problem. In the p.m. Captain Seelye had a meeting of his non. coms. and explained to them what they were expected to do. In the evening after supper went to the soldiers' Y. M. C. A. and Chaplain meeting. The

boys turn out very well to these meetings and seem very much interested. The band helps out with the music. The Band is very much appreciated and enjoyed by the men, and all of them were delighted to have it back with us again. As the different platoons have come back from their various camps to the Central Camp at Stratheona Farm, it has been amusing and pleasing to hear their expressions when they first realized the band was back.

*August 5, 1918, Monday.* A very quiet night, no bombing and very little shelling. Spent all the morning and to 2 p.m. inspecting work of the platoons. Started on foot and walked over to Brigade Headquarters of 59th Brigade that we are constructing in the cellar of the Couthove Chateau. It is nearly completed and should house General Tyson and his Headquarters very comfortably and safely. From there I walked down to the West Poperinghe line. Soon after beginning the inspection of this trench system, General Godby came up and we went on together inspecting the line from this point to its junction with the East Poperinghe line. We also inspected three brick observation posts we are building. One in a building which has been struck directly by a shell. A shell also struck in the road immediately in front of the building, and badly cracked the walls that we had expected to use. Fortunately both shells struck at night when our men were away. From there we went over to the East Poperinghe line to look at some of the engineering work that the King is expected to examine tomorrow. While there I met Lieutenant-General Plumer, Commanding Officer of the Army to which we are attached. Also visited the Headquarters of the 118th Infantry, but Colonel McCullough was not in. General Godby told me to be over at 2 p.m. the next day when the King would be there.

We came home through Poperinghe. The Germans threw a few shells into the city every day or two.

*August 6, 1918, Tuesday.* This morning I was in the drill field for about an hour watching three of the platoons, E 1, 2, 3, drill. They were making an attack on machine gun positions. Colonel Ferguson was with me most of the time. We had planned to go out to the East Poperinghe line where King George was to inspect our work. At 11:30 a telephone call for the Colonel announced that he was expected in at Watou for the exercises there. He had to leave and that took the car, and I had to make arrangements to use Shanks

Mare. I was not able to get away until 12:20 and was due at the East Poperinghe line at 2 p.m. It was a little over six miles. I kept my engagement. General Godby was there and introduced me to Major-General Glubb, E. of Army. He is a very pleasant man and I had nearly 20 minutes talk with him. During the conversation he mentioned his boy and I told him about Joe, my only boy and child, and that he was only 7 years old. He said I ought to be thankful that he was not old enough to go into the war. He said his boy was only twenty-one and had been in the war *three years* and had been wounded three times. He talked as though he did not expect the boy to come out alive. A Lieutenant's position is one where the chances are very much against his escaping being a casual. I felt very sorry for the General.

At 2:26 the Royal party arrived at the trench and were shown around by General Godby. King George looks very much like the pictures I have seen of him. He spoke in a low voice, and seemed very much interested in the work. Part of a Platoon of B Company was working on the trench. He examined one of our pyramid shelters and concrete shelters and walked about 100 yards in the trench. The Colonel's car came for me so I did not have to walk back.

(Enclosure in diary.)

Daily C. 8/6/18.

HEAVY ENEMY SHELLING SOUTH OF YPRES

Significant Movements In Deep German Salient.

From "The Daily Chronicle."

Special Correspondent, H. W. NEVINSON.

War Correspondents' Headquarters, Monday.

There is very little fresh movement on this front to report. After withdrawing across the Ancre in the Albert neighborhood, as I described yesterday, the enemy appears to maintain his position on the east or left slopes of the river. He has broken down all the bridges north and south of Albert, and our patrols report the crossings into the ruined town itself are strongly held, though the place is evacuated.

The only other movement concerns the enemy's deep salient pointing toward Nieppe Forest and Hazebrouck. On the south of this heavy shelling is reported at Givenchym between La Bassee and Bethune, and the enemy has withdrawn from a front trench half a mile north of La Bassee Canal.

Similar heavy shelling is reported on the northern side of the salient at Fletre and Strazeele, not far from Meteren, and in the centre, at St. Venant, a thousand gas shells were thrown into the abandoned and ruined asylum there. Owing to the continuance of wet and heavy weather, the poison will hang long around the ruined walls and cellars.

H. W. NEVINSON.

We can hear this bombardment distinctly, but of course not so plainly as at the Ypres sector.

(Enclosure in diary.)

Col. Ferguson:

Herewith notes regarding the 3 Div.—German—known to be in front of Amiens on Aug. 6th.

SKINNER.

13th Div.

Lieut. General Von Barries.

Division recruited from Westphalia. Rated as good. During 1915, the Westphalians distinguished themselves by excellent work on defenses and fought tenaciously on all occasions. At Verdun and on the Somme, too, the division acquitted itself well.

In 1916-17 desertions were not infrequent but these came mostly from Poles and Alsations who are found in fairly large numbers in the division.

Division received a "smashing blow" on the Ailette in October, 1917, and large drafts required to bring it up to strength again.

The present battle on the Somme is the first real test the division has received since the battle on the Ailette.

27th Div.

Major General Von Maur.

Division recruited from the kingdom of Wurttemberg. Rated as one of the best divisions in the German army notwithstanding the fact that the severe handling which it received before Ypres in June, 1916, and on the Somme in August, caused, temporarily at any rate, a deterioration in the *morale* of some of the regiments. It is regarded as a thoroughly good division.

43rd Div.

No data. It is a new division on the Western Front. It is known as a reserve Division commanded by Lt.-Gen. Von Runkle. Probably came from the Russian Front.

*August 7, Wednesday.* German planes were out in some numbers last night but they did not disturb us. Today finished office work about 9 p.m. and then went out with Colonel Ferguson, Captain Burke, and Lieutenant R. M. Williams to Dirty Bucket to watch the manœuvres of the 117th Infantry. They were to make an assault from a trench and drive back the Germans and take up a new line of defense. We were interested to see them carry out this attack and also try and work out just what part the Engineers would play and their position in the advance. The Colonel and I were of the opinion that more of our men should go over with the first wave, but that 2 or 4 platoons should follow the second wave according to the amount of work to be done. When the second wave reached the new line of resistance the Engineers would at once begin to lay it off and have



it ready for the Infantry to dig and consolidate. Another 2 platoons would be with or in advance of the third wave (perhaps back of the second wave) and stop at the new line of reserve points and lay them out and have them ready for the Infantry to dig.

In the manœuvres we went nearly to Vlamertinghe, to a point just north of the Vlamertinghe Chateau. This town is not only abandoned but it is pretty nearly knocked to pieces. The Germans shell it nearly every night. Ypres two miles further east is entirely knocked to pieces.

After the attack there was a critique led by Major-General Cameron, the Commanding Officer of the 49th British Division. This was held at Derby Farm, which has been shelled a good deal.

I was out in the open until 4 p.m. and enjoyed the day very, very much. I saw a new sight today and that was a Belgian Army "Dog Train." There were eight teams of dogs, two to a team, driven tandem. They were hauling rubber tire vehicles which were made to carry machine guns. These teams were driven by Belgian soldiers and in the rear were six extra dogs led by soldiers. We got back to camp about 4 p.m. and got some dinner which tasted mighty good. We had expected to go over to Houtkerque to hear a lecture by Lord Denbig on "America in the War." Headquarters had agreed to send an auto to take four of us over to the lecture, which was to begin at 6 p.m. The auto arrived at 7 p.m. It had gone to 1st Battalion Headquarters instead of Regimental Headquarters. As it turned out we did not miss much, as the lecture was on "The Causes of the War" and lasted two hours.

(Enclosure in diary.)

6/8/18.

Col. Pratt,  
C. O. 105 Engrs.  
30 Am. Div.

Herewith maps of N. W. Europe as requested—(1-2-5-15).

There are still lacking a few photos to make complete map of the W. Pop. Line, and these the Intelligence office informs me will be taken very shortly and a complete map made up for you.

Officer C. E. II British Corps.

BASCOM L. FIELD,  
1st Lt. 105 Engrs.

*August 8, 1918, Thursday.* Last night I had one of the best night's sleep I have had since reaching this camp. The Colonel and I went out again today to the manœuvres of the 120th Infantry

(North Carolina Regiment) Colonel Minor. Theirs was an open war problem. We attached one platoon of Engineers to the Regiment and followed the manœuvres in order to get what lessons and information we could from the use of our men or lack of use of our men. Some of our convictions of the day before were confirmed. At 1:30 there was a critique led by Major-General Penny of the 33d British Division. He brought out that the Engineers should be assigned to Battalion Commanders or higher units and should be assigned to a special job. Right in line with our deductions. There was a decided difference in the way the two Generals carried on the critique. General Cameron did nearly all the talking and asked a few questions, while General Penny had each Battalion Commander and umpires tell what they approved and what they noted did not go just right, and then summed up. We got some good ideas and points both days.

We returned via Watou and found that Division Headquarters were being moved on account of the shelling that Watou has been subjected to. For the past week or ten days the Germans have been dropping from one to several shells per day. They have got the range of the town and Headquarters, and yesterday evening their shelling caused a good many casualties. One shell struck in front of the Quartermaster's department and wounded three officers and eight men of the department, two of the officers very severely. Another shell fell directly in front of the entrance to General Headquarters and wounded two British soldiers. Prior to this the shelling had caused no casualties. One shell struck the house in which Colonel Ferguson lives and badly damaged the kitchen. He was not in the house at the time. Another shell went through the roof of a two-story house, passed through a room in which three of our soldiers were sleeping and penetrated the outside wall and exploded. It blew a six-foot hole in the wall but did not injure any of the men. They came down stairs and on to the street without waiting to get dressed.

Rather tired tonight and will go to bed early. It is a good night to sleep.

*August 9, 1918, Friday.* Retired last night at 8:30 p.m. and slept soundly until 6:30 a.m. this morning. No bombs to disturb us. This morning I was busy arranging for three platoons, A2, C2,

and D2, to go to the front with the 33d British Division. Also had to arrange quarters for D, D3, and D4, who are coming back today from the front, where they have been with the 49th British Division. We have got a good place for them to camp or billet at the farm adjoining the one we are now occupying. The officers' quarters are better than anything we have thus far had.

About ten I received a note from Captain Myers, who was with the Commander Royal Engineers of the 49th Division, wanting to know if I could go to Ypres this p.m., if so, to come over there to lunch and go with the Royal Engineers Adjutant right after dinner. I accepted and at 12:15 went over to the Lovie Chateau where the Division Headquarters are located. While there I heard an aeroplane approaching and making a very wierd sound. It was very much like a very sorrowful siren. It was a plane calling to let Lovie Chateau know that a message would be dropped. Nearly all the officers and men ran out. The machine circled once and then flying very low dropped the message in one of the open fields of the chateau grounds. This Division Headquarters is very nicely located in these grounds and up to the present time have not been shelled at all.

(Enclosure in diary.)

9 August, 1918.

Dear Col. Pratt:

A car will be ready to leave here for Machine Gun Camp today at 2:00 o'clock. Major Land has gone up with Div. General early this morning and this car will bring him back here, leaving there about 5:00 o'clock. You can go up on this car and have a little look around or can stay either at Machine Gun Camp or at Dead End Camp. I am requested to ask you to come over here for lunch at 1 o'clock p.m.

Orders were issued here at 11 o'clock last night for the movement back to Regr. Hq. of platoons in the forward area.

Yours very truly,

EDW. W. MYERS.

In absence of instructions to the contrary I will report at Regr. Hq. this afternoon.

MYERS.

I had a very fine lunch with the Royal Engineers officers at their mess. Our cooks have a lot to learn before they will be able to handle a mess like the British soldiers. At 2:30 p.m. we left in an auto for the front. The first part of the ride to Brake Camp I have been over several times. This is the camp of one of the Royal Engineers companies of the 49th Division. The Adjutant had to

stop here to give instructions regarding certain work. I visited the camp and saw where my several platoons had camped while working with the Royal Engineers. From here we rode down the plank road nearly to Vlamertinghe and then cut across to the Vlamertinghe-Elmindinghe road, and stopped at the Culloden Division Royal Engineers Dump. This is behind the woods of the Vlamertinghe Chateau. At the edge of the woods there was a British Battery of two 9.2" guns, and they were firing all the time we were at the dump. The dump is right back of the Green Line (Vlamertinghe) of trenches, which are partially occupied by the British (at Mission Farm). Saw one man very industriously examining his clothes, especially the seams, for "kooties." All their habitations are pretty well under ground and it is a very great effort to keep free from the "kooties." While he is a nuisance, occasionally the "kootie" may become of real value. (I may have written this episode before.)

The Reward of the Kootie—A British officer was going through the front line trench, when he stooped over and reached back of his neck to pick off a "kootie" that was particularly irritating. Just as he got him off, a bullet passed immediately over his neck. He looked at the "kootie" and said: "Son, you have saved my life; but for your persistent biting I would have been standing upright and that bullet would have caught me in the head. I know of no way to reward you except to put you back where you were and let you keep on biting. This he did.

From Culloden we took the plank road around Vlamertinghe to avoid the shelling. The town is pretty well demolished. One tower of the church is still standing, and many of the house fronts, but practically every house has been hit one or more times by shells. Vlamertinghe is on the main road from Poperinghe to Ypres and on cross road. Consequently there is a good deal of hauling on the main road and the switch road, and the Germans shell the town regularly hoping to hit some of the transports. They are not perfectly regular in their time of shelling, so you may expect a shell any time. At night you know for sure they will be shelling every little while. Shell holes are common and one hit on the side of the road a short time before we passed, throwing the dirt on to the surface of the road. In this section we are getting beyond any cultivated fields and the country side is almost a waste, coming up in weeds (thistles).



(Enclosure in diary.)

No. 282. II Corps Summary of Infantry, Aug. 10, 1918.

1. *Artillery.*

Hostile artillery has shown considerable activity at times throughout the last 24 hours (to 3 p.m.), though shelling has never been intense.

Intermittent attention was paid during the afternoon and evening to the neighborhood of Vlamertinghe Chateau, Siege Junction and Hospital Farm, while at 3:30 a.m. a light barrage was put down on the front system of our Right Division between Zillebeke Lake and Kruisstraathoeck; this shelling was of the same nature as that which took place in this sector on the mornings of the 5th, 6th, and 7th.

Between 10 a.m. and noon today persistent shelling was reported around Salvation Corner and Ypres Station and there was also some activity in the neighborhood of Bard Cot and the Vlamertinghe-Goldfish Chateau Road.

.....

We drove on two sides of Vlamertinghe Chateau, which is another place that the Germans like to shell.

Our next stop was at Canadian Siding, where a location was picked out for a forward dump. We passed a few soldiers repairing the plank road, and could see a few others at entrance to shelters, but the general idea one would get would be that the country was pretty well deserted and yet there are hundreds of men scattered around in dugouts and other shelters, sleeping and resting and getting ready for their night's work. Practically all the work up this far toward the front is night work, although it is inspected during the day, provided the shelling is not too bad.

From Canadian Siding we drove on the plank road to its intersection with the Brillen Road. We left the machine here and walked up this latter road to the railroad and then down the railroad toward Ypres to where it crosses the Brillen system of trenches, and located another forward dump. From here we returned to the auto, and then drove to Machine Gun Camp where another of the Royal Engineer companies of the 49th Division are located. One of our platoons have been staying at this camp, and doing night work on the front trenches east of Ypres. I had expected to get up into Ypres itself today and spend the night at Dead End with another Royal Engineer company, but other things prevented. I had to return to camp to get troops ready for manœuvres with 120th Regiment on Saturday. I examined the camp thoroughly, the place the men live in, and the means for cooking, washing, etc. All are dug in and provided with shelters against 5.9 shells. Protected against

other shells except direct hits. The shelters are all provided with gas curtains, which are to be lowered in case of gas attack. The entrance and curtains are made and arranged like we made them at Camp Sevier.

Lieutenant Barnes was in his shelter, and had taken care of several of our Lieutenants, who have been attached to this Royal Engineer Company. The shelter was a double one, the front portion being used by the Officers for a mess room.

I felt very sorry for Lieutenant Barnes. He had been told that he was to get off for two weeks to attend some Army school and he had made all his plans for leaving, had told the other officers and the men that he was going, and was sure he was going to get out of the turmoil for a couple of weeks. Today he was notified that another officer would be sent to the school and he would not go. It nearly broke him up. He tried very hard not to show it and to pass it off as if it made no difference to him, but he was nervous and shaky and I could see that the thought of going had meant a very great deal to him.

By this time it was between 4:30 and 5:00 p.m. and Lieutenant Barnes insisted that we must not leave until we had had TEA. So we were served tea in the dugout. We had good hot tea, bread and butter and jam. Served by a British soldier, perfectly clean, white table cloth. We sat around the table and it was hard to realize that we were up front and subject to German shell fire. Major Humphries, who is in command of the Royal Engineer Company stationed here, came in just before tea, and also Major Land, who is in command of the Royal Engineer Company at Brake Camp, but who is now acting Commander Royal Engineers of the 49th Division. The tea and lunch tasted fine and we all enjoyed it except Lieutenant Barnes; he did not want anything. We left this camp about 5:30 p.m. and planned to come back by way of Vlamertinghe in order to look over a dump of camouflage material back of the Club Building. We came down to the main Ypres-Vlamertinghe road and turned west. This road is subjected to frequent shelling and we expected some. We passed Shrapnel Crossing and Gold Fish Chateau without any special incident. This Chateau was (and is) owned by a German and up to the present time has not been struck by a shell. From this point to Vlamertinghe we did not waste much time on the road. Several shells had hit shortly before on

the side of the road. We stopped at Vlamertinghe at the "Club" and examined the camouflage dump. The "Club" has been hit by several shells and is pretty well demolished. In the yard to the rear flowers were trying to grow and I picked several sweet pea blossoms to send to Mazie. Captain Meatchem, Royal Engineer, picked some foliage plant leaves and some flowers for the officers quarters at the 49th Division. We do not lose all our appreciation of the beautiful and love for flowers even if we are in the midst of strife and destruction. The bit of garden was apparently quiet and peaceable for a few minutes, but only a few minutes, for the Germans were dropping shells on the road we had just come over. We passed near Vlamertinghe several of our machine gun crews, marching along as unconcerned as if there was not a German within fifty miles. It was good to watch them.

The British have a Red Cross station between Vlamertinghe and Ypres alongside of the road about one mile from Vlamertinghe. A large stone windmill is at this place, which has been heavily barricaded and made shell proof against most shells. There have been a good many casualties here, but the doctors and attendants stick to their posts and their work.

In all this area to the east of Vlamertinghe the "gas masks" or "box respirators" have to be worn in the alert position, for fear of an attack with gas shells. These respirators are our constant companions and are with us always.

We came home via Poperinghe. On reaching home I immediately took up the preparation and completion of plans for the next day in connection with our part in the manœuvres of the 120th Infantry. I had a conference with Captain Seelye and Lieutenants Murphy, Peschau, Sill and Trescott, who are the officers who will take command of our section in the manœuvres. We did not have time to finish before dark and therefore made a date for 6:30 a.m. the next morning. I divided blankets with Captain Seelye and he spent the night in my room.

*August 10, 1918, Saturday.* A quiet night and a good sleep. Was up before 6 a.m. and finished plans for the day's work. At 1:30 a.m. two lorries came by to take the two half platoons to the rendezvous point near Dirty Bucket Camp. I had instructed Major Lyerly to go with me and we also rode in the lorry. It was a very dusty trip and on reaching our destination, the appearance of the men reminded me very much of Arizona. Captain Seelye was in

charge of the detachment, while the Major and I were just observers. I had Major Lyerly follow behind the right flank of the 120th and I took the left flank, our object being to observe the work of our Engineer troops, their disposition by the Infantry Battalion commander, and how our officers conducted themselves. Our first call down was by Major-General Lewis, because Lieutenant Sill and Master Engineer Cahill did not have their steel helmets on. They had them with them but had not put them on. He stated that they should wear the equipment the order calls for. Our men had not considered that they were as yet in the problem and had not therefore put on the helmet. The General Staff raise considerable fuss if the men and officers under them do not strictly obey all orders and regulations, and they also claim that the officers must live up to the regulations as an example to the men; and yet General Lewis and every other Staff Officer watching the manœuvres broke certain strict regulations regarding use of helmet and gas mask. It is particularly ordered that after leaving certain points on the roads going east, that the gas mask *shall* be worn in the "alert position" and that the "steel helmet" shall be worn. There are signs at these points on the roads, calling attention to these orders, and that "officers and men of *all* ranks shall wear the steel helmet, and the gas mask in the alert position," yet none of them did either. I have always been very strict with my men in regard to their living up to all orders regarding regulation dress and am known throughout the Division as an officer who does enforce these orders, and I am also very careful to observe them myself.

The Problem was carried out pretty well and our boys did their part O.K. They did not go with the first two lines, but were held back to put in the "strong points."

A Critique was held at 2 p.m. at Hospital Farm, which was again led by General Penny. No mention, however, was made of the Engineers. We all came home in the lorries, reaching camp about 4 p.m. rather tired and hungry. I found a note regarding invitation from General Godby to go with him to Foreway Camp at 28/A3b.9.5. at Barnes Farm or Camp, where he was to present one of the Royal Engineer men with the "Medal of Valour." I phoned an acceptance and then had a bite to eat, took a bath, changed my clothes, and was ready at 5:30 p.m. when the General called for me in his car. I also made final arrangements about selecting seven squads of our



men to go to Terdeghem tomorrow (Sunday) to take part in a church parade. I instructed Lieutenant Warfield and seven squads of E. Company to go there representing our better drilled men.

(Enclosure in diary.)

10-8-18, 1:00 p.m.

Col. Pratt:

General Godby will present a medal to one of his men this evening at 6:00. Will call for you about 5:30. Requests that this office notify his office upon your return if you can go. Remembers a remark you made that you would like to witness such an event.

B.

At 5:30 p.m. I went with General Godby to the Foreway Company Camp and witnessed the presentation of the Medal of Bravery to Corporal West. It was an impressive exercise and I felt proud of the man. After the presentation the General and I inspected the Company. I have one platoon with the Company but today all but five of them were at work up at the front. The five men were in the parade. The Corporal received his medal for taking charge of a train on the Foreway Railroad when the engineer had been killed and the assistant badly wounded by a shell, and bringing the train into Camp. He undoubtedly saved the lives of many, as the train was bringing back troops from the front. The train was under shell fire for some time after he took charge.

The ride to the camp was over new roads to me, after leaving International Corner. This gave me a chance to see new country and become acquainted with more roads and railways. I am becoming very familiar with this section and location of landmarks, which some day may be of considerable value to me. I reached home about seven o'clock in time for supper. Right after supper I studied the map of the Montdidier section for some time and plotted the advance the French and British troops had made.

This p.m. the atmosphere has been remarkably clear and well suited for observation. We counted 14 of our observation balloons in the air at one time and 4 of the German balloons. The Germans were firing shrapnel shells at several of ours, but did not come close enough to them to cause them to come down.

While en route to the Foreway Camp, we saw the Germans shell one of the observation balloons. They did not hit it but they came so close that it was thought wise to bring the balloon down before any more shells came over.

This p.m. just below Hospital Farm we saw a 12-inch and a 9.2-inch Battery in operation. The noise and recoil jars were considerable. The guns are all camouflaged and covered with camouflaged material. This is so well done that even when you are walking and riding through the country it is hard to tell where the guns have been placed. Some of these guns have been in position for several months, without the Germans locating them.

I saw some mining going on today by some of the Belgian soldiers. They were digging over old ammunition dumps and picking out all the old pieces of brass, copper and solder. They were doing it systematically. It looked as though the dumps of ammunition (shells) had been struck by a shell or bomb and the dump of shells exploded.

*August 11, 1918, Sunday.* Last night was a perfect starlight night and I heard the German planes go over here four times during the night. They did not, however, bother us and no bombs were dropped near us, for which we are duly thankful.

Today we sent seven squads (making one platoon) to Terdegghem to take part in a church parade, which is to be reviewed by King George. I sent seven squads of E. Company under Lieutenant Warfield. They left at 6:30 a.m. and did not get back until about 3 p.m. They were carried down in lorries and busses and so had but little walking. The order stated that they would get their breakfast at Terdegghem, but all they were given there was tea and bread, and no dinner until they returned home to camp. They reported a good trip and a good time, and that they did good marching.

I spent most of the day in my room, writing up my notes and writing to Mazie. About 4:30 p.m. I had a little trouble with my guard, due to failure of Officer of Day and Sergeant of Guard to transmit to new guard order regarding teams on our lawn (parade). I finally got things straightened out and located the trouble. My orders had been very emphatic that no team should cross the pasture in which our camp is located, as I did not want any track made across it which would show to aeroplanes that we were using the camp. I heard this team go across and had the sentry arrest the driver for disobeying the order. I of course supposed it was one of my own teams, and neither the sentry or the Officer of the Day reported to the contrary. About an hour later, while sitting in my hut, the Officer of the Day and a Lieutenant of the 120th Infantry came to see me. The Lieutenant wanted to know if there was any way he could get

his driver out of the Guard House. The driver we had arrested was his, and had come over to the Intelligence School, next to our camp, to get him and his baggage and take him back to his camp. I of course immediately released the man, as he was not to blame.

(Enclosure in diary.)

COPY

33rd Division

34th Division

49th Division

30th Division (American)

C. E.

Forwarded. Please arrange to inform Agricultural Officer in future cases of construction of Defense Lines.

Signed.

LIEUT.-COLONEL

A. Q. M. G., II Corps.

H. Qrs., LL Corps.

August 11th, 1918.

RGR

---

14070. Q. D. 2.

Armies.

G. O. C., L. of C., Area.

In the construction of Defense Lines a considerable amount of destruction is necessarily caused to corn and other crops by digging trenches and clearing fields of fire.

It is important that whenever circumstances permit, these crops should be saved. Instructions should therefore be issued for Agricultural Officers to be informed as far as possible 48 hours beforehand of the site of proposed trenches, in order that arrangements may be made by them for the crops to be harvested.

Sgd/ O. B. HERBERT, B. G.,  
*For Quartermaster General.*

G. H. Q.,

6th August, 1918.

Saturday night there was a very heavy bombardment which lasted for several hours, and from information received this a.m. the British pulled off a pretty good stunt last night.

During the day the British Artillery, with Aeroplane Observers, fired several shots to get the range of a cross road (A) over which the Germans have to haul all their supplies to their front in one portion of our sector. They damaged the road at (A) very badly, so that no teams could cross. The Germans could not fix it in the day time, on account of observers. At night the British sent out an

observer just as far forward as possible to listen for the Germans when they came up to repair the road and when the trucks and teams had come up on the two roads ready to cross the (A) portion of the road. The Observer waited until the road was nearly repaired and the two approach roads were filled with transports, and then sent back word. The artillery were notified and they immediately put down a barrage all over these two roads, destroying a large amount of transports.

*August 12, 1918, Monday.* Quiet night last night except for the big guns which kept up a pretty good racket. It did not bother my sleep very much.

Was in camp all morning waiting for Colonel Ferguson to come out and go over with me the plan for our training and work for the next three weeks. He did not come until about eleven and then we were very busy until 12:15. He is again acting Corps Engineer, and I am Acting Division Engineer. I do not know whether the change is to become permanent. An auto has been assigned to me, which will greatly facilitate my work.

(Enclosure in diary.)

12/8/18.

Reg. Adj.

Town Major of Pop. advises no brick available and so I am sending wagons in. Need some shelling to make some for us. I was in Pop. Saturday and brick did look scarce. Very sorry I cannot get any.

WARREN.

We needed brick for one of our Machine Gun Emplacements and if there has been considerable shelling of Poperinghe, there are usually enough buildings knocked down to supply us with bricks.

In the p.m. I went over to Division Headquarters. They are not as well located in their quarters as at Watou, but they are free for the time being from the shelling. Most of the civilian population have moved out. From Division Headquarters I went over to Corps Headquarters to see General Godby, but he was not at home. Left word with Lieutenant Field to try and make arrangements for me to go around with the General on Tuesday to examine the West Poperinghe line. On returning to camp I found a telephone message from Colonel Ferguson stating he would be out after supper for a meeting of the Field Officers.



(Enclosure in diary.)

Message for Col. Pratt  
From Capt. Armstrong.

Col. Ferguson wishes Col. Pratt to send for Maj. Cothran with his car. He desires to see the two Majors and Col. Pratt at 105 Engrs. Hdqrs. directly after supper.

We had a conference of over an hour and a half and got some good information regarding our work and what is expected of us. There is too much tendency to make us Infantry instead of Engineers but we can do either and do it well. The Colonel stated that the 30th Division was considered the best American Division over here, and we are the best regiment. So we have a lot to live up to.

At the church parade yesterday it is reported that the Engineers made the best showing of any of the troops.

This morning one of the A. Company men, Private Faircloth, was brought in from Camp G.10 central. He had been burnt and shocked by a shell. He is orderly for Lieutenant R. M. Williams and they were moving Lieutenant Williams' bedding roll and luggage from one billet to another. Lieutenant Williams was about 20 feet ahead of Private Faircloth when the shell struck in between them but very close to Faircloth. The shell exploded, knocking over Private Faircloth and scorching the side of his face and singeing his hair. Faircloth was unconscious for a few minutes. Lieutenant Williams was not hurt at all.

*August 13, 1918, Tuesday.* Last night the aeroplanes were quite active, but did not seriously disturb us. Dropped a few bombs near us but not in the camp. This morning I was out with General Godby inspecting the West Poperinghe Line for its whole length; also the four brick Observation Posts on and near the Pezelhock road. Also stopped at Headquarters of 118th Infantry to see Colonel Wolff who has just taken command of the regiment. Right near one of our Observation Posts and near the Pezelhock road junction, two Military Police last night were sleeping in a hut when a shell crashed through it. It exploded and the crater (hole) extended back three feet under the hut, blowing out  $\frac{1}{2}$  of two sides and about  $\frac{1}{4}$  of the roof. Neither of the boys were hurt and it is said that one of them did not wake up at the time of the explosion.

General Godby had a narrow escape on this road at the time the bomb hit and exploded on the road in front of our brick Observa-

tion Post. He was coming along the road toward the Observation Post when he overtook an Officer and stopped to give him a lift. While he was stopped the shell hit the road. If he had not stopped he would have been at the part of the road where the shell struck. He is always doing little kind things to officers and men and also to animals. This morning we were crossing a camp ground and a British soldier had his horse out ready to saddle it. As we came along the General saw the horse and also saw some very long green grass. He stopped and pulled a handful and gave it to the horse as he went by.

On returning to camp I spent a large part of the p.m. in the office, but about 5 p.m. went over to the 1st Battalion for a conference with Major Cothran. Stayed to supper, coming home about 8:30 p.m. The Colonel has arranged that I have a car, so it is much easier for me to get around than formerly.

(Enclosure in diary.)

SPECIAL ORDER OF THE DAY.

By FIELD-MARSHAL SIR DOUGLAS HAIG.

K. T., G. C. B., G. C. V. O., K. C. I. E.

Commander-in-Chief, British Armies in France.

The following letter from His Majesty the King is published for the information of all ranks:

13th August, 1918.

My Dear Field-Marshal:

At the beginning of the fifth year of the war I again have the pleasure of being with my Armies.

Writing to you after my last visit on the 30th March, and alluding to the then necessary withdrawal from certain of our positions, I dwelt upon the impression made upon me by the splendid spirit of the troops which I saw during those days. Subsequent events have given ample proof that this was a true impression. For never since that time has the spirit of the Army faltered. We have seen it reasserting itself and carrying to a triumphant issue the operations of the past week.

On these happy results I most warmly congratulate you and the troops that have fought so magnificently under your command.

I gratefully recognize that this high morale is in part the outcome of a hearty coöperation between the fighting Army and the great organizations behind the line; the transport service by land and sea; and those vast industries in which the men and women at home maintain the supplies of food and munitions of war.

I have heard on all sides of the inestimable value of the Machine Gun Corps in the fighting line, and this was brought home to me by the fine appearance of detachments which I saw in the different areas.

I have inspected detachments of the Royal Air Force. Its prowess and established superiority over the enemy makes me proud to be the General-in-Chief of this last creation in the fighting forces of the world.

It was specially satisfactory that I was able to see the work of the Tank Corps, and thus to form some slight idea of the part which this wondrous and steadily developing invention has played in the present victorious battle.

I gained for the first time an insight into the thorough and practical manner in which the Forestry Department is carrying out its varied duties.

It was a pleasure to me to find from the admirable condition of the horses and mules of the various units I inspected that the New Armies fully uphold our national reputation as good horse-masters.

During my visit I have conferred a number of Victoria Crosses for deeds of valour and self-sacrifice, the records of which fill my heart with pride and veneration.

Of the hospitals, their efficiency, skill, devotion and untiring efforts of the staffs, I cannot speak in too high praise.

I realize with thankfulness all that is done for the spiritual welfare of the troops by the chaplains of the different denominations.

I am glad to find that the Army Commanders appreciate the importance of affording means for the amusement and diversion of the troops in their leisure time, and that every effort to this end is undertaken by the authorities and by private help.

I return home with feelings of profound admiration of our Armies, convinced that in union with those of the Allied Nations we shall, with God's help, secure a victorious peace worthy of the noble sacrifice made; a peace which must be a surety to coming generations against sufferings such as the present world has endured throughout these years of relentless war.

Believe me, very sincerely yours,

GEORGE, R. I.

D. HAIG, F. M.

*Commander-in-Chief,*

*British Armies in France.*

General Headquarters,  
August 15th, 1918.

*August 14, 1918, Wednesday.* Last night was a very lively one. Shelling, and then bombing by aeroplanes, big bombs and little bombs. Watou was shelled again but this time the Germans shelled principally with shrapnel. They expected the troops to be marching through. The aeroplanes also spent some time over us and dropped some bombs pretty close to our camp. They also dropped lights that burned for several seconds, lighting up the country for a radius of about a mile.

At 7:30 a.m. I left camp with General Godby on an inspection trip of the East Poperinghe line. Particularly, we went to see the various shelters, observation posts, machine gun emplacements, etc.,

that we were constructing. Our first stop was in Poperinghe at the railroad station (entirely deserted.) We crossed the tracks and went over to where some of our men are building six pyramid shelters. These men have been working here several days regardless of the fact that Poperinghe has been shelled regularly every day. Crossing the tracks there was plenty of evidence of shells. A great many shell holes and broken and spattered walls. Passed one lovely old garden where the flowers were doing their best to keep ahead of the weeds. They have had no assistance this summer and the weeds are slowly getting the best of them. From the railroad station we leave Poperinghe and into the Reninghelst road. This road is a favorite one for shelling by the Germans and there were several fresh shell holes made there during the night or early morning. One might have come while we were passing but it did not. We examined the observation posts near this road and the machine gun emplacements at and near Mayo Corner. One across the road in the area of the adjoining Division. I had a chance to examine and go in one of the circular steel turret machine gun emplacements. The steel turret is within a circular box of concrete, and can be revolved so that the machine gun can shoot in any direction. They are easily concealed or camouflaged. From here we rode over the Poperinghe-Busseboom Road, stopping at several points en route. Soon after we left the vicinity of the Reninghelst road, shells began to drop on or near the road. We could hear them sing through the air and then hear the report as they struck the ground and burst. They sounded as though they were much nearer than they really are. We left the auto on the Busseboom road and walked across to the Poperinghe-Ypres road following the Support Trench of the East Poperinghe Line, and examining the pyramid and concrete shelter that had been built. We found that the pyramid shelters did not have sufficient dirt on top of them to make them proof against 5.9 shells. Some of these were now occupied for the day (and the previous night) by some British soldiers who were to go up to the front line trenches tonight. They were singing and all appeared to be in very good spirit. Many were shaving, as they have to do even in the front line. We have the same rule for our men.

We all try to be cheerful and look at the bright side, but it is hard sometimes not to be subdued and sort of down in the mouth when



you look at your strong robust men that you are sending into the line and know that some, perhaps many, will not come back. It does make you think and *wonder* when will it end.

We met the auto at the Ypres road and drove next down to Vlamertinghe Chateau. This building has been hit many times, but has now been turned into a regular strong point or fortified house. It is surrounded by trenches and if the line of trenches it attacked will make an exceedingly strong point. General Godby was examining the line particularly for location for shelters for the garrison that may occupy it. On the way to Vlamertinghe we heard the explosion of a large shell beyond Vlamertinghe and afterwards learned that it had upset one of our large 15-inch guns, but had not seriously damaged it. The Chateau grounds, once very beautiful, are now criss-crossed with trenches, trees broken and killed, weeds everywhere, and general appearance of neglect and ruin, and that is what you see on every side up here near the front. We walked along the Support Line of the Vlamertinghe system of trenches to Hospital Farm where the auto was awaiting us. It was an interesting trip to make with the General and to get his ideas on various subjects relating to construction of shelters, observation posts, machine gun emplacements, etc. We came home via International Corner, which is one of the nicer and quieter rides in this section. We stopped en route at Dirty Bucket Camp where one of the Royal Engineer companies of the 34th Division is encamped. They left this section only a couple of weeks ago to go south and take part in the Marne Battle. Now they are back, but with their number very much depleted, "*to rest* in a quiet sector." When the above quotation is used in connection with a Division, it does not mean that the men do no work and are in a sector where no shells can reach them, but that they can work in an area where the shells are infrequent and the chances of getting hit are not *very* many.

(Enclosure in diary.)

#### NORTH CAROLINA HOLDS DAILY PRAYER.

Raleigh, N. C., Tuesday.—In accordance with a proclamation just issued by Governor Bickett, church bells will be rung every evening at seven o'clock in cities and towns throughout North Carolina, so that the people of the State may pray for victory.

This appeared in the *New York Herald*, Paris edition, I think it is a very good thing to be doing by the people of the Old North State.

(Enclosure in diary.)

O. C. 105th Regt. American Engineers.

With reference to the parties of Officers and N. C. O.'s going round tomorrow, 16th inst. with my Units—

Major LYERLY has arranged direct with O. C. 18th Middlesex Pioneers for his parties. This settles the 2d Battalion.

As regards the 1st Battalion, I would suggest that in each Company a party consisting of the O. C. and 8 Officers or N. C. O.'s should go round, and in this party as many Officers as can be spared should be sent. It is particularly desirable that 2 representatives from each platoon should come, as my work is arranged on a 4 section basis.

These parties should report as follows:

11th Field Coy.	R.E.—G.10.b.2.2.—8.00 a.m.	B
212th “ “ “	G.11.a.2.2.—8.00 a.m.	A
222d “ “ “	G.11.a.6.4.—6.00 a.m.	C

(This party will be given breakfast by my Company.)

Please confirm this arrangement as soon as possible and let me know which of your companies will relieve mine.

G. F. EVANS,

*Lt.-Colonel, R. E.*

*C. R. E. 33d Division.*

15/8/18.

I reached home in time to do a little office work before dinner. I found on my return that the Germans had shelled Proven this morning, and while no damage was done it means that our quiet days are at an end and that peaceful Proven may soon be depopulated of its civilian population. Only three shots were landed but that was enough to get the range. Later in the afternoon Captain Boesch and I took the auto and went out to Oudezeele, at which place is located the headquarters of the 27th American Division. I wanted to see Lieutenant-Colonel Conrow, who is the commanding officer of the 102d Engineers. We went via Houtkerque and Herzeele, passing over into France just before reaching Houtkerque. This was one of the most restful and delightful rides I have had in Belgium or France. After leaving Herzeele, you began to feel as if you were away from the turmoil. You could look off over a landscape that was unscathed from any effect of the war, and it did look fine. There was also a feeling of peace in the atmosphere and you were not thinking of shells and expecting to hear a shell singing overhead. There was quite a little teaming on the road and a few soldiers were seen.

(Enclosure in diary.)

HEADQUARTERS 30TH DIVISION.

American Expeditionary Forces.

France, August 15th, 1918.

MEMORANDUM For Division Engineer.

The following is an extract from a summary of report made by the British on organization of this division while occupying the front line trenches.

"All ranks require more instruction in the elements of field engineering. They had no practical knowledge of the organization of working parties, wiring or rivetting. The men also require practice in digging."

It is desired that the necessary steps be taken to have this instruction given in the infantry regiments.

JOHN K. HERR,

*Lt. Colonel, Cav. R.S.,*

*Acting Chief of Staff.*

We spent about an hour in Oudezeele and then came back by another route that was even more quiet and peaceful than the first one, principally because that there were but very few teams on the road. Although it was an automobile ride, I thoroughly enjoyed it. We did not drive at the usual break-neck speed. Think of my riding in an auto, regularly, and the machine usually speeding at the rate of 25 to 35 miles per hour. You do not mind the speed when the road is being shelled near you. We stopped at Houtkerque for a few minutes on the way home, and saw Colonel Whattall and Lieutenant Fields for a few minutes.

Tonight three more shells were thrown into Proven. One struck in the main street and wounded several soldiers. The other did but little damage. One of the members of our Band was near enough to the shell to be covered with dust and dirt, otherwise unharmed. This shelling has scared the inhabitants a good deal and many of them have moved out for the night at least. About a dozen came over to the farm houses around our camp and spent the night. It is a good night for aeroplanes, but we hope most of them have gone south to help in the fight there.

*August 15, Thursday.* Received a phone message last night after I had gone to bed that the Commanding General wished to see me at 9:15 a.m. the next morning. To what it referred I did not have the slightest idea. The night was not as lively as some we have had, and I had a good night's rest.

(Enclosure in diary.)

Aug. 15/18.

For Col. Pratt.

The following phone message was received last night about 11:30: "The Commanding General wishes to see Col. Pratt at 9:15 a.m., Aug. 15, at Div. Hdqrs."

SGT. MAJOR.

Received by Corp. Neese.

I was at Division Headquarters at 9:15 a.m. and found the General had called a meeting of the Commanding Officers of units, and we were notified that the 30th American Division would relieve the 33d British Division and take over the section of the line now occupied by them. This was a big surprise to me, as I had no idea whatever that any such move was contemplated. My orders were to make all arrangements with the Division Engineer of the 33d British Division for taking over their work, supply dumps, etc. This means that I have become responsible for the engineer work of the sector now occupied by the 33d British. My first move was to get in touch with the Commander Royal Engineers of the 33d, at Couthove Convent, which I did. He had known of the contemplated change the night before and had also known for over a day that it was being considered. *We can usually get more information from British Headquarters about what we are going to do than from our own headquarters.* This has been true ever since we came to France, why I do not know. It has made it very embarrassing sometimes for me. I have started to tell one of the British officers that I expected to do something or go somewhere on a certain day, and he would say, "Oh, no, you are going to do so and so, we have orders to that effect."

I knew Lieutenant-Colonel Evans, the Commander Royal Engineers of the 33d, and we immediately got to work making plans for the transfer. He turns over to me all the working maps of the area, aerial photos, plans, etc., and stores on hand. My battalions take over his two camps and his take over the camps occupied by my men. We arranged for the following day that my officers and some of my non. com. officers should go with his officers and look over the area and visit the different pieces of work that are under way. Also arranged to visit the camp sites and the locations where our transports would be located.



(Enclosure in diary.)

NO MAN'S LAND.

I have been reading lately some of America's minor poets. Last night I came across some wonderful lines by Thomas Bailey Aldrich, who died in 1907—seven years before the war began. The lines are a veritable burst of inspiration, a lightning flash of prophetic vision into the blackness of the coming years.

Somewhere—in desolate wind-swept space  
In Twilight Land, in No Man's Land,  
Two hurrying shapes met face to face  
And bade each other stand.  
“And who are you?” cried one, agape,  
Shuddering in the gloaming light,  
“I know not,” said the second Shape,  
“I only died last night.”

Daily Express, 17/8/18.

(Enclosure in diary.)

HEADQUARTERS 30TH DIVISION.

American Expeditionary Forces,  
France, August 15, 1918.

MEMORANDUM for C. O., 105th Engineers.

The following is an extract from report by G-3, Headquarters II Corps, A. E. F., of recent inspection of the 30th Division by the Corps Commander and Staff, and is furnished for your information. The necessary steps to correct the deficiencies noted will be taken at once.

“The training of the Engineer regiment is excellent. They have not had rifle practice on the longer ranges and lack practice with rifles and hand grenade.”

JOHN K. HERR,  
*Lt. Colonel, Cav. R. A.,*  
*Acting Chief of Staff.*

A TRUE COPY:

Clarence E. Boesch,  
Captain, Engineers, N. G.  
Adjutant.

The above made me feel very good.

In the afternoon had conference with the Chief of Staff, making a report of what we had to do. Also tried to arrange with him that only part of the Engineer Regiment would go into the line at one time. I wanted to keep one Battalion in reserve. The General decided that it was necessary to take all into the line. Later I had conference with my own officers and started them getting ready for the move.

It has been a very busy day and marks the beginning of our Division entering directly into contact with the enemy.

Made arrangements for the Battalion Commanders and Company Commanders and Sergeants from each platoon to go with corresponding officers of the Royal Engineers and Pioneer Battalion to look over all the work we are to take over.

(Enclosure in diary.)

## II Corps Summary of Information.

No. 286.

### 1. ARTILLERY.

Hostile artillery has been moderately active during the last 24 hours (to 3 p.m.), shelling being principally confined to searching and harassing fire on battery areas and forward roads.

Some attention was paid yesterday evening to areas round BRIELE, VLAMERTINGHE and KRUISSTRATT. The vicinity of SAVILLE ROAD was lightly gassed.

YPRES received occasional bursts of fire during the day.

Twenty rounds from a 24-cm. gun fell on the N. W. outskirts of WATOU between 9.45 p.m. and midnight.

Aug. 14, 1918.

Part of this shelling was shrapnel. We could hear all of it and see part of it.

*August 16, '18, Friday.* A little noise last night due to shelling in the forward areas but no disturbance from aeroplanes. The whole regiment was more or less excited over the thought of moving into the forward areas. All my officers got away on time and spent nearly the whole day in examining the work they are to take over. I spent part of the morning in camp and part at Division Headquarters. In the p.m. went over to Wormhoudt with Lieutenant Tucker, to try and get some turpentine for our reproduction plant. There was none to be had. We will probably have to send to Dunkirk for some. The town was a typical North of France town. Church large and conspicuous. I could not stay as long as I wanted to as General Godby had sent me word that he would call at my camp at 6 p.m. to see me. I stopped at Houtkerque both going and coming, hoping to find the General, but he was away both times. I got back to camp in time to keep my engagement with him. I had to make arrangements about stopping work in the East and West Poperinghe trench lines, and also arrange about getting Lieutenant Field returned to his Company, all of which was satisfactorily arranged.

This was a sort of a farewell meeting with the General, as he leaves for England on Monday for a two or three weeks leave of absence, and many things can happen in that time. I learned after he left that he had within the past month been awarded the Medal or cross for Distinguished Bravery. I have no doubt but he was very worthy of it. I shall miss him a great deal while he is away. I have become very fond of him during our month's acquaintance.

Received a note from Colonel Evans making arrangements to take me over the line and the work we are to take over from the Royal Engineers. We have planned to leave at 6:45 a.m. My Battalion will also move tomorrow to their new quarters. Today was Mother's birthday. I wrote her a long letter.

(Enclosure in diary.)

HEADQUARTERS

105TH ENGINEERS REGIMENT

AMERICAN EXPEDITIONARY FORCES

August 16, 1918.

Copy No. 10.

FIELD ORDER)

No. 11. )

Reference Maps:

Belgium & France; Sheets 27 & 28; 1/400,000.

1. The 30th Division, A.E.F. is relieving the 33d Division B.E.F. between August 15th and 18th.

2. The 105th Engineer Regiment will relieve the Field Companies, R. E. and the 18th Middlesex Pioneers, of the 33d Division on August 17th as follows:

Co. A will relieve 212th Co. R.E.

Co. B will relieve 11th Co. R.E.

Co. C. will relieve 222d Co. R.E.

Second Battalion will relieve 18th Middlesex Pioneers. The relief will be completed by 12:00 noon, August 17.

3. All arrangements for the relief, and taking over the camps and work of the Field Companies and Pioneers will be made by the Battalion Commanders direct with the respective commanding officers of the units which they are to relieve.

4. The Transport of the 1st Bn. and detachment of the 105th Engineer Train will remain in their present locations.

The Transport of the 2d Battalion and the 105th Engineer Train, less detachment at Furze Camp, will move to the location now occupied by the Transport of the 18th Middlesex Pioneers.

(To be Continued.)

# THE NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL REVIEW

---

---

VOLUME I

OCTOBER, 1924

NUMBER 4

---

---

## CONTENTS

THE SURRENDER OF THE CHARTER OF CAROLINA.....	383
CHARLES CHRISTOPHER CRITTENDEN	
SOME ASPECTS OF THE WORK OF THE SOCIETY OF FRIENDS FOR NEGRO EDUCATION IN NORTH CAROLINA.....	403
EMMA KING	
WAR CAMP COMMUNITY SERVICE IN NORTH CAROLINA....	412
[DOCUMENTS]	
HISTORICAL NOTES .....	449
D. L. CORBITT	
BOOK REVIEWS .....	454
WARSHAW'S <i>The New Latin-America</i> —By W. W. PIERSON, JR.; WHIT- TON'S <i>The Decisive Battles of Modern Times</i> —By EBEN SWIFT; DANIELS'S <i>The Life of Woodrow Wilson</i> —By WILLIAM C. RED- FIELD; TAYLOR'S <i>A History of the Tar River Baptist Association</i> — By THOMAS M. PITTMAN; WEATHERFORD'S <i>The Negro from Africa to America</i> —By W. C. JACKSON.	
RECENT PUBLICATIONS ON NORTH CAROLINA.....	466
HISTORICAL NEWS .....	468
WAR DIARY OF COLONEL PRATT.....	475

---

---

Issued quarterly by the North Carolina Historical Commission, Raleigh, N. C.  
Subscription, \$2.00 a year, single numbers, 50 cents, special rate to mem-  
bers of the State Literary and Historical Association, \$1.00 a  
year. Entry as second class mail matter at the Post Office  
at Raleigh, N. C., pending.



# THE NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL REVIEW

---

*Published by The North Carolina Historical Commission, Raleigh, N. C.*

*R. B. House, Managing Editor*

---

## THE NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL COMMISSION

THOMAS M. PITTMAN, *Chairman*

M. C. S. NOBLE

HERIOT CLARKSON

FRANK WOOD

W. N. EVERETT

R. B. HOUSE, *Secretary*

---

*This review was established in January, 1924, as a medium of publication and discussion of history in North Carolina. It is issued to other institutions by exchange, but to the general public by subscription only. The regular price is \$2.00 a year. To members of the State Literary and Historical Association there is a special price of \$1.00 a year.*

---

## CONTENTS OF THE LAST THREE NUMBERS

### JANUARY, 1924

WALTER HINES PAGE—MEMORIAL ADDRESS.....*Albert Shaw*  
THE WAR SAVINGS CAMPAIGN IN 1918.....*Gilbert T. Stephenson*  
DIARY OF COLONEL JOSEPH HYDE PRATT  
HISTORICAL NEWS  
BOOK REVIEWS  
RECENT PUBLICATIONS ON NORTH CAROLINA

### APRIL, 1924

RICHARD DOBBS SPAIGHT.....*Alexander B. Andrews*  
THE LURE OF HISTORICAL RESEARCH.....*Adelaide L. Fries*  
THE NORTH CAROLINA FUEL ADMINISTRATION.....[*Documents*]  
BOOK REVIEWS  
RECENT PUBLICATIONS ON NORTH CAROLINA  
HISTORICAL NEWS  
WAR DIARY OF COLONEL JOSEPH HYDE PRATT

### JULY, 1924

THE AYCOCK MEMORIAL.....*J. Y. Joyner*  
CHARLES BRANTLEY AYCOCK.....*Edwin Anderson Alderman*  
CHARLES BRANTLEY AYCOCK.....*Josephus Daniels*  
TRACES OF THE INDIAN IN PIEDMONT NORTH CAROLINA.....*Douglas L. Rights*  
RICHARD DOBBS SPAIGHT.....(*Correspondence*)  
BOOK REVIEWS  
RECENT PUBLICATIONS ON NORTH CAROLINA  
HISTORICAL NEWS  
WAR DIARY OF COLONEL JOSEPH HYDE PRATT

# THE NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL REVIEW

---

VOLUME I

OCTOBER, 1924

NUMBER 4

---

## THE SURRENDER OF THE CHARTER OF CAROLINA

By CHARLES CHRISTOPHER CRITTENDEN

[The footnotes run consecutively from 1 to 54. Occasionally references in the text cross or repeat. In each instance the reference numeral refers to the note as printed in numerical order. EDITOR'S NOTE.]

Nearly all the first English settlements in America were made under charters which gave to private persons not only ownership of the soil, but also the right to govern. As more and more colonies of this type came into existence, it gradually became apparent that they did not serve the best interests of the mother country and that something should be done to bring them into closer contact with the English government. About 1680 the Lords of Trade decided to oppose the granting of any more charters, and after that time (except for those of Pennsylvania and Georgia, where the circumstances were peculiar) no others were granted. Furthermore, the Lords of Trade began that movement which lasted for so many years, and which had for its object the bringing of all the proprietary and corporate colonies directly under royal control. In the decade following 1680 an attempt was made to vacate a number of the charters, and Massachusetts and Bermuda actually lost theirs, although in most instances the movement came to naught. So far as Carolina was concerned, a threat was made that *quo warranto* proceedings against the charter would be inaugurated, but such proceedings were never begun.<sup>1</sup>

Within the decade after the creation of the Board of Trade in 1696 the movement against the charters became more pronounced. From various sources came complaints and charges that the proprietary and corporate colonies were nests of piracy, that they did everything in their power to hinder the vice-admiralty courts, that

---

<sup>1</sup> Colonial Records of North Carolina, I, 353.

they refused to provide for the defense of their people, that they made laws contrary to those of England, etc.<sup>2</sup> At first it seems to have been the intention of the Board to overthrow all the corporate and proprietary governments at a blow and the decision was reached to attempt the accomplishment of this by act of Parliament. Bills for this purpose were introduced into Parliament both in 1701 and in 1706<sup>3</sup>, but neither was successful, perhaps because of lack of interest on the part of members of Parliament, perhaps because of the fight put up by the proprietors and agents of several of the colonies, possibly because it was felt that it would be unfair to destroy in this way rights which were in a sense private property.

After the failure of the bill of 1706, the Board of Trade never again made such vigorous efforts to void all the charters at once by legislative action, but rather adopted the policy of acting against each separately. Under this new policy three methods of procedure could be followed. Provided it could be proved that a charter had been violated, there was the possibility of declaring it void by *scire facias* or *quo warranto*; there was the chance that the holders of a charter might be persuaded to surrender it voluntarily; and there was the possibility of purchase.

It is the purpose of this article to trace this new policy of the Board of Trade as it affected Carolina from 1706 until the final surrender of the charter in 1729. The movement had two broad phases: first, the period from 1706 to 1726 when efforts were made to overthrow the charter by process of law or to persuade the proprietors to give up their rights voluntarily; and second, the brief period from 1726 to 1729 when negotiations, finally successful, were under way for the purchase of the charter. Probably it would have been possible at almost any time for the Crown to purchase the rights of the proprietors, but not until it was realized that there was almost no chance of gaining control of the province in any other way was there a willingness to pay them for a surrender of their rights. Once the decision to buy had been reached, however, it required only a comparatively brief period of time to come to an agreement.

---

<sup>2</sup> Calendar of State Papers, Colonial, *passim*.

<sup>3</sup> House of Lords, Manuscripts, New Series, IV, 314-5; C. O. /5, III, 27 (manuscript in Public Record office, London).

The first movement against the charter which must be noted began in South Carolina. In May, 1704, an act had been passed in that province which required that every person elected a member of the Commons House of Assembly should, before being allowed to sit in that body, either prove that he had in the last twelve months received the sacrament according to the usage of the Church of England or else take an oath that he conformed to its beliefs and had not for one year past been in communion with any other church or congregation.<sup>4</sup> This act may be compared to the famous Test Act in England and was indeed quite similar to it, although the latter, in the mother-county, applied to all office-holders under the Crown, while the former, in South Carolina, affected only the members of one house of the legislative body. Opposition to the measure had been very strong in the Commons House of Assembly, especially among the members from Colleton County, a section which had been settled largely by French Huguenots, and which would thus naturally be opposed to such a law. When the measure had been passed in spite of their disapproval, these dissenting members sent John Ash to England to lay their grievances before the proprietors.<sup>5</sup>

Although Ash died before he had been able to accomplish anything, the matter was not dropped by the dissenting party in the province. Their ill feeling was intensified by the passage, in the fall of 1704, of an act establishing the Church of England;<sup>6</sup> and the protesting members, when they heard of the death of Ash, sent Joseph Boone to take his place. Boone, having arrived in England, asked Lord Granville, the Palatine, that his protest be heard. The Palatine, however, was inclined to sympathize with the Church party in the province, and so was not at all anxious to call the proprietors together for the purpose of hearing objections to measures which he himself approved. After seven weeks a meeting was finally held, but Boone found that his hopes, if he had any, were in vain, for the acts objected to were ratified in spite of his efforts.<sup>7</sup>

Having realized that no redress of grievances could be had from the proprietors, Boone now directed his efforts into a new channel by petitioning the House of Lords for assistance. In South Caro-

<sup>4</sup> South Carolina Statutes at Large, II, 232-5.

<sup>5</sup> McCrady, Edward, *History of South Carolina under the Proprietary Government* (New York, 1897), Ch. XVIII, and p. 329.

<sup>6</sup> South Carolina Statutes at Large, II, 236.

<sup>7</sup> McCrady, 425-9.



lina he had been a merchant, exporting to, and importing from, London; now, therefore, he was able to persuade a number of London merchants who were engaged in trading with Carolina to join him in his address.<sup>8</sup> The charter and the Fundamental Constitutions, declared this petition, had provided for religious toleration in the province, but the two acts objected to were contrary to all such provisions; many people who had gone to the colony in order to enjoy freedom from restraint in religious matters now found their privileges greatly abridged.<sup>9</sup>

The House of Lords was far more ready to listen to these complaints than the proprietors had been, and it is quite possible that, had conditions been favorable, some legislative action for the relief of the province might have been taken. However, the time for adjournment was drawing near, much other business demanded attention, and thus there was little opportunity for the consideration of affairs in Carolina. And so, in an address of March 13, 1705-6, the House of Lords turned the matter over to the Queen, stating that they considered the two laws objected to contrary to the charter, but that, since they had no leisure for careful investigation of the matters mentioned in the petition of Boone, they prayed her Majesty to look into the whole question.<sup>10</sup>

This address of the House of Lords was referred to the Board of Trade, and that body consulted the Attorney-General and the Solicitor-General as to what steps should be taken.<sup>11</sup> After more than a month reply was made that the charter gave to the proprietors the power of making laws with the assent and approbation of the freemen of the province, "so, as such laws be consonant to reason, and as near as may be conveniently agreeable to the laws and customs of England"; and "that the laws mentioned in the said address not being consonant to reason, and repugnant to the laws of England, are not warranted by the said charters, but were made without any sufficient power or authority derived from the crown of England, and therefore do not oblige or bind the inhabitants of that colony, and that her Majesty may lawfully declare those laws, as to matters therein contained, mentioned in the said Address, to be null and void. That her Majesty may command that the same shall not be put in

<sup>8</sup> McCrady, 428.

<sup>9</sup> McCrady, 431-2.

<sup>10</sup> Colonial Records of North Carolina, I, 634-40.

<sup>11</sup> Calendar of State Papers, Colonial, 1706-8, No. 265.

execution or observed, and may also require and command the proprietors of that province, by act of assembly, to enact and declare the same to be null and void.<sup>12</sup>

"And her Majesty's said Attorney and Solicitor-General were further of opinion that the making such laws was an abuse of the power granted of making laws, and would be a forfeiture of such power, and that that power may be seized into her Majesty's hands by *scire facias* in the Chancery on the patents, or by *quo warranto* in her Majesty's Court of Queen's Bench, if the laws were approved and confirmed by the present proprietors, which did not fully appear to them to have been so by the said Address."<sup>12</sup>

Having received this report, the Board of Trade offered to the Privy Council the opinion that the laws referred to should be declared null and void, and that the charter should be proceeded against by *scire facias* or by *quo warranto*. They declared further that they believed the opinion of the Attorney-General and the Solicitor-General also applied in the case of a North Carolina law which shielded debtors for five years after they had moved into that province.<sup>12</sup> The Privy Council approved this report and ordered the proprietors to declare null and void the two South Carolina laws which had been objected to.<sup>13</sup> Also, nearly two years later, the proprietors were ordered to disallow the North Carolina law which shielded debtors.<sup>14</sup>

The Privy Council now ordered the Attorney-General and Solicitor-General to report on what might be done by means of *quo warranto*,<sup>15</sup> and after a time received the reply that the informations were being prepared, but that there was some question as to "whether the filing of such Information against a Peer in Parliament may not be thought a Breach of the Privilege of Peerage."<sup>16</sup> Whereupon the Privy Council decided that the House of Lords was the best judge of its own privileges, and "did not think fit to give any further directions therein at present."<sup>17</sup>

<sup>12</sup> House of Lords, Manuscripts, New Series, VII, p. 300-2; Colonial Records of North Carolina, I, 642-3; Calendar of State Papers, Colonial, 1706-8, No. 336.

<sup>13</sup> Colonial Records of North Carolina, I, 643. One of these laws, that for the "Establishment of Religious Worship according to the Church of England," had been disallowed by the proprietors as early as March 6, but the British government seems to have been ignorant of this fact. Calendar of State papers, Colonial, 1706-8, No. 158.

<sup>14</sup> Calendar of State Papers, Colonial, 1706-8, No. 1366.

<sup>15</sup> Calendar of State Papers, Colonial, 1706-8, No. 367.

<sup>16</sup> Acts of the Privy Council, Colonial, II, p. 507.

<sup>17</sup> Calendar of State Papers, Colonial, 1706-8, No. 393.

"Privilege of parliament," says Blackstone, "was primarily established, in order to protect its members not only from being molested from their fellow-subjects, but also more especially from being oppressed by the power of the crown." Some of the "more notorious privileges of the members of either house are, privilege of speech, of person, of their domestics, and of their lands, and goods.

. . . [Privilege of lands and goods] included formerly not only privilege from illegal violence, but also from legal arrests, the seizures by process from the courts of law."<sup>18</sup> In 1706 privilege from seizure of lands and goods was still in force while Parliament was in session, although it had been provided by an act of 12 and 13 William III that this privilege did not apply during the interval of Parliament.<sup>19</sup>

It is evident that a prosecution by means of *quo warranto* during a session of Parliament would have infringed upon this privilege. The Earl of Shaftesbury, Lord Craven, Lord Carteret, and the Earl of Bath were peers of the realm; their charter gave them rights to both the land and the government of Carolina; a *quo warranto* proceeding would, if successful, have taken away those rights—that is, such a proceeding would have infringed upon the privilege of immunity from seizure of lands and goods to which they, as members of the House of Lords, were entitled while Parliament was in session. And thus was created a well-nigh insuperable barrier in the way of any such prosecution, because, although proceedings might be begun during the time when Parliament was not in session, it would almost certainly be the case that, before a decision could be reached in the slow-moving law courts, the privilege would again be in force and the whole matter would have to be dropped.

The prosecution was put in the hands of William Borrett, Solicitor of the Treasury. He could do nothing until the time when Parliament had adjourned, after Easter, 1707; then, as soon as possible, he took out process against the proprietors, only to meet the difficulty of not being able to have returns from the sheriff, since privilege was again in force. He was even threatened for taking out writs returnable in time of privilege. Again, after Easter, 1708, Borrett attempted to have the writs returned, but here again

<sup>18</sup> Blackstone, Sir Wm., *Commentaries on the Laws of England* (1807), I, 164-5.

<sup>19</sup> 12 and 13 William III, Ch. III.

<sup>20</sup> *Calendar of State Papers, Colonial*, 1706-8, No. 1535.

he was hindered by privilege of a peer in Parliament. On June 11, 1708, he reported, "I shall either have return of those writs, or the writs renewed, and made returnable this present term, so that no time shall be lost."<sup>20</sup> But he probably found that the difficulty could not be overcome, for his efforts were of no avail.

Thus the complaints that the proprietors had exceeded the powers of legislation which had been granted them did not bring about the overthrow of the charter, although they did probably lead directly to the disallowance by the proprietors of the two hated laws. No doubt the Crown was very anxious to bring the province under its immediate control, but there seemed to be no practical way in which this could be done. The bill of 1706 had failed, the proceedings by *quo warranto* had been unsuccessful, and the proprietors were not willing to surrender their rights except for a consideration. It is true that a purchase probably could have been effected at this time, but the Crown, perhaps hoping to obtain control of the province by some other method, was not yet ready to buy the rights of the proprietors, and it was not until twenty years later that negotiations for a purchase were begun.

For a number of years following 1708 the proprietors were allowed to enjoy their rights in peace, and it was not until 1715 that a new attack upon the charter was begun. This attack, like the preceding one, had its beginnings in South Carolina, and was made upon the ground that the proprietors were unable to defend their province, and that therefore the South Carolinians had the right to be brought under the immediate protection of the Crown. In May the Yamasse Indians, former allies of the colonists, opened an attack along the southern and western frontiers. The Indians had available between 8,000 and 10,000 warriors, while the Carolinians could muster only 1,200 able-bodied white men, and thus there was grave danger that the whole settlement, including Charleston, would be wiped out. Urgent appeals for aid were sent to the neighboring colonies and to England.<sup>21</sup>

In the summer of 1715 petitions to the proprietors, the King, the Secretary of State, and the Board of Trade began to arrive in the mother-country. Although the proprietors at once voted to give to the province the use of all quitrents and taxes, this was not one-

<sup>21</sup> McCrady, 531-8.



tenth of what was needed, and in July the Board of Trade took the matter up. The agents of Carolina and the proprietors were called before the Board for discussion as to what steps should be taken, whereupon the proprietors declared that they were unable to protect the province. They had tried to borrow money to finance a relief expedition, they said, by mortgaging their property rights under the charter, but had been unsuccessful because some of their members were minors and could not be bound; and so they were forced to petition that men and money be sent. If they did not repay the money spent in their interest the King would have the right to take the province under his immediate protection. When they were asked whether they were willing to surrender the government of Carolina they replied that they had, at great expense, built up a settlement which was very valuable to England, and that they did not wish to give up their control of that settlement except for an "equitable consideration."<sup>22</sup>

Wishing to try all available methods, the agents, seconded by a number of merchants trading with Carolina, on August 2 petitioned the House of Commons to succor the "miserable Inhabitants of that distressed Province." Having considered the matter through one of its committees, the House of Commons addressed the King with a recommendation that aid be sent,<sup>23</sup> and soon afterward the Privy Council ordered that a specially chartered ship carry arms to the province. But what the colony needed most, of course, was men and these could not well be spared just at this time because of a Jacobite uprising in Scotland.

From 1715 until 1719 the inhabitants of South Carolina continued to bombard the authorities in England with petitions. Having discovered that the proprietors were utterly unable to protect them, they began to ask not only that aid be sent, but also, in order to prevent the recurrence of such a situation as then existed, that the province be put under the immediate government of the Crown. The Board of Trade, the Secretary of State, and the King all received a number of these addresses.<sup>24</sup> The British government was, of course, entirely ready to assume control of the province; the

<sup>22</sup> Colonial Records of North Carolina, II, 187-96.

<sup>23</sup> House of Commons, Journals, XVIII, 250, 262.

<sup>24</sup> Colonial Records of North Carolina, II, passim; South Carolina Historical Society Collections, I and II, passim.

trouble was that there seemed to be no suitable means whereby this end could be attained. Certainly it could not be said that the inability of the proprietors to provide for the defense of the province constituted a violation of the charter, especially since they had made all the efforts in its behalf that could reasonably be expected of them. The argument of expediency was the strongest which could be advanced by the advocates of the Crown's assumption of the government. The present owners, they said, could not defend the province; therefore, charter or no charter, it was necessary for the Crown to assume control of the province in order that it might be protected from the attacks of the Indians.

However, it is probable that nothing would have been done for some time to come had not events in South Carolina made it imperative that some action be taken. In 1716 the Assembly, in an effort to provide funds for financing the war, had levied a duty of ten per cent upon all goods imported into, and exported out of, the province.<sup>25</sup> For some reason the act was not sent to the proprietors for their approval, but the Board of Trade heard of its passage and ordered the proprietors to disallow it at once. Thereupon the latter wrote to the governor requiring that this act, together with several others recently passed, be repealed by the assembly.<sup>26</sup> This was adding fuel to the flames. The Carolinians, already out of patience with the proprietors, felt that the disallowance of the laws worked a severe injustice upon the province, and in 1719 the governor and council sent Francis Yonge to represent their grievances to the proprietors. Having arrived in England in May, Yonge at once took the matter up, but was kept waiting for three months, and was finally sent back with sealed letters which, when opened, were found to order, as before, that the laws in question be repealed.<sup>27</sup>

Thereupon the inhabitants of the province decided that, if the British government would not help them, they would help themselves. Having formed a revolutionary organization, on November 28 they sent an address to Governor Johnson, declaring that from that time forth South Carolina was to be under the immediate government of the Crown. The letter requested, however, that

<sup>25</sup> South Carolina Statutes at Large, II, 649-61.

<sup>26</sup> McCrady, 626-7.

<sup>27</sup> Yonge, Francis, *A Narrative of the Proceedings of the People of South Carolina in the Year 1719* (In Carroll, B. R., *Historical Collections*, II).

Johnson, since his administration had been satisfactory, continue to serve as their governor. The latter had been appointed by the proprietors, and so was forced by a sense of duty to try to maintain their government and to resist this revolutionary movement, but, finding himself without adequate support, he was compelled to retire to his home in the country and let events take their course. Thus the proprietary government was overthrown and, on December 21, a convention meeting in Charleston issued a proclamation to the effect that the proprietors had violated their charter; that henceforth South Carolina was to be under the immediate control of the Crown; and that, until instructions could be had from England, James Moore was to be governor of the province.<sup>27</sup>

When the news of this revolution reached England it became evident that something must be done. The Board of Trade sympathized with the inhabitants of the province in their accusations against the proprietors, who, on the other hand, claimed that the revolution was not due to any misgovernment on their part, but rather to the character of the people of South Carolina who were so unmanageable that it would be impossible for any government to control them. And certainly, when the turbulent condition of the province under a provisional royal governor, 1721-1729, is considered, it seems that it did indeed contain people who were very difficult to hold in check. However, regardless of right or wrong, the fact remained that the government of the proprietors had been overthrown; that they were unable to put down the revolt; and that unless the Crown lent them assistance they probably could not again secure control. The question to be settled was: Would the Crown, as a matter of expediency, be justified in recognizing such a revolutionary movement? For twenty years the Board of trade had been seeking, by one method or another, to bring this province under the immediate government of the King. Now, since it was only necessary to sanction what was already an accomplished fact, it seemed that the opportunity had at last come.

During the spring of 1720 several addresses from the revolutionary assembly of South Carolina arrived in England. These attempted to justify the Carolinians in their recent actions, stated various charges against the government which had been overthrown,

and asked that henceforth the King control the province.<sup>28</sup> However, the proprietors, as soon as they learned what had happened, petitioned the King that orders be given for the suppression of the revolt. The various petitions were referred to the Board of Trade, and during the spring and summer of 1720 a number of hearings were held. On August 11, pending a final settlement, the Privy Council commanded that, in consideration of the great importance of Carolina and the acute danger of its being lost at such a critical time, the government be provisionally taken into the hands of his Majesty.<sup>29</sup> And thus a few weeks later General Nicholson was commissioned royal governor of South Carolina.<sup>30</sup>

This action of the Privy Council was based upon an opinion of the Attorney-General and Solicitor-General, dated January 7, 1708, which stated that in cases of "extraordinary exigency" the King might appoint civil governors in the proprietary or corporate colonies<sup>31</sup>—and it certainly did not require any very broad interpretation of that opinion to justify the temporary assumption of the government of South Carolina. The proprietors, of course, opposed such a step, but there was nothing they could do to prevent it and until 1726 they made no very marked effort to regain control of the province.

With the inhabitants of North Carolina the case was different. Almost completely out of touch with what was going on to the south of them, they continued to support the proprietary government, such as it was.<sup>32</sup> There was thus no unusual circumstance which would warrant the assumption of the government by the Crown. However, in spite of this, the act of the Privy Council had commanded that "Carolina," not "South Carolina" alone, be brought under the provisional control of the Crown.<sup>29</sup> And the Board of Trade, in a representation of August 16, had recommended that a deputy-governor for North Carolinat be appointed, subject to orders from the governor of South Carolina.<sup>33</sup> But apparently no definite action was taken, for the instructions of Nicholson merely provided that, *in case* a lieutenant-governor for North Caro-

<sup>28</sup> South Carolina Historical Society, Collections, II, 239, III, 277.

<sup>29</sup> Acts of the Privy Council, Colonial, II, No. 1336.

<sup>30</sup> South Carolina Historical Society, Collections, II, 150.

<sup>31</sup> Calendar of State Papers, Colonial, 1706-8, No. 1261.

<sup>32</sup> Colonial Records of North Carolina, II, 49-90. No effort is made to explain here why North Carolinians remained loyal to the proprietors. That is another story.

<sup>33</sup> Colonial Records of North Carolina, II, 393-4.



lina were appointed, he should be furnished with a copy of these instructions. No lieutenant-governor was appointed, however, and North Carolina remained in the hands of the proprietors until the surrender of the charter in 1729. Her attitude formed a striking contrast to that of South Carolina, where the people, disgusted with the proprietors, had overthrown their government.

It seems to have been understood on all sides that the assumption of the government of South Carolina by the Crown was merely a temporary expedient designed to tide over affairs until a definite settlement could be reached. That this was the case is proved by the wording of the order of the Privy Council, which commanded that the government be *provisionally* taken into the hands of his Majesty,<sup>29</sup> and by the fact that the South Carolinians continued to petition that they remain under the control of the Crown. The fact that the proprietors had lost control of the government, however, did not mean that they had surrendered their property rights in the province. All land (except what had already been granted away) remained in their possession, and no grant could lawfully be made without their consent.<sup>34</sup>

In 1720, as in 1706, an attempt was made to vacate the charter by process of law. Upon several occasions the Privy Council summoned the proprietors to a hearing, but each time they asked for delay, saying that Lord Carteret, the Palatine, who was absent, had in his possession papers which they were obliged to have in order to make out a case for themselves. After the hearing had been postponed a number of times, finally, on September 27, the Privy Council, impatient of further delay, ordered the Attorney-General to bring *scire facias* against the charter.<sup>29</sup> The prosecution was never begun, however,<sup>35</sup> possibly because the evidence was thought to be insufficient, possibly because privilege of a peer in Parliament interfered.

It is interesting to note that in the same year the proprietors of Carolina came very near selling their rights. In England it was a time of wild speculation when every one was half mad on the subject of "bubbles," and Carolina could not avoid being brought into the whirl. Sir Robert Montgomery, who in 1717 had received from the proprietors a grant for Azilia, and who had forfeited his title

<sup>29</sup> South Carolina Historical Society, Collections, I, 174-5, 272.

<sup>35</sup> South Carolina Historical Society, Collections, I, 171-2.

by not settling that territory within three years after the grant, revived his claims, organized a company, and actually took in subscriptions for £2,000,000 before he was stopped by the Act for Suppressing Bubbles; Cox dug up an old claim to all land to the south and west of the Altamaha River in an effort to "make a bubble out of it"; and the proprietors of Carolina entered into negotiations with three Quakers for the sale of their rights in America. In the Marquess Townshend Manuscripts is the copy of a memorandum which declares that: "The present proprietors of the provinces of North and South Carolina do agree to sell and part with all their Rights Powers and Properties of the sd Province . . . which were granted to them by a Charter or Charters from King Charles the 2d . . . for the Consideration of £230,000." The memorandum is dated at Bedford Row, May 25, 1720, and is signed by John Falconer, David Barclay, and Thomas Hyam (the three Quakers), and by James Bertie (for the Duke of Beaufort), Abraham Ashley, J. Dawson, George Granville (for Lord Carteret), J. Colleton, Lord Craven, and Joseph Boone (for Joseph Blake).<sup>36</sup> The sale was never consummated, however, probably because of the sudden collapse of all the "bubbles."

After 1720 no further attempt was made to overthrow the charter by process of law. The government of South Carolina remained in the hands of the Crown and for a number of years the proprietors did not make any serious attempt to regain control of the province. In 1726, however, Nicholson, the provisional royal governor, returned to England, whereupon they saw a chance to recover what they considered their rights. In a representation to the Privy Council they took the position that the Crown had appointed a governor merely as a temporary expedient during "some commotions in that Province," and that, since the agitation had quieted down and the provisional governor returned, they had a right to resume the government. They had appointed Samuel Horsey governor, they said, and asked that this appointment be confirmed. This petition was followed by others of a similar nature.<sup>37</sup>

For a time it looked as if the request might be granted. The only way the Crown could justify the assumption of the govern-

<sup>36</sup> Historical Manuscripts Commission, Reports, XI, Part 4, p. 255-6. Colonial Records of North Carolina II, 384-6.

<sup>37</sup> Acts of the Privy Council, Colonial, III, No. 69.  
South Carolina Historical Society, Collections, I, 173.

ment was by the "extraordinary exigency" opinion of the Attorney-General and Solicitor-General,<sup>31</sup> and there was some question as to whether conditions in the province could now be called extraordinary. It was quite true, as the proprietors said, that the commotions in the province had quieted down, at least to some extent. However, Yonge, agent for the province, was active in his efforts to prevent the granting of the request. In a memorial to the Privy Council he declared that, were the proprietors permitted to choose the governor, the inhabitants would "speedily fall into the same commotions again." This declaration must have had its effect upon the British government, for, according to a statement of the proprietors, it was owing to the effects of Yonge that the Board of Trade, on May 21, informed them that their request could not be granted.<sup>38</sup>

But the proprietors, anxious to recover control of the province, on June 26 presented a new memorial, praying that certain articles be introduced into the instructions to the governor of the province, namely: that he be commanded to assist the proprietors in obtaining their just dues and rights granted by his Majesty's predecessor; that he be directed to employ such officers as they had power to appoint by their charter; and that he be instructed to eject from their lands those who, after deposing their governor, had committed various excesses, cutting timber, etc. The petitioners asked, furthermore, to be restored to their ancient inheritance.<sup>39</sup>

The agents for South Carolina did everything in their power in behalf of the province. It was evident, wrote John Sharpe, one of the agents, that the granting of the request would result in a return, for all practical purposes, of the government to the proprietors.<sup>40</sup> The Privy Council was prevailed upon to postpone a final decision until the South Carolinians could have time to return a reply to the memorial,<sup>41</sup> and, this delay having been allowed, Nicholson, who was working in the interest of the province, sent a copy of the petition of the proprietors to the assembly of South Carolina with instructions that a reply be carefully drawn up and sent back as soon as possible. The agents also wrote to the assembly, urging that addresses expressing the loyalty of the province be sent to the Presi-

<sup>38</sup> South Carolina Historical Society, Collections, I, 173-4.

<sup>39</sup> South Carolina Historical Society, Collections I, 173.

<sup>40</sup> South Carolina Historical Society, Collections, I, 238.

<sup>41</sup> South Carolina Historical Society, Collections, I, 240-2.



dent of the Privy Council, the Secretary of State, and the law officers of the Crown.<sup>42</sup> These addresses, it was hoped, would influence the decision of the British government by showing the strong sentiment of the province in favor of being governed directly by the King's officials.

There is some doubt as to just what happened next. There is evidence sufficient to show that the South Carolina assembly carried out the instructions of its agent, replying to the memorial of the proprietors, and affirming the loyalty of the province to the Crown,<sup>43</sup> and that in due time the various addresses were received in England. But here the uncertainty begins. It had been thought that, as soon as these letters were received, the Privy Council would again take the matter up, but there is no record to show that any hearing was held or that any action was taken. However, it stands to reason that something was done and it is almost certain that the proprietors were given to understand, in one way or another, that their petition would not be granted, for on May 31, 1727, they completely changed their tactics by petitioning that the King take the supreme sovereignty of the province into his own hands;<sup>44</sup> which meant, it seems, that they were ready to sell their rights. This new step would hardly have been taken had there been any hope that their request of June 26, 1726, would be granted.

Just why the decision to sell came at this particular time is difficult to see. McCrady says that a sale could not be effected earlier because the proprietorships which had originally belonged to the Earl of Clarendon and to Sir William Berkeley were tied up in litigation,<sup>45</sup> and it is quite true that law suits over these two shares had been going on for a number of years. But that this could not have prevented an agreement between the Crown and the proprietors is proved by the fact that, although the title to these shares was not finally determined until 1729, terms of sale were agreed upon as early as 1728.<sup>46</sup>

Two factors had combined to prevent an earlier sale. Until 1720 the Crown, hoping to be able to overthrow the charter by act

<sup>42</sup> South Carolina Historical Society, Collections I, 238.

<sup>43</sup> South Carolina Historical Society, Collections, I, 242 and ff.

<sup>44</sup> South Carolina Historical Society, Collections, I, 174.

<sup>45</sup> McCrady, 678.

<sup>46</sup> See below. Also see note 53.



of Parliament or by action at law, had been unwilling to pay what would have been demanded in return for a surrender. After 1720 several years were required for the conclusion to be reached that the only way to gain permanent control of Carolina was to purchase the rights of the proprietors. The latter, for their part, had never been anxious to part with their interests, and it was only when they found that under the provisional government quitrents were not being paid,<sup>45</sup> and furthermore that there was no immediate prospect of their being permitted to reassume control of South Carolina, by far the more valuable of the two provinces, that they were ready to sell.

The offer of the proprietors to surrender their rights completely changed the aspect of the problem and made possible the opening of those negotiations which led to the final agreement. The matter was referred by the Privy Council to its committee, and during 1727 various hearings were held.<sup>47</sup> However, progress was slow, and on October 12 the proprietors again petitioned that the King take the government of South Carolina into his own hands, rather than send a provisional governor thither. Their interests suffered under the temporary arrangement and they wished either to recover all their charter privileges, or else to surrender them completely. Again, in December, they represented their desire that their offer be accepted.<sup>44</sup>

Several similar petitions from the proprietors were presented during the winter of 1727-1728, but no definite step could be taken until they stated the exact terms upon which they would be willing to give up their interest. This they finally did on March 5, 1728, when they proposed a complete and entire surrender of the province in return for a payment to each of them for £2,500.<sup>48</sup> It was at first thought, however, that each proprietor intended to keep the title to those grants of land which had been made to him individually and, since the Crown would hardly have been willing to buy from them under such conditions, it seemed that an understanding was as far distant as ever. When the proprietors were questioned in regard to the matter, however, they declared that was their intention, in case a purchase price could be agreed upon, to surrender

<sup>47</sup> Acts of the Privy Council, Colonial, III, No. 132.

<sup>48</sup> South Carolina Historical Society, Collections, I, 175.

not only their joint right in the province but also their separate rights by virtue of any grants. They also requested that assistance be rendered them in collecting arrears in quitrents, whereupon the committee asked them to draw up an account of all such arrears as were due. This estimate, drawn up by the proprietors, stated that, although no exact calculation was possible, the amount due was approximately £9,500, while unsettled claims upon them were thought to be only £4,827. 7s. 1d. It was stated that, if the Crown would pay them £5,000 additional, they would turn over all these accounts for settlement. On March 25 these terms of surrender were, upon recommendation of the committee, approved by the Privy Council, and the Treasury was ordered to "consider the properest methods" for the consummation of the bargain.<sup>47</sup>

At this point the difficulty of paying the purchase price arose, and it was thought necessary to ask the House of Commons to authorize the expenditure. Little or no trouble was encountered here, however, for on May 24, only ten days after the appeal had been made, that body in an address to the King declared that "this House will make good the Expense his Majesty shall be at on Account of the said Purchase, out of the next aids to be granted by Parliament."<sup>49</sup> And so on July 13 the Privy Council ordered the Lords of the Treasury to prepare the instruments necessary for the transaction.

Apparently the deal was complete except for the drawing up and signing of the necessary papers, but now another obstacle was encountered. The Attorney-General and Solicitor-General, having investigated the titles of the proprietors, reported to the Lords of the Treasury their opinion that a good title could not be made to the King without an act of Parliament.<sup>50</sup> Thus, during the spring of 1729, a bill prepared by the Attorney-General and Solicitor-General with the assistance of the Solicitor of the Treasury<sup>51</sup> was introduced into Parliament, passed both houses without serious opposition,<sup>52</sup> and received the signature of the King. This act provided for the purchase of the seven shares which belonged to Henry Somerset and Charles Noel Somerset, Joseph Blake, Henry

<sup>40</sup> House of Commons, Journals, XXI, 163, 165-5, 179.

<sup>50</sup> Calendar of Treasury Papers, CCLXVI, No. 32.

<sup>51</sup> Calendar of Treasury Books and Papers, 1729-30, No. 13, No. 17.

<sup>52</sup> House of Commons, Journals, XXI, 330 and ff.

House of Lords, Journals, XXIII, 419 and ff.

Bertie, James Bertie, Sir John Colleton, William, Lord Craven, and John Cotton. For each share £2,500 was to be paid and, in addition, a lump sum of £5,000 was to be given for the right to all arrears in quitrents, with the understanding that the Crown was to settle all unpaid debts which the proprietors had incurred in connection with Carolina.<sup>53</sup>

John, Lord Carteret, believing that his one-eighth interest in Carolina would eventually become very valuable, refused to surrender his share, and he and his heirs continued to hold it until the American Revolution. He was, however, forced to give up all right of participation in the government. How it was possible for him to lose the right to govern, but still to maintain the ownership of one-eighth part of the land is shown by a report of Attorney-General Northey upon the surrender of the Bahama charter. "I am of opinion," he stated, "that a surrender by four, where six are seized, can only convey, and extinguish, thereby, four parts in six of what the parties enjoyed. However, his majesty being entitled under four, to four parts of the government, which is entire, he may execute the whole."<sup>54</sup> In the same way the King, having purchased seven of the eight proprietorships of Carolina, could lawfully control the government of the whole, although the eighth share remained in the hands of a private individual.

The steps leading to the surrender of the charter of Carolina were only a part of the broader movement against all the proprietary and corporate colonies. This movement began between 1680 and 1690 and gradually, in one way or another, succeeded in bringing more and more colonies under the immediate control of the Crown. The only charters which survived until the American Revolution were those of Rhode Island, Connecticut, Pennsylvania, and Maryland, and every one of these provinces was at one time or another in the hands of the King. Rhode Island and Connecticut were brought under royal control during the Andros administration; Pennsylvania was in the hands of the Crown from 1692 until

<sup>53</sup> Colonial Records of North Carolina, III, 32-47.  
2 George II, Ch. 34. It is an interesting fact, although probably merely coincidence, that on March 27, 1729, only twenty-three days before the bill providing for the surrender of the charter was introduced into Parliament, a decree of the House of Lords finally settled the litigation in regard to the original shares of the Earl of Clarendon and Sir William Berkeley. House of Lords, Journals, XXIII, 380.

<sup>54</sup> Chalmers, George, *Opinions of Eminent Lawyers*, I, 38-9.

1694; and Maryland was governed by royal officials for twenty-five years following 1689.

Carolina was similar to New Jersey and the Bahamas in that each of these three colonies was in the hands of a group of proprietors during the early part of its history. And it is an interesting fact that the fate of all three was very much the same: the New Jersey proprietors voluntarily surrendered their rights of government in 1702; Carolina was brought under the immediate control of the Crown in 1729; and the Bahamas became a royal province in 1734. Thus the experiment of group-proprietorship was a failure and after 1734 (with the exception of Georgia, which was different from these three) not a single British colony in America or the West Indies was under the control of a group of proprietors.

#### BIBLIOGRAPHY

##### SOURCES

- Acts of the Privy Council, Colonial.
- Calendar of State Papers, Colonial.
- Calendar of Treasury Papers.
- Calendar of Treasury Books and Papers.
- Carroll, B. R., *Historical Collections of South Carolina*, 2 Vols. (New York, 1836).
- Chalmers, George, *Opinions of Eminent Lawyers*.
- Colonial Records of North Carolina.
- Historical Manuscripts Commission, Report XI, part 4 (Townshend manuscripts).
- House of Commons, Journals.
- House of Lords, Journals.
- House of Lords, Manuscripts.
- List and Abstracts of Papers in the State Paper Office, London, relating to South Carolina, done under authority, for the South Carolina Historical Society, 1857 (In Collections of South Carolina Historical Society, Vols. I, II, and III).
- New York Colonial Documents, Volume V, p. 591ff.
- Statutes of the Realm.

##### SECONDARY WORKS WHICH CONTAIN SOME SOURCE MATERIAL

- Hawks, Francis L., *History of North Carolina*, 2 vols. (Fayetteville, N. C., Vol. I, 1858, Vol. II, 1859.)
- Rivers, William J., *A Sketch of the History of South Carolina to the Close of the Proprietary Government* (Charleston, 1856).
- Rivers, William J., *A Chapter in the Early History of South Carolina* (Charleston, 1874).



## SECONDARY MATERIAL

Ashe, Samuel A., *History of North Carolina*, Vol. I, (Greensboro, N. C., 1908).

Blackstone, Sir William, *Commentaries on the Laws of England* (Portland, 1807), Vol. I, pp. 164-5.

Chalmers, George, *History of the Revolt*, Vol. II.

Channing, Eduard, *History of the United States*, Vol. II, Ch. XII (New York, 1908).

*Dictionary of National Biography.*

Kellogg, Louise P., *The American Colonial Charter* (In A. H. A. Report, 1903, Vol. I).

McCrary, Edward, *History of South Carolina under the Proprietary Government* (New York, 1897).

Osgood, Herbert L., *The American Colonies in the Eighteenth Century*, Vol. II, (New York, 1924).

## SOME ASPECTS OF THE WORK OF THE SOCIETY OF FRIENDS FOR NEGRO EDUCATION IN NORTH CAROLINA

By EMMA KING

The attitude of the Society of Friends in regard to Slavery naturally led to an interest in the instruction of slaves and free negroes in Friends' Communities of this State.

More than a century before emancipation, following John Woolman's visit to the colony, 1757, North Carolina Friends seem to have been first aroused to their duty in this respect.

Beginning with 1814 and for several years following, considerable mention is made of the instruction of the negro in the minutes of our Yearly Meetings held at New Garden—as these quotations show: “Virtuous instruction of those under Friends' Care not sufficiently attended to”—Again in 1815 “religious instruction too much neglected”—In that year the yearly meeting regretted to report that several members still held slaves, and that there was one case of selling slaves. (Beginning with 1781 in North Carolina, members *might be* disowned for holding slaves.)

In 1815 a Committee was appointed which was “exhorted in a particular manner to greater vigilance in endeavoring to promote the religious as well as literary education of black people under their care in order to qualify them to become useful members both of a civil and religious society.”

Stephen B. Weeks states that in 1816 Friends opened a school for negroes two days in the week to last three months, and reported two years later “that some of them can spell and a few read.” I have been unable to find a reference to this school in our minutes, and so cannot say where it was.

In 1817 the Yearly Meeting's Standing Committee was requested to “use exertions” for education of the “black people.” In 1818: “Western Quarter Standing Committee urges each membr to use exertions for promotion of literary education within the verge of each particular meeting of which he is a member.” Again, “Most of the people of color in minority under Friends' Care are in a way to get a portion of school learning and it is the sense and judg-

ment of this Committee that Friends endeavor to extend the education of the males so far as to read, write and cipher."

In the Reminiscences of Levi Coffin, so-called president of the "Underground Railroad," he records the fact that he and his cousin (Vestal Coffin) organized a Sunday school for colored people at New Garden in the summer of 1821, and a number, particularly older ones, attended, some making good progress. After a few months, however, several slaveholders threatened to put the law against teaching slaves in force, and the school was closed. Dr. David Caldwell and his son were among those who allowed their slaves to attend as long as the school continued.

The foregoing may serve as a background for the consideration of some of the activities of Friends in the education of the negro in this State after emancipation.

It is a tradition among us that Friends in North Carolina never stopped teaching freed negroes and slaves as opportunity offered, no matter what laws were passed. Therefore, as soon as it was permissible to organize schools, this was done in all Friends' Communities. No claim is made by this paper to give a complete account of the work accomplished either by our own members or by the Friends of other sections during Reconstruction and the years following, as only extracts from various reports have been available. It is rather a few comments on the type of work, with the idea of illustrating chiefly that Friends believed in helping the negroes to help themselves in the betterment of their condition. This, they were among the first to believe, could be accomplished only through education.

North Carolina Friends, because of their number being so depleted by the migration to the west and because of their reduced circumstances, could not, *as an organization*, undertake this work on any extended scale. They did, as individuals, engage in it, some as superintendents, and many as teachers, and so far as they were able contributed to its support.

Since we did not enter the work as an organization, there is no official record of what was accomplished by our own meetings. Information has been gathered from a few letters, and from the memory of the older people, some of them colored persons who attended the schools.

The examples which follow I believe to be typical of both the day schools and Sunday schools in our various communities immediately after the war. These illustrate the spirit of our people at that time, which after all, is more important than if we had fuller records.

In the Back Creek neighborhood (near Dr. Barney Nixon's place), in Randolph County there was a school where the children of freed slaves were taught some years before the outside organizations of Friends began their work in the State. When a school was conducted under the care of New York Friends in the early 80's, this one—Fairview—was considered the most intelligent of the schools in the field.

An old colored woman in this same community told me the past summer that our own Friends subscribed to pay various teachers before the work of New York Friends began and that she with her mother attended school at the "Red House" (This was so named because the mud used in daubing was extremely red. The present church and schoolhouse of the colored people bears the same name).

Mrs. L. L. Hobbs describes a Sabbath school held in a large barn near her father's home at Deep River, which is no doubt typical of the many schools we know to have been conducted. Here the children were taught to read, and urged to memorize Scripture, especially Psalms, which they did very readily. Singing among Friends was not approved at that time, but reciting in concert was encouraged by the teachers, who were both the young people and older members of Deep River Meeting. Mrs. Hobbs remembers especially the zeal with which the school recited the twenty-fourth Psalm—"Lift up your heads, O ye gates," which they would shout at the top of their voices!

In an appendix to the first report of the Baltimore Association,\* 1866—is the following quotation from Frances T. King (President) "They (North Carolina Friends) have charge of, or assist in teaching twenty First Day schools for colored persons, with 1165 pupils. This *does not* include schools under the care of Freedmen's Associations." Again in the report of 1867 reference is

---

\*"Baltimore Association of Friends to advise and assist Friends of the Southern States."



made to the fact that our members conducted 16 Sabbath schools for colored people.

While we wish to give proper credit to the outside organizations which worked in the State, we are glad to remember that our own people did their share so far as they were able.

Too much cannot be said of the interest of the Friends in Great Britain in work for the "freedmen." In contributing both funds and clothing, they aided greatly in the work of our own members. Older people remember especially the yards of materials, the quantities of unmade clothing, needle-books and even pincushions, that were sent, for the idea of training the hands was considered important. One teacher at Jamestown is said to have taught the small colored boys to sew!

Among the many outside agencies which undertook educational work in the State at the beginning of Reconstruction, the Friends of Philadelphia and New York had a leading part. These two organizations were very generously aided by Friends of Great Britain, and by those of other sections of this country. Baltimore contributed liberally, though the particular work of Friends there was in aiding schools for our own people, and in introducing improved methods of farming.

"The Friends Association of Philadelphia and its vicinity for the Relief of Colored Freedom," organized in 1863 for physical relief among negro refugees following the Union Army, began educational work in North Carolina in 1865. An English Friend (George Dixon) stationed at Danville, served as Superintendent for both the Virginia and North Carolina schools until 1868 when he was succeeded by Alfred Jones of China, Maine, who served until 1880. No one succeeded him as Superintendent, but a committee in charge of the school made frequent visits as long as the work continued.

In 1863 Yordley Warner of Philadelphia had been given a pass by the Secretary of War to go through the lines of both armies to investigate the condition of the negroes for this Association, and he was instrumental in establishing schools in Virginia, Tennessee, and Kentucky as well as in North Carolina. He visited this State in the summer of 1865 and established a school in Greensboro in the fall of that year.

Mention has been made of the fact that many of our members were teachers, and several were superintendents working under the organized boards of Friends from other states.

Immediately after the close of the war, when the Philadelphia Association began work, Dr. Nereus Mendenhall acted as Superintendent until George Dixon could arrive. Dr. Mendenhall laid a foundation for the work, located a number of those teachers who came from the North, and was able, even in the short period in which he served, to advise and direct these teachers very helpfully, for some of them were quite young and inexperienced and altogether unprepared for many of the circumstances which arose. One of the first schools was in the old Yearly Meeting House at New Garden, and here, after the resignation of the first teacher, a young woman incapable of coping with the situation, Dr. Mendenhall's daughter, Mrs. Hobbs, then only a young girl, *taught* for a brief time until further arrangements could be made.

The Association of Philadelphia that same year bought thirty-four acres in Greensboro which was sold or leased in small lots to the colored people, and the section still bears the name of Warnersville. In December report was made of the following schools: Greensboro seven teachers, Salisbury four, Deep River one and Goldsboro three. In February (1866) the report says 3,000 children were in North Carolina schools.

In 1869, apparently the highest point of activity in number of schools and pupils, there were 29 schools and 40 teachers. In that year the Superintendent of Public Instruction, Ashley, commented very favorably on Friends' schools for Freedmen. The number gradually diminished as public schools were organized. In 1881 we find four schools and in 1887 only two—at Goldsboro and Salem.

At the present time no work is done by Philadelphia Friends in this State. The "Christianburg (Va.) Industrial Institute" is the center of activity of the Association.

The following quotation from one of the Association reports is of interest: "It is proper to state that in very few instances, even from the beginning, has the entire expense of supporting any school been borne by the Association. The Freedmen's Bureau, the Peabody Fund, local taxation, the colored people themselves and many of the white people, have all aided in this work."

The work under the care of Philadelphia Friends embraced a large territory. There were schools in Goldsboro, Hillsboro, Salisbury, Charlotte, Lincolnton, and smaller towns such as Madison and Walnut Cove, besides a number in the rural communities of Friends and some small ones in Rowan, Davie and Iredell counties.

We know that a special superintendent was employed for the last named counties. Dr. J. M. Tomlinson of Randolph County, was also a superintendent of a small territory, chiefly his own county and Guilford, probably under the care of the General Superintendent of the Philadelphia Board, though this fact is not entirely clear from the correspondence found. At any rate the following facts from letters give further information regarding the work at that time.

Dr. Tomlinson entered upon his duties as Superintendent in 1869. He used his own horse in traveling from school to school without charge. Some of the roads were unspeakable and it was no little physical tax which he endured, as two of the schools were nearly forty miles distant in opposite directions.

The list of the schools is given as follows: Newmarket, Stout's Chapel, Rocky River, Providence, Back Creek, Buffalo Ford, Fentress, Trinity, Deep Creek, Dover, New Bethel, South Fork, Centre.

In addition to his educational duties Dr. Tomlinson freely donated his skillful attention as a physician, and in one report he states that he distributed thirteen dollars worth of medicines.

The total expenses of the traveling and salaries of the eleven teachers for one year of four months' operations was \$980.40. He attributed this low cost of 55c per pupil for the year to the policy of hiring for the smaller schools native colored teachers who taught in the winter months when there was no remunerative labor for them on the farms.

In 1870 Dr. Tomlinson reported fourteen schools with 560 pupils. The operations cost \$1,308.74. The same year saw 1,800 colored children in the First Day schools.

A record book of a small school in Randolph County for 1870-1881 examined recently gives us some facts not elsewhere obtained. The salary of the teacher, a young white man of the neighborhood, for the first year mentioned was \$16.75 per month for a term of four months. The usual salary, however, seems to have been,

\$20.00. The ages of the twenty-two pupils ranged from six to twenty-one. One of these twenty-one-year-old pupils was enrolled again in 1880, after an absence of ten years.

By 1871 there were sixteen day schools, with 808 pupils. The schools were in operation on an average of four and a half months, at an estimated cost of \$1,308.61.

In one of his reports Dr. Tomlinson says: "Some of the children walk four and a half miles to school, and come under distressing conditions, needing shoes and food. *I have had no opposition from the whites whatever.\** We have built thirteen schoolhouses, for which we have used but \$135. The colored people have done all the work themselves. But three of the schoolhouses have windows, the others are lighted by the doors. They are rough, but comfortable. We have open wood fires, and the fuel costs but the trouble of getting." In another report he speaks again of administering medical relief, and relieving the wants of the negroes in other ways. He personally established thirteen schools—all but two in neighborhoods where there were previously none. There were, he says, 455 pupils, averaging thirty-five to a school. (Of the thirteen teachers, twelve were whites, and all the thirteen were natives of the State. Ten of them were Friends.) He adds that all the children improved rapidly, and many of them learned to read in a few months.

The work of the Philadelphia and New York boards was similar. The teachers under both organizations held temperance meetings, and conducted sewing classes in the neighborhood as well as the schools, and assisted the superintendents in distributing clothing and other necessities of various kinds. Both boards distributed quantities of tracts and Bibles, and provided their schools bountifully with books and all kinds of supplies. When I asked an old colored man to tell me what he remembered about one of the schools which I knew he attended, he said, "Mostly, lots of slates and slate pencils and chalk." His brother remembered that "*all* the colored children went to the schools."

The New York Friends coming to the field later, confined their efforts to a smaller territory than the Philadelphia Association, and

---

\*This was a matter of comment because of the fact that a number of schools in Maryland, and at least one in Virginia, had been burned.



in the beginning employed more teachers from among our own people—some who were not Friends, for prejudice was less by that time. They began their work, principally in Guilford and Randolph counties in 1874. From one school in that year, the number increased to 19 in 1884, and then decreased as larger public funds became available. The money contributed by the New York Board made it possible to provide for a longer term—sometimes four months and sometimes five, and for a better grade of teachers, chosen by a superintendent, B. F. Blair of Randolph County, whose efforts were untiring as long as he served. Those who knew him remember his careful attention to every detail of the work, and especially his very regular visits to the schools, regardless of bad weather and the worst of roads. The smaller schools generally received their support (that is in addition to the public funds) from a particular member of the New York Yearly Meeting to whom the teacher reported as well as to the superintendent, who of course, reported to his county superintendent.

Elmore Meade, the head of one of the larger schools, Asheboro, speaks of a large number of older colored people who attended that school in 1883, many parents coming with their children. In the following year a night school was opened, especially for the older ones, and people in that community believe this to be the first "moonlight school" in our part of the State.

Teachers from our own membership were gradually replaced in all the schools by colored teachers who had received instruction sufficient to allow their taking over the work. In the larger schools, "normal courses" were given whenever possible for those who wished to teach their own people.

By 1891 the New York board considered it wise to concentrate its efforts in one school of the industrial type. They therefore purchased property in High Point where they conducted a successful school until the graded school system was established, and from that time until the present year\* continued ownership of the property and contributed to the support.

An Irish Friend soon after the war had made a contribution, known as the Richardson Fund, for work in this State, and the

---

\*1923.

income from this has been given until the present time, to this one school, since the smaller ones were discontinued.

Since the Friends found by experience that wherever efficient colored teachers could be employed the work was more satisfactorily carried on, they made every effort to encourage and aid teacher-training in this State. The summer normal schools for colored teachers conducted by B. F. Blair as superintendent and Prof. J. W. Woody of Guilford College, as principal, are among the most valuable contributions of Friends in their educational work for the negroes in more recent years.

These normals of four weeks' terms supplemented the work of the county institutes, receiving funds from the county and State and from both Philadelphia and New York Friends, as well as from those in Great Britain. They were usually held in Greensboro, though one was in Graham and one in Winston. A comparison of the funds used may be of interest. In 1886 Guilford County contributed \$30 to this work and the Friends boards (Philadelphia and New York) \$225. In 1889 the State gave \$50 in addition to the county fund, and the contribution from Friends. In 1892, which appears to be the last, when the State contributed \$100, B. F. Blair's record shows that he *returned* \$39.20 to the treasurer of the New York Board. These amounts are given to illustrate further the fact that so long as the State needed help in public education of the negro, the Friends were ready to help.

What has been attempted in the foregoing account is to show that the Friends, from the beginning, have undertaken to aid the negroes in every way, as our Yearly Meeting Clerk in 1815 recorded in the minutes: "in order to qualify them to become useful members both of a religious and civil society."

# WAR CAMP COMMUNITY SERVICE IN NORTH CAROLINA

## [Documents]

[War Camp Community Service, as its name implies, was an organization working in communities where camps of soldiers or sailors were operating. Paralleling in some respects the work of such organizations as the Red Cross, the Young Men's Christian Association, the Knights of Columbus, and the Salvation Army, it nevertheless gained special strength as a morale agency by promoting wholesome social relations between the visiting soldiers and the residents of the community.

The service originated in the Hostess Houses that were erected in the training camps early in the summer of 1917 and grew up with the rise of encampments over the country.

The whole work was directed from headquarters at One Madison Avenue, New York, by the following organization:

### OFFICERS

President.....	Joseph Lee
Treasurer.....	Mortimer N. Buckner
Secretary.....	Howard S. Braucher

### EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE

Joseph Lee	Howard S. Braucher
Mortimer N. Buckner	Henry W. De Forest

### DIRECTOR FIELD DEPARTMENT

W. Scott Radeker

### BUDGET COMMITTEE

Joseph Lee	Mortimer N. Buckner
Myron T. Herrick	Clarence M. Clark
Howard S. Braucher	Henry W. De Forest

Charles D. Norton

The plan of operation was to send an expert organizer to a war camp community, who would draw on local help and run the particular local service. The following reports give only the names of personnel furnished by the central organization. Local help, while constant in quantity, varied too much for accurate record.

The first series of the documents describes the care of North Carolina boys in New York City while the service was in operation. The second series consists entirely of reports of the work in North Carolina up to October 1919 when the service had been for the most part discontinued. *Editor's Note*].

## CARE OF NORTH CAROLINIANS IN NEW YORK

1619 East 15th St.  
Brooklyn, N. Y.  
April 15th.

Governor T. W. Bickett.

Dear Sir:

I have been for several weeks acting as Hostess representing North Carolina in the Hall of States in New York City, being so far the sole representative of our State, which I know to be as worthy of exploitation as any in the Union.

I am naturally anxious to do as much and as well as possible. I am writing now to ask if you will have all official matter coming to the Hall of States sent direct to me. I find that matters are often overlooked unless sent to one particular person, and I do not relish seeing North Carolina pushed off the map! . . . Any help you can give me in doing helpful work for North Carolina will be greatly appreciated. The address heading this is my home address, and mail sent here or addressed to "Mrs. Pride Jones, Hall of States, 27 West 25th St., New York City," will reach me.

Very Sincerely,

FANNIE HELLEN JONES.

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA  
GOVERNOR'S OFFICE  
RALEIGH

April 21, 1919.

(Copy)

Mrs. Pride Jones,  
Hall of States,  
27 West 25th Street,  
New York City.

My dear Mrs. Jones:

I appreciate your letter of the 15th, and I am directing Colonel Fred. A. Olds, [collector for] the Hall of History in Raleigh, to



correspond with you about your work in New York and to carry out the suggestions contained in your letter. . . .

Wishing you much success in every endeavor to keep North Carolina on the map,

I beg to remain,

Sincerely yours,

T. W. BICKETT.

Brooklyn, N. Y.

April 24, 1919.

Col. Fred A. Olds:

As you know from my recent letter to Governor Bickett, I am doing all in my power to welcome and care for the North Carolina boys in New York. War Camp Community Service has established a Hall of States, thus relieving the States of overhead expense. In addition to that they have established connection with all the hospitals, so that the Hall of States is a clearing house for all casuals passing through New York; thus we are put promptly in connection with our own wounded and convalescent men. There is so much work to be done, and our Southern boys are so homesick in this big city. The boys who come home with Southern units land at Newport News, but the Eastern and Western regiments are largely made up of replacement men; so we find many North Carolina boys demobilized at camps adjacent to New York. Practically all casuals are also landed here. I know we can't expect heavy State appropriations, but if you have an emergency fund from which you can send us five hundred dollars, for aiding wounded and disabled or stranded men, the group of patriotic women who are giving their time and energy to the work would be deeply grateful.

Most of the states have made appropriations; varying from thirty-five hundred, which Kansas appropriated, to two thousand a month from Idaho. We are doing everything we can under the conditions, but when we see the splendid things other states are doing, it makes us feel badly that the lack of a little money should so handicap us.

Very Sincerely,

FANNIE HELLEN JONES.

(Mrs. Pride Jones.)

The enclosed card we send to each boy as soon as he arrives; if he is too sick to come to the Hall of States we go to him. Many of them come back literally without one penny; some have not been paid in a year. My own son landed with nothing but the clothes he wore, and he has not been paid since last November. *Help us to help them.*

---

THE NEW YORK WAR CAMP COMMUNITY SERVICE  
HALL OF STATES

27 West 25th Street 'Phone: Farragut 8800

Information Bureau, Employment and Vocational

Advice, "Port of Missing Friends," Club Rooms

Officers and Enlisted Men are invited to visit their State's Office in the Hall of States. Information on State activities for men in uniform. Local papers on file.

*Come and Meet Your Home Folks*

GREETINGS FROM DIXIE ! !

It's good to see you back! Come to the Hall of States and see us. You will find home papers and folks from home, a warm welcome, open fires and many home comforts.

If you cannot come, write or 'Phone and *some one will come to see you.* If you want information on any subject, ask us.

Address: HALL OF STATES

27 West 25th Street, New York City

Telephone: Farragut 8800

Take Broadway cars to 25th Street or Seventh Avenue Subway to 23d Street, or Sixth Avenue Elevated to 23d Street.

---

SPECIAL SERVICE IN NORTH CAROLINA

CHARLOTTE

Former Community Organizer—W. A. Wheatly  
Colored Workers—S. S. Smith, Willie Brown

Work in Charlotte goes back to the time when War Camp Community Service was an extremely young organization. The last week in July, 1917, a representative of the Commission on Train-

ing Camp Activity made a preliminary survey of the city, returning a week later with the field secretary, Mr. W. A. Wheatly, who proceeded to organize the community. A strong committee was immediately formed and coöperation secured from the daily papers, the city commissioners, the local and camp Young Men's Christian Associations, the Young Women's Christian Association, the ministers, the churches, and nearly all of the fraternal orders and clubs. By the middle of August War Camp Community Service had nine sub-committees to take charge of the various activities, such as information, entertainment, finance, accommodations, church coöperation, and so forth.

At Camp Green, a short distance from the city, were 40,000 soldiers, for whom accommodation and recreation must be provided. For their convenience War Camp Community Service began to investigate and list sleeping and eating rooms, to interest various business men in providing drinking fountains and rest rooms for soldiers visiting the city, and to issue city maps and cards of varied information. The Ministers' Association, composed of men who were exceedingly influential citizens of Charlotte, became interested and secured eight downtown rest rooms, while five of the churches agreed to serve freely ice cold drinks to the soldiers on Sunday afternoons. The churches began to give socials, which proved highly successful from the point of view both of the church members and of the service men. On social nights it was found that only a few soldiers went to the recreation park, while as many as 1,200 attended the church festivities.

By September 22d six downtown churches had opened reading and writing rooms of their own, which were marked with welcome signs. Invitations poured in from Charlotte and its suburbs for large numbers of soldiers to attend lawn parties or take Sunday dinner in private homes. Thousands of men were thus entertained on Sundays, and a strong spirit of good feeling and mutual admiration developed between the service men and the townspeople. Testimonial letters from the soldiers expressed their great delight at the hospitality accorded them and their appreciation of War Camp Community Service, whose organization of activities had made these social contacts possible. In November the home hospitality plan was developed still more systematically, and each one

of several responsible organizations was detailed to look after the entertainment of one particular regiment. From these organizations small committees met in conference with the War Camp Entertainment Committee, and the hope was that every soldier in camp might be entertained in some home.

At Christmas time the people of the city raised over \$4,000 for a camp Christmas tree and gifts for the men. The informal gatherings which became so popular, known as the "Get Together and Sing Together" now began to occur in two of the churches, which provided supper for the soldiers after the singing.

In January, 1918, a large, well-situated house was rented for a Soldiers' Club. When completed this building contained reading and writing rooms, billiards, pool, and other games, and such accommodations as shoe shining stands, while the porches and yard were provided with chairs, benches, and hammocks. On the north was a piece of property, the use of which was readily granted by its owner for tennis courts and a place for other outdoor sports. A quarantine at camp during February, due to a few cases of spinal meningitis, reduced activities to a minimum, but in March War Camp Community Service undertook a campaign to raise from seven to ten thousand dollars for the Soldiers' Club and three thousand dollars for maintaining two policewomen. During the campaign Charlotte girls sold twenty-five and fifty cent and one dollar tags at six booths about the city.

As a demand grew for some kind of community house with rooms for soldiers and their relatives, a plan was arranged whereby War Camp Community Service might cooperate with people of the city in running such a place. The old Presbyterian Hospital was selected as the building, and in May the work of renovating was begun.

Meanwhile the Soldiers' Club was receiving a good share of attention, and both the people of the community and the service men took great pride in it. In the rear, men from camp had built a 90x40 pavilion with a platform for theatricals, two dressing rooms, a fine dancing floor, and a large porch extending from the club to the pavilion. This addition was completed in time for an officers' dance on May 4th, but was not opened to the men until a week later. The Club was now well equipped for entertainment and



general accommodation; its canteen was excellent and well patronized. On Sunday afternoons programs were presented on the grounds, and refreshments were served the large numbers attending by ladies of the different churches. From seven to eight hundred men thronged the Club House on Saturday, enjoying the lawn, the porch, the rest and reading rooms, the canteen, the dancing, or the outdoor movies.

Up to this time, service had been conducted mainly for the white soldiers, but in June the services of a colored man were obtained for work among the people of his race. Near the negro library in the heart of the city, the Bailey home was leased and equipped for a club for colored soldiers. The welfare workers met and discussed opening a moving picture house for these people; a room registry was started for the use of visiting negro relatives; and a committee of colored people was formed to organize hospitality for the negro troops. For athletic contests, community sings, and lawn parties the grounds of Biddle University were placed at the disposal of War Camp Community Service. On September 14th the Colored Club was opened, and at once the men flocked to it in great numbers. It was completely and attractively finished and equipped with piano, victrola, and pool tables. One question which the men constantly asked was: "Don't we have to pay anything for using this club?" In answer, 3,000 information cards were printed inviting the colored men to make full use of their club house.

Beside the Colored Club was a hall, which the Construction Quartermaster had renovated and redecorated to be run under the direction of the War Camp Community Service colored worker as a colored community house. This proved a great boon to the colored people, who enjoyed here movies and dances, Sunday social hours, and a great Christmas tree in December.

The white "Red Circle Inn" and "Red Circle Club" continued to increase in usefulness, a canteen being added to the equipment of the former. Christmas activities made December a busy month for War Camp, which provided Christmas trees and general good times for thousands of men. As the men began to return, War Camp Community Service in coöperation with the mayor of the city put up at the Southern Station a sign:

## CHARLOTTE, N. C.

## WELCOME HOME

## OUR SOLDIERS, SAILORS, AND MARINES

The year 1919 saw War Camp Community service beginning to outline peace time activities and to turn its attention to the welcoming of returned soldiers. Camp Greene closed, and in January the first batch of overseas men arrived. Receptions and special entertainments were given for these men. On Washington's Birthday letters were sent to the principal of every school in the county suggesting a program for the day.

Considerable hospital work was now done, and the convalescents were entertained with motion pictures, automobile rides, and Sunday dinners. Efforts to obtain positions for discharged soldiers established coöperation with the Employment Commission and the United States Employment Service.

In March plans were made for a final dance to the returned soldiers and their friends. Eight hundred invitations were issued, and the affair was a fitting finale to the splendid program of entertainment War Camp Community Service had maintained throughout the months.

The colored work had continued enthusiastically. The men had crowded the Colored Club, and the girls had formed a division of their own for service work and entertainment. In April the Girls' Division began a membership campaign which resulted in one hundred six new members. At the mass meeting which closed the drive, the Home Fires Club was awarded a Red Circle pennant for securing the largest number.

Memorial services in May and other special entertainments were held. A community choral was organized with fifty members, and noon-day singing was conducted in many of the laundries of the city. The employees were quick to respond to this kind of recreation and their managers coöperated in every way, one man even buying benches for the girls to use at noon.

So extended did the colored activities grow that the club facilities became inadequate, and in September a new club was opened. Every night the rooms were filled. A splendid concert was given by the Girls' Choral assisted by a local orchestra of seven pieces.

This work among the colored folk of Charlotte exerted a tremendous uplifting influence and proved itself a bit of real community service.

---

SOUTHPORT, N. C.

Community Organizer—A. L. Weatherly, followed by James Culton.

District Representative—H. L. Allen, followed by W. A. Wheatly,  
followed by George B. Ranshaw.

Colored Girls Worker—Myra Smith.

Just across the river from Southport is Fort Caswell, a permanent army post. For years no point of contact had been established between the men here and the townspeople, but with the entrance of the United States into the war and the subsequent influx or large numbers of new men who flocked to Southport for recreation in their leisure time, the citizens began to feel that something ought to be done for the entertainment and comfort of these soldiers. Several meetings were held, culminating in the opening on August 30, 1917, of the Army and Navy Club, the rooms of which were crowded every afternoon and evening from the start. During the first week the record shows that over 5,000 pieces of stationery were used by the men.

As the scope of the work constantly widened, the local committee realized that their efforts should be directed by one of the National Welfare associations, and in December, 1917, the matter was brought to the attention of the executives of War Camp Community Service. The district representative went to Southport to look over the situation and recommended that headquarters take over the organization as it already existed. On March 14, 1918, at a meeting of the local committee, the work was officially turned over to War Camp Community Service, the committee being retained to act in an advisory capacity.

The new program introduced a great many entertainment features for the men, such as popular lectures, weekly meetings in which townspeople participated, and home hospitality for the soldiers on Sunday and holidays.

It soon became apparent that the club facilities were inadequate for the demands upon them. When a Wilmington lady offered

a box alley, it was decided to build an enlargement to cover it, but in view of the great need for more space, the scheme grew, until it resulted in the construction of a \$3,000 annex to the club building. For this annex War Camp Community Service appropriated \$1,000, and the soldiers from Fort Caswell constructed it themselves. About the first of August the enlarged building was completed and opened to service men. It housed a box alley, a canteen, pool tables, bath and toilet rooms. On the grounds of the club a bandstand was also constructed, and seating arrangements provided for outdoor entertainments.

Another important step was taken on May 1st, when there was rented and furnished a building for the entertainments of soldiers' relatives who visited Southport. The building selected had been formerly used as a hotel and was well adapted for the purpose; two competent hostesses were placed in charge. On account of the scarcity of hotel accommodations in the city this place was a great boon to the visitors as well as to soldiers on leave, and it was successfully conducted until about a month after the signing of the armistice.

As a necessary accompaniment of the enlargement of the club equipment came an addition to the personnel. Two canteen workers and an office secretary were secured; a representative of the Young Women's Christian Association was sent to Southport to coöperate; and a song leader from the Fosdick Commission on Training Camp Activities went to Fort Caswell to work there and in Southport. The work among the soldiers reached its greatest height during the summer of 1918, for at that time Fort Caswell had its greatest number of soldiers, from 1,500 to 2,000.

During the months of October, November, and December, 1918, the club was gradually extending its usefulness to the soldiers at Fort Caswell, but after the signing of the armistice and the gradual lessening of the number of soldiers at the fort the character of the work changed somewhat. A tendency arose to make of the club not merely a recreation room for service men, but a community center for both civilians and soldiers. Increasing accommodations made possible more frequent gatherings in which both these elements of the community participated. The joint Peace and Thanksgiving service was largely attended, and a deeper community of interest was aroused, while the general Christmas entertainment was another



event of jollification that drew the soldiers and civilians together. Regular sings for the public conducted at the club rooms on Sunday afternoon during the winter and spring probably did more than any other thing to interest the people in the club as a community center.

In November, 1918, the club director requested an appropriation to organize negro work. This request was approved, and on March 4, 1919, a young negro woman was sent to Southport as worker among the colored people. To assist her in this work, a committee of Southport citizens was appointed to act in an advisory capacity. A comfortable room was opened as a club, and facilities for recreation and instruction were secured.

Ground was broken early in January, 1919, preparatory to the construction of a club addition which was to contain an auditorium. The work of building went forward rapidly, and on March 28, 1919, the new and commodious building was dedicated. The local Masonic fraternity directed the exercises of the day, in which the War Camp organizer, the executive committee, the municipal officers, a representative from Fort Caswell, and the War Camp district representative participated. With the construction of this auditorium and the lessening of the number of soldiers to be served, there came many opportunities during the spring and summer of 1919 to develop the community service features of the club, which became a meeting place for welfare societies, a social center for the young people, and a clearing center for the recreational life of the town.

With the signing of the armistice and the decrease of men at the fort, the personnel of the club was reduced to the minimum, and on the first day of May the Hostess House, which had sheltered hundreds of relatives and friends of soldiers, was closed.

---

#### WILMINGTON, N. C.

Community Organizer—A. L. Weatherly, followed by A. E. Howell,  
following by A. R. Ferguson (Also Industrial Organizer).

Director Girls' Work—Edna M. Krantz.

Former Colored Worker—Sibyl Moses.

As early as November, 1917, the people of Wilmington had anticipated the needs of the men stationed near them and had pro-

vided a rest room in the city known as "The Soldiers' and Sailors' Club." This clubroom, which was fitted up and maintained entirely by voluntary contributions from the townspeople, contained tables, chairs, pictures, water service, and lights. On Thursdays and Sundays, when the soldiers visited town, it was freely patronized. At the beginning of 1918 War Camp Community Service undertook to improve transportation facilities between the fort and the city and to promote cordial relations between the soldiers and the townspeople, but it was not until July of that year that the regular War Camp Community Service work started on a firm and efficient basis. In July, 1918, a Wilmington executive committee was formed, and definite plans of work were shaped. By the end of July committees had been appointed to take charge of erecting the central Army and Navy Club and procuring a suitable lodging house for soldiers and sailors. Every one in Wilmington approached by the War Camp workers showed hearty approval of these undertakings.

One of the first activities War Camp Community Service inaugurated in Wilmington was the sending of entertainments to Fort Caswell and to Southport on Sunday afternoons. Another accommodation greatly appreciated by the soldiers was the securing for them of reduced rates at the beach hotels and reduced fares between Wilmington and Wrightsville.

Work on the Club house started the last week of August, 1918. A big soldier minstrel show in which War Camp assisted, netted over \$500 for this club, and the prospects looked bright for its speedy construction. At about this time, however, influenza set in, and for several months the work was much delayed owing to the scarcity of carpenters. In October, in fact, a strict quarantine was established at camp, and all work on the building ceased.

Social and recreational activities came to a standstill for a time, about all that War Camp Community Service could do in the way of entertainment being to take quantities of games and reading matter to the quarantined men. Travelers' Aid work continued in the union station, and the War Camp office collected material for a soldiers' and sailors' directory.

In Wilmington was stationed a company of men whose entertainment had been somewhat neglected by the townspeople and who

had become lone and depressed. There were limited service men who were shifted from place to place for routine guard duty with no prospects of overseas service. Hearing of their predicament, War Camp Community Service planned for them a series of entertainments, parties, and auto rides to be given upon the lifting of quarantine. The first of these entertainments was an auto ride to Masonboro Sound, twelve miles from the city, for an old-time oyster roast. The girls' motor squad had volunteered to take the men on this trip, and to provide an extra girl for each car to promote fun and sociability. As soon as the crowd arrived, a great pile of oysters was shoveled into the roasting oven, previously prepared, and while waiting for the feast, the men and girls went boating and got acquainted with one another. Keen enjoyment and hearty appreciation of this event were displayed by every man present, and comments showed clearly that the outing had accomplished its purpose and lifted the guards out of their depression. A similar entertainment was given to fifty-one sailors as soon as they were released from quarantine.

When the Carolina Ship Yard held a big celebration on the occasion of the laying of its first keel, and invitations were extended to the people of Wilmington, the local guard company and the naval reserve men were overlooked. War Camp Community Service at once secured invitations for these men, about forty-eight in number, and with a special car took the party to the yards en masse.

At the instigation of War Camp Community Service a big community Thanksgiving Service was held in the First Baptist Church. Over seven hundred people assembled, crowding the auditorium, to hear two fine, broad-spirited addresses on "Our Debt to the Past" and "The Obligation of the Hour." This highly successful gathering made for a splendid get-together spirit in the community.

The Travelers' Aid continued its excellent service for soldiers and sailors and for straggling influenza cases about the city. Its work at the station was particularly appreciated by the ticket agent and the other officials, while traveling service men praised it highly. Community singing progressed, with a Liberty Chorus holding regular meeting and a big program arranged with the camp song leader.

Information about shipbuilders and their status in the community was obtained in November from an industrial survey of the city.

Employers and managers with whom the service came in contact during the survey seemed anxious for aid in providing recreation for the leisure time of their men.

In the last week of the month from ten to twenty men were secured to work on the club building, which was not far from completion. Some time before, the director of the National Special Aid Association had promised \$1,000 to the building fund, to be raised through a talent bazaar. The bazaar was now held, and over \$1,000 was secured.

The third week in December, all troops were removed, and the force at Fort Caswell was reduced to less than three hundred men. To counterbalance this depletion, about 1,000 white and over 1,000 colored men were returning from service. Hence the character of the work began to change somewhat at this time, concentrating on the returning troops and on the industrial service division.

A big Christmas celebration had been planned and was carried out despite inauspicious weather. Late in the afternoon the rain ceased, and although the ground was still uncomfortably wet, a good crowd turned out to gather around the Christmas tree on the postoffice lawn. It was a large tree, thirty feet in height, and had been beautifully decorated and strung with electric lights. A short address was given, and the singing of Christmas carols and popular songs was led by the War Camp singing organizer together with the Liberty Chorus. Expressions of appreciation in the daily papers and from many individuals testified that the evening was a most enjoyable one.

January, 1919, saw industrial work started, employment, rooming, and housing accommodations rendering good service to returned men, community singing taking a new start, entertainment being provided for the sailors of docked boats and for the men at Fort Caswell.

In February, after many long delays caused by influenza, the Red Circle Army and Navy Club was completed and opened with an evening of festivities. One hundred twenty soldiers were served with supper, which was followed by a formal program, in which the club was presented to uniformed and discharged men by the War Camp Community Service organizer and accepted by the major of Fort Caswell. This indoor program was but the fore-



runner of a big block dance, in which about 2,000 people participated. Each of the eight war organizations had a separate booth, where refreshments were served.

After the opening night the club was used constantly for informal rest and recreation and for many special entertainments, as well. A dance was held for the sailors from the coast guard ship *Seminole*; the boys from the submarine chaser 199 gave their girl friends a dinner here, cooking and preparing it themselves in the club kitchen; and regular Saturday evening dances with refreshments attracted large numbers every week.

In March, 1919, the proposition of colored work was taken up, and by the end of April the Dixie Soldiers and Sailors Club was in full swing. A pool table was installed, and the reading room was supplied with stationery and with magazines sent over at the end of the week from the Army and Navy Club. A large attendance had been maintained here from the start, the Dixie Club being highly popular among the colored men.

In April community singing received a new impetus. At the request of the Victory Loan Committee, the War Camp singing organizer aided the drive by arranging sings at meetings, in theaters, and from trucks which went about the city. Open-air singing on the grounds of the High School was planned in May, and noonday sings were held twice a week at the shipyards with great success. June saw a male chorus of twelve voices trained under a volunteer leader and a municipal band being organized.

One of the most successful entertainments at the Army and Navy Club was the "barn dance" given June sixth. The hall was decorated to imitate a barn, the careful placing of corn stalks, hoes, rakes, and shovels helping to carry out the rural effect. Instead of chairs thirty bales of hay were arranged around the room, and the floor was covered with hay seed. Eighty couples composed of returned service men and girls came dressed to represent "rubes," and all had an evening of good, old-fashioned fun. Another big dance in June was the "favor dance," attended by several hundred people. A large lantern of crepe paper was used for the central light, and the room was a riot of color. Favors by members of girls' clubs were distributed.

An interesting ceremony took place at the Army and Navy Club, when one of the local returned soldiers was given the distinguished service cross. After an address narrating some of the deeds performed by Wilmington soldiers, the cross was presented by a lieutenant from the local recruiting office. As the band played "The Star Spangled Banner," nearly 100 persons stood at attention.

In August a great Welcome Home Celebration was held on the high school grounds, where had been previously constructed a stage and seats for twelve hundred people. For the families of those men who had made the supreme sacrifice, there were reserved the seats in the first row, immediately back of which were five hundred seats for the returned men. Friends and relatives of the soldiers together with the general public made up the remainder of the great audience. At the left of the stage was stationed a large squad of soldiers from the fort, and to the right were white-clad sailors from one of the docked ships. The floral and flag decorations had been carefully selected and were most elaborate and beautiful. In the center of the stage hung an immense American flag and over it the great thousand-star service flag from Wilmington, which was rolled up and filled with flowers. At the proper moment in the address of welcome the service flag dropped, and the flowers fell in a shower on the stage, while a band of eighteen pieces played "The Star Spangled Banner," and the soldiers and sailors presented arms. After the exercises the men crossed through the building to the grounds on the other side of the school, where dinner was served to five hundred men. A big dance, attended by 4,000 people, concluded the festivities.

This branch of the service had been suggested in the mention of such activities as the noonday singing at the shipyards, but the extent of the industrial work undertaken here by War Camp Community Service remains to be stated. In January, 1919, the War Camp organizer began systematically to plan the development of playgrounds, parks, athletic fields, and teams for the workers. The hearty coöperation of the superintendent of schools was secured for recreational work, and five hundred school children were trained for a proposed celebration. In April a children's playground was opened near the shipyards; a baseball league was organized; a male quartette was formed; and the noonday sings were held in the

Liberty Shipyard. A survey of moving picture possibilities was made, and interviews were held with leading picture men regarding the establishment of movies in that neighborhood. At this time the information booth, which had confined its services to soldiers, sailors, and marines, widened its scope to fit the needs of these workers and the general public.

The Hilton Park baseball ground an excellent but badly neglected field, was turned over unreservedly to Community Service in May. A few necessary repairs and the working over the field made this one of the finest recreational grounds in Wilmington.

Work at the shipyards progressed in great strides during June. Community Service was granted permission to introduce volley ball during the noon hour at the Carolina Yard, and at once the men seized the opportunity for recreation. Every noon and often after 4:30 in the afternoon about twenty-five men played, while three hundred or more "rooted" on the side lines. The Liberty Yard, which responded more quickly to innovation, had already been thoroughly organized for noonday singing, volley and baseball, and dancing. Through these activities the morale of the men greatly improved, while both their contentment and their efficiency conspicuously increased.

By August weekly band concerts and community sings were held on the high school grounds every Tuesday and free moving pictures every Thursday evening. The Board of Education granted Community Service the use of the high school grounds, auditorium, and gymnasium, turning the keys over to the organizer. Four girls' clubs were organized, which took early morning hikes to study nature.

War Camp Community Service kept the playgrounds open all summer, when usually they were closed. Each week from four hundred to eight hundred fifty children enjoyed the grounds, and recreation workers visited the homes from which the children came.

At the present time (September, 1919), the community gatherings, occasioned by open-air concerts, sings, and moving pictures, are continuing in popularity. The band organized by the Service has developed rapidly, and with the assistance of a local organization it will probably become a permanent organization.

## ASHEVILLE, N. C.

Community Organizer—W. A. Wheatly, followed by H. E. Robbins,  
followed by W. A. Barton.

District Representative—H. L. Allen, followed by George B. Ranshaw.  
Information Worker—O. L. Steele.

Former Girl's Worker—Mrs. D. W. Read.

Colored Workers—Leonard J. Tuggle, R. M. Hendrick, Sherman Scruggs.

Colored Girls' Worker—Janie Cunningham.

In July, 1918, the District Representative of the War Camp Community Service went to Asheville to make a survey of the city. He found there the large Kenilworth Hotel already taken over by the Government for a hospital with 450 officer patients and 130 soldiers; a big tubercular hospital nearing completion, which would house 640 soldier workers; two other army hospitals west of the city; and a camp of 5,000 engineers about four miles distant. Large numbers of men were coming into the city each week-end, and moral conditions rendered it imperative that some organized system be devised to provide for the shelter and recreation of these soldiers. Accordingly, a community organizer was appointed by War Camp Community Service headquarters, and war camp work began in Asheville.

A large room in the Langren Hotel building was rented, furnished, and opened as a soldiers' club on August 17th. In the Pack Library was placed a desk with free stationery for soldiers and sailors, and over the door of the building was hung a large War Camp Community Service sign which attracted many men immediately. Information service was established in the club room and at the station, and in September a well-equipped canteen was opened, in which girls of the city worked as volunteers. Other Asheville girls were organized to do service work, such as supplying flowers and jellies to the hospitals and arranging for social gatherings. Another valuable asset to the city established and directly operated by War Camp Community Service was the commodious Comfort Station in the heart of the business district.

From the first of September a room registry had been kept for the use of soldiers and their relatives, but as the need for more accommodations grew, War Camp Community Service opened in November a Red Circle Hotel, which rendered a tremendous amount



of service. This building had seventy-six bed rooms, two large sleeping porches and dormitories capable of housing twenty-five additional men, twelve shower baths, cement bath rooms on each floor, a smoking and lounge room with a fireplace and a pool table, a large parlor and conference room for girls' work, comfortable lobbies, and well-equipped kitchen. Here on Thursday nights was held a social and musical and on Saturdays a dancing party. During the week the hotel became virtually a community center, with singing every evening and a general spirit of good fellowship. The house was nearly always crowded to capacity, and one night thirty-five service men were obliged to sleep on the rugs of the living room. Says the community organizer: "Practically all overseas men now stop at the hotel enroute to the hospital, and we care for them and feed them whether they have money or not."

From this state the War Camp Community Service continued to flourish and to render invaluable service to the men of the hospitals and the people of the community. A volunteer motor corps was organized to give regular automobile rides to convalescents, and employment work started for discharged men. In January there was formed a Community Organization, which met monthly to discuss community and civic problems. Immoral conditions previously existing in the city were cleaned up, and wholesome recreation of all kinds was supplied the men by this service. Soldiers' shows in the club auditorium, welcome celebrations and dinners to returned soldiers, dancing and club parties were given constantly with large attendance of service men and Asheville girls. The people of the community gave hearty coöperation in all activities; on the occasion of the second great Welcome Dance in June, 1919, forty cakes were donated by the ladies of the city, one large pound cake by the management of the Grove Park Inn, and ice-cream by the business men.

Interest was aroused in community singing, and a Choral Society was organized, which began to practice for a musical festival.

On June 16th War Camp Community Service opened the Victory Club for colored people. This club was immensely popular with the young men and girls and always had the approval of the best elements among the colored population. On July 1st the colored

girls opened a center. They were active in giving parties and socials for the service men.

Good hospital work was done also by the white branch of War Camp Community Service, which secured members of the Mothers' Clubs to make weekly visits to the soldiers confined to their wards and organized the young women of Asheville for socials and entertainments in the hospitals. Canes and writing boards were supplied to the patients, and copies of the War Camp Community Service information folder, "Where do we go from here?" distributed.

War Camp Community Service organization in Asheville did excellent work and won the deep appreciation and support of all whom it served. At the present date (October, 1919) its activities are continuing as usual.

---

#### HOT SPRINGS, N. C.

Organizer—W. A. Barton.

Hot Springs is a town of 400 inhabitants, situated in a pocket of the mountains along the French Broad River. When representatives of War Camp Community Service visited the town early in November, 1918, they found 150 men of the Hospital Corps stationed there with very few facilities for recreation or entertainment.

Shortly afterwards plans were made to open up a War Camp Community Service club for the men. Because of many unavoidable delays, the club was not finally opened until February, 24th. It was largely used by the men, however, until the closing of the hospitals not long afterwards.

While waiting for the opening of the club entertainments were given for the men by the community and the Young Men's Christian Association, in which War Camp Community Service co-operated. There were most enjoyable celebrations on both Christmas and New Year's.

War Camp Community Service, through a committee of ladies in Asheville, furnished fifteen girls, properly chaperoned, for a dance on the night of February 15th. The men had planned many attractive details for the party, and the girls who were invited greatly enjoyed the occasion.

Because of the closing of the hospital, War Camp Community Service in Hot Springs was closed out on April 1st.

---

WAYNESVILLE, N. C.

Organizer—W. A. Barton, Jr.

When the War Camp Community Service organizer visited Waynesville, where a large summer hotel had been taken over by the government for a tuberculosis hospital, in December, 1918, he found the organization of War Camp Community Service well under way. (The district representative had visited the town in November). The people of the community were enthusiastic over the proposed work of the soldiers, about 200 of whom—men from the Medical Corps—visited the town daily. Work on a club for the men had already begun, and rooms for the girls' work activities had already been secured. The men had also been entertained in the homes, at dances, and by the churches.

Plans were made in coöperation with the Red Cross to make Christmas a day to be remembered by the soldiers stationed in the vicinity of Waynesville. Unfortunately because of the influenza epidemic, the plans which had been made for a Christmas play to be given by the girls at the hospital, had to be abandoned. The other parts of the program were carried out, however. At six o'clock on Christmas Eve an outdoor Christmas tree was given for the men, the Red Cross presenting each officer, soldier, and nurse with a box containing fruit cake, nuts, raisins, and an orange, and with a walking cane. After the tree, the people joined in singing carols.

At three o'clock on Christmas day, the Soldiers' Club was opened for the first time to the soldiers. (Mr. Barton described this club as "the most homelike building for the use of the soldiers" he had ever seen.) A small Christmas tree was placed in the club, and each person who called was given apples, oranges, candy, and nuts. All six War Camp committees served together at the opening, and more than 300 soldiers called during the afternoon and evening.

New Year's, Waynesville kept up the pace set at Christmas. There was a large dance at the Hotel Gordon for the officers, nurses,

and enlisted men, and the Soldiers' Club kept open house until after midnight. Hundreds of men in uniform were served with dainty refreshments.

Early in January, the equipment and furnishings for the girls clubrooms were purchased, and the rooms were opened with a party. The Young Woman's Christian Association secretary was in charge of the girls' work in Waynesville.

As a result of activity on the part of the community organizer and the Hospitality Committee, each of the three churches in the town agreed to give at least one soldiers' party each month. Through the churches, the Hospitality Committee also put into operation a definite plan for home hospitality.

Early in the spring of 1919, the hospital in Waynesville closed and War Camp closed its work there on April 1st. Waynesville, however, during the few months that the soldiers were stationed nearby, did unusually good work, and is to be especially commended for the way in which she opened her heart and homes to the soldiers.

---

#### HENDERSONVILLE, N. C.

Organizer—W. A. Barton.

Soldiers from Greenville, Asheville, and many colored men from the Pisgah Forest Labor Camp were attracted to Hendersonville over week-ends. To care for the soldier-visitors, the Woman's Club opened and maintained a small club for the men, the churches offered them their hospitality, and the people invited many of the men into their homes. Because of the splendid facilities for the entertainment already available in Hendersonville, the War Camp Community Service organizer only found it necessary to visit the town a few times, to give encouragement and to help plan the work.

---

#### DURHAM, N. C.

Community Organizer—Ossian Lang, followed by S. Hardman.  
Director Colored Work—Uxenia Scott.

When War Camp Community Service investigated Durham conditions in September, 1918, it found an industrial city of 30,000



inhabitants, about one-third colored, with nearly 5,000 people employed in the mills and other manufacturing centers. Hundreds of the mill hands were girls and women, a fact that acquired considerable significance, when a camp was established only twenty miles away. The Chamber of Commerce, the Merchants' Association, and the Rotary Club appointed a committee to arrange for a club house and sleeping accommodations for the service men, when representatives of War Camp Community Service visited Durham. They interviewed the above organizations and spoke before a group of thirty of the leading women in the city fully explaining the history, purpose, and program of War Camp Community Service. Great satisfaction was expressed by the citizens that a troublesome problem might thus be turned over to competent hands, and War Camp assumed charge of organization in the city, outlining a program of activities and directing their accomplishment. A central club was planned and work begun on this proposition, when a rigid influenza quarantine was enforced, which greatly hampered activities.

Work was carried along on a small scale during the rest of the winter, and in March a new executive committee appointed and a new start made. Durham now began to take a serious interest in the problems connected with its returning soldiers. In the discussion of a memorial for Durham soldiers, War Camp suggested the establishing of a memorial park and two buildings, one for white and one for colored people, and a Mayor's Committee composed of representative organizations was selected to work on the proposition.

Colored work was taken up enthusiastically. A Red Circle Club was opened at the Durham Colored Library with an information bureau for returning soldiers, which included the services of the colored state director of the United States Employment Service. A strong War Camp Community Service committee was formed to organize the colored population for establishing a colored community house as a memorial. A tentative organization of colored girls was effected, pending the arrival of a worker, and the Girls' Division buttons were distributed.

In July, when the United States Employment Bureau was closed, its work was taken over by War Camp, which had coöperated

largely before this time. Durham, as an important industrial center, was flooded with service men seeking work in factories and mills, and the War Camp bureau was able to place a great many of these.

At the railroad station every train was met by a competent Travelers' Aid worker, who spoke personally to each arriving service man, telling him of the War Camp Community Service Club and the Employment Bureau.

In August War Camp Community Service assisted the Woman's Branch of the Chamber of Commerce to fit up and open two rest room for business girls in the First National Bank Building. The merchants of the city loaned furniture and equipment, and various ladies assumed charge of the room for a period of one week each.

Colored work progressed most satisfactorily. Through the courtesy of the colored Masons of Durham a room in their building was turned over in August for War Camp use, to accommodate the 600 returned colored soldiers in the city.

Girls clubs for both white and colored girls were formed, and regular meetings were held for instruction or recreation. The Red Circle Club for colored girls occupied the entire upper floor of a two-story building in the colored section of the city.

---

#### MOREHEAD CITY, N. C.

Community Organizer—Ossian Lang.

Girls' Worker—Estelle Roe.

Morehead City is a sleepy little fishing village with no general meeting place except its churches. Before War Camp Community Service began work here in April, 1919, the men at Camp Glenn and the discharged soldiers had no accommodations whatever, and the War Camp Club House was much appreciated.

Activities began in this city with a party in the old City Hall which was decorated for the occasion by the Boy Scouts. Games were played, and a four-piece orchestra was secured for dancing. This thoroughly successful affair was followed by a Comrade Party, to which twenty sailors were invited by the "Y" man at Camp Glenn. At least thirty came, and all enjoyed the party.

In June War Camp Community Service opened its club house, which proved a great boon to the men. It had two large club rooms and a fine veranda facing the bay. In the same building one of the citizens rented another large room for a local navymen's organization and started a restaurant on the ground floor. Because of the small number of men in camp, it was possible here to give individual attention to each one. Information about the club activities was sent each day to the Officer of the Day at Camp, who communicated it to the men coming to the city. During the summer, the local secretary made a complete list of men at camp, and it was arranged that each one should receive an invitation to a home or to some social event at least once a week.

Throughout the months the people of the community were much interested in War Camp activities and coöperated in many ways, particularly in home hospitality, which was a conspicuous feature of the work in Morehead City.

A Girls Glee Club of forty voices was formed, and several units were organized for clubwork. Beside their musical efforts, the girls were trained to give entertainments to the men. A place was selected for the Girls' Club with a room especially for the Yeomanettes of the camp.

---

ELIZABETH CITY, N. C.

Organizer—John C. Long.

Mr. Long was sent to Elizabeth City in June, 1919, to help the community in its preparations for the big Home-Coming Celebration on July 4th. War Camp had a Veterans' Headquarters at the Home-Coming, at which 100 returned soldiers were served. The Red Circle armband was the official emblem of the day and was worn by the parade marshals, the Red Cross canteen workers, etc. A large Red Circle Welcome Home banner was placed at the station to greet the men. Through the efforts of War Camp Community Service, a speaker from the French High Commission was obtained. Three hydroplanes which added greatly to the attractions of the day, were also secured through War Camp Community Service.

## WINSTON-SALEM, N. C.

Community Organizers—Ossian Lang, followed by S. Hardman.  
Colored Worker—H. W. Hill.

War Camp Community Service began its Winston-Salem career in April, 1919, with headquarters in the beautiful new Post Office Building. As Winston-Salem was a non-camp city, the chief activity here was to help the community extend an adequate welcome to its returning men. In response to War Camp appeals, the Twin City Club and the Afro-American Association gave entertainments in April for the white and the colored returned soldiers, respectively. The Young Men's Christian Association, the Young Woman's Christian Association, and the Red Cross helped to secure employment for discharged men, and all the churches gave excellent co-operation.

In order to reach all the returned men, a list was prepared including each one who entered war service from this city. Cards of greeting were sent them, and Welcome Home posters were displayed in the windows of stores and homes. When the 105th Engineers returned and were given a celebration, War Camp hung great Welcome Home banners across the streets in the line of march. Later the services of a local man were secured, who met the boys personally, obtained their service records, welcomed them to the city, and gave them information regarding insurance, allotments, and so forth.

The month of June saw two new activities commence: a Baseball League was formed, and Community Singing groups were organized in the Hanes Knitting Mill and at Reynolds Inn. The fifteen hundred employees of these two places were interested in the singing by the personal efforts of the organizer, who went to them during their lunch hour with his violin and played and sang. It was not long before the sings became regular weekly events, eagerly anticipated by the workers, and in July Choral Societies were formed in both places.

Active work among the colored population now began. An old church building in the negro section was selected for a club.

Two inspiring occasions in July were the Fourth of July celebration, which took place on the campus of the Moravian College,



when patriotic songs were sung and the Declaration of Independence was read, and the Welcome to Returned Soldiers given one Sunday morning by the Salem Methodist Church. Both were simple and impressive services, attended by many ex-service men.

In August War Camp Community Service developed Community Singing to a greater degree than heretofore, and weekly sings began to occur at the Courthouse Square. This movement started with the Baseball League, for after one of their meetings they were led in some patriotic songs by the War Camp organizer. So effective was their singing that the Mayor suggested they go out to the Square and hold an impromptu community sing. In a short time about one hundred fifty people had assembled, despite the lateness of the hour, and were singing heartily. Then and there it was decided by a vote of those present to hold these sings weekly. The plan was carried out, and every week six hundred people gathered to enjoy the program of spirited singing.

The latest report from Winston-Salem (October, 1919) gives the following facts: Service records of returned men are being obtained on an average of six or seven a day; the matter of allotments, allowances, and Liberty Bonds adjusted at the rate of about six a day also; while about nine or ten cases of reinstatement or conversion of insurance are handled daily. War Camp Community Service is coöperating with the Federal Employment office and aiding numbers of men in finding jobs. Industrial singing conducted weekly by the organizer is reaching fifteen hundred to two thousand people and is helping to bring about a splendid spirit of co-operation between employer and employees. In regard to colored work, there are one thousand colored ex-service men in the city, and previous to the Red Circle Club for Colored Returned Soldiers there was no agency of any kind at work for the elevation of the colored men or women. War Camp Community Service is now operating the men's club, which is doing a good work and assisting over three hundred colored men weekly, and two colored girls' clubs with fifty girls in each. The latter are giving entertainments to returned colored men and are otherwise helping in the work of community service.

## GREENSBORO, N. C.

Community Organizer—Ossian Lang, followed by Samuel Hardman.

Colored Girls' Worker—Mrs. Jessie C. Brooks.

War Camp Community Service was organized in Greensboro, a non-camp city, to aid the community in welcoming home the soldier and to assist the soldier in reestablishing himself in the social and industrial life of the city.

In May, 1919, War Camp Community Service secured and fitted up a room in the Union Depot. This location was most convenient for transients, a great many of whom were glad to make use of the room during their waits between trains. Both here and at the Chamber of Commerce information was supplied to visiting soldiers. For those discharged War Camp Community Service coöperated with the Young Men's Christian Association in finding positions. War Camp was given the use of the Young Men's Christian Association files, from which addresses and telephone numbers of many of the returned soldiers were secured. By the end of June seven school playgrounds were organized under community playground directors, public dances for the community were held at the O'Henry Hotel and at Lindley Park, and a branch of work among colored girls had been started.

The Fourth of July celebration, for which the Young Men's Christian Association arranged a most enjoyable barbecue, was followed by other entertainments during the month, in which the idea of welcome to returned service men played a large part.

War Camp Community Service in July completed and issued a set of folders containing information regarding churches, clubs, lodges, and the various city activities. These folders were sent to hotels, Travelers' Aid, the Young Men's Christian Association, the Public Library, the Retail Merchants' Association, and the Chamber of Commerce for distribution to returned soldiers and strangers in Greensboro. They proved most helpful.

Baseball teams were organized, and a number of games were played weekly. On Saturdays the best men of each team were organized into two good teams for a really first-class game, which aroused much interest in the city.

The colored girls' work progressed in an extremely successful way. In July three rooms in one of the residences of the colored section of the city were secured for their club, which became a center of great activity. About 200 colored persons attended the mass meeting at the Shiloh Baptist Church, held to inform the people about War Camp Community Service and to interest them in its work. At this meeting an interesting program was rendered, and the colored audience was exceedingly responsive to the idea of community service. Throughout August both the men's and the girls' division of Colored War Camp Community Service were energetic in organizing entertainments and other activities. One hundred colored people attended the reception given at the A. and T. College by one of the girls' clubs, where refreshments were served, and music and dancing lasted till 11:30. On August 19th forty men and girls went by automobile to Winston-Salem, where they were entertained by one of the girls' clubs of the Young Woman's Christian Association.

By the end of August the Greensboro colored girls had several clubs and had organized a forum, at which a number of the leading men and women of the city met to discuss all manner of subjects relative to the life of colored people. Their work continued with unabated enthusiasm.

Athletics for colored men included baseball, volley ball, and various games. Participating in these activities were one hundred organized men and about three hundred unorganized.

---

#### NEW BERN, N. C.

Community Organizer—Ossian Lang, followed by John C. Long.  
Colored Worker—Maudestine Dangerfield.

New Bern presented a field for War Camp Community Service activities because of the lack of facilities for entertainment and the need for organized assistance in welcoming returning soldiers. War Camp Community Service started work in New Bern late in June, 1919, and the New Bern Community Center was opened on July 25th. Invitations had been sent to returned service men and to the people of the community, and as a result about one hundred

twenty-five persons visited the room during the evening. After that time it was opened every day and was exceedingly popular with the returned soldiers, who dropped in to write letters or to seek information on the subject of allotments, insurance, and such matters. On Tuesday, Thursday, and Saturday nights some special entertainment was always given. These affairs were advertised through the papers and moving picture slides, and attracted from thirty to one hundred young people each night. Ladies of the community acted as hostesses, and the evenings were spent in dancing, singing, and playing games. During the day the public were invited to use the rest room, particularly those people who came in to New Bern from the country.

After the Red Cross Home Service became inactive in New Bern, War Camp took charge of this line of work and personally aided many ex-service men and people of the community, both white and colored.

---

GOLDSBORO, N. C.

Community Organizer—J. C. Long

Colored Worker—T. H. Dwelle

War Camp Community Service opened in Goldsboro in July, 1919, to assist the community in welcoming its returning soldiers. From the start the local organizations were quick to coöperate, and before the Community House was completed, the Chamber of Commerce provided in its own building a temporary rest room for the returned men of the city.

On August 5th, the Community House was formally opened with a program of speaking, singing, and dancing. About two hundred people attended the opening and all were enthusiastic about future activities. The house was attractively furnished, and pillows, ferns, victrola records, sheet music, and some of the furniture were donated by volunteer workers. After its completion the Center was open two nights a week for entertainments and one night for community singing. The entertainments varied, sometimes including games and stunts. At all the community sings attendance was good, and the singing was spirited.



Activities for the returned negro soldiers were stimulated among the colored people of Goldsboro, and a building was secured for a center. This colored center opened on Monday, August 11th, with a program of speeches, music, and refreshments and an attendance of 200. During the rest of August, various entertainments were held at the center for both soldiers and civilians.

War Camp closed its work for the soldiers on September 1st, as the need for this work seemed to have passed. Community activities, however, were continued under the direction of Community Service, Inc.

---

#### RALEIGH, N. C.

Community Organizer—Ossian Lang, followed by John C. Long  
District Representative—W. A. Wheatly, followed by George B. Ranshaw  
Special Information Worker—O. L. Steele  
Former Assistant Community Organizer—A. E. Howell  
Colored Workers—T. H. Dwele, Uxenia Scott

War Camp Community Service work began in Raleigh, September, 1918. With 1,350 soldiers at Camp Polk and with Camp Bragg in close proximity to the city, there became apparent a definite need for organized soldier work of the War Camp type. War Camp Community Service made its first appeal to the citizens through the churches, with the result that club rooms were immediately fitted up and opened in all of the leading churches of the city, the first of such being the Red Circle Club in the Sunday school hall of the Good Shepherd, opened September 28th. On October 1st over 300 men attended the opening of the Christ Church Red Circle Club, which was followed by the Methodist, the Church of St. Ambrose, the Presbyterian, and the First Baptist Clubs. All of the prominent organizations of the city came forward enthusiastically, the Elks, the Masons, the Odd Fellows, the Young Men's Christian Association, Red Cross, and the labor unions, all offering immediate coöperation. The townspeople began to send in contributions of apples, jam, and delicacies which were distributed at camp, and invitations for home hospitality were extended through the War Camp Community service clubs.

Work was started among the colored people with rooms in the Young Men's Christian Union, this branch to be under the direc-

tion of the church of St. Ambrose, twenty of those parishioners were enrolled as a War Camp committee.

No sooner had the organization been thus successfully started, than the influenza epidemic attacked Raleigh in full force, and activities of all kinds had to be curtailed. At times the clubs were completely closed, but through the darkest period War Camp was able to hold sings almost nightly at Hotel Yarborough, and here large numbers of service men gathered and sang for three or four hours at a stretch.

Entertainments were promoted as often as the quarantine would allow. At Camp Polk the men were of an exceptionally high class and had an unusual amount of money at their disposal, but practically the only amusement facilities offered them by the city were two moving picture shows, one legitimate theatre, and a vaudeville house of low grade. From its inception War Camp had instituted regular sings, receptions, entertainment in the homes, and automobile riding, and from time to time more elaborate affairs were planned. One large dance which had been eagerly anticipated by the men in camp had to be postponed because of quarantine, while plans for a monster community sing with special entertainment features had likewise to be abandoned.

On Thanksgiving Day 1,382 men were sent by War Camp Community Service to private homes for dinner, while those who could not leave camp at noon were given a good supper and entertained with dancing and singing at the Woman's Club.

By November the organization had gained a high place in the regard of the city people. The community organizer writes: "Raleigh people look to War Camp for the solution of almost all problems connected with the camp: protective work, vice and booze regulations, Red Cross work, . . . health regulations, pastoral duties, and what not. . . . Hearty and full coöperation with Red Cross, Knights of Columbus, Jewish Welfare, Young Men's Christian Association, Young Woman's Christian Association, Council of Defense, etc., is so firmly established that there is no friction." The Young Men's Christian Association offered a well equipped club room for the use of service men, and on November 20th a new club was opened in the Masonic Temple, maintained by the Masonic Relief Board.

On November 12th the quarantine was raised, and the clubs reopened, when, however, a large number of men were transferred in December, leaving 310 white and 345 colored in camp, all but three of the clubs closed, and a Central Service Club was established in a large store on the principal thoroughfare of the city, directly opposite the City Hall. A victrola, a piano, and several smaller musical instruments beside the usual reading and writing facilities made this a most attractive spot, which was much frequented by the remaining men in camp and those discharged from service. At this time coöperation was established with the United States Employment Service, whereby registration cards of discharged men were turned over to the Employment Service, which then took care of the applicants.

As at Thanksgiving a large number of men were sent to private homes on Christmas Day, while in the evening a highly successful dance occurred at the Camp Barracks. The girls were brought over in army trucks to a hall made beautiful by an expert decorator, and there followed an evening of fun, which—it was said—those who participated in would not soon forget.

In January War Camp promoted the organization of three basketball teams at Camp Polk, where the Young Men's Gymnasium was obtained for a practice hall.

Among the colored folks activities had continued, and in February they were holding weekly meetings for the promotion of a Community House as a memorial to colored soldiers. A sudden influx of negro troops, bringing the colored camp total up to 11,000, necessitated the immediate provision of adequate facilities. Accordingly War Camp Community Service rented a building and opened a Red Circle Colored Club large enough to accommodate the numbers which at once flocked to it.

A branch of girls' work was established on the second floor of the Red Circle Club building, where classes were held for both white and colored girls.

All branches of the Service continued successfully along these regular lines throughout the months. On July 15th, a new community center for young people was opened, known as the Comrade Club. Here one room was set aside for men and one for girls, while a large hall provided a meeting place for both. These club rooms

were opened daily from 9:30 a.m. to 10:30 p.m. with a special program of amusement on Tuesday and Thursday evenings, and the extent to which the privileges were made use of by local returned soldiers and transients fully justified their establishment.

The work for the soldiers under War Camp Community Service closed officially on September 1, 1919, while the work for the girls closed on September 20th.

---

#### FAYETTEVILLE, N. C.

Community Organizer—John C. Long, substitute during vacation, June, 1919,  
J. W. Beard

District Representative—H. L. Allen

Girls' Worker—Estelle Roe followed by Della Yoe

Colored Worker—C. W. Brown followed by T. H. Dwelle

Early in September, 1918, when work on Camp Bragg was just begun, War Camp Community Service went to Fayetteville and made ready suitable accommodations for the six brigades of artillery, which were to be stationed in camp. The old Market Building, centrally located and rich in historic interest, was secured for use as an information bureau and rest room, rent free, while the Armory of Fayetteville Independent Light Infantry was given to War Camp, also rent free, for an enlisted men's club during the period of war. A city appropriation of \$4,000 was sufficient to put the building in good working condition.

Recreation halls were extremely scarce in Fayetteville. For ordinary entertainments, however, or athletic events, the club itself would accommodate 600 men, and War Camp took over a local roof garden for the same purpose. Late in the month a building for an Officers' Club and Recreation Hall was rented.

With these facilities on hand and with a number of soliders and workers already in camp, War Camp began to provide recreation. Two entertainments were taken to Camp Bragg before the end of September, and plans were made to present a program every evening for three weeks at the open-air theater being built by the city. So successful were the camp entertainments that the military authorities requested War Camp Community Service to provide nightly recreation for the workers and soldiers there. Schools and churches were soon enlisted in the work of service, the former supplying



through their pupils magazines and reading for the soldiers, the latter opening rest rooms.

Two Travelers' Aid and Information workers were stationed at the railroad depot with a list of places of amusement, churches, rooming houses, and other facilities of the city.

In October a girls' worker arrived upon the scene, and a motor corps was speedily organized. A flower committee was formed also for the purpose of taking flowers to the Industrial Hospital at Camp Bragg. During the influenza epidemic both these committees did particularly helpful work for the camp hospitals.

When the influenza ban was raised, War Camp Community Service opened a Hostess House the first week in November, to serve as a social center. A number of girl camp workers were at once given lodging accommodations here, and every evening the enlisted men came to the house for an informal good time. Once or twice a week special parties were given. In the second week of November the Officers' Club opened with a reception, attended by two hundred people, both camp representatives and citizens. The mayor of the city made an address of welcome, which was answered by the commanding officer. This club, which provided extremely comfortable lounging quarters with magazines and stationery, kept open house every day until 10:30 in the evening.

The Girls' Division held an opening rally which proved to be a very enthusiastic meeting. A number of girls signed cards indicating a desire to join Red Circle Clubs. Already a Red Circle Glee Club composed of local girls had been organized to lead the community singing at public gatherings.

The work of listing rooms for workers and keeping this list revised and up-to-date continued as an important part of the work. When eight hundred new workers arrived at camp late in November, the Information Bureau was able to supply with its housing facilities the immediate demand for rooms.

A new feature of the War Camp program began in November with the military drills of High School children, which occurred twice a week.

Thanksgiving Day, despite a heavy storm, saw several special entertainments successfully carried out. All the soldiers received dinner invitations, to which about one-third responded. In the afternoon, notwithstanding the rain, the big Victory Sing was held

at the the Old Market in the the center of the city. Protected by a canopy of dripping umbrellas, the Red Circle Club stood on the balcony of the building and promptly at four led the singing of the "Star Spangled Banner" A special entertainment was sent out to the "Y" hut at camp for the amusement of the workers in the evening.

At this time, pending definite information in regard to the future of Camp Bragg, a temporary Soldiers' Club was opened, large enough to accommodate the one hundred fifty or so soldiers in the city. The following week word came from Washington that Camp Bragg would be retained, and there at once arose the question of providing adequate social facilities in Fayetteville for the soldiers who would be stationed in the camp.

To celebrate the retention of the camp and to foster good fellowship between the people of the town and the soldiers, the Chamber of Commerce gave a banquet in the Hotel Lafayette, at which the Red Circle Glee Club did some effective work. In fact, the governor declared, "I would rather hear these young ladies sing 'Pack Up Your Troubles in Your Old Kit Bag' than listen to the combined eloquence of Demosthenes, William Jennings Bryan, and myself." On Christmas Eve the girls organized in carol bands to sing before various homes of the city.

In the second week of December the Camp Workers' Club opened with a gay party. For this occasion members of the staff worked long and hard; army trucks had hauled material; and camp carpenters had built their own stage.

Colored work began late in December, when C. W. Brown arrived from Charleston and began a series of calls on the leading colored people of the city. In January a Colored Club opened with an interesting program, including a talk by an overseas veteran and a military drill by returned soldiers. About three hundred fifty of the leading negroes of the community crowded the club rooms on the opening night, and thereafter it was in constant use, particularly after a pool table was installed. Motion pictures and socials made up the chief entertainment features of the club, while a bit of practical service was the opening of a colored dental clinic with a doctor in attendance every afternoon from three to six o'clock.

A series of basketball games between the camp teams aroused considerable interest in the community. Two girls' basketball

teams were formed also and drills were given three times a week for the girls and women of the city. In March the closing basketball games were played, and arrangements were made for the opening of the baseball season. At the first game, when Camp Bragg played the University of North Carolina, at the County Fair Grounds, about six hundred persons attended. All the games were most popular, especially with the soldiers, who were admitted free.

Entertainments of all kinds were given from the regular club dances, which the soldiers attended "in droves," to an elaborate May Day celebration, which included not only a series of historical tableaux comprising eighteen important incidents in the history of the county, but also a parade, dinner, and band concert. In the tableaux, according to Professor Koch of the University of North Carolina, Director of the Drama League of America, there was struck a new note in Community drama, for they enlisted a series of communities, rural and urban, in one common dramatic enterprise. This great event was staged entirely under War Camp auspices, and the plot for the tableaux was written by J. C. Long, community organizer.

Community gatherings at the Hostess House have been highly successful. One given on June 17th, which took the form of a lawn fete, was attended by one hundred soldiers and two hundred or more civilians. An orchestra gave a musical program and furnished music both for old-fashioned square dances on the lawn and for modern dancing inside the house. On the Fourth of July War Camp coöperated with both city and camp in the big celebration which started at four in the afternoon and lasted until eleven at night. Street dancing, roller skating, and spirited community singing were the features of the evening. All such entertainments have been delightful occasions to those participating and have resulted in a closer bond between the service men and the people of the community.

At the present time (1919) all branches of the work are progressing well. The girls division is active in entertainment and athletic work. Enjoyable Sunday afternoon forums with music and mass singing have been held each week by the Colored Division. The history of War Camp Community Service organization in Fayetteville is a record of splendid achievement, which has not slackened with the months.

## HISTORICAL NOTES

By D. L. CORBITT.

### FREEING SLAVES

When the Quakers began to free their slaves in the last part of the 18th century, there came a protest from the people, as they feared trouble would arise therefrom. Sometimes the negroes were taken up and sold again into slavery in order to prevent any trouble. The following is an example:

Perquimans County )

) An Account of the sale of Sundry negroes taken up agreeable to the Act of Assembly to prevent Domestick Insurrection, and sold by order of Court the 16 & 18 days of October 1788.

1788

Oct. 16.	1 Negro Woman Terry & Child To Thomas Creecy.....	£ 50.00.00
	1 Negro man Named Dick.....To William Ankil.....	98. 5
	1 Negro Woman Pegge & Child To Nathan Creecy.....	78. 6
	1 Negro Woman Jannie & Child To Charles Moore.....	67
	1 Negro Man Ned .....To William Creecy .....	98.15
	1 Negro Woman Hagar .....To Thomas Creecy.....	27.15
	1 Negro Woman Fanney .....To Thomas Creecy.....	41. 2
	1 Negro Man Cezar .....To William Knowles.....	52. 7
	1 Negro Man Mingo .....To William Knowles.....	83.13
	1 Negro Man Aaron .....To Nathan Creecy.....	90. 5
18.	1 Negro Man Dave .....To Nathan Creecy.....	35.15
	1 Negro Man Jack .....To William Harrington Jr.	40. 1. 6

Errors excepted by Richard Skinner

£ 763.14

Sheriff<sup>a</sup>

The people must have thought that by reducing the negroes to slavery again, there would be less trouble. But evidently the Quakers must have continued to free their negroes, because the following protest was passed within a few years. This protest came from another county, but it was characteristic of the general conditions in that section of the State.

North Carolina Pasquotank County	}	Ss. December Term 1795
-------------------------------------	---	------------------------

The Jurors for the State and County aforesaid do present, that the County of Pasquotank, is reduced to a situation of great peril and danger in conse-

<sup>a</sup> Perquimans County Court Papers.



quence of the proceedings of the Society of people, called Quakers—That the Idea of emancepations, amongst Slaves is publicly held out to them, and encouraged by the conduct of the Quakers; That the minds of the slaves, are not only greatly correpted and allienated from the service of their masters, in consequence of such conduct, but run aways are protected harbored and encouraged by them—Arsons are committed, without a possibility of discovery—The Grand Jury are so perfectly senceble of the infatuated enthusiasm of the Quakers as to partial and general emancipation, that they see a present alarm amongst the minds of the people, and forsee a prospect of imenent danger to impend by the influence and designing attempts of the Quakers to this purpose which unless prevented in due time must burst with destruction, around the citizens of the State—

The Grand Jury reflecting upon the miserable havoc and massagres which have lately taken place in the West Indies, in consequence of emancipation; knowing the opinion of the Northern States of the many Hundred Thousand slaves around them; and of the infatuated enthusiasm of men calling themselves religious who are amongst them;—conceive it a duty which they owe to themselves, their families, and their country to present these existing and alarming evil and to present the people called Quakers and their abettors as the authors of the common mischief in this quarter of the world, where independent of foreign opinion emancipation is publicly held out by the Quakers, to the negroes, and private friends established in support of it.

The Grand Jury present that speedy and resolute measure ought to be adopted, by the good sense and spirrit of the people, in order to prevent which at present appears to be almost, if not altogether necessary.

True Bill

HENRY LANKERTON  
Foreman<sup>2</sup>

If this protest had the desired effect, the results were not lasting, for the people soon began to free negroes even more often. And in order to free their slaves the following was the method ordinarily employed:

To the court now sitting at Hertford for the county of Perquimons.

The peition of your petitioner humbly showeth, that having under him, a certain woman of color, named Rose, and being desirous of setting her free, for her faithful service to him, humbly request that you will be pleased to grant to the said woman her freedom and your clemency shall be acknowledged.

By

8th M; 12th 1805

CALEB WINSLOW

We whose names are hereunto subscribed living near to and being well acquainted with the above named person, may inform on her behalf, that she is of an orderly life and conduct and that we are free the above request be granted.

URIAH HUDSON	ELISHA TWINE
JESSE ROGERSON	LAW PERRY
LANGLEY BILLUPS	JOHN WHITE
JACOB WINSLOW	THOMAS WHITE BENJ.
JAMES GRIFFIN	SETH RODDOCK <sup>3</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Pasquotank County Court Papers.

<sup>3</sup> Pasquotank County Court Papers.

By such petitions the court would free the slave, provided the character of the slave was good and provided further that the master would give a sufficient bond to prevent the slave from becoming a public charge and said slave would be law abiding and of good behavior.

The following is the bond given in the above-mentioned case:

State of North Carolina  
Perquimon County

Know all men by these presents that we Caleb Winslow, Thomas Hollowell and Josiah Townsend all of the County and State aforesaid, are held and firmly bound unto Francis Newby Esq. Chairman of the Court of the aforesaid county in the sum of Five Hundred Dollars to be paid unto the said Francis Newby Esq. or to his successors in office firmly by these presents Sealed with our seals and dated the 13<sup>th</sup> day of August 1805.

The condition of the above obligation is such that whereas a negro woman Rose late the property of Caleb Winslow both by and with the consent of the said Caleb Winslow being emancipated and set free according to law. Now if the said negroe Woman Rose shall from time to time and for ever after keep the peace and be of her good behavior and if the said negroe Rose shall not at any time hereafter become chargeable to the Parish then the above obligation to be void and of no effect.

Witness: THOS. H. HARVEY, CLK.

CALEB WINSLOW  
IASIAH TOWNSEND  
T. HOLLOWELL<sup>4</sup>

The negro was given her freedom, but she was not looked upon as being capable of maintaining herself absolutely. And, too, a negro was looked upon as having reached such a low stage of civilization as to be more or less dangerous to a community if there were no restraining influences cast about him.

#### SLAVE SELLING HIMSELF

In time of slavery, it often happened that negro slaves were treated cruelly and shifted about without any consideration of their feelings in the matter. But such was not always the case. Sometimes they were freed and sometimes they were given permission to go out and sell themselves to any one who would pay the specified price. The following will substantiate the last statement.

---

<sup>4</sup> Pasquotank County Court Papers.

The Bearer Sam Boney has leave to look a purchaser his price is Three Hundred and twenty five dollars.

8th February 1823

THOS. SMITH

Apply to John P. Leonard who is authorized to sell him.

T. S.<sup>1</sup>

### NEGRO PERMITTED TO HUNT WITH A GUN

Ordinarily negroes were not given many privileges while they were slaves. It was feared that negroes would give trouble if they were allowed firearms. But sometimes a good trustful and dependable negro slave was allowed a gun with which to hunt as the following will indicate:

The petition of Mary Spruell, widow of John Read, praying an order for her negro fellow, Mingo to hunt with a gun as the law in that case directs. Order granted and that the clerk make out a certificate accordingly.<sup>2</sup>

### AN EARLY FLYING MACHINE

Who knows the person who first made a successful flight in the air? There is an account by Aulus Gellius of Archytos of Tarentum who in 400 B.C. set a wooden dove in motion by "hidden and inclosed air." In 1678 Allard, a tight rope dancer, attempted a flight with wings in the presence of Louis XIV. Balloons were used in England in the nineteenth century. Aeroplanes became a success in the twentieth century, Orville Wright and Glenn H. Curtis first having made successful flights. But were they the first actually to fly? Read the following and judge for yourself:

Oct. 3. There is lately arrived in Town from the East Indies, but last from Lisbon, a Man of the most surprising unaccountable Genius, that has appeared in the world for these many Ages past; he says he is an Italian, and a Native of Civita Vecchia, named Singore Andreo Grimalde Voltante, aged about Fifty, of a middle Stature, in Holy Orders of the College of Jesus, and went abroad twenty years since to travel in the Eastern Nations, by Order of the Father Provincial of the Porpoganda fide. This wonderful Man, after fourteen Years great Labour and Expense, has completed one of the most astounding and compleatest Pieces of Mechanism, the World has yet beheld. It is a Case of a most curious Texture and Workmanship, which, by the Help of Clockwork, is made to mount in the Air, and proceed with that Rapidity of Force and Swiftmess, as to be able to travel at the Rate of seven Leagues an Hour. It is in the shape of a great Bird, the

<sup>1</sup> Robeson County Miscellaneous Papers.

<sup>2</sup> County Court Minutes of Tyrrell County, October, 1761.

Extent of whose Wings, from Tip to Tip, is twenty-two Feet; the Body is composed of Pieces of Cork, curiously held together by Joints of Wire, covered with Vellum and Feathers; the Wings of Catgut and Whalebone Springs, and covered with the same, and folds up in three Joints each. In the Body of the Machine is contained thirty Wheels of peculiar Make, with two Rollers, or Barrels of Brass, and small Chains, which alternately wind off from each other a counterpoise Weight, and by the Help of fix Brass Tubes, that slide in Groves, with partitions in them, and loaded with a certain Quantity of Quicksilver, the Machine is by help of the Artist, kept in due Equilibrium and Balance; and by the Friction of a Steel Wheel, properly tempered, and a large surprizing Magnet, the whole is kept in regular progressive Motion, unless the Temperature of Winds and Weather prevents, for he can no more fly in a Calm then he can in a Storm. This wonderful Machine is guided and directed by a Tail seven Feet long, which is fastened by Leather straps to his Knees and Ankles; and by the expanding his Legs, either to the Right or Left, he moves the Whole which way he chuses; The Head is also beautifully formed, and represents that of an Eagle's. The upper and lower Bill is made of a curious Arabian Goat's Horn, transparent, and the Eyes of Glass, as natural as the Life, and turn upon an Axis inward, by the Help of two Wires fastened to the lower Beak, which keeps all three in perpetual Motion as long as the Machine flies, (which is but three Hours) and then the Wings gradually closes, and he of course lights gently on his Feet, when he winds up the Clockwork, and sets himself again on the Wing. But should any of his Springs or Wheels give Way he must inevitably fall to the Earth, like a Mill-Stone out of the Clouds, for which Reason he may never soar above the height of\*<sup>1</sup>

---

\*The remainder of the paper cannot be read.

<sup>1</sup> Taken from *The North Carolina Gazette*, published by James Davis at New Bern, North Carolina, in 1752.



## BOOK REVIEWS

THE NEW LATIN AMERICA. By J. Warshaw, Ph.D., Professor in the University of Nebraska. With an Introduction by James E. LeRossignol, LL.D. (Thomas Y. Crowell Co., New York. Pp. xxi, 415. 1922.)

During the last generation, many books have been written about Latin-America, a goodly percentage of which have begun with the assumption that the people of the United States and the world in general know very little or even nothing about the subject. Here we have a book which is advertised and introduced in this manner: "The average American of these United States who remembers his geography may know that America was discovered by an Italian from Spain, that tobacco is grown in Cuba and coffee in Brazil, that the Amazon is the largest river in the world, and that revolutions are endemic in Mexico and Central America; but he would have trouble in carrying on a conversation of ten minutes about Latin-America." This work was perhaps submitted as a remedy. In the face of these reiterated assertions of our ignorance, despite the hundred odd works listed in the bibliography, one might be justified in a conviction as to the futility of books in this field.

The author's object was, without engaging in propaganda—other than that of cultivating "inter-American friendship"—to describe present conditions and analyze presents attitudes of mind. He states, "I am not anxious . . . to condone the genuine faults, inconsistencies, or prejudices of the Latin-American nations. I am persuaded that the Latin-Americans have the same number of merits and defects as other peoples: but I am positive, likewise, that they have no more." He is an enthusiastic admirer, an optimist, and gives but little attention to the faults and defects mentioned. The picture painted, if one may believe in other books, especially those written by Latin-Americans themselves, is too favorable. One needs a corrective. To the reviewer, Dr. Warshaw would have done well to have included in his at present inadequate chapter on "Cultural Development" a section that might have been entitled "As the Latin-Americans see Themselves."

It is a just observation, also, that this book is not likely to have more than a temporary value. Much of its material will in a year

or so be out of date. This statement is, of course, not to be construed as a criticism, for the purpose of the work would scarcely have permitted any other result. The observation may be particularly applied to the chapters on "Fallacies, Fancies and Facts," "Changing Industries," "Manufacturing and Labor," "Paramount Foreign Interests." The author attempts to deal with certain long-standing and difficult problems of inter-American relations, such as the Monroe Doctrine—most writers seem to think it necessary to include a chapter or more on this imponderable doctrine,—Pan Americanism, Pan Hispanism, and nationalism. None of these topics can be considered to have been treated in other than a cursory manner. Perhaps any analysis of the Monroe Doctrine would provoke dissent. With Dr. Warshaw's idea that "Without the Monroe Doctrine, our attitude toward Mexico, Central America, Cuba, and the other Caribbean countries would be exactly what it is at the present time" (p. 141), the reviewer is in general accord, for he believes that the Monroe Doctrine has had little or nothing to do with the policies of the United States as to those regions. The author, however, weakens this interpretation when he writes of the Monroe Doctrine in its "triple aspect of protection, imperialism, and hegemony" (p. 156), for the Monroe Doctrine, if he is to be consistent, has nothing to do with these practices. On the subject of Pan Americanism, a nebulous sentiment at best, any one has a logical right to any opinion. As to the movement toward international *rapprochement*, now represented as tending to draw the Latin-American states into union, the author was certainly a bit premature when he wrote that "the actual reestablishment of the Central American Union demonstrate(s) that a Latin American consciousness is gradually developing and that the separatism of the past, which has been concerned primarily with the demarcation of nationalistic lines, is being modified by the necessity of cohesion forced on Latin America by its geographical position and by its treatment abroad as one large family." (p. 167)

There are a number of errors which after a third printing mar the work. Brazil did not assume a federal, republican constitution in 1887; and slavery was not abolished after the republic was established (pp 30-31). Some Paraguayan historians would have explained differently the isolation of their country under Dr. Fran-

cia. The reviewer does not recall that President Taft overthrew a legitimate government and established revolutionists in power in Cuba (p. 144.) Certainly the Paraguayan War and the War of the Pacific have not been the only international wars between Latin-American states (p. 155).

In many respects the book justifies the claims of its publishers and the laudation of some reviewers. It is beautifully illustrated. There is an appendix that is full of useful information. There is a sane discussion of morals, an illuminating study of economic opportunities, an interesting presentation of the feminist movement, and a helpful analysis of contemporary changes in industry.

W. W. PIERSON, JR.

UNIVERSITY OF NORTH CAROLINA.

---

THE DECISIVE BATTLES OF MODERN TIMES. By Lieut. Col. F. E. Whitton, Houghton Mifflin Company.

The designation, *Decisive Battles*, seems to be an attractive title. *Creasy's Fifteen Decisive Battles of the World* has been termed a classic, and we have an American reprint in which a dozen additional battles are included. The latest contribution to the subject, under the title *Decisive Battles of Modern Times*, is by Lieutenant Colonel F. E. Whitton of the British Army, author of several books on military subjects. His object is to bring Creasy's book up to date.

The title rather challenges criticism, because it is both vague and indefinite, and this fault seems to be appreciated by the authors themselves who find it necessary to justify their selections by more or less argument. Thus we are given Vicksburg, Königgrätz, Mars-la-Tour, Tsushima, and The Marne, as modern examples. In the treatment of each the method of the elder work is followed, with an introductory account of events leading up to the final result. Then comes the detailed story of the battle itself, in which the careful reader suffers the usual troubles due to the lack of the numerous maps which are so necessary in descriptions of military operations. Lastly we have the author's own estimate in which he explains his reasons for the selection of the particular example. Here we encounter difficulties on account of the lack of a precise definition of

the word "decisive." Hallam's interpretation is that when applied to a battle it is one in which "a contrary event would have essentially varied the drama of the world in all its subsequent scenes." The author seems to approve of this but is not able to follow it. In the first instance he takes occasion to quote Grant's words: "The fall of Vicksburg sealed the fate of the Confederacy." But Vicksburg was surrendered nearly a year before the South was defeated, and it seems to be quite impossible to say what would have been the effect of better luck and fewer errors of the South at Spring Hill, Chickamauga, and The Wilderness, in postponing or influencing the final result.

In the description of Mars-la-Tour (Rezonville) the author quotes without comment the words of Germain Bapst that it was "like Waterloo, one of those events which change the conditions of human life over the entire surface of the world." Some argument is given to support the contention "that Bazaine's action after Mars-la-Tour was to alter the conditions of the world in an unmistakable manner." But elsewhere in the book we find mention of Sedan as an event of perhaps even greater importance.

In the naval battle of Tsushima we may fairly agree with all that the author claims but it is questionable if the Japanese victory had any other effect than maintaining the "Status quo ante." The Russian army was allowed to march away from Mukden without disaster, it remedied its lack of machine guns and material, increased its effectiveness by the best divisions from home and was superior to the Japanese who apparently did not feel able to continue the struggle or to insist on an indemnity. The growth of Bolshevism in the Russian army may have had a greater decisive effect than the naval victory in the Straits of Japan.

But these campaigns, battles and sieges, these victories and defeats are fast going into the back shelves of history. When we come to the world war we have a theme in which millions of living participants are interested. We have seen how easy it is to be-cloud the issue in military matters, even by the highest authority, and by the best of friends. The latest war was not only modern but it was in our own times and in the final result we think we played a part.



Members of the the American expeditionary force who participated in the Meuse-Argonne offensive, September 26-November 7, 1918, will be surprised to hear of this claim for a battle fought four years earlier and only a few weeks after the war began. They may even wonder why they went across. Probably they will submit a modest claim that the Meuse-Argonne offensive of General Pershing's army complies, quite closely, with the broad definition of a decisive battle of the world. The general's final report says briefly: "We had cut the enemy's main line of communications. Recognizing that nothing but a cessation of hostilities could save his armies from complete disaster he appealed for an immediate armistice on November 6."

Perhaps the "Decisive Battles" would be treated in a more satisfactory way if we were able to abandon the extravagant significance which has been given to it. In its last analysis a decisive battle is one in which the offensive power of one combatant has permanently disappeared. Such a definition would eliminate Vicksburg, Mars-la-Tour, and the Marne,—substituting therefor The Wilderness, Sedan, and The Meuse-Argonne. That such a definition is necessary is shown by the latest results of war. The great masters of the art have had their day. The shovel and the spade have made the change. Henceforth we may expect more wars of exhaustion.

Now that pestilence and famine have practically been eliminated it seems probable that war will be the only recourse left to nature, in its protest against the overpopulation of the earth. Experience shows that armies will again spring up like the grass in the fields, while recent discoveries in new means of destruction cause even speculation to halt and wonder.

EBEN SWIFT.

WASHINGTON, D. C.

---

THE LIFE OF WOODROW WILSON. By Josephus Daniels.

In the preface of his *Life of Woodrow Wilson* Mr. Daniels modestly disclaims that it is a "full portrayal and lasting appraisal of the life" of the great statesman who is its subject. It is not possible yet to see that great career in a true focus with all the varying lights and shadows duly proportioned. Years must pass before the historian can be wholly free from the influence of affec-

tion or antagonism, or can have at his command the official documents from both sides of the sea which are necessary to a final estimate. All that has thus far been written is necessarily partial, each author contributing to throw light upon some phase of Woodrow Wilson's life and work whether he speaks as friend and follower or as critic and opponent. There is thus going on a process of shifting whereby the false is being separated from the true and the immaterial from that which is important. The future historian will test every element that contributes to make the sum of the present publications and only those will survive which endure dispassionate analysis and the more trying test of time.

Mr. Daniels has not attempted to write a continuous biography. The chapters do not follow one another in strict sequence of time. He seems to have felt that the phases of Mr. Wilson's life were so numerous and varied and many of them of such moment that in order to do justice to each it was necessary to separate it from its fellows and examine it apart from the others. Mr. Daniels would not urge that the single volume he has written with so much affection was more nearly complete as a story than it is as an appraisal. There has been as yet no sufficient opportunity for that. Students and publicists await with keen interest the publication of the letters and state papers of Woodrow Wilson and these must be studied and his relation with his correspondents must be weighed thoughtfully in order to give to the world the final record of him who though a lover of peace became the leader of his country during the stern trial of war.

We have, therefore, in Mr. Daniel's book a series of pictures illuminating the way for the writers of the future who must find this book of value. It is an admirable thing to record while memories are fresh the impression left by a fine, strong personality, to tell of the beautiful domestic life of a great man as well as of his sterner sides. We know far too little of how our leaders have lived, of what their homes have been; we cannot readily see them outside the public arena. The pictures we get, while possibly true, are not all the truth about them, so that we sometimes miss the man in the statesman or the soldier. History which finds it possible as decades pass to see the public side of a great character more calmly loses through the inexorable law of compensation its accurate vision of

the human, living, loving, and working man. We do not get his patience, we do not feel his worries, we analyze him calmly but we have to do it coldly. Naturally Mr. Daniels has written more of a eulogy than a scientific history; he could hardly do otherwise. Whatever history may say respecting Mr. Daniels's work it will find that he has preserved for it a living figure of a man. We see him in sickness, in health, in joy and sorrow. We feel the clasp of his friendly hand, the inspiration of his confidence, the sternness of his rebuke, and can look out upon the world with the large vision of his great ideals.

The future will have its relentless tale to tell of those blind leaders of the blind who would not tread the path of peace with Wilson and made it for him a path of pain instead. These men also will be weighed. Their motives will be revealed and truth will have its uncompromising way with them. Mr. Daniels's book is singularly free from bitterness. It does not reflect that passionate protest which one might naturally expect from a friend who saw his Captain falsely accused and unjustly attacked. It is well that it is so for a quiet reliance upon the revealing processes of time is more becoming than an attempt to meet upon their own level those smaller souls who offered to Woodrow Wilson the unwilling tribute of their pitiful dispraise. Mr. Daniels has wrought well and modestly within his necessary limitations and his book will take its place as a help to the interpretation of a great life and a contribution to that larger truth which history one day will fully express. Till then we may but add that the great leaders of mankind have always trod the lonely places and Woodrow Wilson knew what it meant to have trials and temptations in a crowded wilderness.

WILLIAM C. REDFIELD.

NEW YORK, N. Y.

---

A HISTORY OF THE TAR RIVER BAPTIST ASSOCIATION. By Thomas J. Taylor, D.D. By the Association, \$1.50 (Apply to author at Warrenton, N. C.).

There has been no adequate history of religion or religious denominations in North Carolina. Indeed, little recognition has been given to the religious element which entered into the settlement of Carolina, following closely upon the Reformation in Europe, the closing of the Puritan dominance in England, and the re-

action attending the Restoration. The records showing dread on the part of non-conformists or dissenting elements of the English people and the promise of religious freedom to settlers in Carolina have been minimized and a foolish letter saying the settlers had come for "bottom lands" has been magnified into a historical document of the first magnitude.

We welcome every contribution to this department of our history in the fond hope that such efforts shall culminate in a more comprehensive production than we have yet had. It is worth while to mention the more important works that have appeared as showing that we have not been entirely negligent.

*Foote's Sketches* (Presbyterian, 1846), *History of the Methodist Protestant Church* (Paris, 1849), *History of the German Settlements and of the Lutheran Church in North and South Carolina* (Bernheim, 1872), *Moravians in North Carolina* (Reichel, 1857), and *History of Wachovia in North Carolina* (Clewell, 1902), and the series of addresses and papers relating to Episcopal history and published *Church History in North Carolina* (Cheshire, 1892), are the principal books dealing with the State-wide history of the several denominations. There has been a volume on the Catholics, and the beginning of a *Methodist Episcopal History*, which the writer has not been able to see.

There have been many local or sectional histories, notably among the Baptists. The earliest of these is the *History of the Kehukee Association* by Burkitt and Read (1803). It has gone through several editions and is more noted than readable. It is now rare and the original edition quite expensive. That Association at one time occupied much of the territory lying along the Virginia line eastward from Halifax and embraced a number of churches on the Virginia side of that line. The formation of Portsmouth (Virginia) and Chowan Associations reduced the Kehukee to churches lying largely between or along the Roanoke and Tar rivers, now comprehended in the Roanoke and Tar River Associations.

Shortly prior to 1827 differences arose in this Association concerning missions, Sunday schools, education, and possibly other matters resulting in a rupture of the Association. Those churches opposing the progressive ideas retained control of the organization



and as a denomination have been variously designated, but finally called themselves Primitive Baptists. They have continued to maintain churches in the same territory. They have not grown greatly in numbers, if at all, but are highly esteemed for their high character and integrity. (The great-grandfather of the writer Elder Philemon Bennett, had been for seventeen years Moderator of the Association. His absence was recorded at the next meeting with the note, "He is one of the malcontents.")

The churches constituting the more progressive element organized the Tar River Association in 1831, having letters from the Raleigh and Kehukee Association for that purpose. The new Association for a number of years differed from the parent Association principally in its professions and was not a notably active body. Finally, under the leadership of Rev. J. D. Huffham, D.D., who became pastor of the Scotland Neck Church, it grew into great numbers and influence.

In 1907 the Association met at Henderson and at that time embraced one hundred churches, who reported seven hundred and forty-three baptisms and eleven thousand members. Its expenditures amounted to \$40,523.00. It had grown so large that a division was found necessary and was accomplished, with the Atlantic Coast Line Railway as the dividing line. Forty-nine churches received letters of dismission and formed the Roanoke Association. The membership of the two associations now exceeds twenty thousand. They have more than one hundred and twenty-five churches.

To record these achievements and more is the purpose of *A History of the Tar River Baptist Association 1830-31*, by Thomas J. Taylor, D.D., written and published by order of the Association. Dr. Taylor has been pastor of the Warrenton Baptist Church since March 1885. He is a man of splendid scholarship, a preacher of pronounced ability and power, and withal a Christian gentleman of such gentleness and fine Catholic spirit that he is largely regarded as "pastor of Warren County," and his brethren of other denominations have no heartburns or jealousy.

Dr. Taylor illustrates in this History the ripeness of his scholarship and the fineness of his spirit. It must prove a valuable source book to him who shall hereafter undertake to write the story

of the Baptists in North Carolina and of the religious life of our people.

THOMAS M. PITTMAN.

HENDERSON, N. C.

---

THE NEGRO FROM AFRICA TO AMERICA. By. W. D. Weatherford. The George H. Doran Company. Pages, 487.

If we are to make headway in the vitally important matter of racial adjustment, it is necessary to have the facts, ample and accurate, before us, and to be prompted by a spirit of frankness, fairness, sympathy and patience. Much of the abundant material about the negro, written in ignorance or passion or prejudice, is inaccurate, biased, crude. It has remained for Dr. W. D. Weatherford to include in one volume more that is useful with reference to the negro than has yet been produced. *The Negro from Africa to America* is exhaustive in scope, sound in scholarship, scientific in treatment, engaging in style, philosophic in interpretation, sane, fair, statesmanlike in point of view. The book is encyclopedic in content, but its arrangement and style make it readily usable by the general reader. Its chief value probably is as a college text. For this purpose it is easily the best book that has been written.

Dr. Weatherford is well qualified to write such a book. He is a Southerner. He is probably more familiar with the facts than any man in the country. He is a careful and scholarly investigator. As the author of *Negro Life in the South* and *Present Forces in Negro Progress*, two books which have an unusually wide circulation, especially among college students; as teacher, speaker, as a member of numerous boards, committees and commissions, no one has contributed more to better inter-racial relations.

At the outset, Dr. Weatherford states that "the central issue" of his theme is "to restore mutual understanding and bring white men and black men to a real knowledge of each other." He further states: "The opportunity to make a demonstration to the world of two races living side by side in mutual self-respect and mutual helpfulness can be worked out here in the South if it can be worked out anywhere. By such a demonstration—which is already on the way compared with the relation in any other section of the world—the South would set the life of humanity forward by a greater ad-

vance than might otherwise be made in many hundreds of years." He then adds that "the facts which are presented in this volume are an attempt to help white men know the background, the traditional material on which the negro race acts. It is an attempt to connect present conditions with the near and far past . . . It is hoped that the facts herein presented will be so fair minded and so sympathetic that they will help white and black alike to know each other better and to trust each other more fully, thus leading to a larger life for both." This hope is amply realized in the pages that follow, for there could be no more sympathetic, no fairer, no saner presentation of the facts than is here given. He scorns to bid for the approval or disapproval of white or black. He speaks the plain truth, but the whole truth, with reference to negro and white at all times.

The story includes an illuminating sketch of the Negro in Africa, an account of the slave trade in all its gruesome and barbaric hideousness, a true picture of life on slave plantations, a good account of the usually ignored free Negro, and a convincing statement of the economic failure of the institution of slavery. The most interesting and valuable chapters are those that deal with the later phases of Negro history—his present economic condition, his health and housing conditions, his religion, education, and relation to the law, his progress in leadership and self-expression. Each of these topics is covered with a wealth of material, and with information that frequently is nothing short of startling.

Two of the most fundamental factors in Negro progress—education and economic conditions—deserve special mention. The various states, the numerous boards and foundations, the large number of philanthropic individuals, have wrought wonders in the education of the Negro in the past sixty years. The Negro today is contributing a most generous share of the expense of his own education. There has been a phenomenal decline in illiteracy. In addition to the comparatively well attended elementary schools, there are thousands of negroes in high schools and in higher institutions of learning, studying for various professions. Perhaps there is no more encouraging fact connected with the Negro than his educational progress.

Summarizing his chapter on present economic conditions, Dr. Weatherford says: "When one surveys the economic progress of the Negro race, he is amazed at its proportions. In Virginia the assessed value of property was, in 1921, \$52,505,951.00. In Georgia, for the same year, it was \$68,828,514.00. And it has been estimated that the total property value of negroes was, in this same year, \$1,500,000,000.00. He has made great progress in buying farm lands and also in securing homes. In 1910 he owned 120,738 farm homes and 143,550 city homes. This number more than doubled during the decade 1910-1920. From the number of occupations he pursues, from the number of business concerns he controls and runs, from the amount of capital he has accumulated, and from the number of homes he has built, one must conclude that his economic progress is not only gratifying but far beyond what any one could have dreamed who saw him start from slavery in 1865."

The book concludes with an excellent chapter on present constructive movements which are promoting mutual progress, confidence and understanding. There is appended a chapter on the sources, which gives an excellent bibliography for those who are interested in further study.

It should be stated that Dr. Weatherford has no solution to the so-called race problem. "I always frankly admit," he says, "that I have no final solution and that I doubt the sanity of any man who claims he has one. However, he has most definite "principles of procedure." He says: "It is my duty to do the next thing as I see it and trust those who come after me, to have as much wisdom, as much Christian spirit and as much sense of justice as I have. I must do my duty now and trust the results to God and future humanity." And his "duty now" appears to be no less than an attempt to educate two races in mutual understanding and good will. No man in the South has done more than he in this great work, and this book—*The Negro from Africa to America*—will do more, in my opinion, than any single volume to further the solution of inter-racial relations.

W. C. JACKSON.



## RECENT PUBLICATIONS ON NORTH CAROLINA

*James Iredell Junior.* By Fred A. Olds, (Oxford) *The Orphan's Friend.* July 11, 1924.

*Urges Importance Ship Commission Report.* By General E. F. Glenn, *Raleigh News and Observer*, July 13, 1924, see also *Greensboro Daily News*, July 13, 1924.

*Confederate War Diary.* By Captain H. A. Chambers, continuation in *Statesville Landmark*, 1924.

*The Devil's Instrument.* By Paul Greene, *Atlantic Monthly*, July, 1924.

*Town of Bath.* By Lindsay Warren. *Greensboro Daily News*, June 29, *Raleigh News and Observer*, June 29.

*The Old Plank Road.* By Wm. A. Blair, continuation in *Greensboro Daily News* Sundays, concludes August 17, 1924.

*Wayside Tales From Carolina*, etc. By Joseph Lacy Seawell, continuation in *Sunday Greensboro Daily News*, 1924.

*Industrial Survey of the Seaboard Air Line Railway.* By Lockwood, Greene & Co., Engineers, Atlanta and Boston, May 15, 1924. (Gives statistical facts on North Carolina cities and sections.)

*Charlotte.* By Charlotte, county of Mecklenburg, and Chamber of Commerce. Wade H. Harris, Editor, Paper 95 pp, illustrated.

*Raleigh, News and Observer*, July 27, 1924. Twenty-fourth annual Educational Edition. Section one of Sunday edition, 48 pp, illustrated.

*The Relation of Education to Public Welfare.* By Eugene Clyde Brooks, President of State College, inaugural address, reprinted as Vol. 23, No. 2, *State College Record*, July, 1924.

*American Highways*, Washington, D. C. Vol. III, No. 3, July, 1924. Account of the Pan American Highway Commission with particular reference to North Carolina.

*The Old Brownrigg Mill and its Memories.* By Richard Dillard, Privately printed. Apply to author at Edenton, N. C. Paper 18 pp. 1924.

*Public Service.* Issued by the North and South Carolina Public Utility Information Bureau, 506 Lawyers' Building, Raleigh, N. C. S. E. Boney Director. A current special news sheet now in its first volume, issued free.

*The Early Settlers of Guilford County.* By William Thornton Whitsett. *Greensboro Daily News*. August 17, 1924.

*A Swing Around Romantic East.* By L. T. Rightsell, *News and Observer*. August 17, 1924.

*Some Facts Concerning Appalachian and Western North Carolina Railroad.* Report of Frank T. Miller, Engineer, to Special Commission Appalachian and Western North Carolina Railroad. Paper 14, pp. 1924.

*Colonial Days in Central North Carolina.* By William Thornton Whitsett, Greensboro Daily News. August 24, 1924.

*Education in the South.* By Edgar W. Knight. University of North Carolina Press, 1924.

*The Tarheel Banker*, Raleigh, N. C., now in Volume III. Subscription, \$1.00 per year.

*Cape Fear Basin a Rich Field for Improvement.* News and Observer, August 24, 1924.

*A Short Historical Sketch of New Bern, N. C.* By Mary Louise Waters, Owen G. Dunn, New Bern, 1924. Pamphlet 22 pp.

*Forts and Defenses.* Fred A. Olds, *Orphans Friend*, August 29, 1924.

*Plumes.* By Lawrence Stallings, Harcourt, Brace & Co. 1924. Price \$2.00.

## HISTORICAL NEWS

Judge W. C. Griswell of Jacksonville, Florida, delivered a series of addresses at the University of North Carolina in July.

Doctor James Sprunt of Wilmington, died July 8, 1924. Doctor Sprunt had long been prominent in the business and cultural life of North Carolina. He was a benefactor to numerous schools and churches in North Carolina, a deep student of history, and a good writer. His most important published works are *Chronicles of the Cape Fear*, and *Derelicts*, a history of blockade runners during the Civil War.

The Durham Public Library has adopted a book plate expressing a memorial tribute to General Julian S. Carr.

Professor W. C. Jackson, Vice President of North Carolina College for Women, spoke in Greensboro, July 11, on the community's relationship to the negro.

From the *Raleigh News and Observer*, July 14:

Weldon, July 13. The local paper in its current issue carried a notice of the prospective sale for division of a dower tract of land near Weldon which is of more than passing interest. The land of which this is a part was granted in 1742 by the king of England, to Marmaduke Kimbrough and his heirs and assigns provided he settle and occupy said land and pay a small bonus into the king's treasury.

This grant was signed by his Excellency Gabriel Johnston and is still preserved by hereditary transmission and intermarriage. This land became the property of William Whitfield, grandson of William Whitfield, who was born in Virginia in 1721, but came to North Carolina when a young man and settled in Halifax, then a part of Edgecombe County. The grandson, William the third, died in 1805, and by will directed that this land should be divided by his friends, William Gary and Daniel Weldon (the founder of the town of Weldon) equally between his two sons, John and William, John to have first choice of the lots. In this will he gave his four daughters each five shillings and divided his real and personal property between his sons. John moved to Tennessee but in 1835 sent a power of attorney to his brother enabling him to sell the part given him. This paper was directed to William Whitfield, Halifax County, and the postage on it was fifty cents. This paper is also still preserved. William inherited the home place and lived there until his death in 1846. The land was subdivided and some years ago the home tract was sold for a division, this dower tract going to the widow of a grandson of William, who inherited the half estate. At this sale one acre

was reserved as a burying ground in which the generations of Whitfields were buried "to the use of the family forever." By this sale now on hand the "graveyard" is all that will be left to which the family can lay any claim but this and the dower tract is owned by direct descent for nearly two hundred years.

R. B. House, Archivist of the North Carolina Historical Commission read a paper on the Archives work of North Carolina, before the American Library Association at Saratoga Springs, New York, July 3.

*Time*, for August 18, 1924, carried news of an important exhibition in London of the portraits of Philip A. de Lazlo, and the acclaim won by the Artist. In this connection it is a source of pride to North Carolina that in the portrait of Walter Hines Page, presented to the State of North Carolina in 1923, and now hung in the Hall of History, the State has one of the most famous and characteristic works of this distinguished artist.

On August 19, at Manteo was celebrated the 337th anniversary of the birth of Virginia Dare. Hon J. W. Bailey was the orator of the occasion.

Doctor W. W. Weeks, Pastor of Grace Baptist Church, Richmond, Virginia, in the *Convention Teacher* for August 31, contributes the following anecdote of Antonia Canova, sculptor of the statue of Washington, the original of which was destroyed when the State House was burned in 1831. Canova's plaster model of the statue, however, is preserved in the Hall of History at Raleigh—

On one occasion a great dinner was to be given in the royal palace in Vienna. Among the guests were to be several crowned heads. For weeks preparations were made for the great event. A celebrated confectioner in Italy had been engaged to prepare a magnificent centerpiece of confectionery. When the table was being prepared for the feast some careless workman let the precious ornament fall and completely ruined it. The majordomo was filled with consternation, for there was no time to order a duplicate of the piece. Then a boy who worked in the kitchen said to him, "Sir, if you will let me I think I can make something that will do for a centerpiece." "Nonsense, boy," replied the man, "go back to your place in the kitchen." "But, sir," replied the boy, "I wish you would let me try." "Don't bother me; try whatever you like," replied the majordomo. "Can I have a firkin of butter?" asked the boy. "Take all the butter you want, but go away and don't trouble me." The boy withdrew, and the majordomo forgot all about him. Two hours later the lad returned and asked the official to look at what he had made. Entering the boy's room the majordomo was shown a wonderful figure of a crouching lion, done in butter. Although he was not



an artist he recognized the beauty of the work and decided to use it on the table. When the royal company entered, before the guests were seated the emperor asked the majordomo who had fashioned the centerpiece. The troubled official began to explain about the accident and was stopped by the emperor who said, "Never mind about the accident; tell me who did that work." He was told that it was done by a boy who worked in the kitchen. "Bring that boy here at once," was the reply. When the lad stood before the emperor and was asked where he learned to do such work, he replied that his father was a plasterer, and that he used to wait upon him at his work, and in his spare time used to fashion animals and birds with the bits of plaster that his father dropped. The emperor ordered them to take the boy to the palace, saying that he would attend to his education himself. The boy was Antonio Canova, the world's greatest sculptor, who made an opportunity for himself.

On July 31, 1924, the Secretary of the North Carolina Historical Commission, Doctor Daniel Harvey Hill, died. Doctor Hill, the son of Lieutenant General Daniel Harvey Hill (Confederate States Army) and Isabella (Morrison) Hill was born January 15, 1859 at Davidson College, N. C. He was educated at Davidson College and at Johns-Hopkins University. From 1880 to 1907 he was a professor of English first at Georgia Military and Agricultural College, and from then at North Carolina College of Agriculture and Engineering till 1908. He was president of this latter institution from 1908 till 1916, at which time he resigned to accede to the request of the State Confederate Veterans' Association to write, on the Ricks Foundation, a history of North Carolina in the Civil War. He continued on this occupation till his death. His completed work comprises a military history of the war in Virginia from Bethel to Sharpsburg with supplementary chapters on the invasion of Eastern North Carolina, and the blockade business of North Carolina. In addition to this work he wrote: *History of North Carolina Troops in the Civil War*, 1899; *General Greene's Retreat*, 1901; *Agriculture for Beginners*, 1903, *Hill Readers*, 1907; *Young People's History of North Carolina*, 1907; *Corn Book*, 1920; and also numerous essays and studies in North Carolina history. He was a member of the North Carolina Historical Commission 1904-1921, Secretary of the Historical Commission, 1921 till his death, Chairman State Council of Defense during the World War, President State Teachers Assembly, 1910, State Folk Lore Society, 1920, State Literary and Historical Association, 1921, and

he was prominent in the business and church life of Raleigh and North Carolina.

On October 17, 1924, the North Carolina Historical Commission met to consider the situation created by the death of Dr. Hill. R. B. House was elected Secretary. Mr. House began work as Collector of War Records for the Historical Commission in 1919; he was Archivist of the Historical Commission from 1921 till 1924; and was Acting Secretary at the time. Since its creation in 1903, the Historical Commission has had three secretaries—R. D. W. Connor (now Kenan Professor of History and Government in the University of North Carolina), 1903-1921; D. H. Hill, 1921-1924; R. B. House, 1924.

The Historical Commission directed at this meeting, also, that Dr. Hill's completed work on a History of North Carolina in the Civil War, be published immediately.

Mr. D. L. Corbitt was elected Calendar Clerk of the North Carolina Historical Commission on October 17. It will be his special task to prepare as rapidly as possible calendars of the collections of the Historical Commission. Calendars of twelve collections will be published shortly.

Following is a summary of debating activities at the University of North Carolina for the year 1923-1924:

#### SOUTH CAROLINA. HELD DECEMBER 8, 1923

*Resolved:* That a constitutional amendment be passed giving Congress the power to pass a federal divorce act.

South Carolina—Affirmative

North Carolina—Negative

Won unanimously by North Carolina

South Carolina Team  
Calhoun Thomas  
R. M. Smith  
George Wittkowsky

North Carolina Team  
Earl E. Hartsell  
John W. Deyton  
G. C. Hampton, Jr.

## WEST VIRGINIA. HELD 1924

*Resolved:* That the United States should enter the World Court under the conditions laid down in the Hughes reservations.

West Virginia—Affirmative

North Carolina—Negative

Won 2 to 1 by West Virginia

M. C. Young

W. T. Couch

L. Q. Galloway

## CAROLINA—SEWANEE—TULANE TRIANGLE

*Resolved:* That an amendment be passed giving Congress the power to override decisions of the Supreme Court declaring acts of Congress unconstitutional.

North Carolina—Affirmative

Sewanee—Negative

Won unanimously by North Carolina

Tulane—Affirmative

North Carolina—Negative

Won 2 to 1 by North Carolina

North Carolina Affirmative Team

North Carolina Negative Team

J. R. Allsbrook

C. A. Peeler

D. G. Downing

G. C. Hampton, Jr.

## GEORGE WASHINGTON

*Resolved:* That the United States should enter the World Court under the conditions laid down in the Hughes reservations.

North Carolina—Affirmative

George Washington—Negative

Won 2 to 1 by North Carolina

North Carolina Team

L. T. Rogers

W. T. Couch

J. M. Saunders

## CAROLINA—WASHINGTON AND LEE—JOHNS-HOPKINS TRIANGLE

*Resolved—*

North Carolina—Affirmative

Hopkins—Negative

Won unanimously by North Carolina

Washington and Lee—Affirmative

North Carolina—Negative

Won unanimously by Washington and Lee

North Carolina Affirmative Team

North Carolina Negative Team

S. F. Jones

M. M. Young

E. L. Justus

John M. Deyton

## STATE PEACE ORATORICAL CONTEST, DURHAM, N. C.

Second Place—M. A. James, Carolina

## SOUTHERN ORATORICAL CONTEST

Second Place—M. A. James, Carolina

## SENIOR MANGUM MEDAL CONTEST IN ORATORY

Medal won by G. C. Hampton, Jr.

## MARY D. WRIGHT MEDAL IN DEBATING

Won by M. M. Young

Junior Oratorical Contest (Carr Medal)

Won by D. R. Hodgin

There were seven intercollegiate debates and two intercollegiate oratorical contests this year with nineteen places to be filled. Fourteen different men took part and of these fourteen nine had never before participated in an intercollegiate contest for Carolina. In spite of the lack of experienced material they won all but two of the debates, and second place in both of the oratorical contests. This indeed is a wonderful record for these men.

From the *New York Times*, September 7, 1924:

That the South is seldom fairly presented in the account of any national interest or undertaking, and not fairly represented in history, was stated by William H. Kilpatrick, Professor of Education at Columbia University, in a recent talk before the Southern Club of the University on the preserving of Southern historical material.

The speaker, telling of valuable historical data of the South thrown carelessly aside and lost in fire and flood, placed the blame upon the Southerners. He declared the men of the South had been too much concerned with other matters to deal fairly with the preservation of their heritage.

"Virginia, the first founded of the original thirteen States," said Professor Kilpatrick, "has great wealth of material. But on a recent visit to the State Library a mass of papers was shown to me, containing many thousands of bounty warrants—fifty thousand, as I recall—that for want of indexing are not available for use. They lie practically worthless.

"I went to one of the oldest counties of North Carolina. Its wills and deeds are well cared for in fireproof cases. I asked for certain other papers of the Colonial period. The reply was, 'They are probably in that old out-house you see. There are barrels and barrels full of old papers out there. Nobody knows just what.'

"At another North Carolina courthouse I was examining a compiled record of certain Colonial data. 'Where are the originals?' I asked. 'Oh, you can't get at them. They are in the cellar, and that is usually flooded with water.' How long, I wonder, will these valuable records survive such treatment?



"South Carolina lost through fire very valuable records upon the visit of Sherman's army to Columbia in the Civil War. Georgia has published a goodly number of volumes of Colonial and early State records, but its State Library and archives department are living in cramped quarters and on a starvation budget.

"The University of Georgia has a fireproof library building, but the history of the Library holds at least one tragedy. In former days the librarian's duties, being small, were generally assigned to one of the professors, who had a small addendum to his salary as recompense. Many years ago an amiable professor with a large family of boys was serving in this fashion. The boys acted as deputy librarians for their father, and one day they concluded to 'clean up' on a grand scale. The chief item in this cleaning was to get together all the pamphlet literature belonging to the library, worthless old stuff, they thought it, and sell it to a paper mill. Only those who knew how large a part pamphlets played in antebellum history can realize how much was lost by this mistaken zeal.

"In the short while that I have been interested in such matters I have seen three newspaper files, uniquely valuable for the antebellum period of Georgia, destroyed by fire—the *Augusta Chronicle*, dating from 1785; the *Macon Telegraph*, from 1826, and the *Columbus Inquirer*, from about 1828. Nothing can make good these losses.

"One further instance of our failure to care for historic data. Some years ago I spoke to the best-known historian in my time in Georgia about returning to Georgia to work up and make known our Georgian history. 'Why go back to Georgia?' he asked. 'I can study Georgia's history in Wisconsin better than I can in Georgia.' In other words, the University of Wisconsin and the State of Wisconsin have been more zealous and more successful in getting material for the study of Georgian history than has any one institution in Georgia."

Professor Kilpatrick said it was a frequent complaint that our national history had been written too much from the New England point of view, and spoke of the South as the section of established families. He urged the members of the society to arouse in every way an interest in definite historic materials, and, among other things, he appealed to them to organize county historical societies that will collect data of local interest, keep family records, have the county newspaper files found, and all legal and cemetery records kept in permanent form.

"The responsibility for Southern history lies mostly with Southern teachers," he concluded.

## DIARY OF COLONEL JOSEPH HYDE PRATT, COMMAND- ING 105TH ENGINEERS, A. E. F.

(Continued from July number)

All transport Officers will arrange to maintain communication between their transport line and the nearest telephone by liaison agent. Regimental and Battalion Commanders will be informed by Transport Officers of the method of liaison between their headquarters and transport line.

5. Regimental Headquarters and Division Engineer Office will arrange to take over the dumps, and maps, plans, records, and other papers relating to the work of the C. R. E. office, 33d Division, and to receipt for same.

The officers of relieving units will take over maps, records, etc., and the tools in use on the work, not a part of equipment of units, and will receipt for same, retaining a copy of each receipt.

6. Each Battalion Commander will submit copy of the order for movement of his battalion by 8:00 p.m., August 16th, to these headquarters.

7. Routes of march will be optional with Battalion Commanders. Army orders will be observed strictly.

8. Headquarters 105th Engineer Regiment will remain in present location.

JOSEPH HYDE PRATT,  
*Lieutenant Colonel, Engineers, N. A.,  
Acting Division Engineer.*

CEB-sl

Distribution:

- No. 1-C. O. 1st Bn. 105th Engineers.
- No. 2-C. O. 2d Bn. 105th Engineers.
- No. 3-Hdq. 30th Division.
- No. 4-C.R.E. 33d Division.
- No. 5-Headquarters 60th Brigade.
- No. 6-War Diary.
- No. 7-II Corps, B.E.F.
- No. 8-File.
- No. 9-Hq. II Corps, A.E.F.
- No. 10-C. O. 105th Engineers.

My first order to my Regiment in face of the enemy sending them into action. I have confidence in them that they will make good and give a good account of themselves. It means sending my boys up to work at the front and places them at times in positions of extreme danger. It hurts me to have to send my boys into places where I know some of them will be killed.

(Enclosure in diary.)

Note from Col. Evans, Aug. 16, 1918.

Dear Colonel:

I understand you wish to go around some of the work tomorrow. If so, would it be convenient for you to call for me at 33d Div. H.Q. at either 6:30 or 7:30 a.m.? It gets hot in a steel helmet these days. Can you give me a lift in your car or do you wish me to try and get one?

From

G. F. EVANS,  
(Lt. Col. R. E.)  
(C.R.E.)

*August 17, 1918, Saturday.* Today has been the most exciting day I have had since reaching France. This is the first day that I have really been near the front and in sight of the Germans. I met Colonel Evans at his office at 6:45 a.m. and we started for the front. We went in the car as far as the second corner beyond the Belgian Chateau. The road was screened from enemy observation up to this point, beyond it was considered unsafe to take the machine. I sent the machine back  $11\frac{1}{2}$  miles to await us. We then walked further toward the front up to Anzac Ridge. From this slight elevation and beyond you are in direct view of the Germans and within rifle and machine gun fire. The ground we examined and walked over was last spring almost back area, but the drive made by the Germans in the spring drove the British back off of the hills and to their present position, which is about as *bad* as it can be. This is the worst bit of front in the *whole* line from *Switzerland to the sea*, and it is this sector that has been handed over to the 30th Division. We can take care of it and will take care of it, but we do not want it and are willing that the British should keep their own "white elephant."

We followed down the road to Howe Camp, passing an old Y. M. C. A. building which formerly was well patronized, but now the building is deserted and the personnel all moved back to beyond Poperinghe. In this building we will probably build one of our concrete shelters. We then followed down Howe Camp over to Anzac Ridge, crossing through some of our own barbed wire entanglements. From this point you can look into "No Man's Land" four hundred yards away, and to the German line about six hundred to seven hundred yards away. We then came back to the Intermediate Line which I wished to examine especially as a "Line of

Defense." Walked along the old Canal Bank to near Vijverbeek, then turned northeast, and finally came out at Colonel Metts's Headquarters. Stopped and chatted with him for a few minutes and with John Manning. They are living in a concrete shelter built by the Engineers. It is getting to be the real thing with us now. All our inspections are now in the face of danger (for the most part from shells). As we top Anzac Ridge we then come into danger from machine gun and rifle fire. We go into the front in the day time on inspection work with as few in number as possible. Two officers make a big party. The nearest shells that fell near me this morning were about 400 yards away. Later I went by the place where the shells had fallen and picked up some of the clean pieces of shrapnel. In front of Howe Camp we went through our barbed wire entanglements, and while we succeeded in making our way through without torn clothes, I was mighty glad no shells were falling near us.

From Colonel Metts's Headquarters we went to where the car was waiting and rode to the Brown Line, which I inspected for a short distance. Then looked at some shelters we are constructing in the Green Line near Vlamertinghe. From there we went to Brandhoek Camp of the 2d Battalion. Found that all my companies had left on time and that the change was being made without a hitch. Had short conference with both Major Lyerly and Major Cothran regarding their work, etc. Reached camp in time for dinner and spent the p.m. and until 7 p.m. with Colonel Evans at his office going over records and maps that are to be turned over to me. We had a break in this strenuous day when at 5 p.m. Colonel Evans insisted that we go over to the Engineers' Mess and have tea. The Engineers have a very attractive mess hall which they built, and I am in hopes that it will be turned over to us.

Made arrangements with the Colonel that the formal transfer of all maps, records, etc., would be made tomorrow at 2:30 p.m. My car failed to put in an appearance, so I walked home. It was raining and the roads were muddy, but the walk did me good.

*August 18, '18, Sunday.* Spent the morning in the office, making plans for the new work of the Battalions and studying the maps of this new sector that we are taking over. I was very much in hopes



that we would not take over any sector up here in Flanders but would be sent south with the other American Divisions. It now looks very much as though we would spend the winter here, and in the *worst* sector of the whole line between Switzerland and the sea. It may be that the victories in the south may help out the situation up here and make it more bearable. We shall do our best to relieve as far as possible the mud situation, but I am in hopes that there will be an advance that will change the whole aspect of the situation.

Received a telephone message at noon that Colonel Ferguson had returned from Corps Headquarters and would be out to camp to see me. I had a 2:30 p.m. engagement with Colonel Evans and asked Colonel Ferguson to meet me at Colonel Evans' office. Captain Boesch and I spent two hours with Colonel Evans and his Adjutant checking records and taking over same. My responsibility has now assumed very large proportions and I find that my first work of greatest importance will be to provide shelters for the men in the forward areas.

Colonel Ferguson came over about 4:30 and we talked with Colonel Evans about half an hour. The Colonel with his questions brought out some things that I had not fully touched upon. It was very apparent that no definite plans for defense or attack had been worked out by the British. Personally I believe they are delighted to turn this sector over to us, and are doing their utmost to make us keep it. Well, we *have* it, and perhaps we may be able to do more with it than they did. Made arrangements for the Colonel to go up to the front tomorrow with Captain Humphreys and Major Cothran.

*August 19, 1918, Monday.* Spent all the morning in the office with Lieutenant Tucker working on records and trying to get an idea of how many shelters there are for the men. The Colonel came back at noon and we then worked on a report to turn over to the General. It seems that it will be our function to work out a plan of defense and one for attack. That means considerable investigation of the ground. We can do it for them. The Colonel left about seven o'clock for Division Headquarters and will leave for Corps Headquarters in the morning.

*August 20, 1918, Tuesday.* Moonlight nights are in order again and for two weeks we will be more or less miserable on account of German aeroplanes. They were around last night but did not drop any on us.

Today Division Headquarters moved to the Couthove Convent. Conflicting orders kept us in doubt as to where Headquarters Company was to go, where my Headquarters personnel were to have their office. The original space assigned to us was not adequate and the Chief of Staff assigned us a fine large room in another building. We had expected to have the rooms occupied by the British Commander Royal Engineers, but they were given to the Division Adjutant. The new room assigned to us was claimed by G 1. He had laid claim to three rooms and a large hall in a separate building and was loth to give up any of it. The Chief of Staff, G 1, and myself spent an hour or more trying to find adequate office room elsewhere, but I could not see my way clear to accept any of them and I did not feel that the Division Engineer should take the leavings. I told the Chief of Staff I was willing to take either the large room or the two small ones. G 1 wanted all. In order to get to work I told the Chief of Staff I was willing to make the best of the front small room and the hall. I did this after I knew I could get one-half the building if I insisted. The Chief of Staff appreciated my making the arrangement I did. We finally got our things moved in and settled and I could get to work. I had to send Captain Humphreys up to the line to do some work, and then plan our work for the week.

The officers' billets are very comfortable "Armstrong huts." I have one to myself. They are collapsible and can readily be moved. the sides of the hut of the sleeping part are banked with sandbags to protect the sleeper from shrapnel and pieces of shell if one bursts close by. If a shell or bomb hits the hut direct, it is goodbye to the occupant of the hut. We pray that there will not be any direct hits. They are three feet high, just enough to cover you when lying on the cot. I am very comfortably fixed. The Engineers finally got the mess hall the Royal Engineers had. At one time it looked doubtful.

We did not get any dinner, as we first had orders to move in the morning and therefore planned to get dinner at our new quarters, then another order came, changing our time for moving to p.m.

In the mixup the dinner was lost, but we made up for it at night. We can have electric lights in the office now as we are with the Division and it carries around its lighting apparatus in one of the lorries.

(Enclosure in diary.)

The following note was turned over to me when we gave up our Proven Camp.

#### STRATHCONA CAMP.

Certified that this camp was left by the 105th U. S. Engineers, 30th Div., in a clean and sanitary condition.

PTE L. FARR 477259,  
Area Warden  
Area Commandant  
Proven

20.8.18.

(Enclosure in diary.)

Col. Pratt:

Gas meeting is at 5 p.m. today Wednesday in my office.

J. K. HERR,  
C. S.

Aug. 21, 1918.

Deliver in person.

*August 21, '18, Wednesday.* Last night was another beautiful moonlight night and Jerry (German Aeroplane) came around. Happily he dropped his bombs further on. Had a conference with Majors Cothran and Lysterly at the Brandhoek Camp, 2:00 p.m. At this conference I went over with them the nature of our work, my plans for carrying it on, etc. The 2d Battalion got the best of the two camps, but the other one is good, and I believe both Battalions consider their camp the best they have had since reaching this section. Major Cothran showed me a letter from Major Anderson, who was in command of one of the Royal Engineer companies that he relieved. The letter was so good I read it to the conference and then had extracts made from it to send to Battalion and Company Commanders. Copy of letter attached.

(Enclosure in diary.)

Query Farm,  
Aug. 18th, 1918.

My Dear Cothran:

I wonder if you'll pardon the apparent liberty I take if I presume to hand out to you a few tips, on things generally as I've found them? Please do!

To begin with, it would be absurd for me to talk over engineering details to you. You'll have probably found in ordinary field works that you don't have to use the calculus every day, and that what is needed is a good supply of "horse-sense." And this, I know from experience, every American-born naturally has.

My chief difficulties with junior officers, starting on a new job, are to get them to:

(a) *Make an approved plan of the job first*, on paper, instead of trying to design it piecemeal as the job progresses. It can then be handed over to a N.C.O. to carry on as a business proposition.

(b) *Execute the drainage scheme before* commencing any other work on the ground. It will pay you handsomely to spend many days on a good, straight, deep drain, and in this country especially so. You find this only too rarely practiced in our Army. Indeed 99 per cent of even our *engineers* will tell you it's not possible to dig deep earthworks (say trenches) in Belgium, and you find this impression very painfully illustrated in our back-area systems (Green Line, Brandhoek Line, etc.). Believe me, it is quite a wrong conclusion. If proper levels are taken, drains up to 10 feet deep can be dug, and you can then fit in good, deep, comfortable, inconspicuous trenches and shelters to conform to this system.

(c) *Carry out a sanitary system*, as of next importance. If you have large parties of men working on a job, one or two temporary latrines (holes in the ground with rough screening around) will substantially assist the medical officers. Draining and covering foul ground, too, are often overlooked.

(d) *Use camouflage properly*. We have come to a stage in the war, these days, when concealment and surprise become primary factors of success. Every man should know the importance of that. The required camouflage should be collected on the ground *before the job is commenced*, as to leave a work unconcealed, *for any time at all*, may result in its detection by the enemy. If in doubt as to the efficiency of any method of concealment, call for aeroplane photographs.

Another great difficulty of mine has been to get the infantry to work. Our infantry are becoming very war-weary and stale, and owing to the wastage among our best men, in the four years that have gone, we have comparatively inferior material left, both in officers and in men. Generally the men lack energy, and their officers keenness and initiative. It seems then, a pity from our engineers' point of view that your infantry should have been attached for instruction to ours. When I say that the present trench warfare consists of ninety-five per cent work and five per cent fight, you will realize that you've got something to do to eradicate the false doctrine conveyed to your infantrymen by ours who *lately have done scarcely any genuine pioneer work at all*. Such things as trench boarding, A-framing, revetting, and wiring, in the *outpost system*, is the infantryman's job entirely. Every engineer you allow to go to do this work there means an engineer lost to you on the more permanent defenses where you will find you could employ four times the number of technical men you possess.



This must be impressed upon the higher infantry commanders right from the start.

And now a final word as to your very own battalion, a part of which I've been honored by with a temporary attachment to my unit.

Undoubtedly you have amongst them the finest material that can be found in the world. I should suggest, if I may be allowed, that your platoon commanders should train their N. C. O.'s to accept greater responsibility—the greatest within their limitations, if they have any. And the senior N. C. O.'s should have their own mess, and not mix too much with their men. The above will help to make the finest asset you can ever possess in any military unit—good N. C. O.'s.

I feel as if I know your "A" Co. very well. I'm more than half American myself by engineering training; I know some of your own States; and so I feel I know these boys as well.

I should like to shake each one by the hand and wish him good luck—the best that's going.

My very best respects to you, and may we meet again soon.

Yours very sincerely,

(sig'd) J. E. ANDERSON.

Had to hurry back for an engagement with the Chief of Staff in regard to a proposed gas attack meeting called for five o'clock and I got back just in time. The meeting however was not held, as the British officers did not show up. I had a chance, however, to have a little chat with the Commanding General. The General told me he had just been up to a Belgian Hospital at Houstaat and had met a nurse who was the wife of (British) Lieutenant-Colonel Hancock. It was Madelaine Battle of Asheville. When he learned that I knew her he told me I ought to go up and see her, which I am planning to do.

The Chief of Staff told me this p.m. that the Engineers were just about right and they could get anything they wanted from him. Had a letter from Major Matthews, Royal Engineer, making arrangements to take me over his Foreway system. I am to meet him tomorrow morning at my office. Also received message from Chief of Staff that the Gas Meeting would be held tomorrow at 5 p.m. I had Captain Humphreys out today making an examination of some of the trenches. Also had Master Engineer Whitted taking some levels on the ridge between Poperinghe and Watou to determine whether we could construct dugouts in the Ridge and get drainage. Tonight is nearly full moon and a splendid one for Jerry.

(Enclosure in diary.)

Lieut. Col. Joseph Hyde Pratt,  
Engineers N. A.

Memorandum to Lieut. Col. Joseph Hyde Pratt,  
Engineers N. A.

Thanks for your Memo. Can I meet you say at your Headquarters at 9 a.m. on Thursday, then we can do the round trip.

With the help of the C. L. R. O. I am out to make your Division the Record as far as Railway Transport is concerned, and shall be delighted to get things going.

My headquarters are at BAKER FARM (Sheet 28/A.3b.9.5.) and you can get me on the telephone through WATAU and LA LOVIE.

Yours sincerely,

ERNEST MATTHEWS, *Major R. E.*

O.C. No. 4 Foreway Co. R.E.

Copy to C.L.R.O.  
2d Corps.

*August 22, 1918, Thursday.* Last evening it was so light we could see the German aeroplane pass over us. He sailed over and back without causing us any more disturbance than the necessity of giving the warning signal and putting out all lights that were not thoroughly screened.

Colonel Ferguson returned last night and today we have been discussing plans of operation and mapping. He seems to think that it will devolve upon us to plan the method of defense and also of attack, and we are spending some time on that now. He has told me that he wants me to arrange the work of the Battalions and my own work so that I can have plenty of time to study such problems as above.

Major Matthews called about 9:30 a.m. and we took my car and drove to Brandhoek where we transferred to the Foreway, of which he is in charge. We stopped for a few minutes at the 2d Battalion Headquarters. Found everything going all right. We sent the auto with guide to Major Matthews camp at Baker Farm 28/A 3.d. We took one of the Foreway motor engines and attached to it we had a little car that Major Matthews had built. The track was very narrow one but we made good time over it. I wanted to see the method of operating these foreways, where you could go on them, what you could carry, and possible development. Unless screened the railway was in sight of Kemmel, and we spent no extra moments on these sections. I stopped several times as we went

eastward. Once at Ambulance Farm, where Lieutenant Trescott is constructing two concrete shelters. These are well camouflaged and he can work on them in the day time. We went as far forward as it was possible in the day time and then turned north and crossed a connecting link of the track and bridge that my men had built. This makes it possible to run north of the Vlamertinghe-Ypres Road if the south foreway line is being shelled. Beyond Goldfish Chateau, we stopped at the Foreway Camp, connected with the 34th Division on our right. Two of my platoons have worked with this Company and camped at the camp. They in fact helped to build it. From the camp we rode through Elverdinghe and Wosteen. The former place has been pretty well battered to pieces. A part of the church spire still remains standing. Between the two places we pass right by a 12-inch gun. This gun has been fired a good deal, but the Germans have never been able to locate it. They have shelled near it but have never worried the battery any. This sector is now occupied by the Belgians and there is not as much shelling of the towns as when they were occupied by the British. We stopped at Baker Camp for dinner, which I enjoyed very much. My machine was there awaiting me, and I was back at my own camp about 3 p.m.

*August 23, 1918, Friday.* Today I had a conference with General Nicholson, commanding officer of the 33d Division Artillery (British). This is the Artillery that is assigned to our Division. I took up with him the construction of several observation posts and shelters. Went out to Second Battalion Headquarters in p.m.

Since coming to Couthove Convent we have regular aeroplane service morning and night, about 7 a.m. and 6 p.m. an aeroplane has brought messages to Division Headquarters. The machine calls and a messenger from the Signal Corps goes out and signals he is there watching and then the plane, flying very low, drops the message. Our identity is shown by a big monogram spread out flat on the ground by the Signal Corps. Sometimes the aeroplane has to circle and come back before any one is out to receive the message.

*August 24, 1918, Saturday.* In camp all morning. Conference with Colonel Ferguson on matters pertaining to the regiment, and also what the regiment would do in case of an advance. This makes

a very interesting study. We also discussed at some length the plan of defense for this sector. The more we study it the more we realize that we have a very unenviable part of the line to defend. Shelters for the garrisons in the various parts of the line are badly needed and the construction of these represent a considerable part of our work.

Spent all the morning at camp working on defense plan and conferring with officers.

Friday night the two boys on Demolition at the Doll's House were injured by a shell that entered and exploded within their splinter proof shelter. Neither of them was killed. One was rather severely wounded and the other slightly. The shell came in the side of the shelter, passed down between the two boys, whose bunks were separated by eighteen inches, and entered the floor of the shelter where it exploded. Their escape from death is miraculous.

Two days before these same boys had their belongings out of their shelter ready to move across the canal to another shelter. They were waiting for several of the infantry to help them carry their things when a shell struck the shelter and tore it all to pieces.

On Saturday a detail of our men started to screen Belgian Battery Corners, which is in full view of Mount Kemmel. The detail had only got well started in putting up the screen when the Germans began to drop shells at the corner and drove the men away. In order to show our boys that they did not want that screen put up and thus destroy their view of everything that passed the corner, the Germans put over some more shells following the men down the road. We will put it up some night and then they will have to shell it in order to get their view back again.

Colonel Ferguson left at noon for the 27th Division. I took the car and went to Dunkirk with Captain Armstrong to get some Engineer supplies. We had a most delightful ride, passing through Proven, Rousbrugge, Belgium, Oost Cappel (Belgium-France, frontier); Rexpoede, France; Bergues, France, to Dunkirk, on the English Channel. Bergues is an old fortified French town. The moat, outer walls, and inner walls are all very interesting, especially in connection with this modern war. The fortifications all look very strong while in reality they would offer but little resistance to modern guns. The road from Bergues to Dunkirk is the most beautiful one I have yet seen in France. It follows the canal



and is lined with beautiful rows of trees which are arched overhead. The country is rolling and we passed many beautiful villas enroute. Several Red Cross barges were in the canal. These barges are used a great deal for carrying the wounded from up near the front. The entrance to Dunkirk is through a narrow gate where French and British sentries are on guard. This city also has its outer and inner fortifications. There was some evidence of the work of the German airmen, but as a whole there was but little evidence that the city had suffered from aeroplane raids. This looked more like a French city than any I have been in.

(Enclosure in diary.)

HEADQUARTERS 30TH DIVISION  
American Expeditionary Forces  
France, August 24, 1918.

Memorandum:

Pursuant to telephonic authority granted by Second British Corps, this date, Lieutenant Colonel Joseph Hyde Pratt, Corps of Engineers, is authorized to visit Dunkirk for the purpose of purchasing Engineer Stores.

By command of Major General Lewis.

J. SHAPTER CALDWELL,  
*Major, Acting Adjutant.*

Returning as far as Bergues we turned south and went to St. Omer. This part of the trip was also through a beautiful country. There were some signs of the war in the shape of ammunition dumps and new railways which are being built by the British to haul supplies inland from the coast. In St. Omer there was also evidence of aeroplane raids. There are several canals coming to St. Omer and several Red Cross barges were seen. The main canal from St. Omer leads to Calais.

From St. Omer I went to Headquarters of the II British Army at Bleudecques. I wanted some maps and by going to Headquarters I was able to get all I want. This little town is one of the quiet, fresh, peaceful towns that I would like to spend several days in just to be quiet. We came home *via* Cassel, Steenvoorde, Arbeelee and Poperinghe. It was dark after leaving Steenvoorde and the ride became rather exciting as we had to travel without lights and were constantly passing lorries carrying supplies to the front. This road is also within the shelled zone and we never knew when a shell might come. This was especially true from Arbeelee to Po-

peringhe. Between Poperinghe and camp we saw a very large flash and red blaze across in the German line, which probably represented an explosion of an ammunition dump. We reached camp about 8:45 p.m. tired and hungry. We all got something to eat at our officers mess. This was the first I had eaten today.

(Enclosure in diary.)

Colonel Joseph Hyde Pratt,  
105th Engineer Regiment,  
American Exped. Force.  
Dear Colonel Pratt:

I am extremely obliged to you for the kindness shown to my Officer during his short stay with you trying to develop Foreways, and I sincerely hope he has been of some assistance to you.

Yours sincerely,

ERNEST MATTHEWS,

*Major M. C. R. E. O. C. No. 4 Foreway Company, R. E.*

*August 25, Sunday.* Had a pretty mean night on account of bowel trouble. Rather weak this morning. Spent most of the morning in office. At noon went over to Officers Mess, but did not feel like eating anything. Soon after returning to the office began to feel very bad and decided to go to my hut. Became very weak and dizzy and could hardly make it. Sent for Dr. Campbell and he made me stay in the rest of the day. Visited me every thirty minutes for two or three hours, giving me some pretty strong doses of alkali. Felt much better toward night, but did not go out.

*August 26, 1918, Monday.* Feel much better today but weak. Stayed in camp all morning. Telegram came in a.m. announcing promotion of Colonel Ferguson to General. I had expected to go out with Colonel Whitall this morning to see a demonstration of use of monorail, but he failed to turn up and I missed it. Major Lyerly represented me at the meeting. Colonel Ferguson reached the office about eleven o'clock and I had the pleasure of telling him that he had been commissioned a Brigadier General. He was very much surprised, and kept saying, "Well I will be damned." In the p.m. I went to 2nd Battalion with Captain Boesch for a conference with the Battalions. Made an examination of the shelters at Knollys Farm, which have been constructed with a view of making it a Brigade Headquarters. I wanted to

get back to camp in time to see General Ferguson before he left, but the auto gave trouble. Tire puncture and then the engine died on us. It resulted in our hailing a lorrie and riding part way in that and finishing the trip on foot. The auto came into camp just as we got there.

At night I studied Thirtieth Division Defense Plan. Had a phone message and note tonight from Major Matthews that he would look for me tomorrow morning at his camp to take me on a trip over the Foreways.

*August 27, 1918, Tuesday.* Was up at 6:30 this morning as I had some work to do in office before meeting Major Matthews at Baker Camp.

Left my camp at 8:15 a.m. and was at Baker Camp at 8:45. Left this camp about 9:15 for the front, going over the Light Railway. The car used was a Ford truck on railroad wheels. It ran very smoothly, made good time and was very comfortable. We went from Baker Camp to Woesten, Elverdinghe, to the canal, which we crossed. After crossing the canal we came more or less into view of the enemy country, and from this point on the ride became rather exciting. The canal crossed was the main Ypres-Dunkirk canal, now however nearly empty of water. The whole canal system around Ypres and Poperinghe has been knocked to pieces. Some of the locks are very badly damaged and the banks in many places have been badly shelled. The banks of the canal from the bottom of the canal level are lined with dugouts and used as shelters by the Belgians, British and a few Americans. We went out beyond the canal about 1,500 yards and within 1,000 yards of the German trenches. Our route (Map 28 N. W. 1-209,000) was Elverdinghe via Woking Junction, Worlinch, Lenox, Nuneator, Bengal, Dunsstable to canal, then Northampton, Flash Junction, Brixham Junction, Byfleet, B. 10 Line, to Burnt Farm C. 20c.1.2. At this point we left the rail car and walked out further toward the German trenches. We walked out Zouave Siding, looking at material we thought might be salvaged. Saw a small two-inch German gun that Major Matthews said he was going to arrange to take back to his camp. We walked as far east at Pittsburg and then came back and recrossed the canal. The ground out where we had been was badly cut up with shell holes and there was no life to be seen but

ourselves, but we knew that in dugouts, trenches, and shell holes there were many men nearby, and not very far away were Germans in similar positions. We followed west an old broad gauge railroad, recrossed the canal and walked south toward Ypres, turned down Queen Street, crossed the canal again and went out towards "No man's land." Improvised tennis court had been made in the lee of the canal bank and British soldiers were playing. Belgian soldiers occupied part of this sector. We were pretty well hidden by a low ridge. We were looking for a location for light railway track into Ypres from the north. We found a pretty good route which will be practically screened all the way. Just before reaching Ypres we stopped at a British Dressing Station located in the Canal Bank at entrance to Ypres, "Dixmude Gate," Rue de Moi.

We then went into Ypres. Met the Commander Royal Engineers of the 34th Division and Colonel Collins, the Commander Royal Engineers of the 14th Division, which is to relieve the 34th. Went out toward the Mennen Gate Way and then back to light railway track just west of Ypres. Germans began to shell the locality with shrapnel. We walked about three hundred yards west of Ypres and met the car at Penn. Shrapnel shells were coming over pretty regularly. We thought they were firing at a battery just beyond us, but as we started in the car we began to realize that our car was the target. An enemy observation balloon was in position to locate us. We started to go to the north of Ypres but the artillery had too accurate range on the light railway. The shells came nearer and nearer until finally one burst right over us and dropped shrapnel on each side of the car and in front of us, but none hit us. We decided to turn west on the line going to Goldfish Chateau, via Vermont, Whitepole, and Pelaw Junction. We took the switch and had hardly got by before another shell burst scattering shrapnel where we had been. They, the Germans, followed the main line with shrapnel but we were well away by that time. I stopped at Goldfish Chateau to look over the working being done by Lieutenant Field with detail D Company. This will be a shellproof Brigade Headquarters. Two days more work on this Headquarters. No gas curtains have been put in as yet. Have also built four splinter proofs. We are doing this work in the daytime, but keep a lookout for enemy airplanes, and when seen all men of detail get under cover and remain so until aeroplane has disappeared. From Gold-



fish Chateau returned to Brandhoek via Mission Junction, Col-loden Dump, Booze Farm, Tavintock, Juice Farm. Passed infantry at several localities. They were moving in two large bodies. If shelled casualties would have been very heavy.

At Brandhoek met auto after conference with Major Lyerly in regard to plans for gas attack; returned to camp with Major Matthews where we had dinner. Found General Ferguson waiting for me. As soon as we had had dinner and Major Matthews left, the General and I went over to Corps Headquarters to see General Godby.

Tonight all arrangements have been completed for making the gas attack on the German line. The direct work will be in charge of Lieutenant Murphey. There will be nine trains of cars of tank or gas cylinders. The first train will be pushed out into position by a detail from the Engineers, the others by the Infantry.

(Enclosure in diary.)

Col. Minor is coming to see you. Please send word whether all is properly understood after Col. Minor sees you. Bearer will wait for your message.

B

*Adj.*

Everything is O. K. They understand where to go and when.

LYERLY.

Aug. 27, 1918.

This referred to the gas attack to be pulled off tonight.

*August 28, 1918, Wednesday.* At camp nearly all day working on Defense Plans and perfecting plans for the proposed attack which will take place very soon. In p.m. had conference with Battalion Commander at Headquarters for 2d Battalion. Went over plans with them both of attack and defense. Had report regarding the gas attack. This is stated to have been successful.

Some of our men and some of the Infantry were gassed and I have started an investigation. Our men behaved splendidly, especially Lieutenant Murphey and Sergeant Hinson, and to the latter many men of the Engineer detail owe their lives. Several are in the hospital and two are missing.

*August 29, Thursday.* Today I have made an inspection of the work the various details of the Regiment are doing at the front. Left camp about 7 a.m., picked up Major Cothran and Captain

Hunter at road junction and then drove to Belgian Battery Corner where we got out and sent the machine back to wait for us at our regular waiting station near the Headquarters of the 119th Infantry. We then started on the examination of the work.

1. First Aid Station at Belgian Battery Corner nearly completed. Ordered concrete lining to be put over sandbags as retaining wall.

2. Belgian Chateau. Shell proof shelters. Suggested the location of two machine guns.

3. Brisbane Dump at Brisbane Siding. Small dump, and I only keep a very little material there. Under cover and camouflaged.

4. Doll's House at Lock No. 9. Investigated shelter in lock. If cleaned out and reclaimed would accommodate about two hundred men. First Aid post also here. I have one detail here which is looking after certain demolition charges.

The detail of two men had a very narrow escape last Friday night.

5. From Doll's House returned via Howe Camp to old Y. M. C. A. Building, which will be our shelter No. 4. Some shelling in vicinity of canal.

6. Swan Chateau, converted into shell proof.  
Thirty-foot dugout.

*August 30, 1918, Friday.* There have been several suspicious things happening during the past day or two that would indicate that the Germans are planning to withdraw or retreat from our front. Big fires have been observed within the German lines; they have commenced to shell back areas, and last night they shelled the Lovie Chateau grounds. They sent over about ten shells, all of which passed over our camp. It may not mean anything, but I believe we will be advancing within the next few days.

This morning we moved our offices to the two rooms that were previously occupied by the Commander Royal Engineers of the 23d British Division. These are much pleasanter rooms and more adapted to our needs. In the afternoon I went out to the 2d Battalion and 1st Battalion Headquarters with General Ferguson. This is the first time he had been out since he became General Ferguson. All the officers and men were pleased and delighted at his promotion.

In the evening I received a message that General Lewis wished to see me. I went to his office and found him in conference with General Birdwhistle, commander of the artillery that is supporting us. He wanted to know about shelters, observation posts, etc., and also about my detailing an officer to be at Artillery Headquarters as liason officer between Artillery and Division Engineer. Everything was arranged satisfactorily and I shall probably detail Lieutenant Sill for this work.

The Germans are again burning villages, or dumps, or crops behind their lines. Saw outfit alongside of Ypres-Poperinghe road sending up small balloons to which literature was attached and which the wind blew over the German lines.

*August 31, 1918, Saturday.* The unexpected has suddenly happened. The Germans are off of Mount Kemmel and the "German Eye" will no longer watch us while at work. This will be a blessed relief to all of us who are working in the forward area and in camps in view of Mount Kemmel. While working in the forward area I always had the feeling that the observer in the Observation Post at the end of Kemmel (the German Eye) was watching me and sending signals to the Artillery to drop shells in my vicinity. The British were on top of Kemmel early this morning and moving over the slope. Our Division also advanced a short distance, capturing fifteen prisoners and one machine gun. They (the Germans) are not retiring on our front and we are meeting with considerable resistance. I received orders to assign one company of engineers to each Regiment in the line, which I did. Company F with the 120th Infantry; Company E with 119th Infantry. Our troops are attacking and we have actually come in contact with the Germans in a fight.

(Enclosure in diary.)

*Secret*

DIVISION ENGINEER'S OFFICE,  
30TH DIVISION  
AMERICAN EXPEDITIONARY FORCES

August 31, 1918.

MEMORANDUM ORDER: To C. O. 2d Bn., 105th Engrs.

1. You will place one company of Engineers at the disposal of the Commanding Officer of the 119th Infantry, and one company at the disposal of the Commanding Officer of the 120th Infantry for possible consolidation of

works and trenches. You will arrange with Battalion Transport Officer for necessary transportation of tools and supplies.

2. Confer and advise with Commanding Officer of each Regiment in regard to disposition and use of Engineer troops.

JOSEPH HYDE PRATT,  
*Lieutenant Colonel, Engineers.*

I have remained at Headquarters all day in order to keep in touch with the Chief of Staff, the front, and all my units. While it is only a fight on a small scale, it is good practice for the regiment and for me. Everyone is more or less excited, as it is our first fight and it may develop into a battle. Since early morning there has been but very little shelling in the vicinity of our reserve trenches, but about 5:30 p.m. a shell came over and landed in Ridge Camp and wounded five of A Company men, three severely and two slightly. The German retirement is very probably due to his desire to straighten his line and thus cut down the number of troops necessary to hold it. He will probably try and withdraw to the old Hindenburg line and make a stand there. He is fighting hard and giving way as slowly as possible so as to be able to withdraw all his guns and ammunition. I would rather be out nearer the front where I can actually see something, than back here at Headquarters.

General Ferguson has taken Captain Myers and Lieutenant Warren with him to Second Corps Headquarters. I hate to lose Ned. He has been with me right from the start and I shall miss him very much indeed. I believe, however, it will mean his promotion and I will not stand in the way of that. As yet have not heard anything in regard to Colonel for the Regiment. Some expect me to be promoted, but you never can tell how things of this sort will turn out.

*September 1, 1918, Sunday.* Another month has passed. How many more must pass before we will be able to turn our way homeward? My orders today are similar to yesterday, to remain near camp and be ready for any emergency and use of Engineer troops.

Yesterday I had to arrange for Officers and men to keep up with the advance and examine all dugouts and shelters before they were occupied by the Infantry to see that there were not any traps. They have to examine for mines and also test for gas. Lieutenant Johns-



ton of the British and some of his men, who have been specially trained for this work, made up the main party and our engineers acted as assistants. It will be splendid training for them.

Our troops continued the fight today and advanced their line a little. They found that the Germans had not evacuated this part of the line as at Mount Kemmel, and that the Germans were contesting the ground. I kept in touch with my Battalion Commander and knew that everything was going on all right. A portion of the Engineers, Company E and one platoon of Company F, have moved up to Assam Farm to be near the headquarters of Colonel Metts. When the time comes they will push forward and help to consolidate the line to which the Infantry has advanced.

Received news today that we are to move out of the Canal Sector and go somewhere further south, where as yet I do not know. The 35th British is to relieve us.

(Enclosure in diary.)

Sept. 1.

Div. Engineer:

C. R. E. 35th will be here at 10 a.m. tomorrow to see you concerning relief.

J. R. H.

Our 60th Brigade has had some splendid experience and training the three weeks they have been here, and it is unfortunate that the 59th Brigade could not have relieved them and obtained a similar experience. All Division headquarters is anxiously awaiting news from our own front. Are we able to hold what we have taken? Can we take all our objectives? Lankhof Farm is at present holding us off. It is a machine gun nest, but is practically surrounded by our men and Colonel Metts phoned it would be taken as soon as it is dusk. Conferences and discussions have kept me busy pretty near all day.

(Enclosure in diary.)

30 Div.

1/9/18. The II Corps "Summary of information" received up to 6:00 p.m., August 31st, 1918, gives the probable main outpost line of resistance at that time to have been from: H36b8.2 (North of ELZENWALLE RAILWAY) through the western and northern edge of VOORMEZEELE along trench to Lock No. 8, through LANKHOF FARM, thence along general line of light railway to 127d 4.6, thence N.E. to MANOR FARM. Since that time we have taken the village of VOORMEZEELE and our line now runs (4:30 p.m.)

approximately O1a5.0, VOORMEZEELE SWITCH trench to vicinity of Lock No. 8—troops now fighting in LANKHOF FARM—to GUNNERS LODGE and thence along old outpost line to the northern boundary.

I received a message from the Chief of Staff that the Commander Royal Engineers would meet me tomorrow morning at ten, to arrange about the troops.

(Enclosure in diary.)

September 5, 1918.

#### SOUTHERN SOLDIERS IN FLANDERS DRIVE

"Old Hickory" Division, from North Carolina, South Carolina and Tennessee.

March Reviews Situation.

Number of Americans Embarked for all Overseas Fronts Pass  
1,600,000 Mark.

Washington, September 4.—General March announced today that the total embarkation of American soldiers for all fronts including the Siberian expedition, had passed the 1,600,000 mark by August 31.

The chief of staff identified the American unit which participated in the Flanders advance as the Thirtieth Division, composed of troops from Tennessee, North Carolina and South Carolina.

This is the "Old Hickory" Division. In answer to a question General March said it was estimated that more than 250,000 had landed in France during August. The record for monthly shipment, he added, was 285,000.

Taking up the military situation, General March said the objective of the Canadian drive across the old Queant-Drocourt switch line was Cambrai, which was now within seven and one-half miles of the British advance, according to official advices. In the action east of Arras, General March said, the British had crossed the so-called Hindenburg line on an eight-mile front. He added that the maximum advance of the British since the drive started in Picardy and extended northward was fourteen miles.

On the Flanders front General March said the enemy was retiring without very severe pressure brought upon him, and the Flanders salient already had been virtually blotted out.

Principal Resistance on Scarpe Sector—The chief of staff pointed out that the main resistance to the allied advance all along the line had been encountered by the British on the Scarpe sector. The rapid French advance south of that sector, he added, was largely due to British successes in overcoming this resistance. This was shown clearly when the French advanced between six and ten miles on a twenty-five-mile front in one day south of the Somme.

The enemy made efforts to hold the French along the line of the Canal du Nord, but the French have crossed the canal in several places.

In the sector north of Soissons French and American troops are advancing steadily against a stiffening resistance, the latest advices of the War Department show.

Turning to the questions as to the location of various American units, General March said the Thirty-ninth Division, composed of Arkansas, Mississippi and Louisiana troops, was now in process of landing in France, while the Thirty-sixth Division, composed of Texas and Oklahoma troops, has completed its debarkation. The Thirty-fifth Division, composed of Missouri and Kansas troops, is stationed in the Vosges. The Twenty-seventh Division, composed of New York troops, is still in training with British in Flanders, and General March said the identification of the Thirtieth Division as the one engaged with the British near Mount Kemmel indicated that the Twenty-seventh had not been involved in that fighting.

The total number of sick and wounded returned to the United States from the One Hundred and Second Infantry Regiment, General March said, was seventy-four, of that number twenty-seven having been sent back during August. The regiment is composed largely of Connecticut troops and reports have been in circulation that its losses had necessitated virtually the withdrawal of the regiment and complete reorganization.

General March did not know who had been assigned by General Pershing to command the Thirtieth Division, which went over under Major-General George W. Read, who has since been assigned to command the Fourth Army Corps.

New and Important Developments Anticipated.—In all the dispatches from abroad officers here noted again today veiled indications that some new and important phase of the battle is to be expected shortly. There was an air of expectancy among both unofficial and semi-official commentators, which produced the impression that Marshal Foch is preparing for a new blow. If this is the case, it is believed here that the employment of General Pershing's army may well be included in the plans, the object being to hit with full force of the American and allied armies now that the German disorganization appears to be spreading.

The reports tonight indicated to many observers that the enemy was now withdrawing along his whole front from Flanders to Rheims. This was the deduction made from the new French advances in the pocket formed by the Oise line around the Ham-Guiscard-Chauny triangle and also from the movement across the Vesle. It developed that the Germans have been forced by the rupture of their center to attempt a wholesale retreat, it is argued that Marshal Foch might well believe that the moment to attempt a decisive stroke had come, since the confusion resulting from his retreat necessarily would be great.—From the *New York Times*.

*September 2, 1918, Monday.* Shells went over our camp last night and it sounded as though they were landing close by, but this was because the wind was blowing towards us and brought the sound of the explosion very distinctly. Last night our boys did some splendid work, helping the Infantry to get a line they could hold. This meant digging trench and wiring principally. They did splendid work.

At ten o'clock Lieutenant-Colonel Skipwith, the Commander Royal Engineers of the 35th British Division, arrived and we

spent a very busy morning, going over the work in this area and arranging for his officer to meet mine and examine all the work being done. We arranged this for the next day. Also that he and I would make a trip over the area. He and his Adjutant stayed to dinner with us. His Adjutant and Captain Boesch were busy all the morning arranging the details of transfer. In the p.m. we drove down to the Second Battalion for conference with the Majors, in order to complete and perfect plans. We also examined the Royal Engineer Dump at Brandhoek. The 203d Royal Engineer Company will relieve Company B. The 204th Royal Engineer Company will relieve Company A. The 205th Royal Engineer Company will relieve Company C. The Pioneer Battalion will relieve the Second Battalion. On the way back we stopped at the First Battalion Headquarters. I was given here a German helmet that was obtained from Voormezele, also several other German trophies. On return to camp I sent my car to Herzeele with Colonel Skipwith and his Adjutant after making arrangements for him to meet me here at 6:30 the next morning. All the officers and men are to meet my officers and men at Brandhoek at 7:00 a.m. Tuesday. The Observation Balloons have now moved south of the Poperinghe-Ypres road. With Kemmel occupied by the British, the balloons are safe on the south side of the road.

(Enclosure in diary.)

#### OUR LINE IN BELGIUM

Troops here have to Content Themselves with Minor Operations.

By E. PERCY NOEL

With the British Army at the Front, Sept. 16.—The part of the line occupied by the American troops in Belgium is between the Ypres-Comies canal on the north and a point north of the Neuve-Eglise-Messines road at Wulverghem. The latter point is on a line running southeast about two miles east of the summit of Kemmel hill. These troops did not make a spectacular attack but rather found it necessary to content themselves with cleaning up machine gun posts and enemy patrols which had been designated to assist the Germans in their withdrawal.

The Americans were keen to press forward and could easily have done so, but probably it was not a part of the plan. They attained all the objectives assigned to them, mopped various points of the enemy rear guard defenses and made most of every possible opportunity. For example, the enemy's anxiety to retire safely made it possible to capture many prisoners, but those taken provided useful information, including the identification of the 236th German division which had been missing for some time.—Copyright, 1918, *Chicago Daily News*.



*September 3, 1918, Tuesday.* Heard one shell go over last night just at daylight. Otherwise a very quiet night around here. Colonel Skipwith met me promptly at 6:30 and we started in my car for our tour of inspection. We picked up Major Cothran on the Ypres road and then drove to Belgian Chateau. Our route was Belgian Chateau, Belgian Battery Corner, Dressing Station, Brisbane Dump, Doll's House and Lock No. 9, General Headquarters 1, Trench, Swan Chateau, Howe Camp, Old Y. M. C. A. Building (Shelter No. 4) White House, Old Hickory (Machine Gun Emplacement), Anzac Ridge, Shelter No. 10, 119th Regiment Headquarters, Ambulance Farm. We found that there had been a great deal of shelling last night and early morning and that there were many gas shells. Coming across Howe Camp the wind was blowing strongly toward us and from several shell holes we got a whiff of gas that made us hold our breath and run by them. They were holes from gas shells that had fallen early this morning and some of the mustard gas was being volatilized by the sun and wind. What little I got gave me a slight headache. In going from Brisbane dump to Doll's House we had to walk down a railway track that is headed directly toward the German trenches, in full view and within machine gun fire. The three of us walked in single file so as to give the appearance of but one person. The Germans are not apt to turn a machine gun on one person.

Old Y. M. C. A. building was struck by a shell last night which is our shelter No. 4; was not damaged very much. Shell went through the roof and side wall and exploded in ground on outside.

In going from Lock No. 9 to General Headquarters 1, we had to come up out of the canal twice to cross roads and each time were in full view of the German trenches. We speeded across the roads and dropped into the canal. We hugged the bank of the canal as its direction is toward another part of the German line. We very soon crossed the canal and entered General Headquarters No. 1 Trench, which is our front line trench. The Engineers rebuilt this part of General Headquarters 1 Trench and we are proud of our work. It is a trench you can walk in with comfort. From over the top you get a good view of "No Man's Land" and the German lines. We walked in this trench for about three-quarters of a mile and then took an approach trench leading toward Swan Chateau. I wanted to show Colonel Skipwith the deep dugout we were re-

claiming. I believe he will continue the work. From the Chateau (all there is left is a pile of brick with a shell-proof shelter under it, and its name) we went through Howe Camp (nothing there now but the empty huts and the name) en route to Shelter No. 10. Going through this camp I got my first introduction to German gas. Several gas shells had exploded here early in the morning and the sunshine and wind were volatilizing the liquified gases. We got a whiff of the gas and immediately held our breath and ran by the shell holes. The wind was blowing toward us and we knew in a few seconds we would be in clean fresh air. There was some mustard gas and some sneezing gas. Last night and early morning the Germans sent over a great many gas shells. Several of our men were slightly gassed. After leaving Howe Camp we are out of view of the German lines, this being true since the capture of Mt. Kemmel. It sure is a blessed relief to move around without feeling the German eye watching you. There were two German observation balloons in the air this morning but we could dodge them pretty well and then again they cannot observe small objects as easily as from observation posts on account of the movement of the balloon. The trench mortars got busy just before we left the General Headquarters 1 trench and kept up for some time. Shells were also being thrown over pretty regularly. The taking of Kemmel has not reduced the shell fire any, but has increased very materially your chances of dodging them. If the first unexpected shell that comes over does not get you, you can easily dodge the others. We walked back from Anzac Ridge, visited Old Hickory Machine Gun Emplacement, Belgian Corner, then Shelter No. 10. From there we went up the main road en route to 119th Regiment Headquarters, stopping at water tank where some of Company E men were winding wire to use in consolidating our new position. I gave orders for them to separate more, so that in case of a shell exploding near by it would not get very many of them. We also stopped at Ambulance Farm where we had started two concrete shelters. The Commander Royal Engineers seemed to appreciate our taking him around and would like to have had another day with us. On the way back we stopped at Second Battalion Headquarters and found that all the Royal Engineer officers and the Pioneer Battalion officers had all made connection with our officers and had inspected

the work they were to do. We reached camp soon after noon, where the Commander Royal Engineers left me. I rather hate to leave this section right now. Our work has been well organized and is running smoothly. We have started an advance and we know we can keep going if they will let us, and our men want to go ahead. I would like to have stayed on that work for another two weeks at least, but we were ordered away.

Spent nearly all the afternoon writing my report or "turn over notes" for the Commander Royal Engineers. Also arranged maps to be turned over. All arrangements have been completed for the relief of our regiment by the Royal Engineers of the 35th Division and the relief starts tomorrow morning at 9 a.m.

(Enclosure in diary.)

#### TRAINS THROUGH AMIENS AGAIN.

*Daily Express* Correspondent

September 4, 1918.

Paris, Tuesday, September 3.

The Paris-Calais-Dunkirk mail train yesterday resumed the direct run through Amiens, instead of taking the Beauvais and Treport loop line—a course necessitated by the German advance. The train was crowded, many passengers having delayed their trip for the pleasure of traveling by the first train to go through Amiens for months.

*September 4, '18, Wednesday.* We have all been busy today moving and turning over reports, etc., to the incoming officers. Colonel Skipwith arrived about 10 a.m. and transfer was completed by noon. The Royal Engineers Officers joined with our officers at dinner. In the p.m. I went up to II Corps Headquarters, now at Lovie Chateau, to say goodbye to General Godby. He has just returned from his vacation. He seemed genuinely regretful to see us go. Our relations with him have been most cordial and pleasant. I shall miss him very much. At 4:45 p.m. had *tea* with the Royal Engineers and then started for Elsdale, our old Division Headquarters, where we are to spend one day before moving to our new area. After supper rode over to see if the First and Second Battalions were settled in their new quarters. We found them all comfortably settled and feeling good. The Band was giving a concert, which many of the boys seemed to enjoy thoroughly.

(Enclosure in diary.)

## AMERICAN UNIVERSITY UNION

## IN EUROPE

Yale Bureau

8 Rue de Richelieu  
(Royal Palace Hotel)

Teleph. Central 05-03

Cable Address

"Amunion-Paris"

London Branch:

18 Pall Mall East, S.W. 1  
Paris, September 4, 1918.Lieut.-Col. J. H. Pratt,  
105th Engineers, Am. E. F.

My dear Colonel Pratt:

The Yale Bureau is here for the purpose of being of service to you. It is a central gathering place for Yale men in Paris, a clearing house for Yale information, and a general utility errand boy for Yale men that cannot get to the Big City.

Will you fill out and return the enclosed slip as soon as you conveniently can, so that we may keep our files up to date and be more responsive to the men who want to know what you are doing. With Yale men pouring over here now in a bigger stream every week, it is impossible to keep up our records without your cooperation.

The Bureau wishes you the best of luck and begs you to make every use of us.

Very truly yours,

SAMUEL B. HEMINGWAY,  
*Secretary of the Yale Bureau.*

*September 5, '18, Thursday.* This morning I learned that the General's staff would move today to their new quarters at Rollecourt, France, which is west of Arras. I hustled and packed my bedding roll and shipped by lorry to new destination. I then visited each Battalion, and the Engineer Train, and assured myself that everything was O. K. At 12 o'clock we started south from Proven, our route being via Cassel, where we stopped for dinner, which we enjoyed very, very much. From this hill we had our last look at Kemmel and Belgium. On leaving Cassel we went through St. Sylvestre Cappel. The church to which I have referred in July as having a shell hole through it, has been repaired and the civilians have begun to return. We turned south, passing near the work we had done in the Winnezele Trench Line July 10. At that time our work seemed very far forward, but now after our work *in the line*, it seems way back. From this point our journey was through new country.

Hazehock has been pretty severely bombed and is deserted by civilians. A few, however, have begun to come back since "we"



have started the "German retreat." The country we passed through is delightfully different from what we left in Belgium. Our route followed practically parallel to the battle front and several of the cities passed through were deserted and more or less knocked to pieces by shells. At Hazebrouch, Aire, and Lillers we were within five or six miles of the front line before the advance.

Just before we reached Aire we crossed a canal which was lined with Red Cross boats being taken further to the front for the loads of wounded. One was passing under the bridge at the road and we had to wait until it had passed and the bridges were lowered. The outskirts of the towns are inhabited, but the main part is still deserted. While it has been shelled to some extent, it will not take long to restore it.

Lillers has been pretty badly shelled and is deserted. People are just beginning to come back in the suburbs and the Military Police are putting up signs on homes and at cross roads. Between these towns there was but little evidence of the war. The country is rolling and beautiful. Roads good, and riding most enjoyable.

We came into the coal region (Lens) soon after leaving Lillers and passed a good many miners. Between Mensecq and Burbane we passed a large Royal Engineers Corps dump, and at Floringhem we passed a big ammunition dump. Big shells to rifle ammunition.

Pernes is a mining town but at the present time it is more particularly noted for the large Red Cross Hospital on the south side of the town on the southern slope of the hill. On the hillside are two very large red crosses, which can be seen for long distances and by aeroplanes. This hospital has never been bombed.

St. Pol was our next objective and this is a city of considerable importance. It is a mining and railroad center and has been the scene of many bombing raids. We stopped here for a few minutes and then went on to our destination (Rollecourt) three miles on the road to Arras. Division Headquarters is in "The Chateau" of the village, and my billet is in "The other Chateau." A good place but very dirty. Our orderlies however will clean up in the morning. Our mess has not come and we had to go into St. Pol for supper. We went to the British Rest Home where we had a splendid meal. All lights were screened and we drove home without any lights.

*September 6, '18, Friday.* Today we have been getting settled and adjusted to our new surroundings, but we cannot "carry on" as usual until the Regiment arrives tomorrow. This morning four of us, Major Caldwell, Captain Boesch, Major Booth and myself, drove into St. Pol for breakfast. This makes a long ride for meals. I do not know what we would do without the car. We drove again for dinner and for supper, *but* the car was commandeered into other service and we had to walk back in the dark.

Captain Boesch was out a good part of the day, arranging for the billets for the regiment and Train. First Battalion and Regimental Headquarters at Floufflin Ricametz; Second Battalion and Headquarters Transport at Tunas; Engineer Train at St. Michel. At noon we met Captain Humphreys, who had just reached St. Pol as advance party; he left Proven 5:50 a.m. yesterday and did not reach St. Pol until this noon. (Colonel) General Ferguson called this p.m. and I had a long talk with him about our present front. His idea is that we will be sent into the front line here within a few days. The water is scarce in our front and they are sinking wells 300 feet to get sufficient water. I shall keep Captain Humphreys at Division Headquarters with me. Will probably also want Captain Armstrong. No provision has been made by the billeting officer for rooms for my officers or offices for me, and it was not until after I arrived that any place was provided. We are fairly well fixed up and things are running pretty smoothly. The civilians who are supposed to billet officers and horses are not playing the game fairly. My Engineer Train was sent to a little village that was recorded in the Area Commandant's office as being able to house 200 men and 150 horses. When we reached there we found that they filled the barns, etc., and there was space for only *eight* men and *no* horses. This is constantly happening. It is hard on the people to have to billet troops, but they are well paid for it and it has to be done. Now that the Germans are being driven back and there is not much chance of their getting into that area, the people become less willing to accommodate the troops.

(Enclosure in diary.)

O. C. 105th Engineers, A. E. F.

I have much pleasure in certifying that No. 1 Section of your command (Lt. Clem) left "Harrison" camp, which it has been occupying, in a very clean and satisfactory condition.

JOHN B. MCPHEE, *Lt. Col.*

*September 7, 1918, Saturday.* Quiet, peaceful night, and except for the trains of supplies passing by we would not know we were anywhere near the battle zone. Several train loads of tanks have gone by to the front (little ones and big ones).

We have been without our car all day and it has been very inconvenient, especially as regards meals. Did not have any breakfast, but at noon we located a house where they were serving eggs and chips (potatoes). We had our dinner there and it tasted mighty good. The room was *very clean*. The Officers' messes were ready by supper time and we will not be worried any more now about meals. We had a good supper of soup, steak, potatoes and peas, lettuce and cucumber salad, preserved peaches, coffee, bread and butter.

I have been doing office work nearly all day. Also conferences with Chief of Staff and G 3. Have been working on a paper on "Organization of the Ground" to send around to the Infantry. Am also working on a paper for Infantry Regiment Commanders on "Use of Engineer Troops." The Regiment and the Train reached their destinations O. K. today. The First Battalion came in first about 4:00 a.m., followed by the Second Battalion about 7:00 p.m., and then the Engineer Train at 10:00 p.m. It was rather a hard trip but the men stood it well. The cars were dirty and those for the First Battalion had manure in them when they were backed on the siding. Our men had to clean them out and then buy straw to put on the bottom of the cars. I may be mistaken, but the trains the British troops use for a trip like this are better and cleaner cars. We seem to be the "Goats."

The Treat today has been the visit of Harry Lauder, the celebrated Scotch comedian. He gave us a splendid entertainment of song and recitation and then made a short talk on "The German Religion." He has been studying German history ever since the death of his son nearly two years ago, and he has come to the belief that the Germans have made their world-wide war part of their religion. Mr. Lauder was a little put out because there was not a large crowd present to hear him. He said, "I am here. Where is the crowd? Go get them." He refused to begin, but wanted to wait and see if more would not come in. He finally began, and he was splendid at his trade. Our men had only just reached camp,

were tired and sleepy and just did not want to come out. I did not blame them. All who did come had a fine time.

(Enclosure in diary.)

HEADQUARTERS 30TH DIVISION  
American Expeditionary Forces,  
France, Sept. 7th, 1918.

MEMORANDUM No. 333.

HARRY LAUDER WILL SING TODAY

1. Harry Lauder, the Scotch Comedian, will sing at 6:00 p.m., this Saturday, September 7th, on the lawn of the Church Rollecourt.

All officers and men of this Division not on duty are invited to attend this entertainment, which will be free.

Rollecourt Church is two and a half miles east of St. Pol (D-2, Lens Map).

Detachments from each regiment attending this entertainment will be under an officer, who will be held responsible that proper discipline is maintained. Care will be taken to prevent the blocking of traffic.

No troops will march through the town of St. Pol going to or from this entertainment.

It has rained a good part of the day and tonight it is still raining and is cold. It does not seem as though we had any summer weather at all this year. Now fall is here and *colder* weather.

*September 8, 1918, Sunday.* The event today has been a sight of Arras. This is the first large French city we have seen. We were not allowed to go inside and what we could see on the outside just whetted our appetites for more. We reached the main western gate. This had been struck by a shell and partly demolished. I shall try to get into the city within the next week. En route to Arras we passed hundreds and hundreds of lorries and troops and supplies. We realized that we were near a very active front. Also passed several big gun tractors and a good many guns. Everybody seemed to be moving and there was a general air of expectancy. The Germans still shell Arras, about the same as they did Poperinghe. Coming home we took a new route and came via First Battalion Headquarters to leave Major Cothran, who had gone with us. The other two besides myself were Captains Boesch and Humphreys. We had a good ride, a little excitement, and a fine time. There were British soldiers in nearly every town we came through, all belonging to the First Army. We are attached to the First Corps of the First Army (British).



This morning I visited and inspected First and Second Battalions and Headquarters. Found all pretty well settled except Captain Gillette. Moved him nearer to his Ration Dump and arranged for a "Distributing Point" for rations to the Regiment. General Lewis happened along and stopped his car and wanted to know what I was doing, and when I told him I was inspecting the Battalion he said he would inspect the First Battalion with me, which he did. He found but little to criticize. He stated that the Regiment left the "line" in the Ypres Sector with a splendid reputation. He said the Regiment was very highly thought of.

No trouble about getting meals today. Had three good meals with B. Mess and I have decided to cast in my lot with them. We will not open an English Officers' Mess at the camp.

Another rainy day and night. If this kind of weather keeps up it will greatly interfere with the progress of the Allies.

(Enclosure in diary.)

B Mess,

Rollecourt, France.

DINNER, SEPTEMBER 8th, 1918.

Broiled Lamb Chops	
Green Peas	
French Fried Potatoes	
Sardine Salad	
Lemon Cling Peaches	
Coffee	— Cigarettes
Cheese	— Crackers, Jam

A very good dinner

(Enclosure in diary.)

U. S. ROLE IN THE BATTLE

Gen. March's Frank Statement

Washington, Friday.

Gen. Peyton C. March, Chief of Staff, has made some interesting statements concerning the advance of the Allied armies, especially the part taken by the Americans in the battle.

In Flanders it was the 30th Division, comprising men from Tennessee and North and South Carolina which contributed to the success at Mount Kemmel. The 32d Division—Michigan and Wisconsin troops—commanded by General Haan, took Juvigny and Terny-Sorny, near the Hindenburg Line.—Radio—From *Daily Mirror*, Sept. 8, '18.

This is about the first mention we have had in any of the papers, but nevertheless we keep on working and fighting.

*September 9, 1918, Monday.* It rained nearly all night and has rained intermittently all day today. It is hard on the soldiers. The Officers are better provided for and get along a great deal easier and more comfortably than the men. I still have some strong feelings about being so much better taken care of than the men and of having to send them into places of danger where I do not have to go, or only go occasionally.

Today Captain Armstrong and myself have been away nearly all day visiting First Army and First Corps Headquarters (British) and arranging for drawing supplies and equipment while in this area of the First Army. We drove first to Ranchicourt where the Army Headquarters is located in the grounds of a most beautiful Chateau. We were fortunate in finding the Chief Engineer of the Army in his office. We met first his Staff Officer, Major Wheatley, and then were introduced to the Chief Engineer, Major-General E. H. Atkinson. He was very pleasant and agreeable and assisted us very greatly in making our arrangements for drawing supplies. We had a long chat together while Captain Armstrong and Major Wheatley were completing their arrangements. From Army Headquarters we drove over to Corps Headquarters to see the Chief Engineer of the Corps. Their Headquarters is in a Chateau at Labuissiere. This place, while not so large and imposing as the Army Headquarters, is a very interesting one. The Chateau was partly built in the 13th Century. The place has been bombed a good deal, and in good weather some planes come over nearly every night. We did not find the Chief Engineer of the Corps at the office. We did find his Staff Officer, Captain Green, who was very cordial and most accommodating. I accomplished practically all I wanted or expected to. We had dinner with Captain Green at the Royal Engineers Mess, and were served a splendid meal with all the conveniences of modern life. They have been stationed at this locality for a long time and have up a very comfortable and homelike mess and Club House. I thoroughly enjoyed being with them. While at Army Headquarters General Atkinson invited me to make a tour with him tomorrow to various Army shops and factories in the First Army area. After dinner we inspected a dugout that the Engineers are building for Corps Headquarters. It is a regulation type underground dugout. Coming out of the dugout I was bending my head and neck to avoid

hitting the roof, when I struck my head against an iron rail that was fastened to the roof right at the entrance and used to carry a suspended bucket. The blow nearly knocked me down and *unconscious*, but not quite. A British soldier caught me. I could not open my eyes and it was a minute or more before they would open. It was a very strange feeling and one I will not forget for some time.

The ride to Headquarters and back was most delightful. The country was an "intensified beautiful Piedmont." Bruay, one of the cities we went through is a very large coal mining center. It has been bombed a good deal but in only a few places is the effect seen. Many dugouts have been constructed for civilians, and as this region is very hilly there is but little trouble in building them underground with good overhead cover. On the way home we stopped at Dieval Station and examined an army Royal Engineers Dump. It is one of the largest I have seen and was well stocked. About three miles out of Ranchicourt this morning we met a British Chaplain and gave him a lift to his destination.

It has been a very profitable day in that we now know how to draw our supplies, etc.

*September 10, 1918, Tuesday.* This morning Captain Humphreys and I started for Army and Corps Headquarters in the rain. I was due at Army Headquarters at 9:30 a.m., and Captain Humphreys at Corps Headquarters at 10:00 a.m. We both were on time. General Atkinson was ready for me and we left Army Headquarters in his car about 10 a.m. We spent a very delightful day together. Had our lunch in the car. The General had very thoughtfully had a lunch put up for me. We talked over many subjects relating to the war and particularly the work of the Engineers. We drove about 55 miles and although it rained considerable of the time, the roads did not get all muddy and scenery was fascinating. We went through Bruay and on to Aire. The civilian population is returning rapidly and even now a great many of the stores are opened, even a large millinery shop. It will not be long before this city is pretty well restored. A week ago it was deserted. At Aire I visited the Army concrete factory. At this factory they make the concrete blocks with which the machine gun emplacement shelters, etc., are constructed. They send out from

the factory all the blocks and rods necessary to build one. We built a similar one in the Ypres sector. The labor used is largely Chinese, supervised by British soldiers. On the canal I saw a great many of the Red Cross canal boats. They are utilizing these boats to the utmost and by their use they are able to remove to base hospitals the very severely wounded with very little motion and to the great relief of the patient.

From Aire we went to Bergueneuse to the Camouflage Factory. Here the Army prepares the screens and canvases that are used to camouflage work, guns, dumps of material, etc. The employees are nearly all women. The stock screens are made of netting to which the women have tied colored strips of burlap. The Officer in charge of the factory works out the colors to go on the screen and their arrangement. They also paint special canvas to represent brick or stone walls, hedges, trees, etc.

From this factory we went to Auchy les Hesdin, where the large machine shops of the First Army are located. The plant includes a small foundry. It is a very complete plant, and while operated by soldiers, the General is trying to run it on business principles. At this plant they also make the long torpedoes that are used for cutting and destroying the enemy's barbed wire entanglements. These torpedoes are from 10 to 40 feet long, and when used are put together like an extension fishing rod. When the rod has been put together and pushed under the enemy's wire, the detonator is put in the end, the fire lighted, and the men hustle back to their trench. These torpedo tubes are about two and a half inches in diameter. On the way to the factory we passed the British First Army Tank area, and saw their large repair shops. There were hundreds of tanks in the yards all ready to go to the front, and others returned from the front to be repaired.

From the shop we drove to Monchy-Cayeaux, where the General is erecting a Bridge School which is to open early in October. He was very short of labor and requested twenty-five men to help him out. I was very glad to assist him and promised to detail twenty-five men and a Master Engineer to take up the work. It is a beautiful location in a meadow with a good sized stream running through it, which gives good locations for building practice bridges of various spans. From this place we drove to my camp, where the



General left me, he returning to Army Headquarters. Reached camp about 4 p.m. Balance of day in office. Still raining tonight.

(Enclosure in diary.)

#### TOWNS MORE SECURE

Effect of Allied Advance.

With the British Army, France, Sunday.

Recent victories on the western front have considerably affected the position of many well-known towns. Arras is more secure, though it is still bombarded by heavy shells. The same remark applies to Hazebrouck, while, although the enemy line has been withdrawn east of Lens, there are still machine gun nests there. Allied patrols have already passed beyond the Place de la Gare.

The position of Armentieres is much like Lens, a sort of No Man's Land. Bailleul has suffered considerably and the Grande Place is a scene of ruin. Loere is practically wiped out and it is difficult to find even the site of the church, while at La Clytte a portion of the church still remains. Amiens is still exposed to air raids but it has not suffered since August 8.—Havas.—From *Daily Mirror*, Sept. 9, '18.

We drove through Hazebrouck. All these towns are deserted.

(Enclosure in diary.)

#### HEADQUARTERS 30TH DIVISION, A. E. F.

Office G-2, Sept. 10, 1918, 8:00 p.m.

The following communication has been received:

#### GERMAN WIRELESS COMMUNIQUE, TRANSLATED BY G-2, II CORPS, AMERICAN, Sept. 9, 1918, 11:00 a.m.

"The correspondent Gaedke writes the following in the *Vorwärts* of the 7th of September: 'The German Army leaders have determined to prosecute the rest of the war on the defensive and never to take the offensive. However, the positions that we took up after the eighth of September, on our own initiative, were very poor for defensive fighting. They therefore made easy the English and French first successes. The determination to take the defensive was the cause of the next decision to retire further.'"

*September 11, 1918, Wednesday.* Sent a lorrie with twenty non-commissioned officers and Captains Seelye and George to a Royal Engineer Dump just north of Beauval (Headquarters of Second American Corps) where the British were giving instruction in the construction of various types of bridges that are being used at the front. They left Regimental Headquarters about 6:30 a.m. At 7:00 a.m., I left camp in the car with Captain Humphreys for Regimental Headquarters where we picked up Majors Lyerly and Cothran and went to Beauval to see General Ferguson and to go on

to the Bridge demonstration. The ride down was delightful. Through new country and with many new scenes and new experiences. We passed through Buneville, Moncheaux, Sibiville, Sericourt, Frevent, Doullens, to Beauval. Most of these are small towns, many unique, all with churches, and nearly all with good roads and streets. Frevent is a town of some size, and Doullens is the largest city outside of Dunkirk I have been in. There are several large churches in the city, some quite interesting, but the most interesting in connection with the city is the Citadel, a fortress of some importance in previous days. At Beauval we stopped at General Ferguson's office and saw him and Captain Myers. He wanted me to go on a trip with him; so I went first with Majors Cothran and Lyerly to see the Bridge Construction demonstration. When we arrived found that the lorry had reached there just ahead of us. I looked over the dump or park and inspected the bridges they were illustrating and arranged for our men to build the light type of English bridge. I left the party there and went back to Beauval to meet General Ferguson. While his car was being fixed, we discussed plans for the regiment and congratulated ourselves on what a splendid regiment we have. The trip we had planned contemplated the inspection of some bridges built by the British during the past two months, but it ended in the most wonderful trip I have ever taken. It took us to the present battlefield of the Somme. It took me to places that had recently been occupied by the Germans. It showed me country and cities and villages that had been devastated and wasted by the Germans. It beggars description.

We first visited Albert, where every single building is destroyed beyond repair. It is a depressing sight and it is a marvel how the men could live through it. They, of course, had their dugouts to go into. One of our big jobs in an advance will be to re-open the streets in these shelled cities. They are covered with debris from the fallen buildings, and it is a big work to get it removed so that the men and teams can get through. We examined a bridge the Engineers had built over a railroad cut, and while there saw one small area that had been shelled so severely that there was hardly a square foot that had not been ploughed up by a shell. This was the most severely shelled area I have seen.

From here we started for Aveluy to see another bridge but went by the road where we should have turned off and then decided to go to the Somme front. We went on the main Albert-Cambrai Road, passing through many places that have been mentioned in the papers during the advance: La Boissette, Pezieres, Courcellette, Le Sars, Warlencourt, to Bapuame. Most of these places are absolutely razed to the ground and if it were not for a sign-board we would not have been able to tell where the towns had been. Bapuame is also nearly demolished. We continued on through Fremicourt, Beugny, to Beaumetz. After leaving Beugny we were in sight of the front and could see the shells bursting in the towns and over the battlefield. We left the car in one of the outer streets of Beaumetz and went up on a hill that gave a good view of the country in front. Could see the church spires of Cambrai, the woods nearby which are temporarily holding up our men, and also the woods further to the south, the Harincourt woods, which, although held by our men, are still subject to counter attacks and shell attacks. They were shelling Doigmes, a little village a few hundred yards beyond us. Saw a gas attack on the woods near Cambrai; the gas was blown towards the woods in a dense white cloud. There was not any particular advance made today, and the battle was confined largely to artillery.

Returning we stopped near Grevillers, where the American Tank Battalion is camped. This is the battalion General Ferguson organized in the States, and he knew many of the officers. We went over back of Bihucourt where the tanks of one of the companies were located. There were forty-seven tanks (British), all under the command of a Captain. Each tank carries four machine guns and two six-pounders. They are manned by eleven men. We went inside of one of them. Everything is very compact and rather cramped for a tall man. This Tank Battalion is occupying dugouts recently vacated by the Germans. The latter left very hurriedly, as is evidenced by the things they left, clothes, revolvers, field glasses, etc. We returned to Doullens *via* Achiet-le-Grand, Achiet-le-Petit, Bienvillers, Soastre, Henn, Pas, and Mondicourt. Many of these places were badly demolished and German supplies were on every hand. German Engineer stores and ammunition were very much in evidence.

While at the Tank Battalion Headquarters I saw the most beautiful and perfect rainbow I have ever seen. The junction of both ends with the ground was visible, the color bands were broad and very strongly colored. There was also a fainter second rainbow under the first one. It is hoped that this is a good omen and an indication of the soon ending of the war and establishment of a permanent World Peace.

At Doullens the General and I had bread and coffee, which represented our dinner (5 p.m.), and then he sent me home in his car. He had expected to wait the return of the car in Doullens, but fortunately a British Officer came by and took the General back to Corps Headquarters. Returned *via* St. Pol, reaching home in time for dinner. The ride was delightful, and many, many new scenes added interest. The citadel at Doullens was an interesting fortification and I would have liked to have examined it closely.

*September 12, 1918, Thursday.* All this week the nights have been cloudy and therefore no air attacks. All the nights are very peaceful and fine for sleeping. They are cold and I sleep under three blankets. I do not know how many I am going to need this winter. Today is cold and raining. Worked in the office until about 10:30 a.m. and then went out with Captain Armstrong to the Tank Field to watch the Infantry practice an attack behind the tanks. It was rainy and muddy, but the practice went on just the same. I felt sorry for the men on account of the fact that they only have the one uniform and it is hard for them to get dried out and cleaned, while the officers can shift and turn their dirty clothes and shoes over to their orderlies to clean. It was very interesting. The tanks can turn very quickly in a small radius and act as scouts in the advance, hunting out machine gun nests and helping to break up strong points. They have proved a big help in the advance. Returning we stopped at the 59th Brigade Headquarters (General Tyson), then went by the 117th Infantry and Headquarters 60th Brigade (General Faison). I had maps to leave at each place. It rained almost continuously, and as we were going over new roads it was a little difficult finding the way. It was one o'clock when we reached General Faison's Headquarters, and on being invited to dinner by General Faison's Aide, Lieutenant Bryan, we gladly accepted. General Faison is in a beautiful Chateau and



is this time better fixed than any officer. He was not at home. We left right after dinner for camp, returning *via* St. Pol.

This evening at 6 p.m., I was over at Second Battalion to present orders to three men of Company F who had distinguished themselves during the gas attack of August 27.

(Enclosure in diary.)

HEADQUARTERS,  
105TH ENGINEER REGIMENT,  
AMERICAN EXPEDITIONARY FORCES.

GENERAL ORDERS

No. 1.

Sept. 12th, 1918.

The following citation for acts of meritorious conduct are hereby published:

1. SERGEANT FIRST CLASS GUY R. HINSON, 1329688, Co. "F."

During an unexpected flare-back of the highly concentrated gas cloud being delivered against the enemy on the morning of August 27th, 1918, Sergeant First Class Hinson, who had charge of a platoon along the wire entanglement which hemmed them in and through a gap, to a point beyond the cloud, and then went back into a cloud four times, collecting and leading others to the main party, although the gas was so dense that there was not sufficient air to support life. In spite of enemy machine gun fire which compelled them to take cover for a short time, he led them further to a point where he could check them up, and finding several missing, returned again to search for them, after having placed the platoon under the command of Sergeant Greenwood, to whom he gave proper instructions to complete the mission of the platoon. He found all but two of the missing men, and of those he found, one was dead and two died on the way to the hospital. His excellent leadership and unusual courage saved many lives which otherwise would have been lost, and at the same time insured the proper completion of a very important action.

By order of Lieutenant Colonel Pratt:

CLARENCE E. BOESCH,  
*Captain, Engineers, Adjutant.*

(Enclosure in diary.)

HEADQUARTERS  
105TH ENGINEER REGIMENT  
AMERICAN EXPEDITIONARY FORCES

GENERAL ORDERS

No. 2

Sept. 12th, 1918.

The following citations for acts of meritorious conduct are hereby published:

PRIVATE CLAUDE L. SMALLWOOD, 1985884, Co. "F."

PRIVATE CHARLES H. ROLLOFF, 2191309, Co. "F."

On the morning of August 27th, 1918, when Private Smallwood and Private Rolloff, with others participating in a cloud gas attack on the enemy, were caught in an unexpected flare-back of very dense gas, these two soldiers remained with four of their comrades who were overcome by the gas, and attempted to take care of them until all six were found and carried away by others. Their efforts probably saved the lives of some of the four, and they are to be commended for their devotion to their comrades.

By order of Lieutenant Colonel Pratt:

CLARENCE E. BOESCH,  
*Captain, Engineers, Adjutant.*

The Company was formed in a triangle near Battalion Headquarters and I made a short talk to the men before calling out the three men to make the awards of copies of orders. It is the first time I have ever had such a formation, and it was an interesting event to me and I think to the men.

(Enclosure in diary.)

*The Daily Mirror*, Sept. 4, 1918.  
(Newspaper cut)

#### GIANT BOMBER BROUGHT DOWN BY BELGIANS.

This huge bombing aeroplane was shot down by Belgian anti-aircraft guns on its return from a raid on Dunkirk. It carried a crew of four, which was captured. The machine itself was, as may be seen, brought down practically intact.

The above is one type of bombing aeroplane that has worried us a good deal and interfered with our sleep. I know our machines are spoiling the sleep of a good many Germans, and also bother them a good deal in the day time.

*September 12, 1918, Thursday.* A red letter day in American history.

(Enclosure in diary.)

HEADQUARTERS 30TH DIVISION A. E. F.  
Office, G-2, 4:30 p.m. Sept. 12, 1918.

The following telegram has been received:

"Communique rec'd from the American Mission British G.H.Q. by telephone 2:30 p.m. Sept. 12th: Attack by eight American Divisions commenced this morning at 5:30 preceded by three or four hours bombardment. Attack on the front XIVRAY to FEY-en-HAME sixteen kilometers front. Attack met little opposition at first and at last report advance was continuing.

Advance had reached the approximate line Northern edge of RATOOD North of EZZY BOIS DE HEICHE VIEVILLE. Advanced approximately five Kilo's. A secondary attack by one American Division and French Colonial Division was launched at the same time against the Western face of St. MIHIEL salient on the front North of LES ESPARGES. This attack was going well but no details have been received. An attack by three French Divisions was starting between the other two attacks. No details."

(Enclosure in diary.)

HEADQUARTERS 30TH DIVISION A.E.F.

Office of G12, September 13th, 1918.

The following telephonic communication has been received from II Corps, A.E.F.

"The advance has continued all along the line. The Fifth American Corps have advanced across the Forest of LA MONTAGNE and have occupied HATTONVILLE and VIGNEULLES. The town of ST. MIHIEL has been entirely bottled up and has fallen into our hands.

"The Second Colonial French Corps have advanced South and West and have captured many prisoners and much material. The sector of ST. MIHIEL has been taken, and the advance of the Second Colonial French Corps continues, beyond MONT SEC. In the united attack more than 20,000 prisoners have been taken and the total distance of the advance is more than 15 miles in depth.

*September 13, 1918, Friday.* Today has been a record day in many ways. I have made a trip to the Lens front, examined extensive system of tunnels, went within 200 yards of the German Line, was fired at by a machine gun, and had to speed the auto to get out of shell fire. I took with me Major Cothran, Captain Sullivan, and Captain Armstrong, leaving camp at 8:15 a.m. We went first to Valhuen to the Headquarters of 118th Infantry to leave some maps and then to a short cut over to the main road from St. Pol to Bruay. It was cloudy and chilly, but we all had a good time and enjoyed the ride. We arrived at First Corps Headquarters on time at 9:30 a.m. *via* Bruay. At Corps Headquarters met Captain Green again, who introduced us to General Gordon, the Corps Engineer. Had a short talk with him and hope to see more of him. I found that Captain Green had made arrangements with Major Sanderson of the Third Australian Engineers to look after us and provide us with a guide to go through the system of tunnels and trenches. Captain Green could not go with us, as General Gordon had just returned from a leave and Captain Green is his Staff

Officer. We went to Major Sanderson's Headquarters at Braquemont *via* Noeux-les-Mines. Just missed Major Sanderson, who had left for the front. Lieutenant Shaw had, however, been detailed to go with us, and we soon had completed our arrangements and were ready to move on. We went in the car as far as buildings near railroad track, *via* Petit Sains and Mazingarbe. In these two towns the civilian population is nearly all gone, as these towns are subject to shelling and gas attack by shelling. Our excitement began just before reaching our stopping place. As we turned the corner by the Chateau beyond Mazingarbe, shell began to burst and we found the Germans were beginning to shell a cross roads which we had to pass. The driver was given instruction to speed and it is about the first time I have ever let him speed. I had no objection this time. One shell hit and burst within 200 feet of us, another within a few feet of where we had been, and still another on the road we had just passed over, but we had flown. The shells apparently did not throw very much shrapnel or threw it very far. We left the machine and driver behind a brick wall, out of observation.

On leaving the machine we put on our masks in the alert position and wore our iron helmets. From this time on until we got back to the machine my nerves were all at a high tension and taut. Our first destination was the entrance to the tunnel system in front of Hulluch. On crossing the railroad we came into view of German observation posts, and all across the "Plain" we were in sight of the enemy, except in a few places where it was screened, and drawing closer to them all the time. I found out afterwards that we could have gone up to the tunnel entrance in trenches and not have been exposed at all, but the Australian officer said it was too hard walking on the "duck boards" in the trenches and there was not much danger walking across the plain. We followed a route marked by white stakes, which is used a great deal at night, the white stakes guiding the men. Going across no shells fell very close to us, but they might have. The Germans were shelling the plain. We are beginning to feel that there is no use worrying. If your time has come to be hit, you will get hit. That does not mean that we take unnecessary risks or do not seek cover when possible. We reached the entrance to the tunnel O. K. Visited en



route a trench mortar emplacement. This was a large twelve-inch Trench Mortar, mounted in a pit twenty feet below the surface, the entrance to which was well camouflaged. It had dugout protection for the men. In entering the tunnel we entered the most elaborate system of underground workings ever constructed in connection with a war. There are at least 25 miles of tunnels and drifts and a whole Division could easily be housed in them. They are divided into two types: (1) The outer or mine system which is a continuous tunnel extending from La Basse Canal to Lens and is beyond the front line trench; (2) The inner or garrison system, which consists of a great many series of tunnels with their cross cuts, outlets to trenches, chambers, etc., for housing and taking care of the garrison of the trenches. These tunnels are from 25 to 60 feet under ground. The second system is electric lighted throughout. Current generated by plant underground. Water supply is obtained from wells sunk sixty feet below the floor of the tunnel. Have large blowers and fans to maintain fresh air. Also have large respirators to purify the air during a gas attack. All entrances to the tunnels are protected with gas curtains—two to three each. The officers and men have their quarters, offices and mess rooms off from the tunnels. All cooking of meals is also done underground. The rock is soft, chalky material at surface but harder limestone below, much of which stands without tumbling. We had dinner in one of the Company's headquarters. The food had been sent up especially for us but was cooked underground, and it all tasted very good. We examined the tunnel series in front of Hulluch and also the mine tunnel to the front. All the series of tunnels are connected with the mine tunnel, but no one but Royal Engineers is allowed to enter them. Each entrance is protected by two heavy doors with special fastenings, and each time a Royal Engineer goes through he has to unlock and relock each door. We went all through the tunnel series in front of Hulluch, examining tunnel, passage way, bunk room of men, officers' quarters, kitchens, mess rooms, electric plant, fans, respirators, well, water tanks, etc. Also went from this tunnel into the main mine tunnel and walked through that for nearly three-fourths of a mile. At intervals short drifts were run out from the tunnel and these were charged with explosives, which were con-

nected by wire with batteries in the tunnel systems. There were also listening posts where the men would listen for sounds of the Germans mining on their side of the line. The mine tunnel was also so "mined" that if the Germans broke into it at any place, charges could be set off which would confine the Germans to a small part of it or kill them.

From the tunnel system we went up at several places to the "front line" trench, which at one place was only about 200 yards from the German trench. We had peep holes and periscopes with which to observe "no man's land" and the German trenches. A German machine gun opened fire on us and caused us to duck down behind the trench. At another point where we came out into the trench the machine gunners had just shot down a German aeroplane which dropped in "no man's land" about 50 yards in front of the trench. At another entrance from the tunnel to the trench (all are stairways) we had just started to go up when we met two soldiers who had come half way down to avoid shelling. A shell had landed in the trench and partially closed the entrance and killed an officer. We skipped that entrance and went up the next stairway. All these stairways are carefully guarded and have doors that shut tight and with loop holes that command the entrance.

After finishing examining the "Tunnel Series" we had dinner in one of the company commander's rooms. We came out of the main tunnel entrance about 3:00 o'clock and started for Vermelles. We walked part way in the trenches and then when they began to get muddy, we took to the Hulluch Road, across the Plain.

A raid was pulled off by the British this morning on Auchy-les-la-Bassee, which was successful. This removed the Observation Post that had been watching this road and therefore we felt easier as we walked along the road. The raid also accounted for the large amount of shelling that took place today.

At Vermelles we entered another tunnel series, which was fully as marvellous as the previous one. The "series" was to house the garrison of the "Support System of Trenches." Its chief difference from the other was its complete First Aid and Dressing Station. It was a complete hospital under ground, Operating Room, Reception Room, Wards, Theater or music hall. All corridors whitewashed, kitchen clean, many brick floors, etc. It was a marvel.

The little town of Vermelles is pretty nearly wiped out. The Germans still shell it and this noon about 2:00 p.m. three were killed by a shell that landed near the ruins of the church. A fourth was badly wounded and died on the operating table. He was on the table when we went through the room. Our machine met us in Vermelles and we were soon on our way back to Braquemont. As we passed over the shelled road of the morning we saw where one shell had struck the road.

Lieutenant Shaw insisted on our going over to their mess and having "tea." This we did and had a jolly half hour. A Signal Corps Major came in soon after we arrived, and looking around on the Americans and the Australians, said: "A jolly gathering of the Colonials." Major Sanderson, of the Third Australian Engineers, was our host.

We started for camp at 5:30, but on reaching Bruay decided to stop for supper. We arranged at a "hotel" for them to prepare us a supper which they promised to have ready by 6:30, but which was not ready until 7 p.m. It was a good supper and we all enjoyed it, although we felt hurried and were anxious to get away. I wanted to get home before dark. We did not leave Bruay until 7:30, but would have gotten home before dark if we had not had tire trouble. We had to go ten miles on a flat tire. Before reaching Bruay we stopped at First Corps Headquarters to see Captain Green and thank him for the arrangements he had made for us. We reached home about 9:30 p.m.

*September 14, 1918, Saturday.* Started this morning for Second Corps (American) Headquarters with McDonald. Stopped by First Battalion Headquarters and Second Battalion Headquarters. Then went on to drill field of Second Battalion. While there General Lewis came by and watched the drill. As luck would have it he stopped first with a platoon that is far from the best. The reason he happened to stop with this particular platoon was that he saw one of the men smoking while at drill. The man who was smoking was one we have been trying to get rid of. He is always giving trouble and even before leaving the States we tried to have him up before the Disability Board. The men of the platoon, in answer to a question of the General, said they had never heard of

the General's order that "no guns were to be loaded except when going into action." This displeased the General, as he thought his orders were not being obeyed. After he left I talked to the platoon, and found every man had heard of the order and knew about it. The General had rattled them. I sent Captain Humphreys and Lieutenant McDonald down to Corps Headquarters and remained on the Drill Field until noon. Came back to Second Battalion Headquarters and had dinner and then walked on to First Battalion. Short conference with Major Cothran, and then walked home. My car did not get back until 1:00 a.m.

The news from the American Army in the St. Michel sector is fine, still progressing with splendid results. We all wish we could be on that battle front.

(Enclosure in diary.)

HEADQUARTERS 30TH DIVISION, A. E. F.

Office G-2, 2:35 p.m. Sept. 14, 1918.

The following telegram has been received:

"Received following information from French Mission 12:30 p.m. Sept. 14th: The line runs as follows: VILLE-EN-WOEVRE southeast to RIAVILLE, MARCHEVILLE, WODONVILLE, EN-WOEVRE (Probably FRESNES-EN-WOEVRE), AVILLERS, HATTONVILLE all included, thence through the BOIS LE CHAUFER, ST. BENOIT, southeast close to the railroad track then 59.3.444 XAMMES, JAUENY, through 67.0-42.2 VILCEY, passing three hundred metres north of NORROY to the east bank of the MOSELLE Cavalry patrols have reached ST. HILAIRE and are operating in the direction of REMBERCOURT and HAUMONT and south of PAGNY. The report that we have PAGNY appears to have been untrue because the fighting is taking place three kilometers south of PAGNY. Losses relatively light."

(Map references evidently taken from French maps. No such maps are available.)

*September 15, 1918, Sunday.* A beautiful moonlight, last night, and German aeroplanes came over but did not interfere with us. I hardly heard them. The bombing machines that come over are huge affairs and carry bombs weighing as much as a ton. They are not apt to waste these big ones on billets.

Spent part of the morning in the office, but about 10:30 started for First Army (British) Headquarters to arrange about some supplies. I took with me Captains Armstrong, Winthrop and Stafford. We took a new road to Army Headquarters *via* Tinques, Chelers,



Frevillers, Hermin, to Rebreuve, Army Headquarters. This is the most beautiful route we have taken. Most picturesque and better looking farms and villages. General Atkinson was not in, but Major Wheatley showed me some very fine aerial photographs of the Canal du Nord, and then gave me four of them. They are the best aerial photos I have ever seen. He also said he would arrange to send an officer to go with me through the underground workings (caves and tunnels) at Arras.

From Army Headquarters we went to Corps Headquarters by a new route. Immediately on leaving Rebreuve we climbed a high hill from which we had a magnificent view of the surrounding country. We passed through Maisnil-les-Ruitz, Ruitz, Hallicourt, to Labuissiere, First Corps Headquarters. I stopped principally to see Captain Green and to say goodbye to him, but he was not at home. We stopped for dinner at a small restaurant near Corps Headquarters. We had a splendid meal, one of the best we have had in France.

From Corps Headquarters we went up to Bethune, which had recently been occupied by the Germans. The old part of the city is destroyed beyond any thought of repair. It was shelled and burned. A British Tunneling Company saved the new part of the city from being burned. We spent nearly an hour walking through the ruins. Churches, City hall, banks, and all other buildings battered and burned, and the streets filled with debris. It is impossible to drive through the old part of the city. We got back to camp about 5:30 o'clock.

A German aeroplane came over the camp this afternoon, but was brought down by the archers just east of St. Pol. The day has been a beautiful one and tonight is brilliant moonlight. En route home we passed through Bruay and near the coal mine shafts.

*September 16, 1918, Monday.* No air raids last night, although they were expected. Learned today that the aeroplane shot down yesterday was out taking photographs of this part of the country. We received an order today for another move. Division Headquarters moves tomorrow morning to Herissart. Our transports also start tomorrow stopping en route at Bonquemaision. The Regiment and Train does not leave until Wednesday, September 18, and

go to Talmas. The 59th and 60th Brigades are to the east. This move will bring us into the Third Army (British) area. How long we will be there, no one seems to have any idea. We are all wishing we could get down with the First Army (American). We have just got well running here and now we have to move. Received the following telegram this morning:

"C" FORM  
MESSAGES AND SIGNALS

Prefix: S.M.

Code: L.E.

Words: 32.

Service Instructions: A. A. R.

Handed in at Office—11:25 p.m.

To: Div'l Engineer 30th A. D.

Sender's Number: 61163. Day of Month: 15.

From: B. A. C.

By: Drusse.

Received—12:30 a.m.

An officer of 172 tunneling company will meet you at seven cross roads Arras G 21 B 4.7 at 11:00 a.m. tomorrow morning.

From: Chief Engineer.

Place and Time: First Army.

Telegram received 8:00 a.m. on my arrival at the office. I made arrangements to leave camp at 9:45 for Arras. Captain Boesch went with me and we reached the seven cross roads on the outskirts of Arras at 10:55. We were met by a Captain and Lieutenant of the 172 Tunneling Company. We first drove through Arras to the railroad station, where we left the autos, sending them back to seven cross roads. We crossed the track and followed up the road until we located Entrance No. 2 to the tunnel and cave system of Arras. Only parts of the city are badly damaged, but some are in very bad shape. The large cathedral is very badly damaged and the beautiful city hall has been razed to the ground. The depot and buildings nearby have also been severely shelled. This depot area is still being shelled with big high explosive shells. We walked across the railroad track and hunted up the entrance No. 2 to the tunnel. Captain ——— of the 172d Tunnel Company had not been there for two years, and we had a little trouble in locating the entrance. We came at one time within fifteen feet and did not recognize it. It looked to me like a broken opening into a cellar. We went further in and then came back to this same place and found the entrance. These underground works consist of

tunnels and drifts connecting a number of large caves (limestone). These caves have been converted into quarters for men and officers and they lived in these as in the north of Lens. The British had also connected up these caves by tunnels with the old sewer openings of the city, and it was possible to go from the center of the city to the front line trench, all the way underground. This was when the front firing trench was 2,000 yards in front of Arras. The whole system is lit by electric lights and up to three weeks ago had a "Cave Major" who lived in one of these caves and had the billeting of the troops that came into the caves to live. For the past few weeks since the forward push beyond Arras was made, the caves have been used but very little. It was only by chance that the lights were on today. The men in charge of the electric light plant have a splendid mess and club room back of the engine room. They have a piano, good table, chairs, sideboard, and large mirror, have portieres at the entrance. You can hardly realize you are underground. We came out by entrance No. 1 and walked to seven cross roads where we found the auto waiting for us. A few of the civilian population have come back and it is pathetic to see them trying to fix up their stores.

We returned to camp *via* Habarcq, Avernoes-le-Comte, Manin, Givenchy-le-Noble, Ambrines, Ternas, and Ricametz, stopping for a few minutes at the Headquarters of the First and Second Battalion. Reached camp about 2.45 p.m. without having any dinner. We tried to get something in each of the towns we passed through but without success. We bought a few crackers at Ternas and that constituted our lunch. At 4:30 p.m. Captain Sullivan and I went to St. Pol for a bath at the Convent. The nuns have prepared two bath rooms for officers and furnish hot water, soap and towels for a franc and a half. The heater furnishes hot water enough for two baths and usually there are always two waiting to bathe. The hot water is turned on at the same time in each tub, so that each man will get his share of hot water. It takes it all, and then while they are bathing the heater is filled with water again and gets hot by the time the bath rooms are ready for the next men. I had a splendid bath and enjoyed it immensely. It is the first *tub bath* I have had since May 26 at Camp Mills, N. Y. We got back to camp just in time for supper.

A beautiful moonlight night and fine for air raids. We received march orders today and will leave for our new camp tomorrow morning.

*September 17, 1918, Tuesday.* Last night we did not have any air raids, but we did have a most severe thunder shower. The lightning was very vivid and intense. Every flash would light up the room brilliantly. Today has been more or less upset on account of our moving. We are all packed up and ready to move by nine o'clock, but I did not want to leave until after the office supplies and fixtures were loaded on the lorries. We all got away about 10:30. I took Captain Sullivan and Captain Boesch with me in the car. The air was clear and crisp after the rain, but there was a little too much wind. The ride, however, was fine. Mostly through new country and towns. I stopped at First Battalion Headquarters for a short conference with Major Cothran. About 11:00 a.m. we started for our new camp at Herissart. We traveled *via* Maisnal-St. Pol; Herlin-le-Sec; Fremicourt, Ecoivres, Flers, Monchel, Clonchy-sur-Canche; Boubiers-sur-Canche; Vacjue-rie-de-Bourcq; Bois d'Auxi; Auxi-le-Chateau; Wavrans, Frohen-le-Grand, Mezerelles, Doullens, Gezaincourt, Beauval, Le Virogues, Talmas to Herissart. Coming along the ridge from Flers to Monchel we saw off to our left a long string of horsemen and closer to us a string of motor cars. As the two roads approached each other we saw that the horsemen were British Cavalry and the motor cars were a squadron of armored cars. We got in the midst of them and had to stay with them until we had passed through Monchel. Then as the cavalry and the motor cars were taking the direct road to Auxi-le-Chateau, we turned to the left and took the road *via* Boubiers. It was a splendid sight seeing the cavalry moving along the road in the distance. Taking the longer route caused us to pass through the national forest of Bois d'Auxi. We stopped for lunch (which we brought with us) at the edge of the forest on a hillside where we could overlook the city of Auxi-le-Chateau and its beautiful valley. There were some British officers there and I found from them that there were some cavalry maneuvers on, the cavalry being assisted by the armored motor cars. We could see the cavalry moving around in the valley. At Doullens we deviated a little



from the regular route so as to go around the citadel. This took us through a beautiful valley, which we had a chance to see as well as the citadel.

At Beauval we stopped at the Corps Engineer's office, but General Ferguson was not at home. We had a talk with Captain Myers and then started for Talmas, at which place the Regiment and Train will be billeted. This is a rambling town with some very good houses and billets. There are more trees than are usually found in the towns. Saw Lieutenant Neuer and learned from him that all the billeting was completed and done satisfactorily. We then dove over to Herissart, Division Headquarters. Found we had been assigned pretty good quarters for office and billets. Good as compared with the village billets as a whole; poor as compared with any of the billets in other places. Our office is composed of two rooms of a school house. Window-doors in one room and one window in the other. My billet is reached through a very dirty, nasty front yard. Room is all right.

After we got our office fixed up and my things moved to my room, Captain Sullivan and I visited several towns which our troops are to occupy, to look after the water supply. We visited Reubenlire, Septenville, Pucheviller, and Toutencourt. The first place formerly had a very extensive (British) water supply system, but it has been partly dismantled and the material moved further to the front. No supper. Mess had not arrived.

*September 18, 1918, Wednesday.* Several aeroplanes flew over us last night, but did not drop any bombs. Office work until 9:00 a.m. Then took Lieutenant Robinson, Regimental Stores Officer and went over to Senlis, Headquarters of Fifth Corps, British. Captain Humphreys has been there for three days studying water supply methods with the Corps Supply Officer. I wanted to meet the Corps Chief Engineer. I met General Stevenson, the Corps Chief Engineer, and had a very pleasant and instructive conference with him. Arranged to draw supplies from Army Dump at Rosel. Have been given blanket authority to draw what I need. General Stevenson invited me to go to the front with him tomorrow, leaving Senlis at 10:00 a.m.

We picked up Captain Humphreys and then visited some more of the places where our troops are to be quartered, at Varennes, As-

queves, Raincheval. We then went through Beauquense to Rosel to the Army Dump. Met Lieutenant Goodacre, and introduced Lieutenant Robinson, our Stores Officer, to him. He obtained some material that we needed right away. We then returned to camp, reaching here in time for a late dinner.

Last night I was stung by some insect and my hand is now badly swollen. Doctor examined it and said there was nothing he could do at present. Hope it will be better in the morning. At 3:30 p.m. Captain Humphreys and I started out on Water Supply work. We went to Pucheviller, where I left him to look over the plant there and also at Vanchelles and Louvencourt. I went on to Beauval to Second Corps Headquarters and had a conference with General Ferguson. Sent the car back to Captain Humphreys and stayed with General Ferguson until Captain Humphreys had finished his work and returned in car to Beauval. We then all returned to Herissart. Tonight I was examined physically in connection with promotion.

At Lealvillers the British had started a concrete machine gun emplacement at the junction of three roads. It was directly in front of the village church. The Germans dropped a shell on the end of the church near the machine gun emplacement. It was almost a direct hit on the emplacement. It destroyed the altar of the church.

*September 19, 1918, Thursday.* Started the office work this morning and then went over to Fifth Corps Headquarters to meet General Stevenson and go out with him in the forward area. The ride out was very pleasant, and I enjoy very much indeed getting out into the open, even if it is "riding in an automobile." Found General Stevenson ready for the trip and I sent my car back to camp after ordering it to return at 5:00 p.m. to Senlis for me.

General Stevenson and I went in his car. We stopped first at a concrete machine gun emplacement near Senlis which the British had started before their push, when they expected a push on the part of the Germans. This was nearly but not quite completed, and thus far has never been used. I hope it never will be used for the purpose for which it was constructed. Our first objective was Etricourt, where we wished to examine a bridge built over the

"Canal du Nord." We went *via* Albert, Bapaume, La Transloy, Rocquigny, Manancourt, to Etricourt.

Albert was as distressing a sight today as the first day I saw it. I looked at the cathedral more particularly today. It is not as old as many of the cathedrals in other cities, but it is as badly destroyed. It is not even a picturesque ruin. It looks too shoddy. The ride from Albert to Bapaume was very much like riding through certain sections of Arizona. The general appearance was very much the same. Waste land as far as one could see. Trees killed. No villages, no cultivation. Few camps scattered here and there like mining camps. The holes in the ground and the piles of dirt and rock were similar to prospect pits. To make the resemblance more real, in one place there was a large drove of horses grazing.

At Etricourt, on the banks of the Canal du Nord the bridges had all been blown up. There was originally a beautiful red brick (stone trimmed) arched bridge, which was destroyed during the first Somme battle. The British had built a new bridge over the canal which was captured during the March push of the Germans. When they were driven back in August they destroyed this bridge, so the British had to build another bridge for their advance. They are now salvaging the other river bridge and will move it toward the front. It is a very lively place at this crossing, and the Germans know and shell it occasionally. They were shelling a good deal just beyond us. The recent push (yesterday) of the British is partly the cause of a good deal of the traffic at this time. Supplies going up and wounded coming back. Also prisoners. Saw a good deal of both this morning.

I wanted to go up the canal to where it came through a tunnel through the hills, but did not have time as our car had broken a spring and it had to be repaired. The General and I became auto mechanics and repaired the break, so that we rode home without any inconvenience or even realizing the spring was broken.

From Etricourt we went about one and a half miles southwest of Manancourt to the new location of Fifth Corps Headquarters. This is on a heavily wooded hill and a pleasant location. It had evidently been selected by the Germans for a Division Headquarters and the Corps will use a good many huts that the Germans built. They also completed some that were started by the Germans. Such

preparations as these, and such as heavily ballasting the broad gauge railroads, building train sheds, laying in large stores of stone for highway work, and supplies of coal, does not coincide with the German statement that they had planned to retire.

We got back to Corps Headquarters at 5:00 p.m. and General Stevenson invited me to "Tea." I gladly accepted and had good refreshments and met some splendid officers. Had the pleasure of meeting General Byng, commander of the Third British Army, Lieutenant-General Shoonts, commander of the Fifth Corps, and a Brigadier-General of Artillery. They were all very cordial in their welcome. After Tea I rode back to camp, my machine having reached Corps Headquarters at the same time we did. I brought back quite a number of souvenirs from the Somme Battle Field. Brass shells, nose of shell, baskets that shells and caps were carried in by the Germans. On the way home we picked up two men of the Royal Flying Corps and gave them a lift as far as Woylan. One place we passed between Senlis and Woylan resembles very much some of the cliff dweller scenes of Arizona. At a distance the dugouts in the hillside terraces, where the entrances are faced with stone, have a very striking resemblance to the cave or house entrances of the cave dwellers.

I heard tonight that on the march of the Division Transport yesterday that General Lewis inspected the column. He called out Captain Gillette, who was in command of the 105th Regiment and Train Transport, and asked him to which organization it belonged, and then told him that "it was the best in the Division, and came near being what he thought a transport should be like." That was a pretty fine compliment for our transport. It was a compliment well deserved by the Transports.

*September 20, 1918, Friday.* Office work most of the morning. In the p.m. inspected proposed bath installation at Louvencourt. Returning home had puncture which delayed us nearly an hour. Had conference at Louvencourt with Colonel Spence and at Archey with Colonel Minor in regard to distribution of Engineer tools during our offensive. On return to camp found a telegram for me to detail 200 men to go to new location of Second American Corps. I decided to send all the men from C Company. It takes all but 25 men of the Company.



(Enclosure in diary.)

COPY—TELEGRAM—Recd. 7:45 p.m. 9/20/18.

To: C. G. 30th Amer. Div.

G-4 849

Two hundred Engineers will be prepared to embus at BATH at 11 a.m. 21st inst. as advance party to prepare advance Corps Headquarters AAA. Eight buses will be at BATH at that time. Destination will be notified later AAA. Detail will be rationed to include 22d inst.

2d AMERICAN CORPS.

Bath is a code word, and the place the men entrained was Talmas. Their destination is near the location of the Australian Corps.

(Enclosure in diary.)

"C" FORM

MESSAGES AND SIGNALS

To 105th Engineers

Day of Month: 20th.

Composition Billeting parties.

Orders for billeting parties AAA Divisional Billeting Officer Capt. Myers. Divn. Headquarters Billeting Officer Lieut. Hay. One officer from each Brigade Regiment Battalion Field Ambulance and one enlisted man each company. Four men each Brigade Sanitary Squad one officer and one man each Ambulance. Lieut Collins M. C. and 6 enlisted men (Engineers) Capt. Humphreys and 6 enlisted men (Engineers). Detail to report to Capt. Myers upon arrival new area. Time of embussing 9:00 a.m. Sept. 21st. Place of embussing: For 59th Brigade ARQUEVES, loading under charge of C. O. 3rd Bn. 118th Inf. For 60th Brigade ACHEUS loading under charge of C. O. 120th Inf. Remainder of units HERISSART loading under charge Major Fair. Rations unconsumed portions days rations plus two days rations.

From: HERR.

*September 21, 1918, Saturday.* Today has been a very busy one, with preparations for moving camp tomorrow; inspection of the regiment; and trying to complete a bath establishment before the troops pull out. I had to send an advance party to our new camping area. I also had to send Captain Humphreys to investigate water supply in the area into which we are going. This advance party got away about nine a.m. I then had to go to Talmas to see the embussing of Company C. The busses arrived about 11:05 and in 12 minutes they were loaded and ready to leave. After they left I had to hurry back to Herissart for a little work at the office and then get back to Talmas to inspect the regiment at

1:00 p.m. It was a close connection and I missed it by about fifteen minutes. I phoned to Major Cothran that the inspection would be about 1:15. The drill field of the 1st Battalion was at one side of the town and of the 2d Battalion at the other side. The inspection was very satisfactory and showed the men in the pink of condition, but very poorly dressed. The U. S. troops are by far the poorest dressed troops over here. It is disgraceful the way they look, and yet we are unable to get them the clothes they need. Nearly all the uniforms and shoes issued to our supply officer for our troops are second hand and of little value. Our boys are not complaining but they are disgusted with the way the clothes are issued. Somebody has made a very bad break in handling the clothes for this Division.

Before leaving Herissart at noon I had been informed that we were to move on the following day (Sunday) for our new area, and that 1,050 men of the 105th Regiment would leave Sunday morning at 8:00 a.m. For this reason I did not have as long an inspection as usual, as the officers and men needed the time to get ready to leave. They are to go in busses. The transport left this afternoon at 5:00 p.m. and makes the trip in two night marches. After inspecting the Battalions, I inspected, the Transport, Engineer Train, Band and Headquarters Company. Had 4 o'clock lunch with Major Cothran. Early lunch was made necessary by the fact that all kitchen supplies had to leave on transports at 5:00 p.m. Returned to camp about 5:15 p.m., found General Ferguson waiting to see us. He told me that we are going into the front, would be in the Fourth British Army, and would make an attack with the Australians. This will make four British Armies we have been attached to:

II Army, II Corps, in the Ypres sector, General Godby, C. E.

I Army, I Corps, in the Lens sector, General Gordon, C. E., Corps. General.

III Army, V Corps, General Stevenson, C. E.

IV Army, Australian Corps, General Foott, C. E.

*September 22, 1918, Sunday.* Was up early this morning and over at Talmas in time to see the 1,050 men of the regiment embus for the new area in the St. Quentin District, our immediate sector being in front of Bellicourt. The Companies were lined up and ready to embus before the busses arrived. The 1,050 men em-

bussed in 17 minutes, could have done it in 12 minutes if all the busses had been there on time. As it was, the time taken made a pretty good record. D Company and 17 men of E Company were left in camp to go with the 60th Brigade tonight. I came back to camp to find that all my possessions had been packed and shipped in the lorry. I was soon ready to leave, and about 11:00 a.m. Captain Boesch, Lieutenant Jones and myself started in the car for Bois de Buire *via* Talmas, leaving Captain Armstrong, who came that far with us. The ride was not near as pleasant as the one from Rollecourt to Herissart. It was cold and windy. The best part of the trip was the ride through Amiens and a sight of the wonderful cathedral. The city has not been damaged a great deal and the cathedral hardly at all. One shell through the roof. The people are only just beginning to come back but not in any numbers. Restricted by military necessity. From Amiens east there is nearly a straight road for about ten miles. We followed this road to the canal. Here we turned north to go to Army Headquarters. I wanted to find out what was expected of the four companies that were to billet in the Fourth Corps area near Bernes. Was referred by the Army Royal Engineers Commander to the Corps Commander Engineers. His office was back south near ———. This town has practically ceased to exist, and if it was not for a signboard reading, "The town that exists in name only," we would not have known where the town was. At Corps Headquarters we were told that the four Companies were to help rebuild the railroad extending from Roisel to Bellicourt, and that I should see Colonel Anderson who was the Corps Transport Officer in charge of the railroad work, and that I would find him in his car on train at Doingt at 6:00 p.m. Fourth Corps Headquarters was a beautiful camp. It had been prepared by the British before the spring push and then occupied by the Germans until about three weeks ago. They did not have a chance to destroy it before they left, and the British came into their own once more. From Corps we went to our own camp in Bois de Buire. This is a very attractive camp in the woods. We are quartered with the Engineers of the First Australian Division. At 6:00 a.m. Captain Boesch and I went down to the railroad at Doingt, but could not find any trace of the car or of Colonel Anderson.

*September 23, 1918, Monday.* Captain Sullivan came in last night about 10:00 p.m. and I learned from him that Colonel Anderson did not get to Doingt until after 9:00 p.m. We are now in a region that has been almost completely devastated—fields, villages, and towns. In the morning Captain Sullivan and I went to Doingt and this time located Colonel Anderson in his car. He had just had a conference with Major-General H. C. Holman, D. A. and I. M. G. of the Fourth Army. I met General Holman and he wanted to know where we were located and said he was coming to see us. I met Colonel Anderson and in conference with him made arrangements for working the four companies. From the train we went up to Bernes to see the regiment and from there we went to Montigny Farm to see Colonel Clark, who has immediate charge of the railroad work. Colonel Clark was not in camp but was expected any minute. It was dinner time and while waiting for the Colonel his Adjutant insisted that we stay to dinner, which we gladly did. Colonel Clark and Major Lyerly came in soon after, and a little later General J. W. Stewart, Commanding Officer of the Canadian Transport and Railway troops, and Colonel Angus McDonald, second in command, came in. We conferred together regarding the work of the regiment.

After dinner we went by Bernes, leaving Major Lyerly and looking over the camp. The men are all digging themselves in and are now beginning to realize that we are getting into the real battle front. From this camp we drove over to the Australian Corps Headquarters to see the Chief Engineer and also to see the work that C Company is doing. Met General Foott, Chief Engineer of the Corps, and had a delightful talk with him. Took up with him the part our battalion will play in the pending battle. We then went out together to inspect C Company's work. They are doing very well and I believe General Foott was satisfied with results. While there General Ferguson came up. Between the two Generals I got a good idea of the proposed battle. General Foott instructed me to attend a conference to be held the following afternoon in regard to one phase of the battle, i.e. that relating to road construction for the Artillery. Returned to camp *via* Peronne.



*September 24, 1918, Tuesday.* Office in a.m. Most of the time in conference with Colonel Henderson, the Commander Royal Engineers of First Australian Division. We arranged details for turning over to me. In the p.m. went to conference:

	Gen. Foott, Gen. Ferguson.	
	Col. Pillsbury	102 Engineers.
	Lt. Col. Pratt	105 Engineers.
105 Eng.	( Maj. McClean	No. 5 Pioneer Bn. (Australian)
	( Maj. Mulligan	No. 2 Tunneling Co. (Australian)
102 Eng.	( Maj. _____	2 Pioneer Bn.
	( Maj. _____	1 Tunneling Co.

General Foott presided and explained the object of the conference. One Company of 105th Engineers will work with the Pioneer Battalion and two Companies with the Tunneling Company during the battle. The work will be on two roads, the "black" and the "red," which are to put in shape and left in shape for the Artillery and Motor Transport. Our troops are supposed to keep up within 500-600 yards of the barrage and put these two roads in shape. Majors McClean and Mulligan and I had a conference together when the General had finished, and went over the work to be done. Arranged with Major McClean to go with him in my car to the front to reconnoitre the roads we are to put in shape for the Artillery. Major Mulligan invited us to stop for dinner with him after we had finished with our inspection. Returned to camp through Peronne. This town has been badly demolished, but it is in much better shape than many of them.

D Company is camped near Division Headquarters and is being used for improving the camp and for special Division work.

(Enclosure in diary.)

#### HEADQUARTERS 30TH DIVISION

Am. E. F.

Sept. 24, 1918.

#### Chief of Staff:

Bathing facilities in this area are very limited. The Engineers have made plans for the installation of sectional baths in the Tincourt area. These baths will be arranged in four sections. Authority appears to be necessary

for the installation of these baths. Kindly authorize expenditure of material and equipment necessary.

A. M. WHALEY,  
*Lieut. Colonel, Medical Corps, U. S. A.*  
*Division Surgeon.*

*September 25, 1918, Wednesday.* Left camp about 9:00 a.m. for Peronne to get Major McClean. Had some difficulty in the town in locating where he was, but we (Captain Sullivan and myself) finally located his headquarters. We went as far toward the front as Hargicourt. This town was being very severely shelled while we were up there. We walked over the area we wished to investigate and came back to the car on the Jeancourt road. The area we went over was still strewn with German rifles, helmets, belts, machine guns, etc. We saw one dead German. Returning we stopped at the Headquarters of Major Mulligan, where we all had a most splendid dinner. Returned home *via* 60th Brigade Headquarters, but failed to find General Faison. Saw his Adjutant, Major Gordon Smith. Conference in p.m. of Division Officers commanding units, to discuss Battle program.

My work is not so cut and dried as with the other regimental commanders, and I am left to draw largely my own plans, to be approved by the commanding general. It throws greater responsibility on me, but makes it a great deal more interesting. Chief of Staff notified me that there would be a conference of Officers on Thursday at 3:30 p.m.

*September 26, 1918, Thursday.* In the a.m. went over to the location of Division Battle Headquarters. Planned what the men were to do. Lieutenant Field and his platoon are doing the work. The camp consists of a series of Nissen huts around the three sides of an old quarry that open on the road. These huts are all banked with earth to make them shrapnel proof. Our office and bunks will all be in the same place. We will only bring just enough to get along with. At present the 119th Regiment (Colonel Metts) has Headquarters in one of the huts. Stopped in to see him on business and for social call. Also saw Captain John Hall Manning. He has made good and has now been recommended for Major.

This afternoon there was another conference of the officers of the Division:

Maj. Gen. Lewis	60th Brigade
Gen. Faison	59th Brigade
Gen. Tyson	120th Inf.
Col. Minor	119th Inf.
Col. Metts	117th Inf.
Col. Spence	118th Inf.
Col. Wolf	Hdq. Transp. & Train.
Col. Springs	105th Engineers.
Lt. Col. Pratt	C. of S.
Lt. Col. Herr	C. S. O.
Lt. Col. Taylor	G 3.
Lt. Col. Burnett	

There were also several British Generals present. Final instructions were given and now it is up to each *of us* to see that our part of the battle is carried out exactly right. I am not nervous over what is expected of me and of the regiment, but I cannot help but feel a little anxious over it, as this will be the *first* real prearranged and big battle I have ever been in or that the Regiment has taken part in. I am again bothered with the feeling of hating to send my men to do things and go into places where I do not have to go myself. I realize that it is all part of the game and that I must direct all of the work of the whole regiment and could not do it if I went personally with each group.

(Enclosure in diary.)

26/9/18.

Memo to Col. Pratt:

I began work on shelters this evening with 19 men from Co. C. I will have about 26 tomorrow. Could use twice that many to advantage. Got a wagon from 1st Bn. and have materials on hand for about 10 of the 3-men shelters. Will police some of the huts and carry on with the shelters tomorrow.

BASCOM L. FIELD.

*September 27, 1918, Friday.* Last night about 11:30 p.m. General Lewis phoned over he wished to see me. When the Commanding General calls for an officer we very often wonder, "What has gone wrong now." In this case he only wanted to know if I was *sure* I was going to be able to put out the tape for the "jumping off line." I told him not to worry, that I was sure I could do it and do it right. This seemed to relieve him somewhat. Laying

this tape is done on the night before the attack is to commence, and consists of putting a line of white tape (one inch wide) along the whole front of our position just in advance of the front line trench, the object being to give the attacking troops a definite line to form on and to advance uniformly behind the barrage. Outposts will be sent out in advance of this line to prevent enemy from surprising the taping party. These outposts stay out until just before the attack and then they are called in.

Today I have been in the office nearly all day. The car has been out of commission and I have utilized the time in trying to catch up with certain things I want to do in the office. Captain Dowling, Adjutant of the First Australian Engineers, who is Liaison Officer attached to us, has been of very great assistance to me in completing my plans for the Battle.

(Enclosure in diary.)

DIVISION ENGINEER  
HEADQUARTERS 30TH DIVISION  
*SECRET* AMERICAN EXPEDITIONARY FORCES

Sept. 26th, 1918.

MEMORANDUM TO G-1: Plan for the 105th Regiment Engineers during the advance.

1. The Second Battalion will be used in road construction as Corps troops under the C. E. of the Australian Corps; Company "D" being attached to the 5th Australian Pioneer Battalion to work on the first task. Companies "E" and "F" are attached to the Second Australian Tunneling Company and will be worked on the second task.

2. The First Battalion will remain as Division Engineer troops and assigned tentatively to the following work:

Company "A" on Water Supply.

One platoon of Company "B" to look for "Booby" traps.

Company "C" to assist, if necessary, in consolidating line on right flank.

Company "B" less one platoon to be held in reserve.

3. An advance Engineer dump will be established at L.15.d.5.9. In addition to this dump it is expected to establish two forward Regimental dumps.

4. With these dumps there will be stored in one-man loads the following:

12000 shovels—200 loads.

800 picks—200 loads.

120 axes—20 loads.

12800 sandbags—200 loads.

Wire and pickets for 4000 yards apron wire; this material to be made up into one-man loads.

6 Artillery bridges.

10000 yards tape.



5. Water supply dump will contain if possible: 6 100-gallon tanks, 6 windlasses, complete, 4 pumps, 6 horse troughs.

JOSEPH HYDE PRATT,  
*Lieutenant-Colonel, Engineers, U. S. A.*  
*Division Engineer.*

(Enclosure in diary.)

#### RESOLUTIONS OF APPRECIATION

*Resolved*, that we greatly miss the encouragement and assistance of Colonel Joseph Hyde Pratt, our Secretary, and that we send to him somewhere in France our warmest regards and hopes for his health and safe return to our State now needing his efficient labors.

*Resolved further*, that the Acting Secretary of the Association transmit to Colonel Pratt a copy thereof.

We regret the absence of President Henry B. Varner and we record our high appreciation of his wise and efficient conduct of the Association for the years in which he has been President.

(Meeting of the North Carolina Good Roads Association.)

*September 28, 1918.* Today has been most exciting and tense. The day before the expected battle. Many times I have read about the feelings of men as they waited for the dawn and the commencement of the battle; tonight I am going through that same sensation. The preliminary of the battle is now going on. The Artillery is firing on all sides, getting the range for their guns and testing them out in preparation of the awful barrage they are to put down on the enemy tomorrow morning. The tanks have gone forward to get into line for their part of the battle. The roads have been packed all day with lorries, wagons, automobiles and troops all going forward to take their part in the coming battle. I have been very busy finishing my preparations. We really make the first start, as we have to mark out the line from which the start is made at zero hour on Z day. Last night a preliminary survey was made and tonight we actually lay the white tape which will guide the infantry and insure their leaving on a straight front. I hope to have word by midnight that the work is accomplished, and without casualties. In the meantime I am waiting amidst the booming of guns, the crash of shell and the *meaner* noise of bursting bombs, dropped by aeroplanes. A short time ago (one-half hour) a plane flew over us and dropped six bombs one after another; they hit and burst near by. The search lights caught up the plane and one of

ours attacked it, but it escaped. I presume the planes will keep up their buzz all night and drop their bombs on us if possible. I have taken every precaution possible to have my part of the battle program ready. I have confidence in my officers and men, and believe they will be right on the job at the right time. The marking of the tape is a very particular task, and the final markings will be done by Lieutenants Griffin and Taylor.

I was up late last night on work connected with the Battle program, and did not get up this morning until 7:30 a.m. Since then it has been a continuous hustle all day long. I was working out my battle orders and instructions for the regiment. I went over to the Headquarters First Battalion at Hervilly for final conference with Major Cothran, Captain Winthrop, and Captain Brooks. It began to rain soon after we started, which was favorable to us in connection with our hauling up supplies to our dumps without being observed by the enemy, but it makes the work very slick and muddy. It is now clear and we are all praying for a clear, sunshiny day tomorrow. On returning to camp had conference with G-3 and Chief of Staff, and was able to report that last night's work was satisfactory.

This p.m. we have moved Division Headquarters to a camp in a quarry northeast of Roisel at Kll.c.5.6. This location is our Battle Headquarters. We are in huts banked up with earth and sleep in bunks. My office is in the same hut. The Division surgeon also has his office in the same hut and sleeps here. We probably will not sleep very much tonight. It is now 10:30 p.m. and I am thinking of my men out in front of our trenches, laying the white tape. I should receive word by 1:00 a.m. that the tape is laid. Then it is just a wait until zero hour when the battle begins. While it is only part of a bigger battle extending along nearly the whole line, yet to us it is the big thing, and our boys will come out veterans or be in the Beyond.

(Enclosure in diary.)

GENERAL ROUTINE ORDERS

by

FIELD-MARSHAL SIR DOUGLAS HAIG

K.T., G.C.B., G.C.V.O., K.C.I.E.

Commander-in-Chief, British Armies in France

General Headquarters,  
September 26th, 1918.

## ADJUTANT-GENERAL'S BRANCH

5104—Continental System of Time—Adoption of throughout the British Army—The Continental system of time, i.e., the 24 hour clock—will be brought into use throughout the British Army from midnight, 30th September—1st October, 1918.

The "time of origin," that is, the time at which a message or dispatch is signed by the originator, will always be represented by four figures, the first two figures, 01 to 23, representing the hours from midnight to midnight, and the second two figures 01 to 59, representing the minutes of the hour. For example:

12.10 a.m.	will	be	written	0010
3.25 a.m.	"	"	"	0325
11.00 a.m.	"	"	"	1100
Noon	"	"	"	1200
3.25 p.m.	"	"	"	1525
11.40 p.m.	"	"	"	2340

0000 and 2400 will not be used, but the message or dispatch will be times 2359 or 0001.

(Authority: A.O.IX, dated 17-91-18.)

(5781/0.)

*September 29, 1918, Sunday. "The Battle is On."*

*(To be Continued)*

## GENERAL INDEX

---

- A.
- Abbott, 91.  
 Aberdeen, 86.  
 Adams, 22, 76, 177, 179, 318, 319, 320, 335.  
 Advance, 163.  
 Addison, 97.  
 Administration, the North Carolina Fuel, 138, 139.  
     Local Fuel, 144, 146.  
     National Fuel, 141, 142, 144, 153.  
     State Fuel, 145, 151, 155.  
     United States Fuel, 146, 147, 148, 152, 154, 155, 173, 174, 175.  
     State Fuel, of Conservation Division, 172.  
 Address Memorial, Walter Hines Page, 4.  
 Africa, 7, 464.  
 Agriculture, Department of, 21.  
     Society of, 21.  
     Wisconsin, 16.  
 Ahoskie, 165.  
 Aire, 502, 508, 509.  
 Ajax, 70.  
 Alabama, 18, 47, 271.  
 Alamance, 160.  
 Albemarle, 169, 194, 196.  
 Albert, 511, 528.  
 Alderman, 25, 209, 243, 334.  
 Alderich, 378.  
 Alleghany, 160.  
 Alleghanies, 12, 280, 341.  
 Allen, 99, 198, 215, 260, 420, 429, 445.  
 Alembon, 54.  
 Alexandria, 77.  
 Alexander, 160.  
 Alexius de Laszlo, 74.  
 Alegeciras Congress, 309.  
 Algonquin, 278.  
 A Life of William Shakespeare, 318.  
 Alston, 117.  
 Altamaha, 395.  
 Ambassador, 21, 22, 24.  
 Ambassadors, 88.  
 America, 5, 22, 63, 70, 73, 83, 84, 111, 132, 134, 135, 190, 383, 401.  
 American, 12, 16, 21, 24, 45, 65, 66, 70, 71, 82, 83, 85, 143, 297, 478, 482.  
 Americans, 4, 20, 82.  
 American Bankers' Association, 27, 330.  
     Colonies, 8.  
     Communities, 4, 10.  
     Democracy, 10, 25.  
     Diplomat, 25.  
     Library Association, 469.  
     Life, 10.  
     North, 4.  
     Nationality, 13.  
     People, 6, 7.  
     Residents, 10.  
     Revolution, 79, 400.  
     States, 9, 10.  
     Stock, 12, 13.  
     Types, 12.  
 Amherst Fellowship, 77.  
 Anderson, 337, 480, 482, 532, 533.  
 Andrews, 95, 97, 340.  
 Andros, 400.  
 Andreauq, 50.  
 Anglo-Persian Oil Company, 292.  
 Anglo-Saxon, 84, 292, 317.  
 Ancombe, 328.  
 Anson, 74, 160.  
 Anthony, 158, 159.  
 Anzac Ridge, 476, 477, 498, 499.  
 Appalachian Training School, 72.  
 Appamattox, 261, 341.  
 Arawa, 70.  
 Arbeelee, 486.  
 Argentine, 329.  
 Argues, 51, 56, 60.  
 Argyle and Southerland Highlanders, 75.  
 Arizona, 36, 59, 364, 528, 529.  
 Aristocracy, 14.  
 Arkansas, 496.  
 Armstrong, 39, 124, 370, 485, 503, 507, 513, 516, 521, 532.  
 Arneke, 61.  
 Arnett, 71, 314, 318.  
 Arnold, 290.  
 Arras, 505.  
 Articles secured for preservation, 207.



- Ashe, 74, 77, 100, 101, 102, 114, 115,  
 160, 197, 326, 385, 402  
 Ashley, 395, 407.  
 Asheboro, 168.  
 Asheville, 29, 154, 161, 289, 429.  
 Asia, 7.  
 Asquith, 187.  
 Athens, 250.  
 Atlantic, 87.  
 Atlantic Seaboard, 12.  
 Atkinson, 167, 507, 508, 522.  
 Australia, 10.  
 Australian, 530, 533, 537.  
 Australians, 62, 66, 230, 531.  
 Auchy les Hesdin, 509.  
 Avery, 160.  
 Aycock, 86, 209, 239, 240, 243, 244, 245,  
 248, 250, 251, 254, 256, 257, 258, 260,  
 265, 266, 268, 269, 270, 275.  
 Aycock Memorial Committee, 239, 241.  
 Aycock, Charles Brantley, Historical  
 address, 251.  
 Aycock Memorial Program, 239.  
 Avette, 236.
- B.
- Babington, 51.  
 Bagley, 201.  
 Bagge, 124.  
 Bahamas, 401.  
 Baillen, 68.  
 Bailey, 469.  
 Baker Camp, 484, 488.  
 Baker Farm, 483.  
 Bakersville, 167.  
 Baldwin, 330.  
 Balles, 75.  
 Balfour, 89.  
 Baltimore, 83.  
 Baltimorean, 84.  
 Bambacque, 351, 352.  
 Bapuame, 512.  
 Barclay, 395.  
 Barinehove, 61.  
 Barker, 70.  
 Barnes, 312, 313, 363.  
 Barnette, 328.  
 Barton, 429, 431, 432, 433.  
 Bath, 74, 388, 466.  
 Battle, 482.  
 Bayboro, 167.  
 Beaufort, 84, 160, 161.  
 Beard, 445.  
 Beckworth, 294.  
 Bedford Bay, 40.  
 Beecher, 265.  
 Beeston, 320.  
 Bellicourt, 531, 532.  
 Belgian, 65, 67, 482, 485.  
 Belgium, 52, 64, 211, 375, 481, 485, 497,  
 501.  
 Belmont, 164.  
 Bennett, 462.  
 Bennett House, 78, 201.  
 Board of Education, 429.  
 Berkley, 397.  
 Bermuda, 383.  
 Berlin, 236, 347.  
 Berthelsdorf, 127, 134.  
 Bertie, 161, 395, 400.  
 Bergueneuse, 509.  
 Bessemer City, 35, 164.  
 Bessie Tift College, 78.  
 Beuval, 510.  
 Bickett, 32, 75, 185, 374, 413, 414.  
 Biddle University, 418.  
 Binder, 75.  
 Bingham School, 86.  
 Birdwhistle, 492.  
 Birmingham, 18, 19, 23, 240, 271.  
 Blackwood, 159.  
 Bladen, 161.  
 Blackstone, 402.  
 Blake, 399.  
 Black Mountain, 148.  
 Blacklock, 51.  
 Bladenboro, 161.  
 Blendecques, 486.  
 Blair, 74, 326, 410, 411, 460.  
 Bloodworth, 113.  
 Blount, 97, 98, 99, 103, 104, 106, 107,  
 113, 115.  
 Blue Ridge, 12.  
 Boddie, 204.  
 Boesch, 60, 66, 67, 69, 220, 226, 375, 378,  
 478, 487, 497, 503, 505, 514, 515, 523,  
 525, 532.  
 Bohemia, 125.  
 Bolshevist, 311.  
 Bonnibgues, 54.  
 Boney, 466.

- Board of Trade, 383, 384, 389, 390, 391,  
     392, 393, 396.  
 Books, 265.  
 Boone, 72, 170, 385, 386, 395.  
 Booth 503.  
 Barrett, 388.  
 Borglum, 240, 241.  
 Bost, 78.  
 Boston, 20, 87, 292.  
 Boss Platt and His New York Machine,  
     294.  
 Botanist, 70.  
 Boubers, 525.  
 Bowley, 332.  
 Boyd, 76, 91, 198, 326, 330.  
 Boyden, 75.  
 Boylan, 337.  
 Brandon, 328.  
 Braddock, 30.  
 Branson, 77, 198, 205, 329.  
 Brandhoek, 477, 480, 481, 483, 490, 497.  
 Braquemont, 520.  
 Brancher, 412.  
 Brevard, 169.  
 Brigman, 326.  
 Britton, 326.  
 Britain, Great, 9, 14, 25.  
 British Ambassadorship, 21.  
     Court, 24.  
     Dominions, 10.  
     Islands, 5.  
 British, 44, 45, 49, 51, 52, 55, 58, 61, 62,  
     63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 88, 89, 219, 482.  
 Browne, 294.  
 Brown, 80, 415, 445, 447.  
 Brooks, 221, 330, 337, 439, 466, 539.  
 Brauy, 508, 516, 520.  
 Bruce, 321.  
 Brunswick, 96, 161.  
 Bryson City, 169.  
 Bryan, 116, 117, 264, 340.  
 Bryon's, 89.  
 Brazil, 329, 454, 455.  
 Buckner, 412.  
 Bucknell University, 77.  
 Buncombe, 161.  
 Burbane, 502.  
 Burgues, 485.  
 Burgaw, 167.  
 Burke, 98, 161, 357.  
 Burlington, 160.  
 Burma, 70.  
 Burnett, 51, 536.  
 Burr, 117.  
 Burton, 294.  
 Buttrick, 21, 23.  
 Busseboom, 373.  
 Buzzeboom, 222.  
 Byng, 529.  
 Bynum, 331.  
  
 C.  
 Cabarrus, 74, 161, 277.  
 Cabinet, 21.  
 Cahill, 365.  
 Caldwell, 161, 404, 486, 503.  
 Callahan, 312.  
 Calais, 47, 48, 50, 230, 486.  
 California, 59, 294.  
 Cambrai, 512.  
 Camden, 161.  
 Camden Court House, 98.  
 Cameron, 78, 79, 358.  
 Camp Bragg, 442, 445, 446, 447, 448.  
 Camp Green, 416.  
 Camp Greene, 419.  
 Camp Mills, 36, 37, 56, 524.  
 Campbell, 55, 66, 216, 220, 225, 487.  
 Camp Polk, 442, 443.  
 Camp Sevier, 35, 36, 210, 315, 363.  
 Campaign of Education, 27.  
 Campaign, The War Savings, 26, 27, 28,  
     31, 32, 33, 34.  
 Canada, 10, 37, 147.  
 Canadian, 68.  
 Canova, 469.  
 Cape Ray, 39.  
 Cappel, 61.  
 Cardiganshire, 70.  
 Carroll, 179, 197, 330, 401.  
 Carnarvon, 122.  
 Carolina, North, 7, 8, 9, 11, 12, 13, 16,  
     17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 23, 25, 26, 28, 29,  
     30, 31, 33, 34, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76,  
     77, 78, 84, 86, 89, 91, 92, 95, 98, 104,  
     106, 107, 108, 110, 112, 113, 115, 116,  
     117, 119, 123, 124, 125, 138, 140, 142,  
     147, 151, 153, 154, 156, 157, 174, 185,  
     194, 240, 243, 246, 249, 254, 264, 265,  
     268, 274, 394, 406, 412, 468, 469, 473.

- Carson, 106.  
 Carr, 72, 78, 79, 201, 337, 468.  
 Carteret, 74, 161, 388, 394, 395, 400.  
 Caswell, 98, 100, 103, 105, 108, 109, 119, 162.  
 Cassell, 51, 52, 55, 56, 60, 61, 62, 64, 211, 230, 486, 501.  
 Catawba, 162, 278, 279.  
 Cecil, Lord Robert, 82.  
 Celtic, 6.  
 Central America, 307, 309.  
 Chalmers, 402.  
 Champion, 216.  
 Chambers, 197, 466.  
 Chamberlain, 203, 320.  
 Changes in Professors in Wake Forest, 336.  
 Channing, 402.  
 Chapel Hill, 48, 92, 138, 158, 159, 167, 244, 245, 258, 270.  
 Charles University, 334.  
 Charleston, 178, 258, 392, 447.  
 Charleston Convention, 22.  
 Charlotte, 29, 71, 96, 166, 252, 415, 416, 419.  
 Charter, 395.  
 Chase, 75, 333, 342.  
 Chatham, 74, 162, 248, 277.  
 Chowan, 74, 162.  
 Cherokee, 26, 162, 208, 252.  
 Cheraw, 98, 298.  
 Cherryville, 164.  
 Cheshire, 197.  
 Chicago, 71.  
 Child, 84, 321.  
 Chili, 329.  
 Chinese, 85.  
 Choyce, 28.  
 Christianburg (Va.) Industrial Association, 407.  
 Chronicles of the Cape Fear, 468.  
 Church, 215.  
 Churchill, 291.  
 Citadell, 78.  
 City of Poona, 70.  
 Civil War, 22, 74, 87, 194, 201, 296, 298, 302, 303, 468, 474.  
 Clarendon, 397.  
 Clark, 70, 198, 204, 326, 333, 533.  
 Clay, 162.  
 Clayton, 165.  
 Cleveland, 162, 272, 299, 300, 301.  
 Clerques, 54.  
 Clinton, 169.  
 Cline, 40.  
 Cloer, 199.  
 Clonts, 196.  
 Close, 56, 60, 61, 63, 66.  
 Club, Family Limit, 28.  
 Coast Pacific, 12.  
 Coates, 199.  
 Cobb, 198, 202, 327, 335.  
 Coffin, 186, 404.  
 Cogdell, 97.  
 Columbia University, 71, 72, 76, 313, 473.  
 Columbia, 77, 78, 170, 315, 474.  
 Columbus, 122, 162.  
 Coltrane, 330.  
 College Debating Contests, 339.  
 Colleton, 385, 395, 400.  
 Collins, 489.  
 Colonies, American, 8.  
 Colonies, New England, 12.  
 Colonial Virginia, Planters, 15, 192.  
 Commencement Speakers in N. C., 338, 339.  
 Commission, County Life, 21.  
 Commonwealth, 193, 194, 246, 247, 271.  
 Communities, American, 4, 10.  
 Committees, Local Fuel in N. C., 160.  
 Connecticut, 104, 303, 400, 496.  
 Confederacy, 80, 81, 82, 252, 261, 303, 337, 457.  
 Confederate Army, 252.  
     Constitution, 80.  
     Home, 261, 262.  
     War, 78.  
 Concord, 161.  
 Congress, 75, 99, 101, 107, 116, 117, 138, 342.  
 Conkling, 298.  
 Connor, 78, 82, 198, 471.  
 Conrow, 375.  
 Constitution, 106, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 116, 119, 304.  
 Cooleemee, 163.  
 Cooke, 290, 291.  
 Corbitt, 321, 449, 471.  
 Core, 96.  
 Corinth, 70.  
 Cornell University, 318, 328.  
 Cornwall, 83.

- Cothran, 214, 221, 233, 344, 354, 370, 371, 477, 478, 480, 490, 498, 505, 510, 511, 516, 521, 525, 531, 539.  
 Cotton, 400.  
 Couchman, 51, 55, 56.  
 Countries, European, 8.  
 Country Life Commission, 21, 24.  
 Court, British, 24.  
 Couthove Convent, 479, 484.  
 Cowper, 326.  
 Craig, 198, 289, 290.  
 Craven, 74, 79, 95, 99, 107, 108, 113, 117, 162, 388, 395, 400.  
 Creswell, 170.  
 Creasy's Fifteen Decisive Battles of the World, 456.  
 Crita, 70.  
 Crittenden, 383.  
 Crombeke, 352.  
 Crown, 384, 389, 390, 391, 392, 394, 395, 397, 398, 399, 400.  
 Cuba, 7, 310, 311, 454, 456.  
 Culloden, 361.  
 Culton, 420.  
 Cumberland, 74, 163.  
 Cunningham, 429.  
 Cupit, 70.  
 Currell, 183.  
 Curtis, 248, 452.  
 Currituck, 163, 252.  
 Curry, 18.  
 Custer, 293.  
 Czecho-Slovakia, 334.  
  
 D.  
  
 Daivies, 70.  
 Dalton, 159.  
 Dallas, 164.  
 Dangerfield, 440.  
 Daniels, 202, 209, 251, 260, 270, 272, 330, 458, 459, 460.  
 Dare, 26, 163, 199.  
 Darker Phases of the South, 314.  
 Daugherty, 72.  
 Daughtry, 205.  
 Davenport, 290, 291.  
 Davidson, 163.  
 Davidson College, 71, 181, 182, 467.  
 Davie, 102, 103, 104, 105, 107, 108, 109, 163, 255.  
 Davis, 24, 70, 80, 81, 82, 96, 303, 304, 337, 453.  
 Dawson, 395.  
 Deaton, 197.  
 Deborah, 130, 135.  
 Debating championship, 330.  
 Debating Activities at the University of North Carolina, 471, 472, 473.  
 Decisive Battles, 458.  
 Declaration of Independence, 85, 122, 123, 179, 438.  
 De Forest, 412.  
 Delaware, 104, 195.  
 Democrats, 33.  
 Democratic Party, 22.  
 Democracy, 6, 10, 11, 19, 24.  
 Democracy American, 10, 25.  
 Democracies, Political, 14.  
 Democracies of New England Towns, 13.  
 Denbig, 358.  
 Department of Agriculture, 21.  
 Department at Washington, 21.  
 De Paula, 66, 211.  
 Depew, 298.  
 Derelicts, 468.  
 "Devils Half Acre," 231.  
 Dewey, 71.  
 Diary, 35, 124.  
 Diaz, 190.  
 Dickey, 198.  
 Dillard, 198, 466.  
 Dinsmore, 199.  
 Dinwiddie, 95.  
 Diplomat, 25.  
 Dixon, 117, 406, 407.  
 Dobbs, 95, 96, 97, 340.  
 Dobson, 124.  
 Dober, 130, 131, 134.  
 Dodd, 71.  
 Doigmes, 512.  
 Domesday Book, 15.  
 Dominions, British, 10.  
 Domremy, 268.  
 Donnell, 113, 340.  
 Donegal, 41, 70.  
 Donnaha, 124.  
 Danbury, 124.  
 Doomeart, 61.  
 Dorothea, 134.  
 Dortch, 260.  
 Doubleday, 24.



- Doubleday, Page & Company, 86, 87.  
 Douglas, 22, 197.  
 Doullens, 525.  
 Dover, 46, 47, 48, 230.  
 Drake, 26.  
 Drane, 73.  
 Drysdale, 70.  
 Dunbar, 223, 224.  
 Duncan, 265.  
 Dunkirk, 379, 485, 486, 511, 515.  
 Dunn, 165.  
 Duplin, 74, 163.  
 Durham, 76, 78, 91, 163, 205, 433, 434.  
 Durham *Herald*, 76, 91.  
 Durham High School, 73.  
 Dutch East Indies, 291.  
 Dwelle, 441, 442, 445.  
 Dwire, 201.
- E.
- East, 11, 26.  
 Ebbinghem Chateau, 60.  
 Eckenrode, 80, 81.  
 Edenton, 109, 162, 278.  
 Edgecombe, 74, 163.  
 "Edgar Allan Poe," 84.  
 Edsall, 71.  
 Educational Board, 18.  
 Education in South, 18.  
 Educational Board, General, 18, 21, 23, 24.  
 Educational Board, General and Southern, 20.  
 Educational Board, Southern, 18, 24.  
 Eliot, 21, 22.  
 Elizabeth City, 29, 167, 436.  
 Elizabethian, 85.  
 Elkin, 169.  
 Ellicott, 61, 214.  
 Elm City, 171.  
 Elsdale, 500.  
 Elverdinghe, 484.  
 Emory University, 328, 334.  
 Empire, Roman, 6.  
 England, 6, 10, 24, 28, 40, 42, 46, 48, 58, 77, 83, 84, 90, 95, 96, 131, 193, 380, 384, 386, 389, 390, 392, 395, 397, 460.  
 Engleheim, 348.  
 English, 23, 83, 84, 85, 86, 88.  
 Eringhaus, 79.
- Etricourt, 527, 528.  
 Europe, 6, 7, 10, 13, 76, 77, 132, 192, 460.  
 Europe, Western, 5, 9.  
 European Countries, 8.  
 European History, 5.  
 European Races, 4.  
 European Stocks, 11.  
 Evans, 352, 375, 377, 380, 476, 477, 478.  
 Everett, 73, 74, 78, 205, 333.
- F.
- Fallon, 27.  
 Falconer, 395.  
 Fairfield, 165, 370.  
 Fair, 55, 56.  
 Faison, 5, 13, 535, 536.  
 Farr, 480.  
 Farmer, American, 9.  
 Fayetteville, 29, 97, 99, 100, 109, 113, 114, 241, 445, 448.  
 Fenton, 298.  
 Ferguson, 33, 37, 51, 54, 56, 57, 60, 61, 65, 66, 67, 68, 212, 213, 216, 217, 213, 224, 226, 232, 345, 349, 351, 357, 359, 369, 370, 422, 478, 483, 484, 485, 487, 488, 490, 491, 493, 503, 510, 511, 526, 527, 531, 533, 534.  
 "Fighting under Washington," 205.  
 Field, 358, 376, 379, 489, 535, 536.  
 Files of Newspapers, 331, 332.  
 Fisher, 200, 291.  
 Flanders, 217, 231, 478, 495.  
 Florida, 13, 78, 315, 463.  
 Floringhem, 502.  
 Flexner, 87.  
 Flint Ridge, 285.  
 Foch, 188.  
 Fonville, 96, 117.  
 Foott, 533, 534.  
 Forces in Negro Progress, 463.  
 Foreway Camp, 483, 484.  
 Foreways, 486, 488.  
 Forsyth, 30, 124, 152, 163, 286.  
 Fort Caswell, 421, 422, 423, 425.  
 Fort Fisher, 332.  
 Fort Macon, 200.  
 Foote's Sketches, 461.  
 Forty-Eight States, 7.  
 Forum, 87, 88.

France, 48, 49, 56, 65, 70, 75, 77, 211,  
217, 225, 233, 350, 371, 375, 379, 476,  
485, 495.  
Franklin, 164, 166.  
Franklinton, 164.  
Frazer, 328.  
Freedmen's Association, 405.  
Freedmen's Bureau, 407.  
Freeman, 74.  
French, 49, 53, 54, 62, 65, 69, 70, 84, 86,  
95, 228, 292.  
French Board, 252, 431.  
Friends, 403, 404, 405, 406, 407, 408,  
409, 411.  
Fries, 26, 29, 73, 74, 121, 284.  
Fremont, 292.  
Fruges, 54.  
Furman University, 71.  
Furman, 75.  
Fund, Peabody, 18.  
Furness, 321.  
Furze Camp, 344, 380.

## G.

Gales, 75.  
Garber, 330.  
Garden City, 35, 37, 86, 305.  
Garfield, 138.  
Garland, 292.  
Gates, 164.  
Gatesville, 164.  
Gaston, 164.  
Gastonia, 35, 164.  
Gayarre, 84.  
Gayerre, 84.  
General Educational Board, 18, 21, 23,  
24.  
Genoa, 310.  
George III, 85.  
George, 345, 349, 510.  
Georgia, 104, 147, 250, 280, 315, 341,  
383, 401, 465, 474.  
Germany, 6, 77, 84, 347.  
German, 52, 60, 61, 62, 64, 83, 84, 217,  
218, 226, 228, 363, 479, 483, 487.  
Germans, 53, 54, 62, 64, 68, 221, 361,  
362, 476, 511, 515, 520, 528.  
Gettysburg, 261, 262.  
Gibson, 169.  
Gifts, 203.

Gildersleeve, 86.  
Gilpatrick, 77, 78.  
Gillette, 506, 529.  
Girdwood, 220, 225, 228, 229.  
Gladstone, 248.  
Glasgow Traders, 9.  
Glenn, 466.  
Glubb, 356.  
Godby, 63, 67, 215, 216, 219, 355, 356,  
365, 366, 369, 370, 372, 374, 379, 500.  
Goldsboro, 170, 245, 259, 260, 270, 271,  
441.  
Goldston, 162.  
Goodacre, 527.  
Gordon, 516.  
Gosnell, 294, 296, 298.  
Goths, 6.  
Governor Pinchot, 24.  
Government, 33, 34, 88, 91, 101, 102,  
105, 111, 112, 119, 140, 144, 150, 151,  
153, 157, 268, 306, 341.  
Gow, 70.  
Graff, 123, 124.  
Graham, 77, 138, 158, 159, 160, 164.  
Grant, 81, 303.  
Grantham, 35.  
Granville, 164, 385, 395.  
Gray, 152, 159, 319.  
Great War, 22.  
Great Britain, 9, 14, 25, 96, 101, 411.  
Green, 507, 516, 520, 522.  
Greene, 30, 164, 466.  
Greenville, 168, 315.  
Greenwich, 44.  
Greenlaw, 334.  
Greenfell, 334.  
Greensboro, 35, 71, 73, 87, 138, 148, 152,  
154, 158, 159, 164, 200, 262, 263, 265,  
439, 440.  
Gregg, 96.  
Grey, 86.  
Griffin, 539.  
Grimes, 73, 74.  
Griswell, 468.  
Grove, 117.  
Grove Park Inn, 430.  
Guemy, 55.  
Guilford, 164, 411.  
Guion, 79.  
Gullen, 70.

## H.

- Haan, 506.  
 Haig, 371, 372, 539.  
 Hall, 63.  
 Hall of States, 413, 414, 415.  
 Halleck, 81.  
 Halifax, 38, 39, 40, 41, 78, 109, 110, 165.  
 Halifax County Club, 78.  
 Hallam's, 457.  
 Hamilton, 304, 305, 307.  
 Hamlet, 168.  
 Hancock, 482.  
 Hanes, 74.  
 Hardman, 433, 437, 439.  
 Hargicourt, 535.  
 Harmon, 202.  
 Harnett, 165.  
 Harper, 66, 198, 326.  
 Harris, 62, 63, 117, 466.  
 Harrison, 27, 66, 184, 321.  
 Hart, 318, 322.  
 Harvard, 84, 330.  
 Hassell, 270.  
 Hathaway, 319.  
 Haustaata, 482.  
 Hawks, 401.  
 Hawkes, 99.  
 Hawkins, 99, 113.  
 Hay, 103.  
 Hayti, 307, 308, 309, 311.  
 Haywood, 95, 98, 165, 197, 198.  
 Hazebrouck, 52, 510.  
 Hazebrauch, 502.  
 Hazeland, 38, 70.  
 Health, International Board, 24.  
 Hedrick, 351, 353.  
 "Hell's Half Acre," 212.  
 Hemingway, 501.  
 Henderson, 75, 76, 117, 165, 170, 176,  
     178, 206, 327, 330, 337, 463, 534.  
 Hendersonville, 165, 433.  
 Hendeghen, 56.  
 Hendrick, 86, 429.  
 Herbert, 368.  
 Herbingham, 54.  
 Herr, 51, 60, 376, 378, 536.  
 Herrnhut, 125, 126, 127, 128, 130, 131,  
     133, 134, 135, 136.  
 Herrick, 412.  
 Herissart, 526, 527, 530, 531, 532.  
 Hertford, 165, 167.  
 Hervilly, 539.  
 Herzele, 375, 497.  
 Heyward, 326.  
 Higby, 77, 189, 292.  
 High Point, 35, 164.  
 Highsmith, 197.  
 Hildebrand, 215.  
 Hillsborough *Recorder*, 207.  
 Hillsboro, 98, 99, 103, 109, 112, 167.  
 Hill, 73, 75, 78, 79, 117, 183, 258, 437,  
     470, 471.  
 Hill's Works, 470.  
 Hillyer, 211.  
 Hindenburg, 495, 506.  
 Hinson, 490, 514.  
 Hispanic-American, 72, 189, 190, 191,  
     328.  
 History, European, 5.  
 Historical Commission Activities, 335.  
 History of the German Settlements and  
     of the Lutheran Church in North and  
     South Carolina, 461.  
 History of the Methodist Protestant  
     Church, 461.  
 History of Wachovia in North Carolina,  
     461.  
 Hobbs, 205, 405, 407.  
 Hoboken, 39.  
 Hocquinghein, 54.  
 Hoke, 165, 201.  
 Holdsworth, 70.  
 Holland, 131.  
 Holman, 533.  
 Holmes, 138, 158, 159.  
 Holshouser, 158, 159.  
 Hooks, 272.  
 Hooker, 102, 103.  
 Horsey, 395.  
 Hot Springs, 431, 432.  
 Hough, 292.  
 Houghton-Mifflin Co., 76.  
 Houston, 88.  
 Houtkerque, 63, 65, 67, 358, 375, 376.  
 House, 73, 80, 89, 184, 197, 330, 469, 471.  
 House of Lords, 385, 386, 387, 388, 401.  
 Howell, 72, 342, 422, 442.  
 Howe Camp, 476, 477, 498, 499.  
 Huerta, 311.  
 Huffham, 462.  
 Huffman, 215.

Huguenots, 385.  
 Hughes, 79, 327.  
 Hulluch, 517, 518, 519.  
 Humphries, 51, 363.  
 Humphreys, 57, 67, 68, 478, 479, 482,  
 503, 505, 508, 510, 521, 526, 527, 530.

Hunt, 336.  
 Hunter, 50, 491.  
 Hutchinson, 75, 179.  
 Hus, 125, 126.  
 Hyam, 395.  
 Hyde, 165.

## I.

Iowa, 16, 19.  
 Indians, 8, 192.  
 Indian, 189, 277, 280, 284, 287, 288.  
 Indies, West, 8.  
 Inglenham, 59, 60.  
 Innis, 95.  
 International Health Board, 24.  
 Iredell, 109, 165, 466.  
 Ireland, 7, 41.  
 Irish Channel, 44.  
 Irish Sea, 45.  
 Iroquois, 278.  
 Irskine, 177.  
 Irvine, 118.  
 Islands, British, 5.

## J.

Jackson, 73, 74, 165, 167, 176, 261, 465,  
 468.  
 Jas(c)ksonville, 468.  
 Jamestown, 15.  
 Jarvis, 253.  
 Jefferson, 12, 117, 160, 176, 247, 308, 342.  
 Jenks, 323.  
 Jenkins, 159, 328.  
 Jennings, 158, 159.  
 Jerkins, 198.  
 "Jerry," 480, 482.  
 Jersey City, 35.  
 Johnson, 72, 91, 197, 324, 326, 337, 391,  
 392.  
 Johnston, 78, 79, 108, 109, 110, 113, 165,  
 468.  
 Johns, 71.

Johns Hopkins University, 20.  
 Jones, 30, 99, 103, 108, 110, 115, 166,  
 289, 406, 413, 414, 532.  
 Joyner, 72, 74, 240, 290.

## K.

Kansas, 496.  
 Kansas State Normal, 71.  
 Kavanaugh, 28.  
 Kehukee Association, 461.  
 Kellet, 70.  
 Kellogg, 402.  
 Kemmel, 483, 492, 497, 499, 501.  
 Kendrick, 71, 299, 302.  
 Kentucky, 12, 147, 341.  
 Kenyon, 60, 66.  
 King, 27, 73, 89, 355, 367, 389, 390, 392,  
 393, 398, 399, 400, 403.  
 Kings, 96.  
 Kings Mountain, 35.  
 Kinston, 103, 105, 166, 270.  
 Kinston *Journal*, 207.  
 Kirby, 63.  
 Kilgore, 138, 158, 159.  
 Kirkland, 91.  
 Kilpatrick, 473, 474.  
 Kluge, 84.  
 Knapp, 21, 87.  
 Knight, 467.  
 Knopf, 82.  
 Koch, 448.  
 Krantz, 422.  
 Kruisstratt, 379.  
 Kruisstraathoeck, 362.  
 Ku Klux Klan, 315.  
 Kunewalde, 125, 137.

## L.

La Briarde, 62.  
 Labuissiere, 507.  
 La Lovie, 483.  
 Land, 363.  
 Landowners, Virginia, 15.  
 Lang, 433, 435, 437, 439, 440, 442.  
 Langford, 294.  
 Largent, 71.  
 Lasker, 27.  
 Lauder, 504, 505.  
 Laurinburg, 169.



- La Wattine, 59.  
 Leach, 95.  
 League of Nations, 314.  
 Leaksville, 168.  
 Leavitt, 197.  
 Le Brearde, 61.  
 Ledbetter, 223.  
 Leech, 96, 108, 112, 113.  
 Lee, 75, 81, 82, 148, 166, 204, 256, 260,  
     261, 412.  
 Leigh, 115.  
 Lenoir, 30, 114, 115, 161, 166.  
 Le Rossignal, 454.  
 Letters and Papers of T. W. Bickett,  
     184, 198.  
 Lewis, 73, 220, 293, 365, 486, 492, 520,  
     529, 536.  
 Lexington, 122, 123, 163.  
 Liberia, 309.  
 Licques, 54.  
 Licque Hospital, 58.  
 Life and Letters of Walter Hines Page,  
     20.  
 Life, American, 10.  
 Lillers, 502.  
 Lillington, 165.  
 Lincoln, 22, 23, 74, 166, 262, 302, 341.  
 Lincolnton, 166.  
 Lingle, 71.  
 Linner, 128, 130.  
 Liverpool, 83.  
 Liverpool Bay, 46.  
 Location of Friends Schools, 408.  
 Lockey, 36.  
 Lodge, 310.  
 Logan, 39.  
 London, 21, 22, 24, 46, 88, 96.  
 London Traders, 9.  
 Long, 75, 436, 440, 441, 442, 445, 448.  
 Lloyd George, 186, 187, 188.  
 Lovie Chattau, 65, 360, 491, 500.  
 Louisiana, 12, 496.  
 Louisburg, 164.  
 Louis XVI, 178.  
 Lounsbury, 321.  
 Louvencourt, 527, 529.  
 Lumberton, 168.  
 Lyerly, 211, 213, 215, 216, 220, 225, 227,  
     349, 364, 365, 375, 477, 480, 487, 490,  
     510, 511, 533.  
 Lyon, 96, 330.
- M.
- McAdams, 28.  
 McAlister, 138, 139, 140, 151, 157, 158,  
     159.  
 McAndrews, 70.  
 McCrady, 397, 402.  
 McClean, 534, 535.  
 McCullough, 355.  
 McDowell, 96, 113, 116, 520, 521, 533.  
 McElroy, 66, 233, 299, 300, 302.  
 Mellwain, 179.  
 McIntyre, 199.  
 McIver, 17, 100.  
 McKeller, 75.  
 McLeod, 224.  
 McNeill, 198.  
 McPhee, 503.  
 MacLaine, 102, 110.  
 Macline, 99.  
 Macon, 114, 117, 166.  
 Madison, 107, 166.  
 Maine, 280.  
 Majesty's Court of Queen's Bench, 387.  
 Mangum, 258.  
 Manning, 477, 535.  
 Manocan, 278.  
 March, 495, 496, 506.  
 Marienborn, 131.  
 Marion, 166.  
 Mark Twain, 293.  
 Markham, 40, 48, 49, 66.  
 Marne, 354, 374.  
 Marrian, 349.  
 Marshall, 166, 248.  
 Mars Hill College, 72.  
 Martin, 30, 99, 103, 104, 105, 107, 163,  
     181, 184.  
 Maryland, 9, 75, 104, 400, 401.  
 Massachusetts, 104, 314, 383.  
 Massachusetts, Townships of, 13.  
 Massachusetts Stock, 12.  
 Masonboro Sound, 424.  
 Matthews, 482, 483, 487, 488, 490.  
 Mathesius, 334.  
 Maupin, 337.  
 Maxton, 168.  
 Maximilian, 311.  
 Maysville, 164.  
 Mazingarbe, 517.  
 Meade, 410.

- Meares, 75.  
 Meatchem, 364.  
 Mebane, 160.  
 Mecklenburg, 74, 122, 123, 124, 166.  
 Mellor, 70.  
 Memorial Address, 4.  
 Mencken, 82, 83, 84, 85, 302.  
 Mendenhall, 407.  
 Mensecq, 502.  
 Meredith College, 73.  
 Merriam, 294, 295, 299.  
 Merris, 236.  
 Mesaba, 70.  
 Methodist Episcopal History, 461.  
 Metts, 477, 494, 535, 536.  
 Mexico, 89, 189, 308, 311, 315, 454.  
 Meyers, 37, 50, 62, 63, 210, 222, 224, 360, 493, 511, 526.  
 Missouri, 11.  
 Missouri, State of, 22.  
 Missouri Valley, 20.  
 Mississippi, 11, 108, 154, 277, 292, 293, 304, 496.  
 Mississippi Valley, 16.  
 Mitchell, 70, 167, 340.  
 Mt. Gilead, 167.  
 Mt. Holly, 164.  
 Miller, 466.  
 Milton, 82, 162, 250.  
 Minor, 359, 490, 529, 536.  
 Monchy-Cayeaux, 509.  
 Mocksville, 163.  
 Moffitt, 201.  
 Montana, 79, 294.  
 Montgomery, 167, 208, 303, 394.  
 Monongahela, 95.  
 Monroe Doctrine, 71, 72, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 455.  
 Monroe, 170.  
 Mont de Cats, 230, 354.  
 Montdidier, 366.  
 Montreal, 37, 38, 39, 68.  
 Moore, 233, 340, 392.  
 Moose, 205.  
 Moravia, 10, 125, 126.  
 Moravian, 123, 124, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 134, 137, 437.  
 Moravians, 284.  
 Moravians in North Carolina, 461.  
 Newbold, 91.  
 Newfoundland, 39.  
 Morgan, 78.  
 Morganton, 109, 161.  
 Morehead City, 161, 435.  
 Morning Clarion, 75.  
 Morrison, 74, 79, 182, 209, 332.  
 Morton, 70.  
 Moses, 422.  
 Moulle, 60.  
 Moultrie, 114.  
 Mount Airy, 169.  
 Moyle, 28.  
 Mount Kemmel, 52, 64, 214, 223, 230, 485, 492, 494, 496, 499, 506.  
 Mulligan, 534, 535.  
 Murphy, 162, 344, 364, 490.  
 Meuse-Argonne, 458.  
 Mersey River, 46.  
  
 N.  
  
 Nebraska, 29.  
 Nahunta, 258, 259, 268, 269, 270, 273.  
 Nordausques, 54, 56.  
 Nation, 8, 30.  
 Nationality, American, 13.  
 National Capitol, 73.  
 National Forest, 348.  
 National Guard, 57.  
 National Museum, 285.  
 Nash, 79, 98, 99, 167, 197, 198.  
 Nashville, 167.  
 Navara, 70.  
 Neale, 99, 108.  
 Nebraska State Normal School, 71.  
 Neese, 377.  
 Negroes, 30, 31, 34, 73.  
 Negro, 33, 264, 464, 465.  
 Negro Life in the South, 463.  
 Neill, 203.  
 Neieur, 70.  
 Nelson, 240.  
 Neundorff, 126.  
 Neuer, 526.  
 Nevada, 294.  
 Nevins, 356.  
 New Bern, 29, 77, 79, 95, 96, 98, 99, 100, 101, 109, 112, 113, 114, 115, 118, 162, 409, 440, 460.  
 New Bern Historical Society, 76.  
 New Bern *Journal*, 207.  
 New Bern *Times*, 207.

- New Garden, 403, 404.  
 New Hanover, 74, 167.  
 New Haven, 37.  
 New Hampshire, 12.  
 New Jersey, 103, 104, 156, 401.  
 Newland, 160.  
 New Mexico State Normal School, 71.  
 Newsome, 77, 78, 294.  
 Newton, 162, 205.  
 New York, 15, 20, 36, 37, 77, 80, 82, 86,  
     87, 104, 156, 296.  
 New Zealand, 10.  
 New England, 13, 14, 15, 47.  
 New England Colonies, 12.  
 Nicholson, 393, 396, 484.  
 Nicaragua, 311.  
 Nitschmann, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129,  
     130, 131, 132, 134, 137.  
 Nixon, 99, 108, 405.  
 Noble, 76, 331.  
 Noel, 497.  
 Norbecourt, 59.  
 Norfleet, 151, 152, 159, 174, 175.  
 Norman System, 6.  
 Norse, 83.  
 Northampton, 167, 271.  
 Northkerque, 51.  
 Northey, 400.  
 Norton, 328, 412.  
 North, 81.  
 North America, 4.  
 North Carolina, 7, 8, 9, 11, 12, 13, 16, 17,  
     18, 19, 20, 21, 23, 25, 26, 28, 29, 30, 31,  
     33, 34, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 84,  
     86, 89, 91, 92, 95, 98, 104, 106, 107,  
     108, 110, 112, 113, 115, 116, 117, 119,  
     123, 124, 125, 138, 140, 142, 147, 151,  
     153, 154, 156, 157, 174, 185, 194, 240,  
     243, 246, 249, 254, 264, 265, 268, 274,  
     394, 406, 412, 468, 469, 473, 495.  
 North Carolinians, 18.  
 North Carolina Type, 13.  
 North Carolina Bay, 73.  
 North Carolina Council of Defense, 77.  
 North Carolina College for Women, 71,  
     299, 302, 314, 318, 468.  
 North Carolina *Gazette*, 453.  
 North Carolina State College, 85, 92, 184.  
 Norwood, 169.  
 North Wilkesboro, 171.  
 Nova Scotia, 40.
- O.
- Obregon, 311.  
 Odell, 202.  
 Odum, 334.  
 Oehtezeele, 61.  
 Ohio, 12, 285.  
 Ohio River, 11, 12, 95.  
 Oil Trusts and Anglo-American Rela-  
     tions, 290, 291.  
 Oklahoma, 496.  
 O'Kelley, 72.  
 Olds, 197, 202, 208, 413, 414, 466, 467.  
 Old England, 47.  
 Old North State, 207.  
 Olney, 21.  
 One Hundred Years of the Monroe  
     Doctrine, 307.  
 Onslow, 74, 167.  
 Oost Cappel, 485.  
 Oregon, 14.  
 Orange, 167, 277.  
 Orphan's Friends, 208, 466, 467.  
 Osborn, 99.  
 Osgood, 402.  
 Oxelaere, 61, 211.  
 Oxford, 75, 76, 164, 200.  
 Oudezeele, 66, 375, 376.
- P.
- Pacific Coast, 12.  
 Page, 16, 17, 18, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 74, 86,  
     87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 198, 199, 330, 469.  
 Page, Walter Hines—Memorial Ad-  
     dress, 4.  
 Pamlico, 167.  
 Palatines, 76.  
 Palatine, 385.  
 Pan-American, 72, 455.  
 Parker, 199.  
 Parkman, 292.  
 Paris, 53, 265.  
 Parliament, 384, 387, 388, 389, 394, 398,  
     399.  
 Pasquotank, 167, 449.  
 Patri, 321.  
 Party, Democratic, 22.  
 Patterson, 73.  
 Pattulo, 229.  
 Peabody Fund, 18, 407.

- Pearson, 90, 198, 326.  
 Pender, 167.  
 Penny, 359, 365.  
 Pennsylvania, 10, 14, 75, 77, 104, 123,  
     124, 132, 133, 135, 156, 195, 383, 400.  
 Perkins, 51.  
 Perrin, 219.  
 Pershing, 53, 453, 496.  
 Person, 99, 113, 168.  
 Perquimans, 30, 74, 167, 449.  
 Peschau, 364.  
 Pezelhock, 370.  
 Peterson, 326.  
 Petit Sains, 517.  
 Pettigrew, 294.  
 Pettus, 30.  
 Pfohl, 72.  
 Philadelphia, 35, 97, 99, 100, 103, 104,  
     105, 112, 114, 115, 116, 117, 123, 406,  
     407, 409.  
 Piedmont, 277, 278, 279, 280, 283, 286,  
     288.  
 Pierson, 191, 328, 456.  
 Pilot Mountain, 169, 279.  
 Pillsbury, 534.  
 Pinchot, 21, 24.  
 Pinehurst, 167.  
 Pittman, 463.  
 Pitt, 30, 168.  
 Pittsboro, 162.  
 Pittsburgh, 95, 488.  
 Planters of Colonial Virginia, 15.  
 Plumer, 355.  
 Plum Leaf, 70.  
 Plymouth, 170.  
 Pocahontas, 148, 155, 156.  
 Poe, 138, 158, 159, 270.  
 Poke, 353.  
 Poland, 75, 125.  
 Polk, 74, 168.  
 Political Democracies, 14.  
 Pool, 103.  
 Pope, 51, 57, 58, 114.  
 Poperinghe, 64, 68, 213, 214, 215, 216,  
     219, 221, 222, 228, 230, 344, 347, 353,  
     355, 361, 364, 369, 370, 373, 482, 486,  
     487, 488.  
 Porto Rico, 310.  
 Port Lincoln, 70.  
 Port of Roanoke, 74.  
 Poteat, 332.  
 Poticasi, 199.  
 Pound, 199.  
 Pratt, 35, 39, 60, 66, 68, 76, 200, 210,  
     344, 353, 360, 366, 370, 377, 475, 480,  
     483, 486, 487, 493, 501, 514, 515, 534,  
     536, 538.  
 President of United States, 21.  
 President Roosevelt, 21 —  
 Presbyterian, 71, 72, 108.  
 Priestly, 189, 190, 191.  
 Privy Council, 387, 390, 393, 394, 395,  
     396, 397, 398, 399.  
 Proctor, 66.  
 Protestant Reformation, 4.  
 Proven, 65, 67, 68, 210, 211, 222, 228,  
     229, 232, 350, 375, 376, 485.  
 Publications of University of North  
     Carolina Press, 332.  
 Pucheviller, 526, 527.  
 Putnam, 302, 303.  
  
 Q.  
  
 Quebec, 38, 39.  
 Quercamp, 59, 68.  
  
 R.  
  
 Radcliffe College, 75.  
 Radeker, 412.  
 Raeford, 165.  
 Raleigh, 28, 72, 74, 86, 91, 92, 97, 114,  
     115, 138, 158, 159, 170, 270, 374, 442.  
 Raleigh *Register*, 117, 118.  
 Ralph, 44.  
 Randolph, 74, 168, 405, 408.  
 Randolph Macon, 86.  
 Ranchicourt, 507, 508.  
 Ranshaw, 420, 429, 442.  
 Ransom, 253.  
 Rask, 84.  
 Raymond, 186, 188.  
 Read, 429, 496.  
 Reconstruction, 252, 253, 254, 268, 274,  
     328.  
 Redfield, 305, 306, 460.  
 Reformation, Protestant, 4.  
 Regimental Camp, 57, 58.  
 Reid, 95.  
 Reidsville, 168.



- Reninghelst, 373.  
 Representatives at Inaugural Exercises  
     of E. C. Brooks, 338.  
 Republic, 20.  
 Republicans, 33.  
 Residence of John Gray Blount, 198.  
 Reubenlire, 526.  
 Review of Reviews, 73, 74, 91.  
 Revolution, 12, 17.  
 Revolutionary Army, 271.  
 Revolutionary War, 11.  
 Rexpoede, 485.  
 Reynolds, 68, 225, 349, 350.  
 Rhine, 347.  
 Rhode Island, 104, 400.  
 Ricks Foundation, 470.  
 Richard Dobbs Spaight Chapter, 79.  
 Richardson, 16, 17, 91.  
 Richmond, 74, 124, 168.  
 Ridge Camp, 493.  
 Rights, 73, 277.  
 Rightsell, 466.  
 Rivers, 401. I  
 Rippy, 328.  
 Roanoke, 278.  
 Roanoke Rapids, 78.  
 Robbins, 429.  
 Roberts, 72.  
 Robertson, 72, 188.  
 Robeson, 74, 168.  
 Robinson, 76, 260, 349, 526, 527.  
 Robinsonville, 164.  
 Rockingham, 168.  
 Rocky Mount, 167.  
 Rocky Point, 167.  
 Rodin, 241.  
 Rodman, 198.  
 Roe, 435, 445.  
 Rollecourt, 501, 502, 505, 506, 532.  
 Roman Empire, 6.  
 Rondthaler, 75.  
 Ronneberg, 131.  
 Roosevelt, 21, 22, 23, 24, 89, 200, 257,  
     293, 311.  
 Root, 299, 300, 302, 310.  
 Roper, 170.  
 Ross, 333.  
 Rousbrugge, 351, 352, 485.  
 Rowan, 168.  
 Roxboro, 168.  
 Royal Dutch Petroleum Co., 292.  
 Rugby, 46, 47.  
 Rutherford, 74, 100, 113, 169.  
 Rutherfordton, 169.  
 Russell, 148.  
 Russia, 5.  
 Russians, 5.  
 Rweld, 61, 211.  
 Ryan, 302.  
  

S.

  
 Salem, 123, 165.  
 Salem College, 75.  
 Salisbury, 35, 47, 75, 109, 169.  
 Saluda, 168.  
 Sampson, 169.  
 Sanderson, 517, 520.  
 Sanford, 166.  
 Sanghen, 54, 57, 53, 68.  
 Santo Domingo, 307, 308, 309, 311.  
 Saunders, 91, 326.  
 Saponi, 278.  
 Saville, 379.  
 Savings Bank Section, 27.  
 Sawratown Mountain, 279.  
 Saxon, 6.  
 Saxony, 125.  
 Scales, 138, 158, 159.  
 Schaff, 303.  
 Schneider, 125, 126, 343.  
 Schuyler, 292.  
 Scotland, 10, 169, 390.  
 Scotland Neck, 165.  
 Scott, 433, 442.  
 Scruggs, 429.  
 Seaboard, Atlantic, 12.  
 Seaton, 75.  
 Seawell, 326, 466.  
 Secretary of Agriculture, 21.  
 Secretary Wilson, 21.  
 Seelye, 216, 219, 220, 344, 345, 354, 364,  
     510.  
 Selwyn, 96.  
 Senecas, 278.  
 Senlis, 527, 529.  
 Septenville, 526.  
 Seventh Conference, 18.  
 Sevier, 76.  
 Seville, 76.  
 Shaftesbury, 388.  
 Shanks, 39, 77, 78, 181.  
 Shakespeare, 82.

- Sharp, 66.  
 Sharpe, 396.  
 Shaw, 4, 71, 73, 74, 100, 181, 197, 200, 330, 517, 520.  
 Shearer, 183.  
 Shelby, 162.  
 Shepherd, 72, 76, 197.  
 Sherman, 78, 301.  
 Shipman, 202.  
 Shipp, 197.  
 Shoonts, 529.  
 Shuping, 138, 139, 152, 155, 158, 159.  
 Sill, 364, 365, 492.  
 Silver City, 162.  
 Singleton, 99.  
 Siouan, 278.  
 Sir Walter Raleigh Memorial Association, 72.  
 Sitgreaves, 102, 103.  
 Skeat, 84.  
 Skinner, 51, 357.  
 Skipwith, 496, 497, 498, 500.  
 Slav, 6.  
 Sledd, 318.  
 Smedes, 198.  
 Smith, 66, 70, 114, 182, 286, 323, 329, 415, 420, 535.  
 Smithfield, 165.  
 Snow Hill, 164.  
 Socialists, 33.  
 Sociology and Political Theory, 312.  
 Society of Friends, 72, 403.  
 Soissons, 495.  
 Somerset, 399.  
 Somme, 77, 357, 512, 520.  
 South, 18, 21, 47, 80, 81, 82.  
 South Carolina, 84, 104, 114, 140, 281, 341, 385, 389, 391, 392, 393, 395, 396, 397, 398, 495.  
 Southern Education Board, 18, 24.  
 Southerners, 81.  
 Southport, 161, 420, 421, 422.  
 Southern Power Co., 154.  
 Spraight, 95, 96, 98, 102, 103, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 112, 113, 114, 115, 117, 118, 120, 340, 341, 342, 343.  
 Spain, 7, 76, 189, 190, 310, 454.  
 Spangenberg, 132, 278.  
 Sparta, 160.  
 Speakers at Franklin P. Hobgood Memorial, 337.  
 Spence, 215, 529, 536.  
 Spencer, 102, 111, 114, 203.  
 Springs, 536.  
 Sprunt, 326, 333, 468.  
 Stafford, 521.  
 Stagg, 205.  
 Stallings, 467.  
 Standard Oil Co., 291, 292.  
 Stafford, 46.  
 Staford, 117.  
 Stanley, 164.  
 Stanly, 99, 117, 169.  
 State *Chronicle*, 86.  
 State Historical Society, 15.  
 State Literary and Historical Association of North Carolina, 3, 72, 74.  
 State of Iowa, 16.  
 State of Ohio, 12.  
 State of Missouri, 22.  
 State of Wisconsin, 15.  
 States, American, 9, 10.  
 States, Forty-eight, 7.  
 States, United, 7, 13.  
 Statesville, 165, 199.  
 Steele, 429, 442.  
 Steenvoorde, 68, 486.  
 Stephenson, 26.  
 Stetson University, 78.  
 Stevenson, 526, 527, 529.  
 Stewart, 159, 533.  
 Stiles, 87.  
 Stock, American, 12, 13.  
 Stock, European, 11.  
 Stock, Massachusetts, 12.  
 Stokes, 102, 169.  
 Stomer, 60.  
 Stone, 117, 118.  
 Stories and Poems from the Old North State, 197.  
 Stratford, 319.  
 Strathecona Camp, 480.  
 Strathecona Farm, 212.  
 St. Lawrence, 38, 39.  
 St. Michel, 503, 521.  
 St. Mihiel, 516.  
 St. Omer, 51, 52, 56, 60, 230, 486.  
 St. Pol, 503, 513, 522, 524.  
 St. Sylvester Cappel, 62.  
 Sullivan, 216, 234, 513, 524, 525, 526, 533, 534.  
 Surry, 124, 169.

Swain, 169.  
 Swift, 458.  
 Switzerland, 135, 476, 478.  
 Sylva, 165.  
 System, Norman, 6.

## T.

Taft, 456.  
 Talmas, 526, 530, 531.  
 Talthybius, 37, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 46, 70.  
 Tannaum, 314, 316, 317.  
 Tarboro, 107, 163.  
 Taylor, 52, 77, 78, 197, 198, 292, 460, 462, 536, 539.  
 Taylorsville, 160.  
 Tazwell, 148.  
 "Teak Wood," 226, 227.  
 Tefft, 40.  
 Tennessee, 11, 72, 76, 97, 103, 116, 147, 495.  
 Terdeghem, 61, 211, 366, 367.  
 Teredeghem, 67.  
 Terrell, 205, 326.  
 Teuton, 6.  
 Texas, 11, 315.  
 The American Revolution, 179, 181.  
 The Hague, 347.  
 The Journal of Social Forces, 91.  
 The Ku Kluxes, 197.  
 The Life of Woodrow Wilson, 408.  
 The Lure of Historical Research, 121.  
 The Macmillan Co., 80.  
 The Mexican Nation, 189.  
 The Negro from Africa to America, 463, 465.  
 The *North American Review*, 91.  
 The *Outlook*, 91.  
 The Pioneer West, 292, 294.  
 The Planters of Colonial Virginia, 192, 195.  
 The Rebuilding of Old Commonwealths, 16.  
 The University News Letter, 205.  
 "The Voices of Joan of Arc," 268.  
 Thomas, 307, 310, 312.  
 Thomasville, 163.  
 Thorne, 39.  
 Tillett, 336.  
 Tilques, 60.

Tomlinson, 408, 409.  
 Toucey, 303.  
 Tournehem, 54.  
 Toutencourt, 526.  
 Townships of Massachusetts, 13.  
 Traces of the Indians in Piedmont North Carolina, 277.  
 Traders, Glasgow, 9.  
 Traders, London, 9.  
 Transylvania, 169.  
 Treasury, 26.  
 Trent, 158.  
 Trenton, 166.  
 Trescott, 364, 484.  
 Trinity, 86, 179.  
 Trinity College, 76.  
 Tryon, 116, 168, 202.  
 Tuckasegee, 252.  
 Tucker, 66.  
 Tuggle, 429.  
 Tug River, 148.  
 Tunison, 70.  
 Turkish Empire, 291.  
 Tuscarora, 278.  
 Tutelo, 278.  
 Types, American, 12.  
 Types, North Carolinian, 13.  
 Tyrrell, 170.  
 Tyson, 536.

## U.

Union, 6, 7, 16, 81, 105, 170, 297, 303, 304.  
 Unionists, 81.  
 United States, 7, 13, 20, 26, 31, 72, 75, 79, 82, 88, 99, 106, 108, 111, 112, 113, 116, 117, 119, 138, 143, 145, 154, 196, 208, 257, 271, 275, 281, 291, 455.  
 United States, President of, 21.  
 University, 78.  
 University of Buenos Ayres, 329.  
 University of California, 189.  
 University of Chicago, 78, 328, 331.  
 University of Cincinnati, 71.  
 University of Georgia, 474.  
 University of Glasgow, 97, 119.  
 University of Madrid, 329.  
 University of Michigan, 76, 78.  
 University of Nebraska, 319, 330, 454.

University of North Carolina, 72, 76, 77,  
78, 82, 92, 113, 181, 191, 199, 204,  
205, 244, 270, 292, 294, 307, 328, 337,  
448, 468, 471.  
University of Pennsylvania, 106.  
University of Richmond, 343.  
University of South Carolina, 199.  
University of Wisconsin, 333, 474.  
Uruguay, 329.

## V.

Valley Forge, 73.  
Valley, Mississippi, 16.  
Valley, Missouri, 20.  
Valmertinghe, 358, 361, 362, 363, 364,  
374, 379, 477.  
Vance, 80, 170, 251, 252, 254, 274.  
Vanchelles, 527.  
Vandals, 6.  
Vanderbilt, 84, 354.  
Vanderlip, 27, 28.  
Vosges, 496.  
Venezuela, 311.  
Verdun, 357.  
Vermelles, 519, 520.  
Vermont, 12, 489.  
Victory Drive, 30.  
Vijverbeek, 477.  
Virginia, 9, 14, 15, 77, 95, 104, 140, 148,  
159, 192, 193, 196, 277, 286, 341, 406,  
465.  
Virginia Dare, 469.  
Virginia Dare Memorial Association, 73.  
Virginia General Assembly, 246.  
Virginia Landowners, 15.  
Visitors, European, 10.  
Vlameringhe, 228.  
Voormezele, 497.  
Voting in Congress, 342, 343.

## W.

Wachovia, 123, 125, 280, 281.  
Waddell, 154.  
Wadesboro, 160.  
Wake, 170.  
Wake Court House, 98.  
Wake Forest, 78, 90, 170.  
Wake Forest College, 78, 196, 318, 332.  
Wales, 45.

Walker, 75, 118, 304.  
Wallace, 21.  
Wallon Cappel, 56.  
Walnut Cove, 169.  
Walser, 198.  
Wanchese, 163.  
War Camp Community, 412, 415, 416,  
417, 418, 419, 420, 421, 423, 424, 425,  
427, 428, 429, 430, 431, 432, 434, 435,  
436, 438, 439, 440, 441, 442, 443, 444,  
445, 446, 448.  
War, Civil, 22.  
War, Great, 22.  
War Savings Stamps, 28, 30, 31.  
War, Revolutionary, 11.  
War, World, 22, 26, 72, 77, 79, 89, 240.  
Ward Medal Speakers, 337.  
Warfield, 366.  
Warner, 406.  
Warren, 170, 197, 369, 466, 493.  
Warrenton, 170.  
Warsaw, 454, 455.  
Warsaw, 163.  
Washington, 21, 22, 30, 35, 74, 75, 77,  
104, 117, 142, 144, 147, 151, 156, 160,  
170, 201, 257, 306, 308, 447, 458, 495.  
Washington and Lee University, 329.  
Washington's Southern Tour, 76, 176.  
Watauga, 170.  
Watchman and Old North State, 207.  
Waterloo, 457.  
Waters, 467.  
Watau, 64, 67, 68, 211, 212, 214, 215,  
217, 222, 225, 226, 232, 345, 354, 359,  
369, 379, 482, 483.  
Watt, 39.  
Watten, 51, 52.  
Watteville, 128, 135, 136.  
Wautauga Club, 87.  
Wayne, 170, 205, 250, 259, 269, 270, 272.  
Waynesville, 165, 432, 433.  
Weatherford, 463, 465.  
Weatherly, 420, 422, 429.  
Weeks, 403, 469.  
Weil, 333.  
Weldon, 29, 165, 468.  
Wemaer, 61.  
Wertenbaker, 15, 192, 194, 195, 196.  
West, 11, 26.  
West Cappel, 353.  
Western Carolinian, 207.



- Western Europe, 5, 9.  
 West Indies, 8.  
 Westphalia, 357.  
 West Virginia University, 78, 312.  
 Whaley, 535.  
 Wharton, 158.  
 Whatall, 376.  
 Wheatley, 507, 522.  
 Wheatly, 415, 416, 420, 442.  
 Wheeler, 79.  
 Whittall, 487.  
 White, 114.  
 Whitehair, 28.  
 Whitepole, 489.  
 Whiteville, 162.  
 Whitsett, 466, 467.  
 Whitted, 482.  
 Whitton, 456.  
 Wilkes, 74, 171, 277.  
 Wilkinson, 272.  
 William III, 388.  
 Williams, 76, 77, 102, 108, 114, 117, 198, 223, 357.  
 Williamson, 99, 103, 104, 106.  
 Williamston, 166.  
 William the Conqueror, 15.  
 Wilmington, 29, 74, 75, 100, 109, 110, 114, 167, 199, 420, 422, 423, 427, 468.  
 Wilson, 21, 30, 88, 89, 90, 171, 247, 258, 265, 269, 270, 291, 305, 306, 310, 459, 460.  
 Wilson Collegiate Institute, 256, 270.  
 Windsor, 160.  
 Winston-Salem, 26, 29, 73, 74, 151, 152, 159, 163, 174, 175, 279, 281, 437, 438, 440.  
 Winthrop, 232, 521, 539.  
 Winton, 165.  
 Wisconsin, 15.  
 Wisconsin Agriculture, 16.  
 Wisconsin Domesday, 15.  
 Wise, 148.  
 Woesten, 352, 488.  
 Wolf, 536.  
 Woodard, 270.  
 Woody, 411.  
 Works of Gaillard Hunt, 336.  
 World's Work, 20, 24, 87.  
 World War, 22, 26, 72, 77, 79, 89.  
 Wormhoudt, 379.  
 Worth, 201.  
 Wosteen, 484.  
 Woylan, 529.  
 Wright, 452.  
 Writings of Walter Clark, 333.  
 Wulverghem, 497.  
  
 Y.  
  
 Yadkin, 171, 279.  
 Yadkinville, 171.  
 Yale, 501.  
 Yamassee, 389.  
 Yancey, 171.  
 Yonge, 391, 396.  
 Yongsville, 164.  
 Yorkshire, 83.  
 Yorkshiresmen, 23.  
 Ylres, 52, 64, 67, 212, 214, 216, 218, 221, 230, 234, 352, 357, 358, 361, 362, 364, 373, 374, 379, 488, 489, 498, 506, 509.  
  
 Z.  
  
 Zillebeke, 362.  
 Zimmerman, 197.  
 Zinzendorf, 125, 128, 129, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136.  
 Zouave Siding, 486.  
 Zuytpeence, 61.





THE  
NORTH CAROLINA  
HISTORICAL REVIEW

ISSUED QUARTERLY

VOLUME I

NUMBERS 1—4



JANUARY

DECEMBER

1924

PUBLISHED BY  
NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL COMMISSION  
RALEIGH, N. C.



# THE NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL REVIEW

---

*Published by The North Carolina Historical Commission, Raleigh, N. C.  
R. B. House, Managing Editor*

---

## THE NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL COMMISSION

THOMAS M. PITTMAN, *Chairman*

M. C. S. NOBLE

HERIOT CLARKSON

FRANK WOOD

W. N. EVERETT

R. B. HOUSE, *Secretary*

---

*This review was established in January, 1924, as a medium of publication and discussion of history in North Carolina. It is issued to other institutions by exchange, but to the general public by subscription only. The regular price is \$2.00 a year. To members of the State Literary and Historical Association there is a special price of \$1.00 a year.*

# THE NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL REVIEW

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

### VOLUME I

A SELECT BIBLIOGRAPHY OF RECENT ARTICLES ON NORTH CAROLINA-----	91
---	----

#### BOOK REVIEWS

ECKENRODE's <i>Jefferson Davis</i> —By R. D. W. CONNOR; MENCKEN's <i>The American Language</i> —By THOMAS P. HARRISON; HENDRICK's <i>Life and Letters of Walter Hines Page</i> —By C. C. PEARSON-----	80
---	----

HENDERSON's <i>Washington's Southern Tour</i> —By E. M. CARROLL; McILWAIN's <i>The American Revolution</i> —By HENRY THOMAS SHANKS; SHAW's <i>Davidson College</i> —By THOMAS P. HARRISON; BICKETT's <i>Letters and Papers</i> —By O. J. COFFIN; RAYMOND's <i>Lloyd George</i> —By CHESTER P. HIGBY; PRIESTLY's <i>The Mexican Nation</i> —By W. W. PIERSON; WERTENBAKER's <i>The Planters of Colonial Virginia</i> —By F. W. CLONTS-----	176
---	-----

CRAIG's <i>Memoirs and Speeches</i> —By J. Y. JOYNER; DAVENPORT AND COOKE's <i>Oil Trusts and Anglo American Relations</i> —By C. P. HIGBY; FRENCH's <i>The Pioneer West</i> —By A. R. NEWSOME; GOSNELL's <i>Boss Platt and His New York Machine</i> ; McELROY's <i>Grover Cleveland</i> —By B. B. KENDRICK; PUTNAM's <i>Memories, etc.</i> ; REDFIELD's <i>With Congress and Cabinet</i> —By J. G. DER. HAMILTON; THOMAS's <i>One Hundred Years of the Monroe Doctrine</i> —By J. M. CALLAHAN; BARNES's <i>Sociology and Political Theory</i> ; TANNENBAUM's <i>Darker Phases of the South</i> —By A. M. ARNETT; ADAM's <i>Shakespeare</i> —By T. P. HARRISON; <i>Briefer Mention</i> —By D. L. CORBITT-----	289
---	-----

WARSHAW's <i>The New Latin-America</i> —By W. W. PERSON, JR.; WHITTON's <i>The Decisive Battles of Modern Times</i> —By EBEN SWIFT; DANIELS's <i>The Life of Woodrow Wilson</i> —By WILLIAM C. REDFIELD; TAYLOR's <i>A History of the Tar River Baptist Association</i> —By THOMAS M. PITTMAN; WEATHERFORD's <i>The Negro from Africa to America</i> —By W. C. JACKSON-----	454
---	-----

CHARLES BRANTLEY AYCOCK—AN APPRECIATION-----	243
--	-----

Edwin Anderson Alderman

CHARLES BRANTLEY AYCOCK—HISTORICAL ADDRESS-----	251
---	-----

Josephus Daniels

CORRESPONDENCE ON ANDREWS'S RICHARD DOBBS SPAIGHT.....	340
HISTORICAL NEWS.....	71, 199, 328, 468
HISTORICAL NOTES .....	449
<i>D. L. Corbitt</i>	
RECENT PUBLICATIONS ON NORTH CAROLINA.....	197, 326, 466
RICHARD DOBBS SPAIGHT .....	95
<i>Alexander B. Andrews</i>	
SOME ASPECTS OF THE WORK OF THE SOCIETY OF FRIENDS FOR NEGRO EDUCATION IN NORTH CAROLINA .....	403
<i>Emma King</i>	
THE AYCOCK MEMORIAL .....	239
THE LURE OF HISTORICAL RESEARCH.....	121
<i>Adelaide L. Fries</i>	
THE NORTH CAROLINA FUEL ADMINISTRATION.....	138
<i>(Documents)</i>	
THE SURRENDER OF THE CHARTER OF CAROLINA.....	383
<i>Charles Christopher Crittenden</i>	
THE WAR SAVINGS CAMPAIGN IN 1918.....	26
<i>Gilbert T. Stephenson</i>	
TRACES OF THE INDIANS IN PIEDMONT NORTH CAROLINA.....	277
<i>Douglas L. Rights</i>	
WALTER HINES PAGE—MEMORIAL ADDRESS.....	3
<i>Albert Shaw</i>	
WAR CAMP COMMUNITY SERVICE IN NORTH CAROLINA.....	412
<i>(Documents)</i>	
WAR DIARY OF COLONEL JOSEPH HYDE PRATT.....	35, 210, 344, 475

451  
11

# North Carolina Historical Review

---

JANUARY, 1924

WALTER HINES PAGE—MEMORIAL ADDRESS.....	3
Albert Shaw, Editor of The American Review of Reviews	
THE WAR SAVINGS CAMPAIGN IN 1918.....	26
Gilbert T. Stephenson, Raleigh, N. C.	
DIARY OF COLONEL JOSEPH HYDE PRATT, COMMANDING 105TH ENGINEERS, A.E.F.....	35
HISTORICAL NEWS.....	71
BOOK REVIEWS.....	80
A SELECT BIBLIOGRAPHY OF RECENT ARTICLES ON NORTH CAROLINA	91

---

Issued quarterly by the North Carolina Historical Commission, Raleigh, N. C.  
Application has been made for entry at the Postoffice at Raleigh, N. C., as  
second-class matter.  
Subscription price per year.....\$2.00  
Single numbers ..... .50

NORTH CAROLINA  
STATE LIBRARY



N  
975.6  
N813h

## NORTH CAROLINA HISTORICAL COMMISSION

THOMAS M. PITTMAN, <i>Chairman</i> .....	Henderson
M. C. S. NOBLE.....	Chapel Hill
FRANK WOOD .....	Edenton
HERIOT CLARKSON .....	Charlotte
W. N. EVERETT.....	Raleigh
<hr/>	
D. H. HILL, <i>Secretary</i> .....	Raleigh
R. B. HOUSE, <i>Archivist</i> .....	Raleigh



STATE LIBRARY OF NORTH CAROLINA



3 3091 00748 4025





